

JVC



ENGLISH

ESPAÑOL

FRANÇAIS

DVD/CD RECEIVER

KD-AVX2

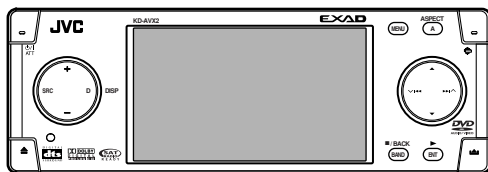
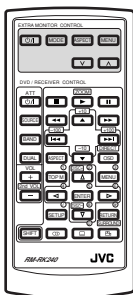
RECEPTOR CON DVD/CD

KD-AVX2

RÉCEPTEUR DVD/CD

KD-AVX2

EXAD



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 10.

Para cancelar la demostración en pantalla, consulte la página 10.

Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 10.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.

Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

For customer Use:

Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No. _____

Serial No. _____

INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

LVT1454-001A

[J]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

INFORMATION (For U.S.A.)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

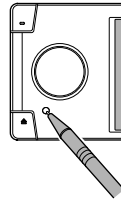
Caution:

Changes or modifications not approved by JVC could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.

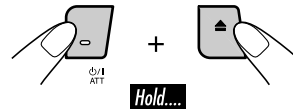
How to reset your unit



This will reset the microcomputer. Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

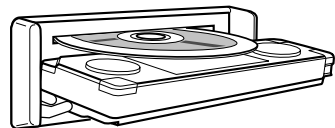
How to forcibly eject a disc

If a disc cannot be recognized by the receiver or cannot be ejected, ejects the disc as follows.



“NO EJECT?” (or “EJECT OK?”) and “EMERGENCY EJECT?” appear on the monitor.

Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select “EMERGENCY EJECT?”, then press ENT.



- If this does not work, reset your receiver.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

WARNINGS:

- **DO NOT install any receiver in locations where;**
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- **The driver must not put on the headphones while driving.** It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- **If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.

Characters shown on the monitor

The following characters will be used to show the various information on the monitor.

- You can also use the following characters to assign titles (see page 41).

A	B	C	D	E	a	b	c	d	e
F	G	H	I	J	f	g	h	i	j
K	L	M	N	O	k	l	m	n	o
P	Q	R	S	T	p	q	r	s	t
U	V	W	X	Y	u	v	w	x	y
Z	space				z	space			

Upper and lower cases

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	"	#	\$	%
&	'	()	*
+	,	-	.	/
:	;	<	=	>
?	@	_	`	space

Numbers and symbols

Introduction—Playable discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs—12 cm (4-3/4") and 8 cm (3-3/16")—on this receiver:

- **DVD Video:** Recorded in NTSC color system with Region Code "1" (see below).
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played.
- **DVD Audio**
- **Video CD (VCD)/audio CD**
- **MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG1,2:** Recorded either in CD-R/CD-RW or DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM.
 - CD-R/CD-RW: Compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM: Compliant with UDF-Bridge Format*¹.
- *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (DVD Video format only) discs. However the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.*
- *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

Discs cannot be played back

DVD-ROM (data), DVD-RAM, DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

*¹ *A hybrid file system used to provide compatibility with ISO 9660 for accessing any type of files on the disc. (UDF stands for Universal Disk Format.)*

"DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This receiver can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include "1".

Examples:



If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code



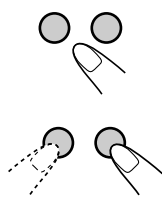

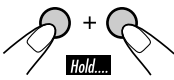
"Region Error" appears on the monitor on the unit and the disc ejects.

"REGION CODE ERROR" also appears on the external monitor.

How to read this manual

The following methods are used to make the explanations simple and easy-to-understand:

- Some related tips and notes are explained in “More about this receiver” (see pages 54 – 58).
- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations as follows:

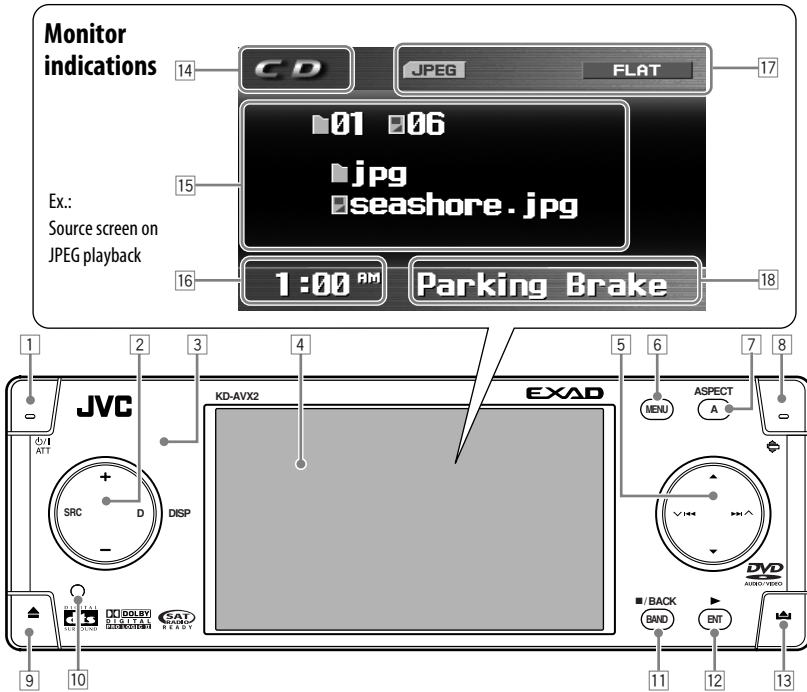
	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.
	Press and hold both buttons at the same time.

Contents

Control panel	6
Remote controller — RM-RK240	7
Getting started.....	10
Radio operations	12
Disc operations	15
Unique disc functions.....	20
Disc surround playback	22
On-Screen disc operations	24
Other disc operations	28
Dual Zone operations	30
AV Menu settings.....	31
Other main functions	41
CD changer operations	42
Satellite radio operations	44
External component operations	49
iPod®/D. player operations	50
Maintenance	52
Language codes.....	53
More about this receiver	54
Troubleshooting	59
Specifications	63

Control panel

Parts identification



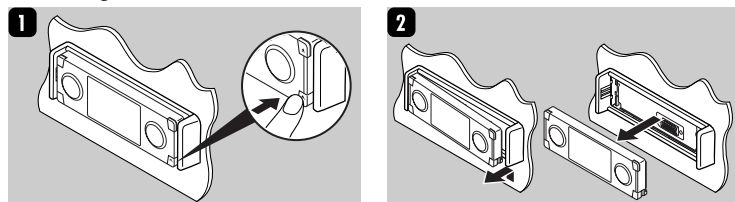
- 1 ϕ /I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
- 2 • +/- (volume +/-) button
• SRC (source) button
• DISP (D: display) button
- 3 Remote Sensor
- 4 Monitor
- 5 • \blacktriangle (up) / \blacktriangledown (down) buttons
• \blacktriangledown \lll / \ggg \blacktriangle buttons
- 6 MENU button
- 7 ASPECT (A) button
- 8 \curvearrowright (angle) button
- 9 \blacktriangle (eject) button
- 10 Reset button
- 11 • BAND button
• BACK button
• \blacksquare (stop) button
- 12 • ENT (enter) button
• \blacktriangleright (play) button
- 13 \blacktriangleleft (control panel release) button

Monitor indications

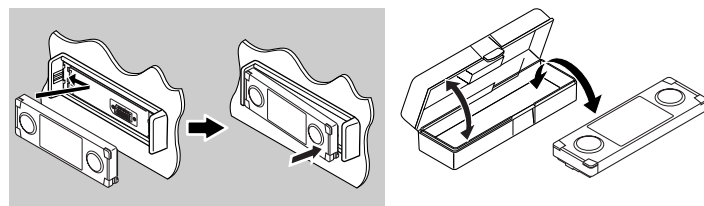
- 14 Source indicator
- 15 Main display
- 16 Clock display
Also indicates volume level when adjusting volume.
- 17 Status indicators
- 18 Alert information area
Also indicates volume level bar when adjusting volume.

How to detach/attach the control panel

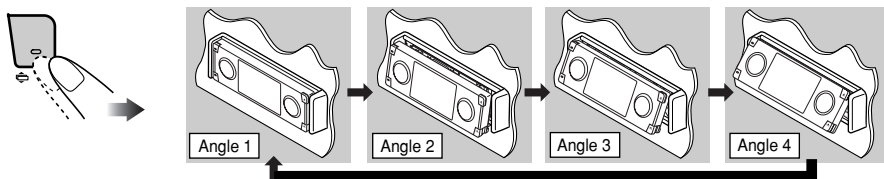
Detaching...



Attaching...



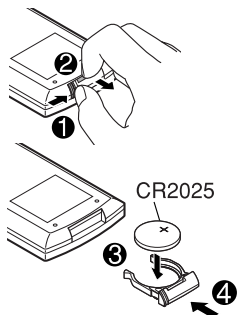
How to change the control panel angle



Caution: Do not insert your finger behind the control panel.

Remote controller — RM-RK240

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the receiver. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.



- Do not expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

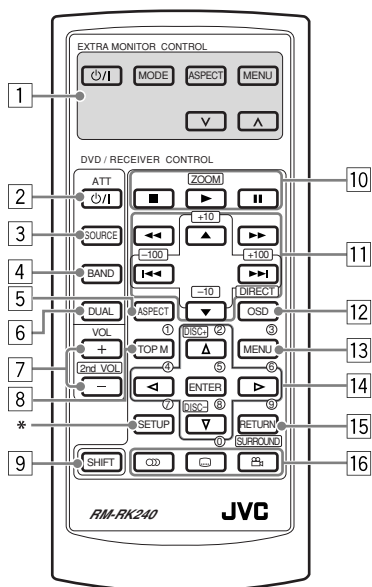
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accidents.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
 - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire.
 - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
 - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
 - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

The receiver is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features



* Not used as the SETUP button for this model.

IMPORTANT:

If Dual Zone is activated (see page 30), the remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.

MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons*1
 - O/I (standby/on), MODE, ASPECT, MENU, ∇ and \wedge .

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 O/I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
 - Turns on and off the power and also attenuates the sound.
- 3 SOURCE button
 - Selects the source.
- 4 BAND button
 - Selects the FM/AM/Satellite radio bands.
- 5 ASPECT button
 - Change the aspect of the monitor on the unit when playing back DVD, VCD, etc.
- 6 DUAL button
 - Activate and deactivate Dual Zone.
- 7 VOL + / - buttons
 - Adjusts the volume level.
 - Also function as 2nd VOL +/- buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 8 TOP M (menu) button*2
 - Display the DVD, DVD Audio, and VCD*3 disc menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10 Basic disc operation buttons*4:
 - (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - ► (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 11 Advanced disc operation/tuner operation buttons*5

For advanced disc operations:

 - \blacktriangle / \blacktriangledown
 - Select the titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio), or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG).
 - \lll / \ggg (reverse skip/forward skip)
 - \lll / \ggg (reverse search/forward search)*6

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset stations.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
 - Functions to search for stations.
Press briefly: auto search
Press and hold: manual search

For Satellite radio operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the categories.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
 - Changes the channels if pressed briefly.
 - Changes the channels rapidly if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - ▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - ▲: Enters the main menu of iPod/D. player. (Now ▲ / ▼/|◀◀ / ▶▶| work as the menu selection buttons)*7
- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

12 OSD button

- Display the on-screen bar.
- Also function as the DIRECT button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can directly select titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio) or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/MPEG) using the number buttons (see the right column and page 19).

13 MENU button*2

- Display the DVD and VCD*2 disc menu. (Not functions for the DVD Audio disc.)

14 Menu operation buttons*2

- Cursor (Δ, ▽, ◀, ▶) and ENTER
- Δ / ▽: Also function as DISC+/- buttons when the source is “CD-CH”.

15 RETURN button*2

16 Special function buttons

- DVD/VCD: ◯◯◯ (audio)
- DVD: ◻◻◻ (subtitle), ◻◻◻ (angle)
- ◻◻◻ Also function as the SURROUND button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can change the surround mode (see page 23).

*1 Controllable only if your monitor is one of the JVC monitors — KV-MR9010 or KV-MH6510.

*2 These buttons function as the number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 Only when PBC is not in use.

*4 Not used for CD changer operations.

*5 These buttons function as the +10/-10 and +100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

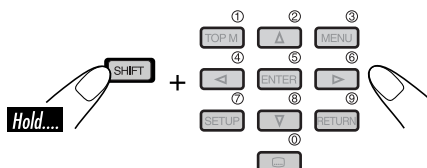
*6 Not used for JPEG operations.

*7 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.

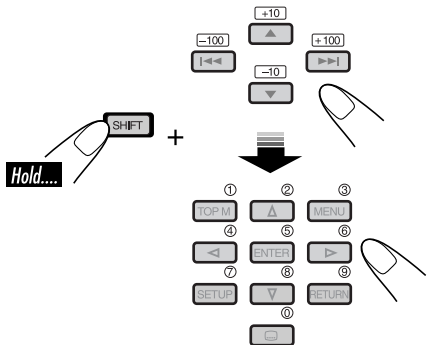
▼: Confirms the selection.

How to select a number

To select a number from 0 – 9:



To select a number greater than 9:

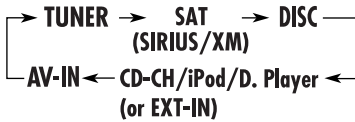
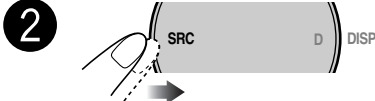


• +100/-100 buttons used for searching track number greater than 99 (not available for CD/VCD/DVD/DVD audio).

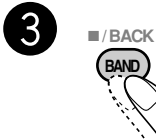
Getting started

Basic operations

- 1** Turn on the power.



You cannot select some sources if they are not ready.



For FM/AM tuner



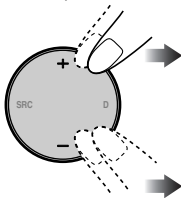
For SIRIUS radio



For XM radio



- 4** Adjust the volume.



Volume level indicator

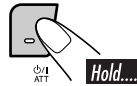
- 5** Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 38.)

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT)

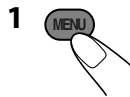


To restore the sound, press it again.

To turn off the power

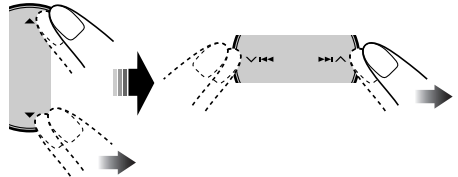


Canceling demonstration and setting the clock



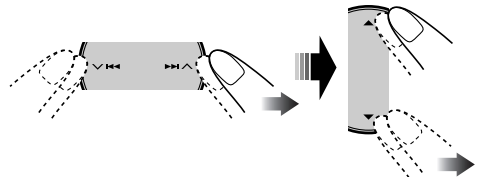
- 2** Select "Setup", then,

- 1 Select "Display", "Demonstration", then "Off" to cancel demonstration.
- 2 Select "Clock", "Time Set", and go to the next step to set the clock.

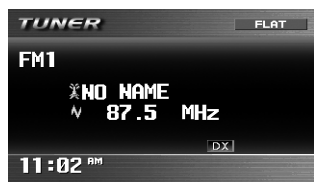
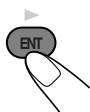


- 3** Set the hour and minute.

- 1 Select "Hour", then adjust the hour.
- 2 Select "Minute", then adjust the minute.




4 Finish the procedure.



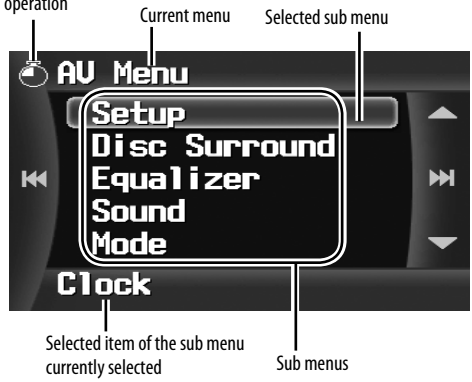
- See the example on “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” below to change the clock from 12 hours to 24 hours.

Basic procedure of AV Menu operation

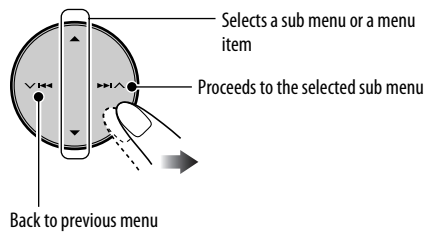
You can adjust various settings of the unit from AV Menu.

- To call up AV Menu... 

Displays remaining time to continue the menu operation



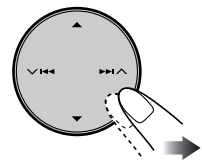
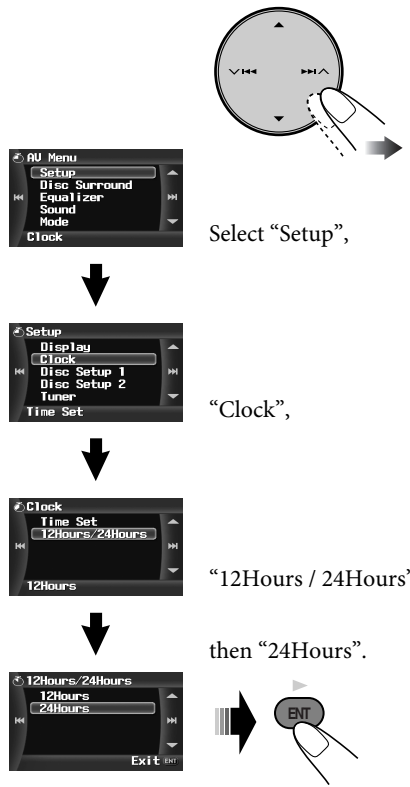
- To select an menu item and proceed to the sub menu...



- To go back to the previous screen and adjust other items...



Ex.: To change the clock from 12 hours to 24 hours, after pressing MENU...

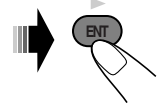


Select “Setup”,

“Clock”,

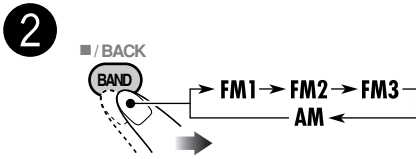
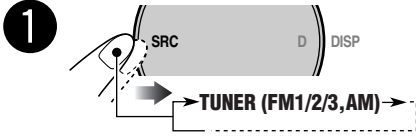
“12Hours / 24Hours”,

then “24Hours”.



- To cancel menu operations and return to the source screen, press DISP (D).
- See pages 31 – 40 for information of the sub menus and menu items.

Radio operations



Selected band appears.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

3 **Start searching for a station.**



When a station is received, searching stops.

To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

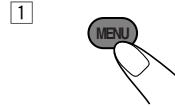
In step 3 above...



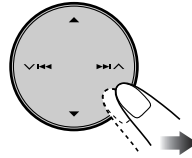
2 Select the desired station frequencies.



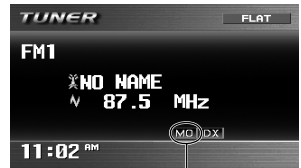
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive



2 Select "Mode", "Mono", then "On".



3 Finish the procedure.

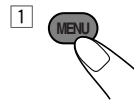


Lights up when monaural mode is activated.

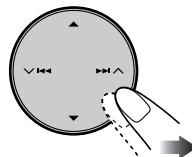
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to set "Mono" to "Off". The MO indicator goes off.

To tune in strong-signal FM station only



2 Select "Mode", "DX / Local", then "Local".



3 Finish the procedure.



Lights up when "Local" mode is activated.

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

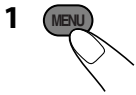
To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure to set "DX / Local" to "DX". The LO indicator goes off and the DX indicator lights up.

Storing stations in memory

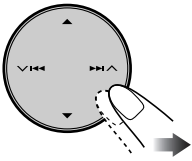
You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

After selecting the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want...



2 Select "Mode", then "SSM".

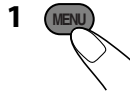


"SSM" is shown until automatic presetting is over.

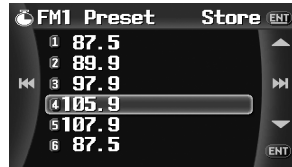
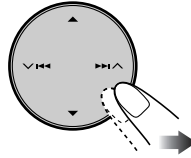
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

After tuning in the station you want to preset...

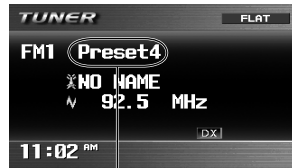
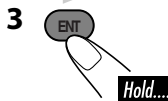


2 Select "List", then a preset number (1–6) you want to store the station into.



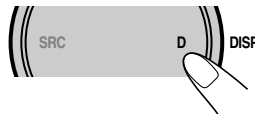
EX.: Storing 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of FM1

You can also display the list by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons.



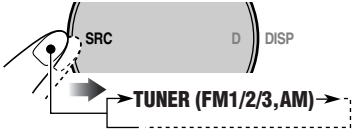
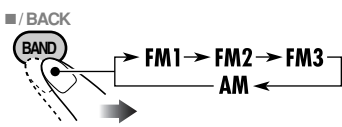
Stored preset number flashes for a while.

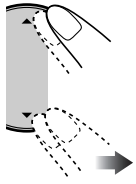
How to exit from menus or lists



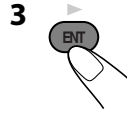
Menu or list operations are canceled and the screen returns to the source screen.

Listening to a preset station

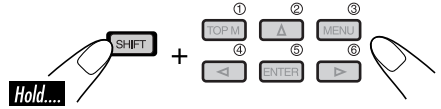
- 
- 
- Select a preset station (1 - 6) you want.



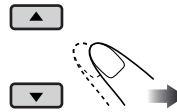
- You can change the preset list between FM1/2/3 by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons (or by pressing ▲/▼ buttons repeatedly) when selecting any of the FM bands.



When using the remote controller...




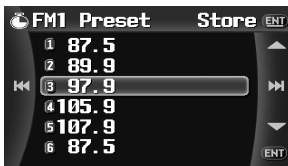
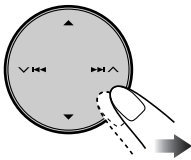
or



When using the list screen...

After step 2 above...

- 
- Select "List", then a preset number (1-6) you want.



Disc operations

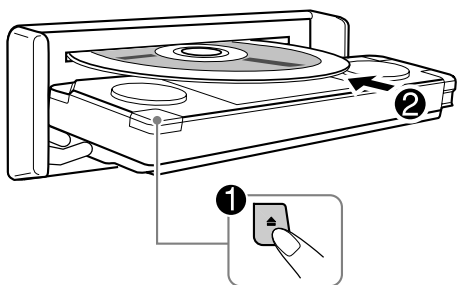
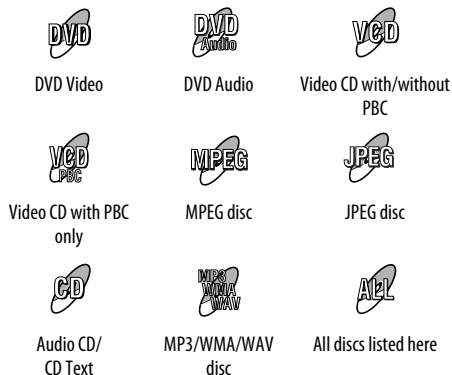
Playing a disc in the receiver

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD Video/Audio: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc is an audio CD, CD Text, MP3/WMA/WAV, JPEG, MPEG, or VCD without PBC, all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

- If a title list or disc menu appears while playing a DVD Video/Audio or VCD with PBC, see “Disc menu operations” on page 21.


The following marks are used to indicate the playable discs...



To eject a disc



Before performing any operations, make sure the following...

- The operations explained on pages 17 – 22 are mainly of the remote controller.
 -  shows functions which you can also use on the unit.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the receiver cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

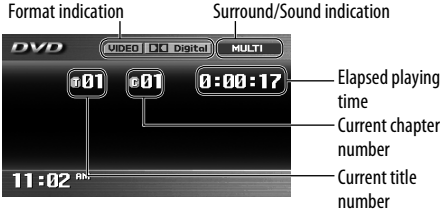
- In some cases, without showing “⊘”, operations will not be accepted.

- **When inserting a DVD video/DVD Audio disc:**

Video/picture playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).

When an DVD is playing back



When a DVD Audio disc is playing back

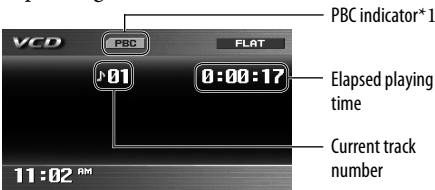


- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

- **When inserting a VCD:**

VCD playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).



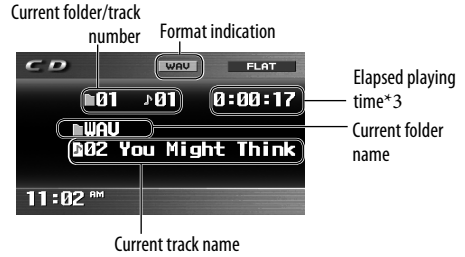
*1 Appears when the PBC function is in use.

- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

- **When inserting an MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG disc*2:**

After showing the total folder and file number...

Ex.: When an WAV file is detected

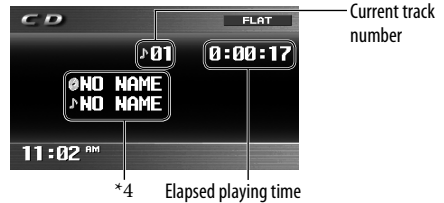


*2 When playing back a JPEG/MPEG disc, press DISP (D) to display the screen. (Picture/video playback is automatically starts when the parking brake is applied.)

*3 Does not appear for JPEG disc.

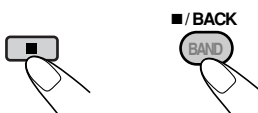
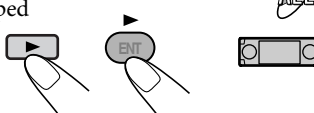




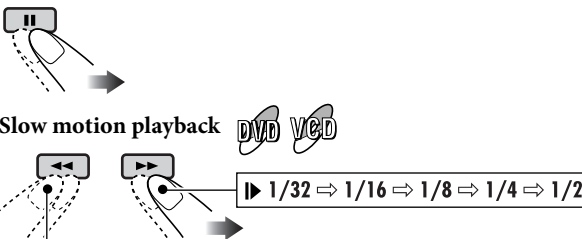

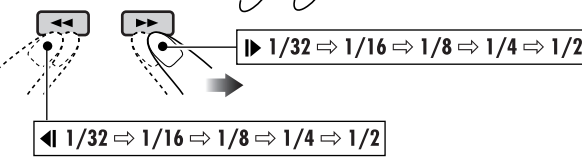

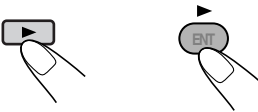


- **When inserting a CD Text/audio CD:**

After showing the total track number and total playing time...



*4 Disc title/performer and track title are displayed when playing a CD Text.

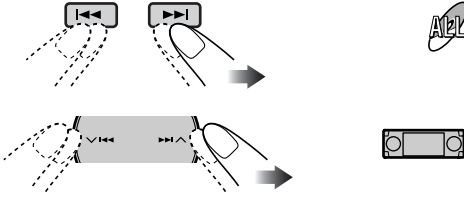
Basic operations

Operations	Monitor indication and/or next operation
<p>To stop playback</p> 	<p>When you start playback again, playback starts from where it has been stopped (Resume play).</p>  
<p>To stop play temporarily</p> 	<p>Playback is paused.</p>  <p>A still picture appears.</p> <p>(A) Frame by frame playback </p>  <p>(B) Slow motion playback </p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sound comes out during Slow Motion Playback. • When playing a VCD, Reverse Slow Motion Playback is prohibited. <p>To resume normal play:</p> 
<p>To replay the previous scenes—One Touch Replay</p> 	<p>The playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This function works only within the same title. • For some DVDs, this function does not work.  

- During play, on-screen guide icons appear on the monitor for a while (see page 58).

To go to the next or previous chapters/tracks

- For DVD: During play or pause



To locate a particular title/group/ chapter/track directly

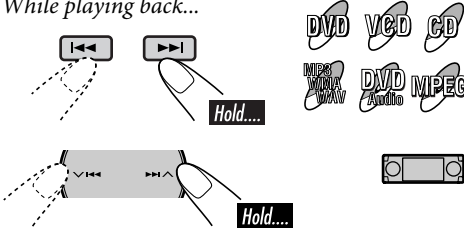


- For DVD Video/DVD Audio:
During play or pause—select a chapter/ track.
During stop—select a title/group.
- For MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG:
Select a track within the same folder.

Select the number corresponding to the item you want (see page 9).

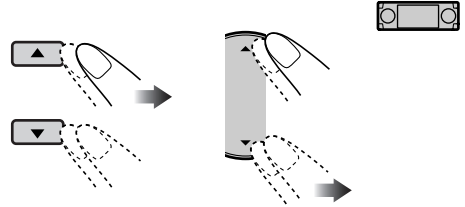
To fast-forward or reverse the chapter/track

While playing back...



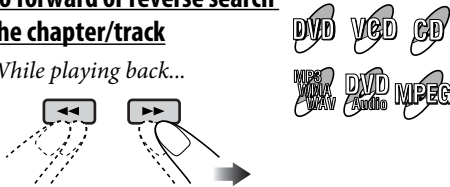
* The search speed changes to x2 ⇔ x10 (▶⇨) (◀⇨) 1/2 for MPEG), but the information shown on the monitor is only for DVD/VCD/ MPEG.

To locate a title/group/folder



To forward or reverse search the chapter/track

While playing back...



The information shown is only for DVD/VCD:

▶▶ x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60

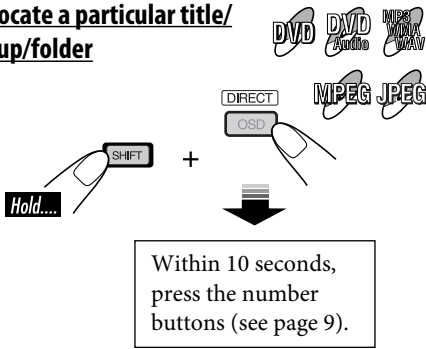
◀◀ x2 ⇨ x5 ⇨ x10 ⇨ x20 ⇨ x60

* The search speed of an MPEG file is 3 steps - ▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2/3.

- To resume normal speed



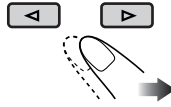
**To locate a particular title/
group/folder**



To skip to the next or previous scene



You can skip the scene back and forward by 5 minutes.



Ex.: when you are playing a 24-minute MPEG file and the elapsed playing time is 8'24"...

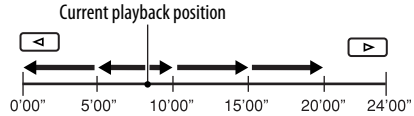
IMPORTANT:

- For MP3/WMA/WAV discs: It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit number at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

To adjust the screen shape on the unit



- See “Aspect” on page 33 for the detail.



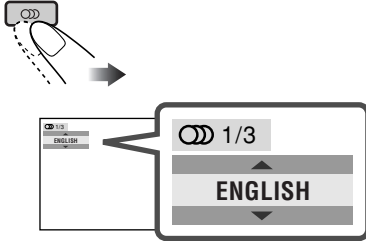
- The first pressing of the buttons skips the scene to the nearest multiple-of-5 playing time (except current playing time).
- This function does not work when remaining time to skip forward or back is under 5 minutes.

Unique disc functions

Selecting audio languages

For DVD:

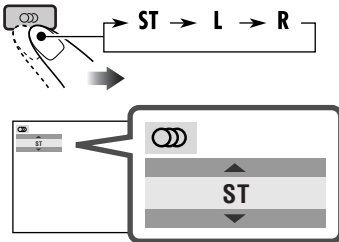
You can select the language to listen to if the disc has multiple audio languages.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

For VCD:

You can select the audio channel to play. (This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.)



ST: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.

L: To listen to the L (left) audio channel.

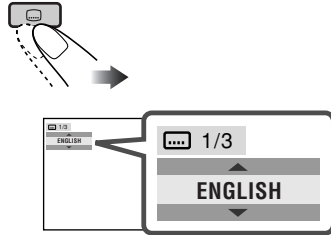
R: To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

Selecting subtitles

You can select the language of the subtitle to be shown on the monitor.



- You can set the initial subtitle language using the AV Menu (see page 34).

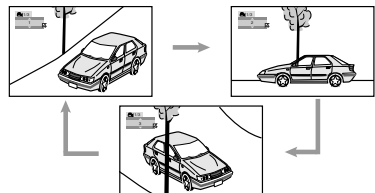
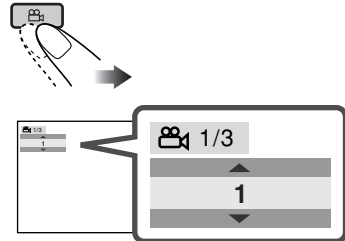


Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the subtitle language, audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting multi-angle views

You can view the same scene at different angles if the disc has multi-angle views.

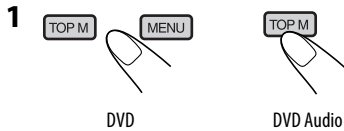


Ex.: When the disc has 3 multi-angle views

Disc menu operations

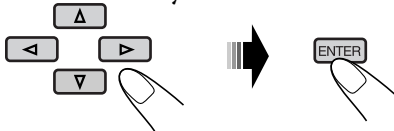
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PBC (PlayBack Control).

While playing a DVD



A title list or disc menu will appear on the monitor.

2 Select the item you want on the menu.

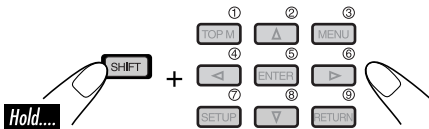


Selected item starts playback.

- On some discs, you can also select items by their numbers.

While playing a VCD

- When a list of items is displayed on the monitor.



- To select a number greater than 9, see “How to select a number” on page 9.

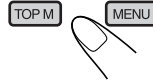
To return to the previous menus



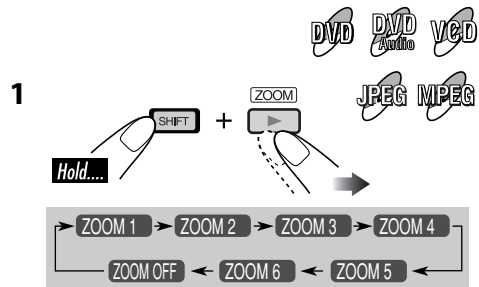
Canceling the PBC playback

- 1
- 2 Select a track to start normal playback using the number buttons (see page 9).

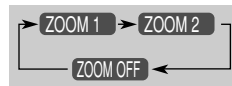
To resume the PBC function



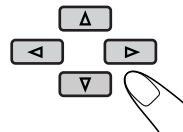
Zoom in



For JPEG disc (effective only when pausing):



2 Move the zoomed-in position.



- For JPEG files:
You cannot move the zoomed-in position when the entire picture is still displayed on the monitor.

To cancel zoom, select “ZOOM OFF” in step 1.

Playing back a bonus group

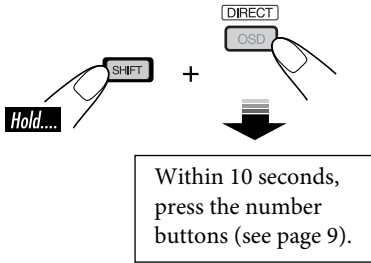
Some DVD Audio discs have a special group called “bonus group” whose contents are not open to the public.



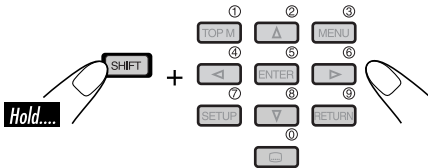
- To play back a bonus group, you have to enter the specific “key number” (a kind of password) for the bonus group. The way of getting the key number depends on the disc.

1 Select the bonus group.

- The bonus group is usually recorded as the last group (for example, if a disc contains four groups including a bonus group, “group 4” is the bonus group).



2 Enter the key number.



3 Follow the interactive instructions shown on the monitor.

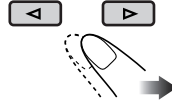
- The entered key number is cleared when the disc is ejected. Repeat steps 1 to 3 above to play back the bonus group again.

Selecting Browsable still pictures

While playing back a track linked to browsable still pictures (B.S.P.), you can select (turn the page) the still picture to be shown on the monitor.



- If a track is linked to B.S.P., they are usually shown in turn automatically during playback.



Disc surround playback

You can enjoy multichannel surround playback of the disc on the unit.

Available surround format

Dolby Digital*1: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with Dolby Digital (DOLBY DIGITAL).

Dolby Pro Logic II: Dolby Pro Logic II is a multichannel playback format to decode all 2 channel sources—stereo source and Dolby Surround encoded source—into 5.1 channels. Dolby Pro Logic II has two modes—Movie mode and Music mode:

- Pro Logic II Movie**
Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
- Pro Logic II Music**
Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

DTS (Digital Theater Systems)*2: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with DTS Digital Surround (DTS SURROUND).

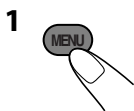
*1: Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless, and the double-D symbol are the trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2: "DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

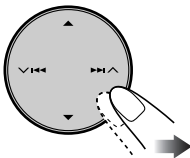
Selecting the surround mode

The unit is set up, by default, to select the optimal surround mode for the digital multichannel disc in the initial setting. You can also choose the surround mode for the 2 channel disc.

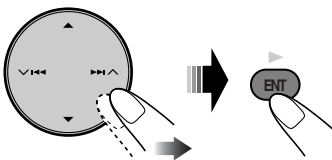
When DISC is selected as the source...



2 Select "Disc Surround".



3 Select the surround setting you want.



Surround Off:

Deactivate the surround function.

Surround On*1*2:

- **Auto***3: the optimum surround mode is selected automatically when multichannel digital signals are detected.
- **Dolby PLII Movie***4*5: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Movie.
- **Dolby PLII Music***4*5*6: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Music.

*1 No sound comes out of the rear speakers and the subwoofer when the FRONT 2CH indicator appears on the monitor.

*2 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the FIX indicator appears on the monitor.

*3 Activates no surround function when the source is a CD (except for DTS CD)/VCD / MP3/WMA/WAV. Select "Dolby PLII Movie" or "Dolby PLII Music" manually to activate the surround function.

*4 Not selectable in the cases below:

- the disc has 2.1 or more channels of sound tracks (except for MPEG-encoded tracks).
- the disc is an MPEG disc.

*5 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the front speaker size is set to "Large" (see page 35).

*6 When you select "Dolby PLII Music", you can adjust the following items: "Panorama" and "Center Width". Adjusting "Panorama" to "On" adds "wraparound" sound effect; Activating "Center Width" adjusts the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger (normally select "4").

- No sound comes out of the center speaker when the surround function is not activated.
- Equalizer settings (page 38) become ineffective and unadjustable while the surround function is activated.
- No sound may come out of some speakers depending on the Speaker Size settings (page 35) or the type of the disc played back.
- When Dual Zone is activated, the surround settings become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.

On the remote controller:



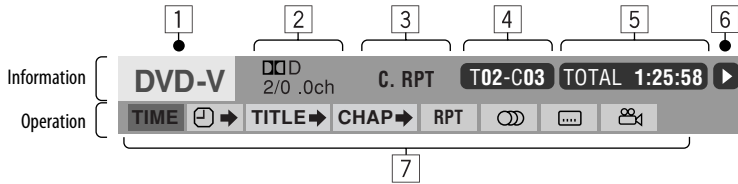
On-Screen disc operations

Operations using the on-screen bar

You can check the disc information and use some functions through the on-screen bar.



On-screen bar

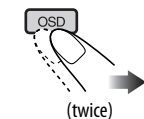


- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 Disc type</p> <p>2 • DVD Video/DVD Audio: Audio signal format type
• VCD: PBC</p> <p>3 Playback mode
DVD: T. REP: Title repeat
C. REP: Chapter repeat
DVD Audio:
T. REP: Track repeat
VCD: T. REP: Track repeat
D. RND: Disc random
T. INT: Track intro
Plays the beginning 15 seconds of the current track
JPEG:T. REP: Track repeat
MPEG:
T. REP: Track repeat
F. REP: Folder repeat</p> <p>4 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
G02-T03 Current group/track
TRACK 01 Current track
F001-T001 Current folder/track</p> <p>5 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM Remaining disc time (for VCD)/remaining title time (for DVD)
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track</p> | <p>REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track</p> <p>6 Playback status
▶ Play
▶/◀ Forward/reverse search
▶/◀ Forward/reverse slow-motion
⏸ Pause
⏹ Stop</p> <p>7 Operation icons
TIME Change time indication (see 5)
⏸▶ Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE▶ Title Search (by its number)
GROUP▶ Group Search (by its number)
CHAP▶ Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK▶ Track Search (by its number)
⏸ Change the audio language or audio channel
⏸ Change the subtitle language
▶ Change the view angle
RPT Repeat play*
INT Intro play*
RND Random play*</p> |
|---|--|

* See also page 28.

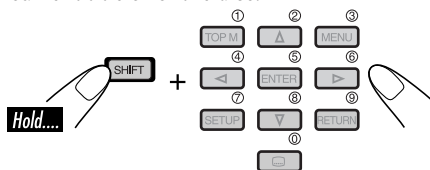
Basic on-screen bar operations

1 Display the on-screen bar.



To search for a particular point by playing time

- 1 Select .
- 2 Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.

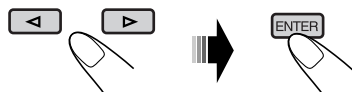


- Ex.:
- To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
 - To enter 54 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 0, 5, 4, 0, then 0.
 - It is always required to enter the hour digit (even “0” hour), but it is not required to enter trailing zeros (the last two digits in the examples above).
 - To correct a misentry, press....

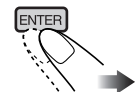


- You can also specify the elapsed playing time by using Δ / ∇ / \triangleleft / \triangleright .

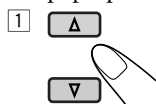
2 Select an item.



3 Make a selection.



- If pop-up menu appears....



or press the number buttons (see page 9).

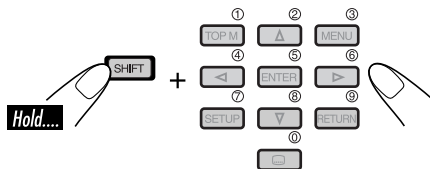


- 3 Finish the procedure.



To search for a particular title/group/chapter/track

- 1 Select **TITLE** \Rightarrow (**GROUP** \Rightarrow / **CHAP** \Rightarrow / **TRACK** \Rightarrow).
- 2 Enter the number.



- To correct a misentry, press the number button until the correct number is entered.

- 3 Finish the procedure.



To erase the on-screen bar

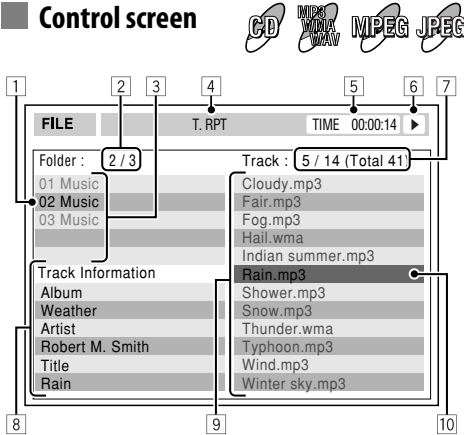


Basic control screen operations

You can search for and play the desired items through the control screen when using the external monitor.

- The control screen automatically appears on the monitor when you insert a disc (external monitor only).
- JPEG/MPEG control screen appears only when playback stops.

Control screen



Ex.: MP3 playback

- 1 Current folder (Not appears on CD playback)
- 2 Current folder number/total folder number (Not appears on CD playback)
- 3 Folder list (Not appears on CD playback)
- 4 Selected playback mode
- 5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (Not appears on JPEG playback)
- 6 Operation mode icon
▶ (play), ■ (stop), || (pause), ►► (fast-forward), ◀◀ (reverse)
- 7 CD: Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
Others: Current track (file) number/total number of tracks (files) in the current folder (total number of tracks/files on the disc)

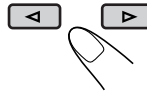
- 8 Track information (Not appears on JPEG/MPEG playback)
- 9 Track (file) list
- 10 Current track (file) (highlighted bar)

To select a folder or track

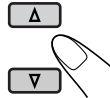


While Dual Zone (see page 30) is on....

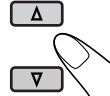
- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track.



To select a track



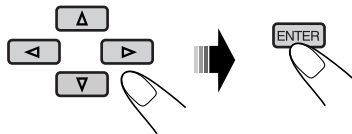
To change the playback mode

While Dual Zone (see page 30) is on....



- 1 OSD

- 2 Select a playback mode (see page 28) you want.



List screen operations

You can display the folder list/track list before starting play when using the external monitor and Dual Zone function (see page 30). On this list, you can confirm the contents and start playing a disc.

Folder/track list screens

MP3 WMA MPEG JPEG

Folder list

Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6	
fol130	fol140	fol150	fol160		
fol131	fol141	fol151	fol161		
fol132	fol142	fol152	fol162		
fol133	fol143	fol153	fol163		
fol134	fol144	fol154	fol164		
fol135	fol145	fol155	fol165		
fol136	fol146	fol156	fol166		
fol137	fol147	fol157	fol167		
fol138	fol148	fol158	fol168		
fol139	fol149	fol159	fol169		

Track list


Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6	
file0131.mp3	file0141.mp3	file0151.wma	file0161.wma		
file0132.mp3	file0142.mp3	file0152.mp3	file0162.mp3		
file0133.wma	file0143.mp3	file0153.wma	file0163.wma		
file0134.mp3	file0144.mp3	file0154.mp3	file0164.mp3		
file0135.mp3	file0145.wma	file0155.mp3	file0165.wma		
file0136.wma	file0146.mp3	file0156.mp3	file0166.wma		
file0137.wma	file0147.wma	file0157.mp3	file0167.wma		
file0138.mp3	file0148.mp3	file0158.wma	file0168.wma		
file0139.mp3	file0149.wma	file0159.wma	file0169.mp3		
file0140.wma	file0150.wma	file0160.wma	file0170.wma		

Ex.: Track list for MP3/WMA

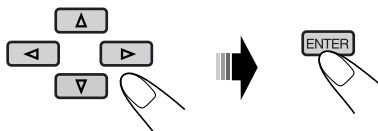
- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder.
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

While Dual Zone is on and the disc play stops...

1 Display the folder list.

 Each time you press the button, the list screen comes on and goes off.

2 Select a folder on the list.

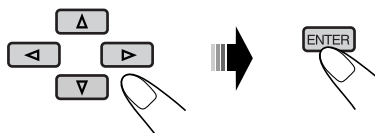


The track list of the selected folder appears.

To go back to the folder list



3 Select a track on the list.



Other disc operations

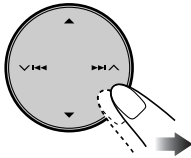
Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

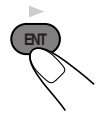
1 

(On the unit)

2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Playback mode indicator appears.



Selectable modes

Off



Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.

Mode Plays the first 15 seconds of

- Track:** All tracks of the disc.
-  **INT** lights up.
- Folder*1:** First tracks of all folders.
-  **INT** lights up.
- Off:** Cancels.





*1 Only while playing a disc containing folders.

Repeat



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.

Mode Plays repeatedly

- Chapter*2:** The current chapter.
-  **CHAP RPT** lights up.
- Title*2:** The current title.
-  **TITLE RPT** lights up.
- Track*3:** The current track.
-  **RPT** lights up.
- Folder*1:** All tracks of the current folder.
-  **RPT** lights up.
- Off:** For DVD: Cancels Repeat play. For other discs: All tracks of the disc.

*2 Only while playing a DVD disc.



*3 Except for DVD and JPEG discs.

Random



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.

Mode Plays at random

- Folder*1:** All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on.
-  **RND** lights up.
- Disc:** All tracks of the disc.
-  **RND** lights up.
- Off:** Cancels.

List screen operations

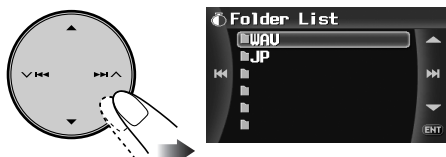
You can display the folder list/file list and select a file directly while playing.

While playing....

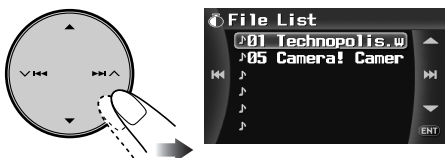


1 (On the unit)

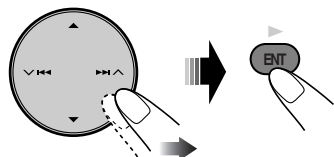
2 Select “Mode”, then “List”.



3 Select a folder you want.



4 Select a file you want to play.

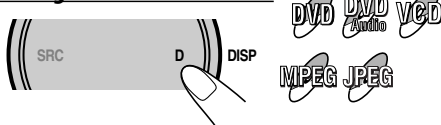


- You can also access the folder list by pressing and holding ▲ / ▼ on the unit.

Other operations

Monitor indication control

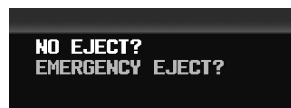
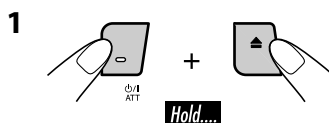
To change monitor indication



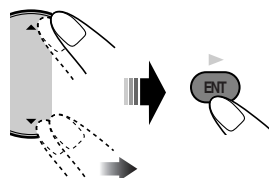
- Each time you press DISP (D), the display changes between the source screen and picture playback.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.



2 Select “NO EJECT?”.



“No Eject” flashes.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select “EJECT OK?”.

Dual Zone operations

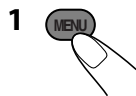
Playing back two sources at a time

You can connect external audio equipment to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug on the rear, and play back a disc separately from the source selected on the unit.

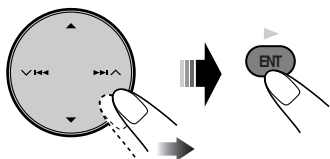


You can activate Dual Zone while listening to any source.

- When Dual Zone is in use, you can only operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.
- When Dual Zone is in use, the surround settings (page 23) become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.



- 2 Select “Dual Zone”, then “On” or “On-Surround”.



Off: Deactivate Dual Zone.

On: Activate Dual Zone.

On-Surround^{*1*2}:

Activate Dual Zone and add the headphone Surround^{*3} effect to the disc playback sound. Select this when listening the disc playback sound with headphones.

^{*1} Not effective when playing back an MPEG disc.

^{*2} The surround effect is also added to the sound from the speakers when you select “DISC” as the source.

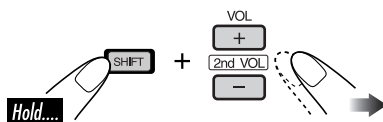
^{*3} JVC original headphone virtual surround system.

The source automatically changes to “DISC” and **DUAL** appears on the monitor.

To select a different source to listen through the speakers, press SRC on the control panel.

- By using the buttons on the control panel, you can operate the newly selected source without affecting Dual Zone operations.

- 3 Adjust the volume through the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug using the remote controller.

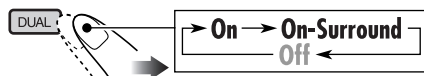


- 4 Operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller by referring to the monitor screen.

To cancel Dual Zone operations, select “Off” on step 2 on the left column. (**DUAL** / **DUAL-SURR** disappears.)

On the remote controller:

You can also activate and deactivate Dual Zone.



To change the Dual Zone mode between “On” and “On-Surround”, select the Dual Zone mode you want on step 2 on the left column.

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

Through the 2nd AUDIO OUT, 2 channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

Basic procedure

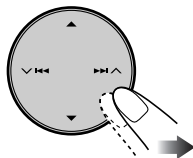
You can adjust various settings of this unit from the AV Menu.

The AV Menu contains the menu items and submenus shown on the figure below.

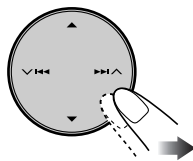
1



2 Select a menu item you want to set.

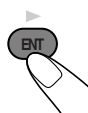


3 adjust the item selected.



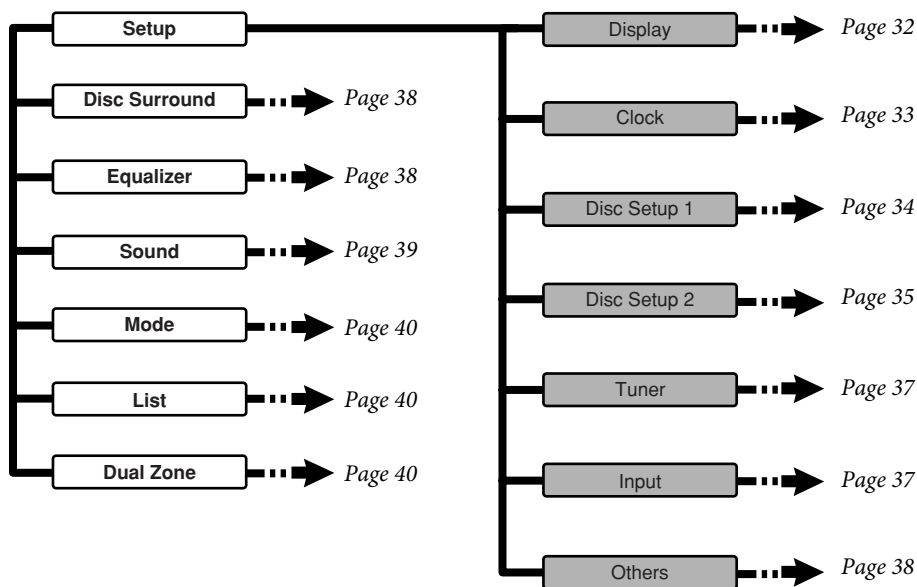
4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



- See also “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” on page 11 for more details of the operation.

























Menu items of AV Menu



AV Menu items

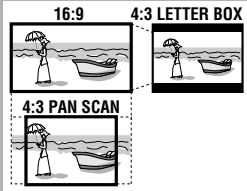
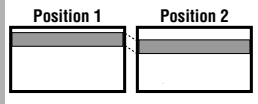
Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Demonstration	Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Activates the demonstration movie on the monitor.
Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the monitor. Standard [Initial], Rose, Gold, Black, Metal, Metallic-Silver, Metallic-Green, Honeycomb-Red, Honeycomb-Green, Effect-Orange, Effect-Purple, Clown fish, Ocean, Sunset, Earth.
Scroll	Off: Cancels. Once: [Initial]; Scrolls the disc information once. Auto: Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Even if “Scroll” is set to “Off”, you can scroll the display by pressing D DISP for more than one second.
Tag Display	Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Shows the tag data while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
Dimmer	Off: Cancels. On: Activates dimmer. Auto: [Initial]; Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights. Time Set: Sets the Dimmer On/Off time.
Bright	You can adjust brightness of the monitor. -15 (darkest) to +15 (brightest) [Initial]; 00 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To adjust the brightness of playback picture, adjust “Bright” on “Screen Control” below.
Screen Control^{*1}	You can adjust color and brightness of playback pictures of “DISC” and “AV-IN”. The setting is stored separately for “DISC” and “AV-IN”. -15 to +15 [Initial]; 00 Bright: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. Contrast: Adjust the contrast of the bright and dark portion. Color: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. Tint: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural.

*1 Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies, or “AV-IN”.

Indications		Selectable settings, [reference page]														
Display	Aspect* ¹	<p>You can change the screen shape on the monitor according to the aspect ratio of the source. Choose the optimum one from the followings.</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</th> </tr> <tr> <th>4:3</th> <th>16:9</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> Normal: For original shape of 4:3  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> Just:  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> Zoom:  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> Auto: The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal. </td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Aspect ratio of incoming signal		4:3	16:9	Normal: For original shape of 4:3 		Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9 		Just: 		Zoom: 		Auto: The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.	
		Aspect ratio of incoming signal														
		4:3	16:9													
		Normal: For original shape of 4:3 														
		Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9 														
		Just: 														
Zoom: 																
Auto: The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.																
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can also adjust the screen shape by pressing ASPECT (A) on the control panel or ASPECT on the remote controller. [19] 														
Clock	Time Set	You can adjust the internal clock on the unit. [10] [Initial]; 1: 00 AM														
	12Hours / 24Hours	12Hours / 24Hours, [11] [Initial]; 12Hours														
	Clock Adjust* ²	Auto: [Initial]; The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock time data provided via the satellite radio channel Off: Cancels.														

*¹ Adjustable only when the source is DVD, VCD, JPEG, or MPEG disc.

*² Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio or XM Satellite radio is connected.

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Time Zone ^{*1*2}	Select your residential area from one of the following time zones for clock adjustment. Eastern [Initial] ⇄ Atlantic ⇄ Newfound ⇄ Alaska ⇄ Pacific ⇄ Mountain ⇄ Central ⇄ (back to the beginning)
Menu Language ^{*3}	Select the initial disc menu language.
Audio Language ^{*3}	Select the initial audio language.
Sub Title ^{*3}	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (OFF).
OSD Language ^{*3}	Select the language for some indications shown on the external monitor.
Monitor Type 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16:9: [Initial]; Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9. • 4:3LB [LETTER BOX]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen. • 4:3PS [PAN SCAN]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen. Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.
OSD Position 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. [24] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: [Initial]; Higher position • 2: Lower position
File Type	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio: [Initial]; Plays back MP3/WMA/WAV files. • Picture: Plays back JPEG files. • Video: Plays back MPEG 1/2 files.

*1 Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio or XM Satellite radio is connected.

*2 Displayed only when "Clock Adjust" is set to "Auto".

*3 For the language settings, see also the language codes list on page 53.

*4 Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

Indications

Selectable settings, [reference page]

D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)^{*1}

You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.

- **AUTO** : Select this to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software).
- **ON**: [Initial]; Select this to always use this function.

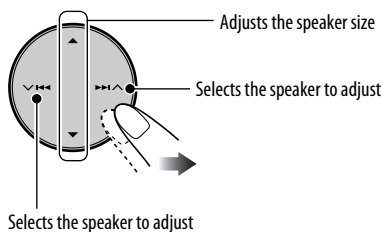
Speaker Size^{*1}

You can adjust the speaker size setting for the front/rear speakers and the center speaker according to the speaker you use when the source is a disc and playback stops.

- **Front SPK**: Small, Large [Initial]
- **CenterSPK**: None [Initial], Small, Large^{<1>}
- **Rear SPK** : None^{<2>}, Small, Large [Initial]
- **Subwoofer**: On [Initial], Off^{<2>}

^{<1>} Not selectable when "Large" is selected neither for the front nor the rear speakers.

^{<2>} Not effective when the surround function is not in effect.



- When selecting "None" or "Off" for all speakers other than the front...
 - Disc Surround setting [38] automatically changes to "Surround Off".
 - Disc Surround setting [38] becomes unadjustable.

^{*1} Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

^{*2} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

Indications

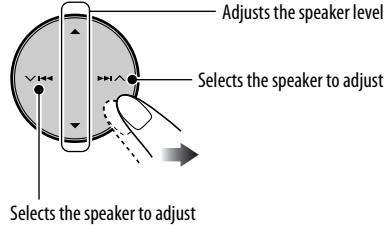
Selectable settings, [reference page]

Speaker Level^{*1}

You can adjust the output level of each speaker monitoring the test tone.

Press and hold ENT to activate (or cancel) the test tone.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Subwoofer^{*2}/Rear Lch:** adjust the output level of each speaker in the range of -10dB ~+10dB. [Initial]; 00dB

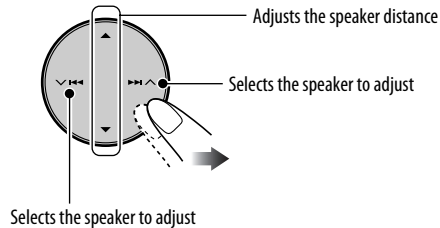
Speaker Distance^{*4}

You can adjust the speaker output timing separately for each speaker according to the distance from the speakers to the listening position.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Rear Lch:** adjust the speaker distance in the range of 15 cm (6 inch) to 600 cm (240 inch) in 15-cm (6-inch) step.

* Pressing and holding DISP (D) changes the measuring unit between “cm” and “inch” alternately.

[Initial]; 120 cm (for center speaker), 150 cm (for the other speakers)



^{*1} When activating the test tone, white noise comes out and cycles between the speakers activated on “Speaker Size” [35] for about 2 seconds each. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly while the test tone comes out from the target speaker to adjust the settings (the test tone continues to come out from the target speaker during the adjustment).

^{*2} The setting is effective only when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on “Subwoofer” [39] for other cases.


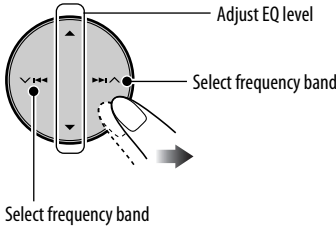
^{*3} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

^{*4} Unselectable when all the speakers other than front ones are deactivated on “Speaker Size” [35].

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Tuner	<p>IF Band Width</p> <p>In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard.</p> <p>Auto: [Initial]; Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)</p> <p>Wide: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.</p>
	<p>Area Setting</p> <p>US: [Initial]; Select this when using the unit in North/Central/South America. (FM: 200 kHz; AM: 10 kHz)</p> <p>Europe: Select this when using the unit in any other area than North/Central/South America. (FM: 50 kHz—manual tuning, 100 kHz—auto search; AM: 9 kHz)</p> <p>South America: Select this when using the unit in South America country where FM interval is 100 kHz. (FM: 100 kHz; AM: 10 kHz)</p>
	<p>SIRIUS ID^{*1}</p> <p>Your SIRIUS identification number appears on the monitor. [44]</p>
Input	<p>AV Input</p> <p>You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks.</p> <p>Off: Select when you do not need AV-Input as a source (AV-IN is deleted from the source items).</p> <p>Audio&Video: [Initial]; Select this when connecting an AV component such as a VCR.</p> <p>Audio: Select this when connecting an audio component such as a cassette deck.</p> <p>Camera^{*2}: Select this when connecting the rear view camera. The rear view through the camera is automatically displayed on the monitor when you change the gear to the back position.</p> <p>Camera Reverse^{*2}: The mirror image of the rear view through the rear view camera is automatically displayed on the monitor when you change the gear to the back position. (The monitor on the unit only; the normal rear view appears on the external monitor.).</p>

^{*1} Appears only when SIRIUS tuner is connected.

^{*2} Reverse gear signal connection is needed to change the monitor view automatically. See Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Input	<p>External Input</p> <p>Changer/iPod/D. Player^{*1}: <i>[Initial]</i>; To use a JVC CD changer, satellite radio, iPod, JVC D. player, etc. [42, 44, 50] External Input: To use any external component other than above. [49]</p>
Others	<p>Beep</p> <p>You can deactivate the key-touch tone if you do not want it to beep each time you press a button. Off: Cancels. On: <i>[Initial]</i>; Activates the key-touch tone.</p> <p>Telephone Muting</p> <p>Off: <i>[Initial]</i>; Cancels. Muting1/Muting2: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.</p>
Disc Surround ^{*2}	<p>Surround Off</p> <p>Select to deactivate the surround function.</p> <p>Surround On</p> <p>Select to activate the surround function. [23] Auto <i>[Initial]</i>, Dolby PLII Movie^{*3}, Dolby PLII Music^{*3}</p>
Equalizer ^{*4}	<p>Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User 1/User 2/User 3</p> <p>You can select a preset equalizer settings. <i>[Initial]</i>; Flat You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in User 1/2/3.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>User Setting</p>  <p>400 Hz Store ENT</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Select the frequency band to adjust— 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1kHz, 2.5kHz, 6.3kHz, 15kHz. 2 Adjust the level of the selected band (-05 to +05). 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to adjust other frequency bands. 4 Press ENT. 5 Select the preset name (User 1, User 2, User 3) you want to store the setting into. 6 Press ENT. <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

^{*1} The source indication changes automatically depending on the type of external component connected.

^{*2} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

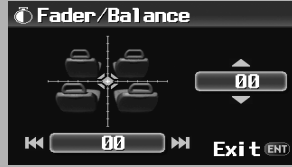
^{*3} For the menu items of "Dolby PLII Movie" and "Dolby PLII Music", see page 23.

^{*4} Not selectable when DISC is the source and the surround function is activated (see page 23).

Indications

Selectable settings, [reference page]

Fader/Balance



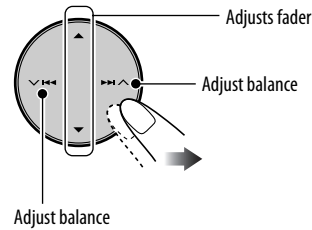
Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.

- Upmost—front only
- Downmost—rear only

When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (00).

Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.

- Leftmost—left only
 - Rightmost—right only
- Press ENT to finish the procedure.



Volume Adjust

Adjust and store the volume level of each source except FM. Once you have made an adjustment, it is memorized, and the volume level will automatically increase or decrease by adjusted level when you change the source.

Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.

- **-12 (min.) to +12 (max.)** [Initial: 00]

Subwoofer

Adjust the settings below in the submenu:

- **Phase:** Subwoofer phase. Select either “**Normal**” or “**Reverse**”, which reproduces a better sound.
- **Level*¹:** Subwoofer output level. Level: -06 (dB) to +08 (dB) [Initial: 00 (dB)].

High Pass Filter

Through: [Initial]; Select when the subwoofer is not connected.

On: Select when the subwoofer is connected.

Crossover

Adjust the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer.

80Hz, 120Hz [Initial], **150Hz**

*¹ The setting is ineffective when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on “Speaker Level” [36] for the cases.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Sound	Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this receiver. Amplifier Off: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. Low Power: VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) High Power: [Initial]; VOL 00 – VOL 50
	Rear Speaker*1	You can activate/deactivate the rear speakers. Off, On [Initial]
Mode	Mono*2	Activate when the FM broadcasting is hard to receive. [12] Off [Initial], On
	DX / Local*2	Select FM reception sensitivity. [12] DX [Initial], Local
	SSM*2	Search for FM stations and store them as preset stations automatically. [13]
	Title Entry*3	You can enter names for preset stations, specific source name for AV Input and External Input, etc. [41]
	Off/Intro/Repeat/Random*4	You can select the playback mode of the disc in the unit and the discs in the CD changer [28, 43]
List		Select radio stations, folders, files and discs from the list on the screen. [14, 29, 42] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The accessible lists differ depending on the sources.
Dual Zone		Activate/deactivate the Dual Zone function. [30] Off [Initial], On, On-Surround

*1 Functions only when Dual Zone is activated. (See page 30)

*2 Appears only when Tuner is the source.

*3 Appears when the source is below: Tuner, AV-IN, EXT-IN, CD-CH, or conventional CD.

*4 Selectable playback mode differs depending on the disc type. For the available playback mode, see page 28 and 43.

Other main functions

Assigning titles to the sources

You can assign titles to station frequencies and CDs (both in this receiver and in the CD changer), and change the source names of AV-INPUT and EXT-INPUT.

Sources	Maximum number of characters
FM/AM tuner	Up to 16 characters (up to 30 station frequencies)
AV-INPUT/EXT-INPUT	Up to 16 characters
DISC/CD-CH	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)

- You can assign a title only to the conventional CD (CD-DA).

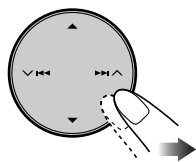
1 Select the source.

- For FM/AM tuner: Tune in to a station.
- For AV-IN/EXT-IN: Select the source.
- For a CD in this receiver: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select a disc number.

2



3 Select "Mode", then "Title Entry".



Ex.: When you select "AV-IN" as the source

4 Assign a title.

- Select a character set.



- Select a character.



- For available characters, see page 3.

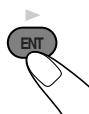
- Move to the next (or previous) character position.



- Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.



5 Finish the procedure.



To erase the entire title

In step 3 on the left column...



CD changer operations

About the CD changer

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

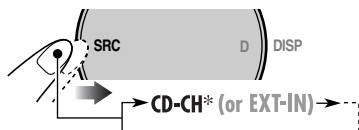
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.

Before operating your CD changer:

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- You cannot control and play any DVD Video/Audio, VCD, WMA, WAV, MPEG, or JPEG disc in the CD changer.

All tracks of the inserted discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the magazine from the CD changer.

1



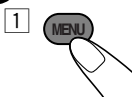
* If you have changed "External Input" setting to "External Input" (see page 38), you cannot select the CD changer.



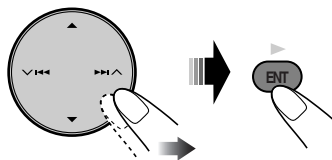
Selected disc number

2

Select a disc.

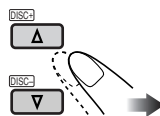


- 2 Select "List", then the disc you want to play back.

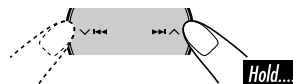


- When the current disc is an MP3 disc, you can move to FOLDER LIST by pressing .

When using the remote controller....



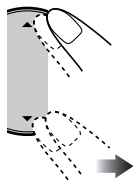
To fast-forward or reverse the track



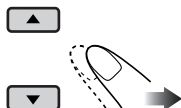
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3 discs)

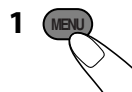


When using the remote controller....

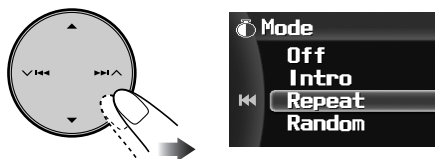


Selecting the playback modes

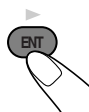
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.



2 Select "Mode", then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
------	-------------------------------

Track:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Folder*:	First tracks of all folders in the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Disc:	First tracks of all the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
------	------------------

Track:	The current track. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

Mode	Plays at random
------	-----------------

Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
All:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

* Only while playing an MP3 disc

Satellite radio operations

This unit is satellite (SAT) Radio Ready—compatible with both SIRIUS Satellite radio and XM Satellite radio.

Before operating your satellite radio:

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your SIRIUS Satellite radio or XM Satellite radio.
- “SIRIUS” and the SIRIUS dog logo are registered trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.
- XM and its corresponding logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.
- “SAT Radio”, the SAT Radio logo and all related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc., and XM Satellite Radio, Inc.

Listening to the satellite radio

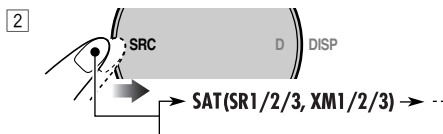
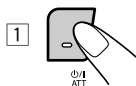
Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **JVC SIRIUS radio DLP**—Down Link Processor, for listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.
- **XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box**—Using a JVC Smart Digital Adapter (XMDJVC100: not supplied), for listening to the XM Satellite radio.

GCI (Global Control Information) update:

- If channels are updated after subscription, updating starts automatically. “GCI UPDATE” and “GCI XX%” appear and no sound can be heard.
- Update takes a few minutes to complete.
- Do not press any button or perform any operation until updating has been completed.

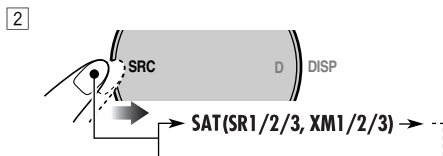
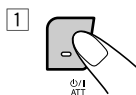
Activate your SIRIUS subscription after connection:



JVC DLP starts updating all the SIRIUS channels. (See GCI update on the left column.)

- Once completed, JVC DLP tunes in to the preset channel, CH184 (channel for subscription guidance).
- 3 Check your SIRIUS ID, see page 37.
- 4 Contact SIRIUS on the internet at <<http://activate.siriusradio.com/>> to activate your subscription, or you can call SIRIUS toll-free at 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474). “Subscription Updated Press Any Key to Continue” appears on the monitor once subscription has been completed.

Activate your XM subscription after connection:



XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box starts updating all the XM channels. “Channel 1” is tuned in automatically.

3 Check your XM Satellite radio ID labeled on the casing of the XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box, or tune in to “Channel 0” (see page 46).

4 Contact XM Satellite radio on the internet at <<http://xmradio.com/activation/>> to activate your subscription, or you can call 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346). Once completed, the unit tunes in to one of the available channels (Channel 4 or higher).

4 Select a channel for listening.

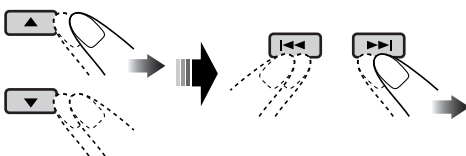


Pressing and holding these buttons change the channels rapidly.

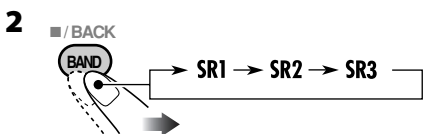
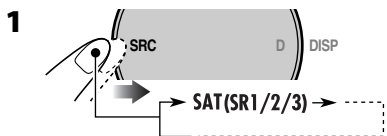
- When changing the category or channel, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped automatically.

When using the remote controller...

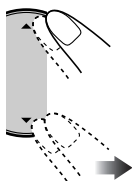
After step 2...



Listening to the SIRIUS Satellite Radio



3 Select a category.

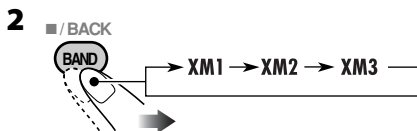
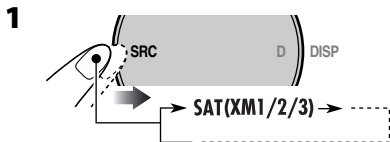


You can tune in to all the channels of every category by selecting “ALL”.

Selecting a particular category (SPORTS, ENTERTAINMENT, etc.) allows you to enjoy only the channels from the selected category.

- You can move to CATEGORY LIST by pressing and holding ▲ or ▼.

Listening to the XM Satellite Radio



3 Select a channel for listening.



Pressing and holding these buttons change the channels rapidly.

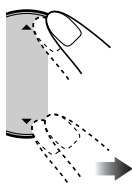
Searching for program by category

You can search for programs by category (Category Search).

- **In Category Search**, you can tune in to the channels of the selected category. Category Search begins from the currently selected channel.
- **In Channel Search** (the procedure above), you can tune in to all channels (including non-categorized channels).

After step **2** above...

1 Select a category (Category Search).



2 Select a channel for listening from the selected category.



If no operation is done for about 15 seconds, Category Search is canceled.

- While searching, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped.

Checking the XM Satellite radio ID

While selecting “XM1”, “XM2”, or “XM3”, select “Channel 0”.

Your ID number is shown on the monitor.

To cancel the ID number display, select any channel other than “Channel 0”.

Storing channels in memory

You can preset six channels for each band.

1 Tune in to a channel you want.



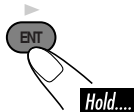
3 Select “List” then “Preset List”.



4 Select a preset number (1 - 6) you want to store the channel into.

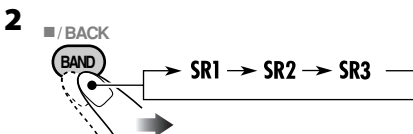
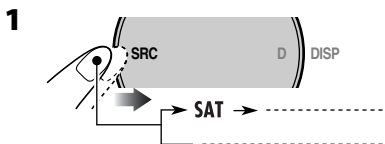


5 Finish the procedure.

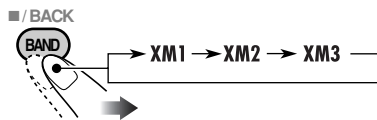


Preset number flashes.

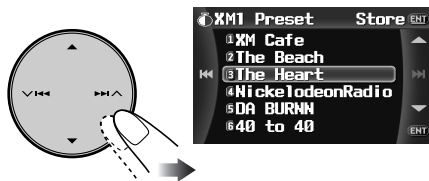
Listening to a preset channel



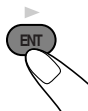
or



4 Select “List”, “Preset List”, then a preset channel (1 - 6) you want.



5 Finish the procedure.



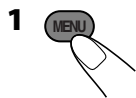
When using the remote controller...



List screen operations

You can select a category or channel from the list on the screen.

While selecting SAT as the source....



2 Select "List", then...

- 1 When you want to search a channel by category, select "Category List".
- 2 When you want to search a channel directly, select "Channel List", then skip to step 4.



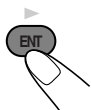
3 Select a category you want.



4 Select a channel you want.



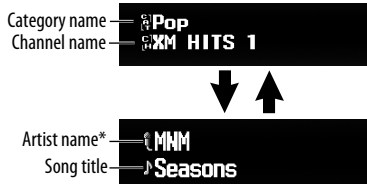
5 Finish the procedure.



How to display the artist name and song title



Each time you press D DISP, indication changes between category/channel names and artist name/song title.



* Composer name also appears when a SIRIUS channel is broadcasting its data.

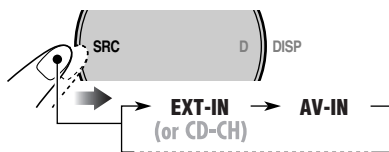
External component operations

Playing an external component

You can connect an external component to LINE IN plug and VIDEO IN plug on the rear, or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the KS-U57 Line Input Adapter (not supplied) or KS-U58 AUX Input Adapter (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

1



AV-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN and/or VIDEO IN.

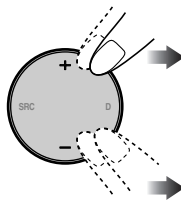
- To change the setting of AV INPUT, see page 38.

EXT-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- If “EXT-IN” does not appear, see page 38 and select the external input (EXT-IN).

2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 38.)

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

- You can also use the equivalent buttons on the remote controller in the operations below.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:

Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

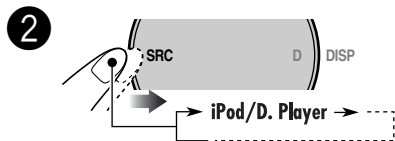
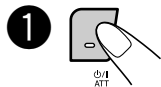
- Interface adapter for iPod**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Cautions:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

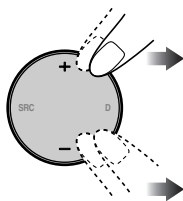
Preparations:

Make sure "Changer/iPod/D. Player" is selected for the external input setting, see page 38.



Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused (iPod) or stopped (D. player) previously.

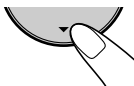
3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 38.)

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause (iPod) or stop (D. player) playback



To resume playback, press it again.

To fast-forward or reverse the track



To go to the next or previous tracks



Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu of the iPod or D. player.



Now the ▲/▼/◀/▶/⏪/⏩/⏹ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*1.

- 2 Select the desired menu.



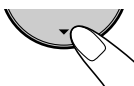
For iPod:

→ Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔
 ↳ Composers ↔ Genres ↔ Songs ↳

For D. player:

→ Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↳
 ↳ Track ↔ Genre ↳

- 3 Confirm the selection.



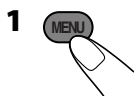
To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until the desired track is confirmed.
- Holding ▼ |◀◀/▶▶| ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

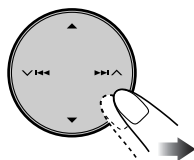
*1 The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

- If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

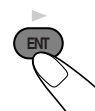
Selecting the playback modes



- 2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Repeat/Random playback.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
One:	Functions the same as “Repeat One” of the iPod or “Repeat Mode One” for the D. player. • RPT lights up.
All:	Functions the same as “Repeat All” of the iPod or “Repeat Mode All” for the D. player. • RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

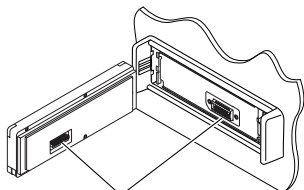
Mode	Plays at random
Album:	Functions the same as “Shuffle Album” of the iPod • RND lights up.
Song:	Functions the same as “Shuffle Songs” of the iPod. • RND lights up.
On:	Functions the same as “Random Play On” of the D. player. • RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the receiver turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

Center holder



To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this receiver may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.



Do not use the following discs:



Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	IK	Inupiak	RN	Kirundi
AB	Abkhazian	IN	Indonesian	RO	Rumanian
AF	Afrikaans	IS	Icelandic	RW	Kinyarwanda
AM	Ameharic	IW	Hebrew	SA	Sanskrit
AR	Arabic	JI	Yiddish	SD	Sindhi
AS	Assamese	JW	Javanese	SG	Sangho
AY	Aymara	KA	Georgian	SH	Serbo-Croatian
AZ	Azerbaijani	KK	Kazakh	SI	Singhalese
BA	Bashkir	KL	Greenlandic	SK	Slovak
BE	Byelorussian	KM	Cambodian	SL	Slovenian
BG	Bulgarian	KN	Kannada	SM	Samoaan
BH	Bihari	KO	Korean (KOR)	SN	Shona
BI	Bislama	KS	Kashmiri	SO	Somali
BN	Bengali, Bangla	KU	Kurdish	SQ	Albanian
BO	Tibetan	KY	Kirghiz	SR	Serbian
BR	Breton	LA	Latin	SS	Siswati
CA	Catalan	LN	Lingala	ST	Sesotho
CO	Corsican	LO	Laothian	SU	Sundanese
CS	Czech	LT	Lithuanian	SW	Swahili
CY	Welsh	LV	Latvian, Lettish	TA	Tamil
DZ	Bhutani	MG	Malagasy	TE	Telugu
EL	Greek	MI	Maori	TG	Tajik
EO	Esperanto	MK	Macedonian	TH	Thai
ET	Estonian	ML	Malayalam	TI	Tigrinya
EU	Basque	MN	Mongolian	TK	Turkmen
FA	Persian	MO	Moldavian	TL	Tagalog
FI	Finnish	MR	Marathi	TN	Setswana
FJ	Fiji	MS	Malay (MAY)	TO	Tonga
FO	Faroese	MT	Maltese	TR	Turkish
FY	Frisian	MY	Burmese	TS	Tsonga
GA	Irish	NA	Nauru	TT	Tatar
GD	Scots Gaelic	NE	Nepali	TW	Twi
GL	Galician	NO	Norwegian	UK	Ukrainian
GN	Guarani	OC	Occitan	UR	Urdu
GU	Gujarati	OM	(Afan) Oromo	UZ	Uzbek
HA	Hausa	OR	Oriya	VI	Vietnamese
HI	Hindi	PA	Panjabi	VO	Volapuk
HR	Croatian	PL	Polish	WO	Wolof
HU	Hungarian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	XH	Xhosa
HY	Armenian	PT	Portuguese	YO	Yoruba
IA	Interlingua	QU	Quechua	ZU	Zulu
IE	Interlingue	RM	Rhaeto-Romance		

More about this receiver

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the receiver, you can also turn on the power.

Selecting the sources

- When no disc is loaded in the receiver and Dual Zone is off, "DISC" cannot be selected.
- Without connecting to the CD changer or the satellite radio, "CD-CH" or "SAT" cannot be selected.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc operations

General

- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used when referring to the music/picture/movie files and their file names.
- This receiver can also play back 8 cm (3-3/16") discs.
- This receiver can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.
 - The first track will be skipped if a different type of file is detected first.
- When a disc has been loaded, selecting "DISC" for the playback source starts disc play.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc). Next time you select "DISC" for the playback source (without activating Dual Zone), disc play starts automatically.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This receiver can play back either MP3/WMA/WAV files, JPEG files, or MPEG files if a disc includes any of the files. Set the playback file type on AV Menu (page 34) before playing back a disc containing files of different kinds.
- Only for CD-R/CD-RW: This receiver can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some Recordable/Rewritable discs may not play back on this receiver because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
 - Discs are dirty or scratched.
 - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the receiver.
 - The pickup lens inside the receiver is dirty.
 - Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
 - Discs which are not written in UDF-Bridge Format (eg. UDF format or ISO format).
 - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.).
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.
- Do not use the following discs:
 - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
 - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.
 Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damages to discs.

Playing an MP3/WMA/WAV disc

- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This receiver can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA/WAV files.
- This receiver can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
 - Bit rate: MP3: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
 - Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for WMA)
44.1 kHz (for WAV)
 - Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav>).
 - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
 - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
 - Romeo: up to 128 characters
 - Joliet: up to 64 characters
 - Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This receiver can recognize the total of 3500 files, 250 folders (maximum of 999 files per folder).

- This receiver can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This receiver cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded in an unappropriated format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - WMA files recorded with MBR (Multiple Bit Rate) format.
 - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATAC3, etc.

Playing a JPEG disc

- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution. (If a file has been recorded at a resolution of more than 640 x 480, it will take a long time to be shown.)
- This System can play only baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.
Baseline JPEG format: Used for digital cameras, web, etc.
Progressive JPEG format: Used for web.
Lossless JPEG format: An old type and rarely used now.
- If progressive or lossless JPEG files are played back, a black screen appears. In this case, stop playback and select a baseline JPEG file. Note that it may take a long time to select another file.

Playing an MPEG disc

- This receiver can play back MPEG 1/2 files with the extension code <.mpeg>.
- Audio stream should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer 2.

AV Menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
After you change any of these language settings, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3PS [PAN SCAN]” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]” with some DVDs.
This depends on how they are recorded.
- If you change the “Amplifier Gain” setting from “High Power” to “Low Power” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30”, the receiver automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30”.

Other main functions

- If you try to assign a title to a 31st station or 31st disc, “Name Full” flashes on the monitor. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc on the receiver.

Satellite radio operations

- You can also connect the JVC SIRIUS radio PnP (Plug and Play), using the JVC SIRIUS radio adapter, KS-U100K (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear. By turning on/off the power of the unit, you can turn on/off the JVC PnP. However, you cannot control it from this unit.
- To know more about SIRIUS Satellite radio or to sign up, visit <<http://www.sirius.com>>.
- For the latest channel listings and programming information, or to sign up for XM Satellite radio, visit <<http://www.xmradio.com>>.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
 - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
 - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 18 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 32). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:










When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

On-screen guide icons

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (for DVD only).
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (for DVD only).
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (for DVD only).
-  : Playback
-  : Pause
-  : Forward Slow Motion Playback (for DVD and VCD only)
-  : Reverse Slow Motion Playback (for DVD only)
-  : Forward search
-  : Reverse search

Sound modes (preset frequency level settings)

The list below shows the preset frequency level settings for each sound mode (see page 38).

Sound mode	Preset equalizing values						
	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	-02	-01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound cannot be heard from the speakers. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
		Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The receiver does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote controller does not work. 	Dual Zone is activated (see page 30). While Dual Zone is activated, remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Signal” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the source. • Starts playback on the external component connected to the VIDEO IN plug. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
FM/AM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSM automatic presetting does not work. 	Store stations manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static noise while listening to the radio. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable disc cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the disc with the component which you used for recording.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be recognized. 	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Not Support” appears on the monitor. 	Use a file format the unit supports (see page 4).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Disc Error” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert the disc correctly. • Insert a disc recorded and finalized.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Files” appears on the monitor. 	The disc does not have playable files. Insert a disc containing playable files.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No playback picture appears on the monitor. 	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No picture appears on the external monitor at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connect the video cord correctly. Select a correct input on the monitor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The edges of the picture are missing on the screen. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select an aspect other than "Zoom". (See page 33) Select "4:3LB [LETTER BOX]". (See page 34.)
MP3/WMA/WAV playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use a disc with tracks recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) Add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to their file names.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Noise is generated. 	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to files of different types.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A longer readout time is required. 	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tracks cannot be played back as you have intended them to play. 	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Elapsed playing time is not correct. 	This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name). 	This receiver can only display alphabets (A - Z, a - z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
JPEG/MPEG playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use a disc with JPEG/MPEG files recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) Add the extension code <.jpg> or <.mpg> to their file names.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a disc into the magazine. • Insert disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Magazine” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the magazine.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset01” – “Reset07” appears on the monitor. 	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The CD changer does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
Satellite radio	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “CALL 1-888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE” appears on the monitor. 	Starts subscribing SIRIUS Satellite radio (see page 44).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Signal” or “NO SIGNAL” appears on the monitor. 	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Antenna” or “CHECK ANTENNA” appears on the monitor. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Invalid Channel” appears on the monitor for about 5 seconds, then returns to the previous display when listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio. 	No broadcast on the selected channel. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “CHANNEL---” appears on the display for about 2 seconds, then returns to the previous channel while listening to the XM Satellite radio. 	Selected channel is no longer available or is unauthorized. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “NO NAME” appears on the monitor. 	No text information for the selected channel.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “GCI UPDATE” or “UPDATING” flashes on the monitor and no sound can be heard. 	The receiver is updating the channel information and it takes a few minutes to complete.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Satellite radio does not work at all. 	Reconnect the Satellite radio after a few seconds.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “OFF AIR” appears on the monitor while listening to the XM Satellite radio. 	Selected channel is not broadcasting at this time. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “LOADING” appears on the monitor while listening to the XM Satellite radio. 	The unit is loading the channel information and audio. Text information is temporarily unavailable.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset08” flashes on the monitor. 	Reconnect this unit and the satellite radio correctly and reset the unit.	

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Update the firmware version of the D. player. Charge the battery of the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Disconnect” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops while playing back iPod. 	The headphones are disconnected from iPod during playback. Restart the playback operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. “Error 01” appears on the monitor when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Files” or “No Track” appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 1” – “Reset 7” appears on the monitor. 	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 8” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Power Output:

20 W RMS \times 4 Channels at 4 Ω
and \leq 1% THD+N

Signal to Noise Ratio:

80 dBA (reference: 1 W into 4 Ω)



Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)

Equalizer Control Range:

Frequencies: 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz,
2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz

Level: \pm 10 dB

Line-In Level/Impedance:

1.5 V/20 k Ω load

Line-Out Level/Impedance:

2.5 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)

Output Impedance: 1 k Ω

Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:

2.0 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)

Color System: NTSC

Video Input (composite): 1 V_{p-p}/75 Ω

Video Output (composite): 1 V_{p-p}/75 Ω

Other Terminals:

2nd AUDIO OUT, CD changer, Steering wheel
remote input (OE REMOTE)

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:

FM: 87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz
(with channel interval set to 100 kHz or
200 kHz)

87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
(with channel interval set to 50 kHz)

AM: 530 kHz to 1 710 kHz
(with channel interval set to 10 kHz)

531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
(with channel interval set to 9 kHz)

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)

50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:

16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)

Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB

Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz

Stereo Separation: 35 dB

Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[AM Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 μ V

Selectivity: 35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical
pickup (semiconductor laser)

Number of Channels: 2 channels (stereo)

Frequency Response:

DVD fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz

fs=192 kHz: 16 Hz to 88 000 Hz

VCD, CD: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz

Dynamic Range: 93 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 95 dB

Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit

MP3: Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

WMA: Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

MONITOR SECTION

Screen: 3.5-inch wide liquid crystal panel

Number of Pixels: 224 640 pixels

Drive Method:

TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format

Color system: NTSC

GENERAL

Power Requirement:

Operating Voltage:

DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)

Grounding System: Negative ground

Allowable Operating Temperature:

0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)

Dimensions (W \times H \times D):

Installation Size (approx.):

182 mm \times 52 mm \times 160 mm

(7-3/16" \times 2-1/16" \times 6-5/16")

Panel Size (approx.):

188 mm \times 58 mm \times 12 mm

(7-7/16" \times 2-5/16" \times 1/2")

Mass (approx.):

1.9 kg (4.2 lbs) (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

If a kit is necessary for your car, consult your telephone directory for the nearest car audio speciality shop.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Still having trouble??

USA ONLY

Call 1-800-252-5722

<http://www.jvc.com>

We can help you!

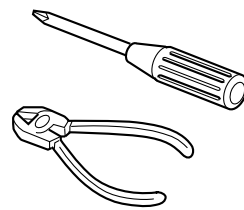
JVC



EN, SP, FR

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0106MNMMDWJEIN



ENGLISH

This receiver is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

ESPAÑOL

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA**. Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

ADVERTENCIAS

- NO instale la unidad en los siguientes sitios:
 - Donde pueda obstruir la maniobra del volante de dirección y del cambio de engranajes, con el consiguiente riesgo de accidentes de tráfico.
 - Donde pueda obstruir el funcionamiento de dispositivos de seguridad tales como bolsas de aire, pues podría resultar en un accidente fatal.
 - Donde pueda obstruir la visibilidad.
- NO OPERE la unidad mientras está maniobrando el volante de dirección, pues podría producirse un accidente de tráfico.
- El conductor no debe mirar el monitor mientras conduce. Si el conductor mira el monitor mientras conduce puede descuidarse y causar un accidente.
- El conductor no deberá ponerse los auriculares mientras conduce. Es muy peligroso no escuchar los ruidos exteriores durante la conducción.
- Si necesita operar el receptor mientras conduce, asegúrese de mirar atentamente hacia adelante para no provocar un accidente de tráfico.
- Si no está aplicado el freno de estacionamiento, "Parking Brake" parpadea en el monitor, y no aparecerá la imagen reproducida.
 - Esta advertencia aparece únicamente cuando el cable del freno de estacionamiento se encuentra conectado al sistema del freno de estacionamiento incorporado al automóvil.

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.

AVERTISSEMENTS

- N'INSTALLEZ aucun élément dans les endroits suivants;
 - où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
 - où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les airbags car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.
 - où il peut gêner la visibilité.
- NE COMMANDEZ pas l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit. Regarder le moniteur lorsqu'on est au volant réduit considérablement la vigilance du conducteur et multiplie les risques d'accident.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas utiliser un casque d'écoute quand il est au volant. Il est en effet dangereux de bloquer les sons de la circulation routière pendant la conduite d'un véhicule.
- Si vous avez besoin de commander l'autoradio pendant que vous conduisez, continuez de regarder droit devant vous ou vous risquez de causer un accident de la circulation.
- Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas mis, "Parking Brake" apparaît sur le moniteur et l'image de lecture n'apparaît pas.
 - Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this receiver. After checking them, please set them correctly.

- (A) / (B) Hard case/Control panel
Estuche duro/Panel de control
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande
- (C) Sleeve
Cubierta
Manchon
- (D) Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage
- (E) Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation
- (F) Crimp connectors
Conectores de sujeción
Raccord à sertir
- (G) Washer (ø5)
Arandela (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)
- (H) Lock nut (M5)
Tuerca de seguridad (M5)
Ecrrou d'arrêt (M5)
- (I) Mounting bolt—
M5 x 20 mm
(M5 x 13/16")
Perno de montaje—
M5 x 20 mm
(M5 x 13/16 pulgada)
Boulon de montage—
M5 x 20 mm
(M5 x 13/16 pouces)
- (J) Rubber cushion
Cojín de goma
Amortisseur en caoutchouc
- (K) Handles
Manijas
Poignées
- (L) Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommande
RM-RK240
- (M) Battery
Pila
Pile
CR2025
- (N) Reverse gear signal extension cord
Cable prolongador para la señal del engranaje de marcha atrás
Cordon prolongateur pour le signal de marche arrière

Lista de piezas para instalación y conexión

Con esta unidad se suministran las siguientes piezas. Después de inspeccionarlas, colóquelas correctamente.

- (A) / (B) Hard case/Control panel
Estuche duro/Panel de control
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande
- (C) Sleeve
Cubierta
Manchon
- (D) Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage
- (E) Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation
- (F) Crimp connectors
Conectores de sujeción
Raccord à sertir
- (G) Washer (ø5)
Arandela (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)
- (H) Lock nut (M5)
Tuerca de seguridad (M5)
Ecrrou d'arrêt (M5)
- (I) Mounting bolt—
M5 x 20 mm
(M5 x 13/16")
Perno de montaje—
M5 x 20 mm
(M5 x 13/16 pulgada)
Boulon de montage—
M5 x 20 mm
(M5 x 13/16 pouces)
- (J) Rubber cushion
Cojín de goma
Amortisseur en caoutchouc
- (K) Handles
Manijas
Poignées
- (L) Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommande
RM-RK240
- (M) Battery
Pila
Pile
CR2025
- (N) Reverse gear signal extension cord
Cable prolongador para la señal del engranaje de marcha atrás
Cordon prolongateur pour le signal de marche arrière

Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Les pièces suivantes sont fournies avec cet appareil. Après vérification, veuillez les placer correctement.

- (A) / (B) Hard case/Control panel
Estuche duro/Panel de control
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande
- (C) Sleeve
Cubierta
Manchon
- (D) Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage
- (E) Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation
- (F) Crimp connectors
Conectores de sujeción
Raccord à sertir
- (G) Washer (ø5)
Arandela (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)
- (H) Lock nut (M5)
Tuerca de seguridad (M5)
Ecrrou d'arrêt (M5)
- (I) Mounting bolt—
M5 x 20 mm
(M5 x 13/16")
Perno de montaje—
M5 x 20 mm
(M5 x 13/16 pulgada)
Boulon de montage—
M5 x 20 mm
(M5 x 13/16 pouces)
- (J) Rubber cushion
Cojín de goma
Amortisseur en caoutchouc
- (K) Handles
Manijas
Poignées
- (L) Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommande
RM-RK240
- (M) Battery
Pila
Pile
CR2025
- (N) Reverse gear signal extension cord
Cable prolongador para la señal del engranaje de marcha atrás
Cordon prolongateur pour le signal de marche arrière

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this receiver correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear panel to maintain proper ventilation when installed.
- You cannot install the receiver on the car which has any obstacles in the space shown in "Required space for installation" below.

INSTALACION (MONTAJE EN EL TABLERO DE INSTRUMENTOS)

La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

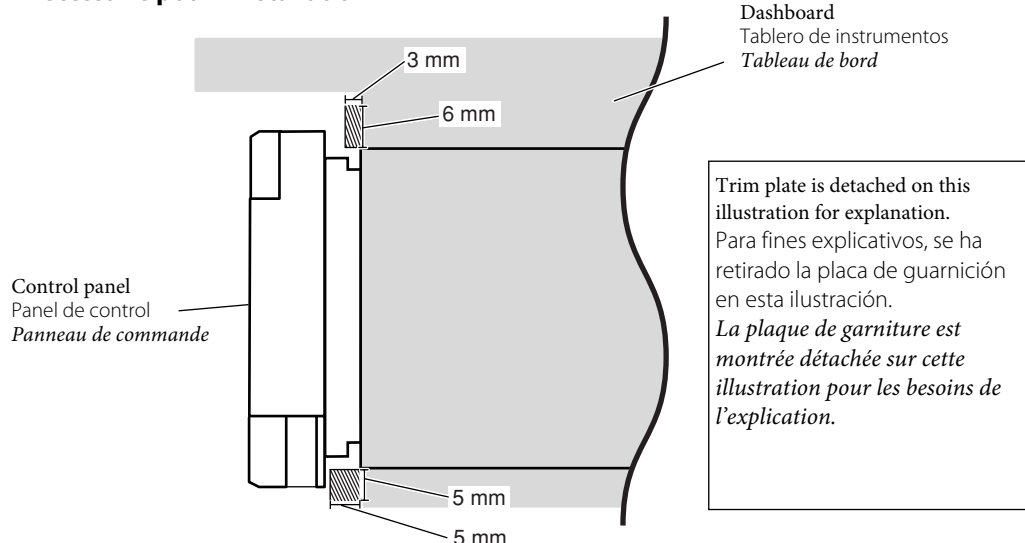
- Si usted no está seguro de cómo instalar correctamente la unidad, hágala instalar por un técnico cualificado.
- Asegúrese de no bloquear las rendijas de ventilación del panel trasero, para poder mantener una buena ventilación una vez instalado.
- No deberá instalar el receptor en un automóvil donde exista algún tipo de obstáculos en el espacio mostrado seguidamente en "Espacio requerido para la instalación".

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

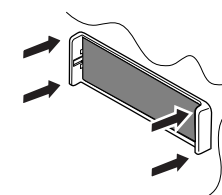
L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.
- Lors de l'installation assurez-vous de ne pas bloquer le ventilateur à l'arrière afin de permettre une ventilation correcte.
- Vous ne pouvez pas installer l'autoradio dans une voiture avec des obstacles situés dans la zone marquée en gris dans l'illustration "Espace nécessaire pour l'installation" ci-dessous.

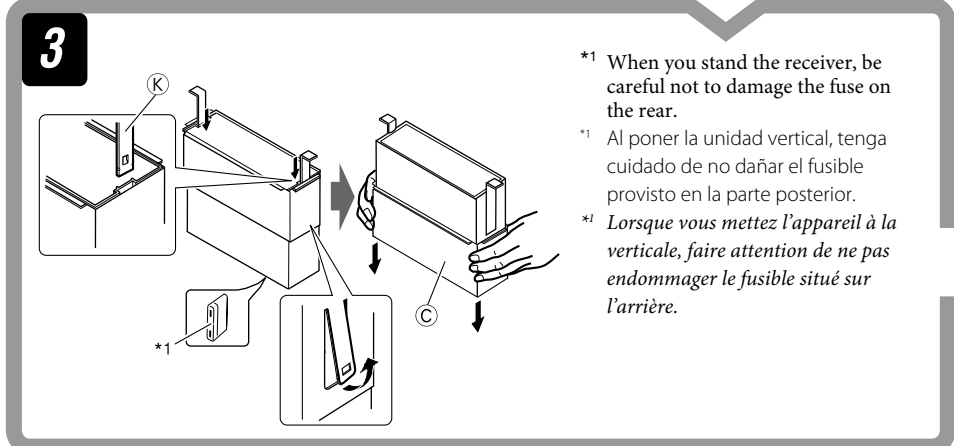
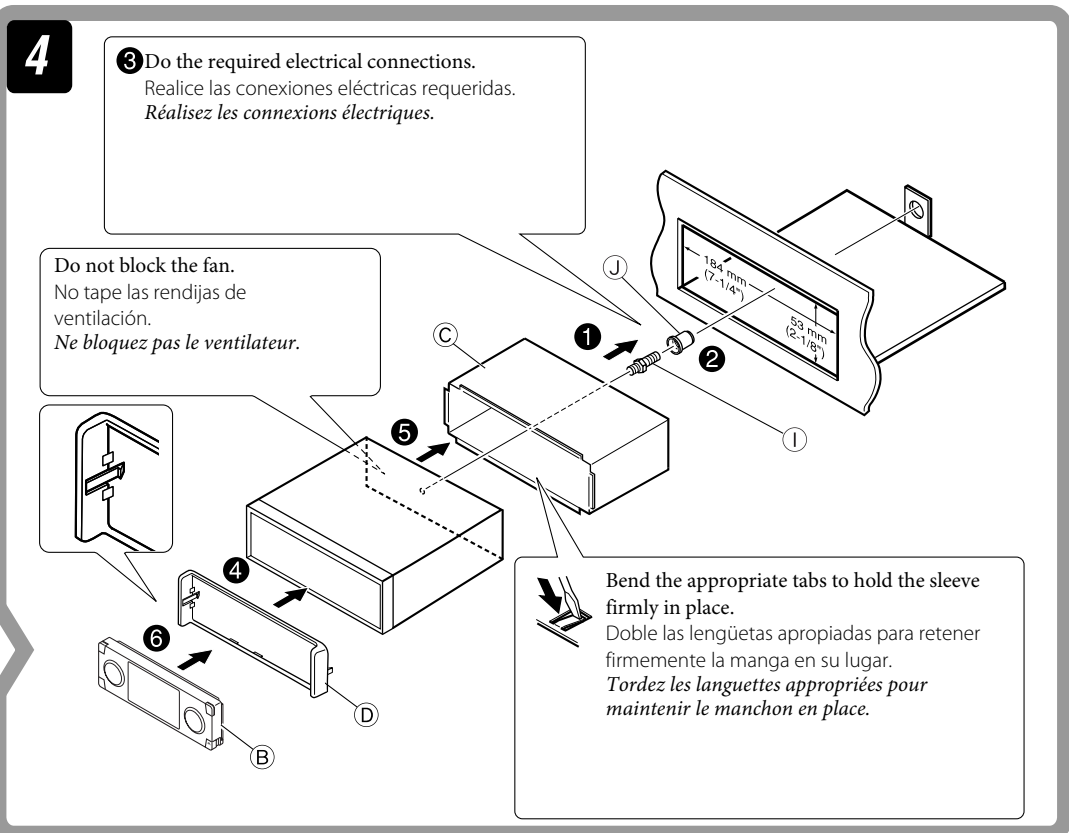
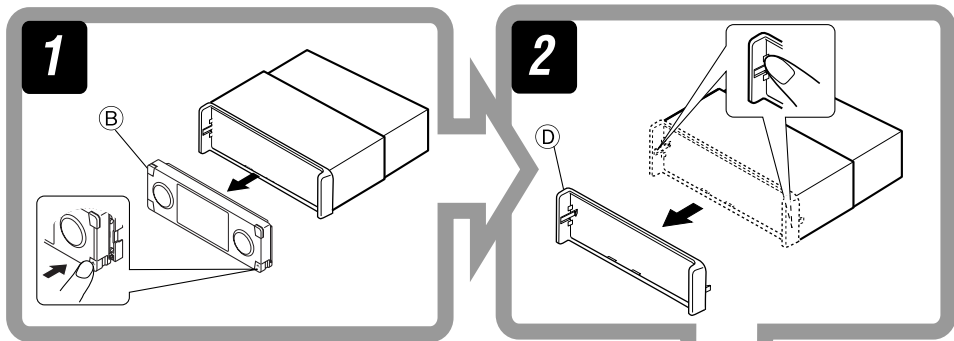
Required space for installation / Espacio requerido para la instalación / Espace nécessaire pour l'installation



Caution when installing / Precaución en la instalación / Précautions lors de l'installation



- Fit the receiver into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.
- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration). Introduzca el receptor en la manga de montaje utilizando las cuatro esquinas de la placa decorativa.
- NO presione el panel (sombreado en la ilustración). Fixez l'autoradio sur le manchon de montage en utilisant les quatre coins de la plaque de garniture.
- NE POUSSEZ PAS sur le panneau (en gris sur l'illustration).

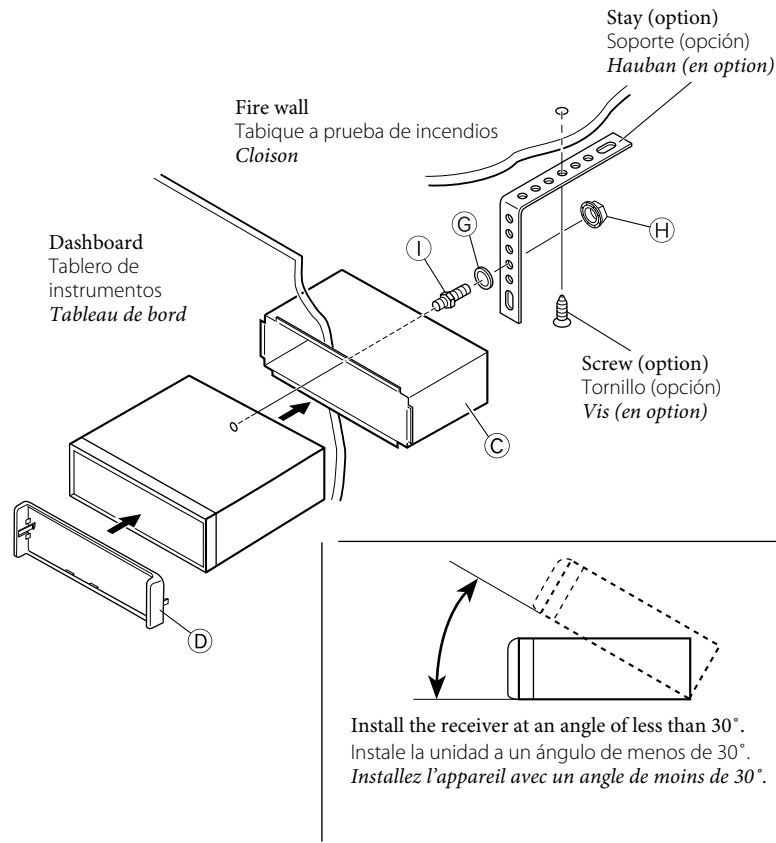


***1** When you stand the receiver, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
 *1 Al poner la unidad vertical, tenga cuidado de no dañar el fusible provisto en la parte posterior.
 *1 Lorsque vous mettez l'appareil à la verticale, faire attention de ne pas endommager le fusible situé sur l'arrière.

Do not block the fan.
 No tape las rendijas de ventilación.
 Ne bloquez pas le ventilateur.

Bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place.
 Doble las lengüetas apropiadas para retener firmemente la manga en su lugar.
 Tordez les languettes appropriées pour maintenir le manchon en place.

When using the optional stay / Cuando emplea un soporte opcional / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option

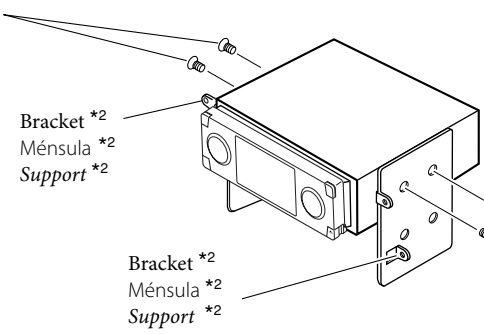


Install the receiver at an angle of less than 30°.
 Instale la unidad a un ángulo de menos de 30°.
 Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°.

When installing the receiver without using the sleeve / Instalación de la unidad sin utilizar la cubierta / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sans utiliser de manchon

In a car having the "Required space for installation" (see page 1), first remove the car radio and install the receiver in its place.
 En un automóvil que disponga del "Espacio requerido para la instalación" (véase la página 1), primero desmonte la autorradio, e instale el receptor en su lugar.
 Dans une voiture avec l'"Espace nécessaire pour l'installation" (voir page 1), retirez d'abord l'ancien autoradio et installez cet autoradio à sa place.

Flat type screws—M5 x 8 mm (M5 x 3/8") *2
 Tornillos tipo plano—M5 x 8 mm (M5 x 3/8 pulgada) *2
 Vis à tête plate—M5 x 8 mm (M5 x 3/8 pouces) *2



*2 Not included for this receiver.
 *2 No suministrado con esta unidad.
 *2 Non fourni avec cet appareil.
 Flat type screws—M5 x 8 mm (M5 x 3/8") *2
 Tornillos tipo plano—M5 x 8 mm (M5 x 3/8 pulgada) *2
 Vis à tête plate—M5 x 8 mm (M5 x 3/8 pouces) *2

Note : When installing the receiver on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm (3/8") -long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the receiver.
Nota : Cuando instala la unidad en la ménsula de montaje, asegúrese de utilizar los tornillos de 8 mm (3/8 pulgada) de longitud. Si se utilizan tornillos más largos, éstos pueden dañar la unidad.
Remarque : Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm (3/8 pouces). Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.

Removing the receiver

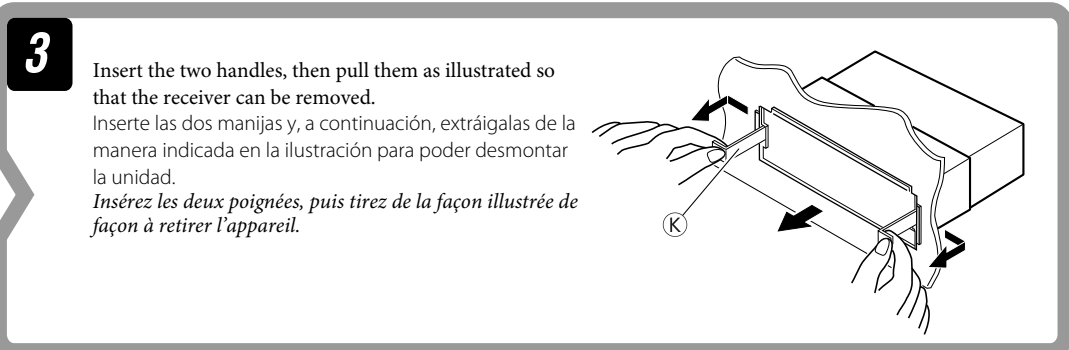
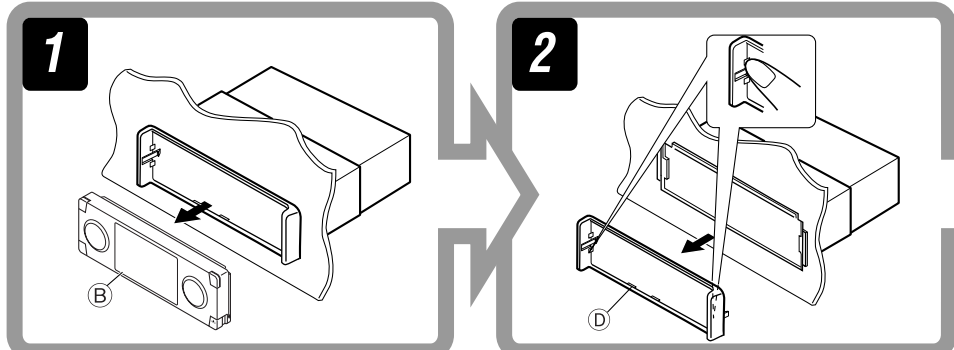
Before removing the receiver, release the rear section.

Extracción de la unidad

Antes de extraer la unidad, libere la sección trasera.

Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.



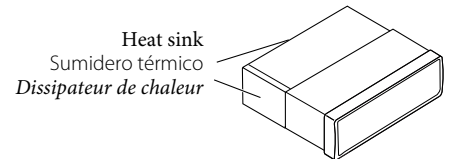
3 Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the receiver can be removed.
 Inserte las dos manijas y, a continuación, extráigalas de la manera indicada en la ilustración para poder desmontar la unidad.
 Insérez les deux poignées, puis tirez de la façon illustrée de façon à retirer l'appareil.

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the receiver.

• Be sure to ground this receiver to the car's chassis again after installation.

- Notes:**
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
 - It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of 4 Ω to 8 Ω). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 40 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
 - To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
 - The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this receiver.



CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS

Para evitar cortocircuitos, recomendamos que desconecte el terminal negativo de la batería y que efectúe todas las conexiones eléctricas antes de instalar la unidad.

• Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.

- Notas:**
- Reemplace el fusible por uno con la corriente especificada. Si el fusible se quemase frecuentemente consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.
 - Se recomienda conectar los altavoces con una potencia máxima de más de 50 W (tanto atrás como adelante, con una impedancia de 4 Ω a 8 Ω). Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 50 W, cambie "Amplifier Gain" para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 40 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
 - Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los cables NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.
 - El sumidero térmico estará muy caliente después del uso. Asegúrese de no tocarlo al desmontar esta unidad.

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

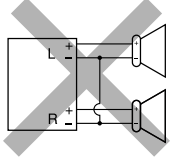
Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

• Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.

- Remarques:**
- Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
 - Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre 4 Ω et 8 Ω). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amplifier Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 40 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
 - Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.
 - Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.

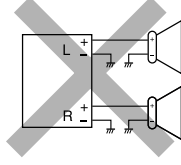
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the receiver will be seriously damaged.**
- **BEFORE** connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



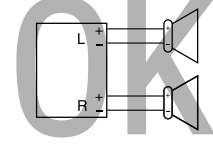
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en la unidad.**
- **ANTES** de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.



PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- **AVANT** de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.



A Typical Connections / Conexiones típicas / Raccordements typiques

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this receiver. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

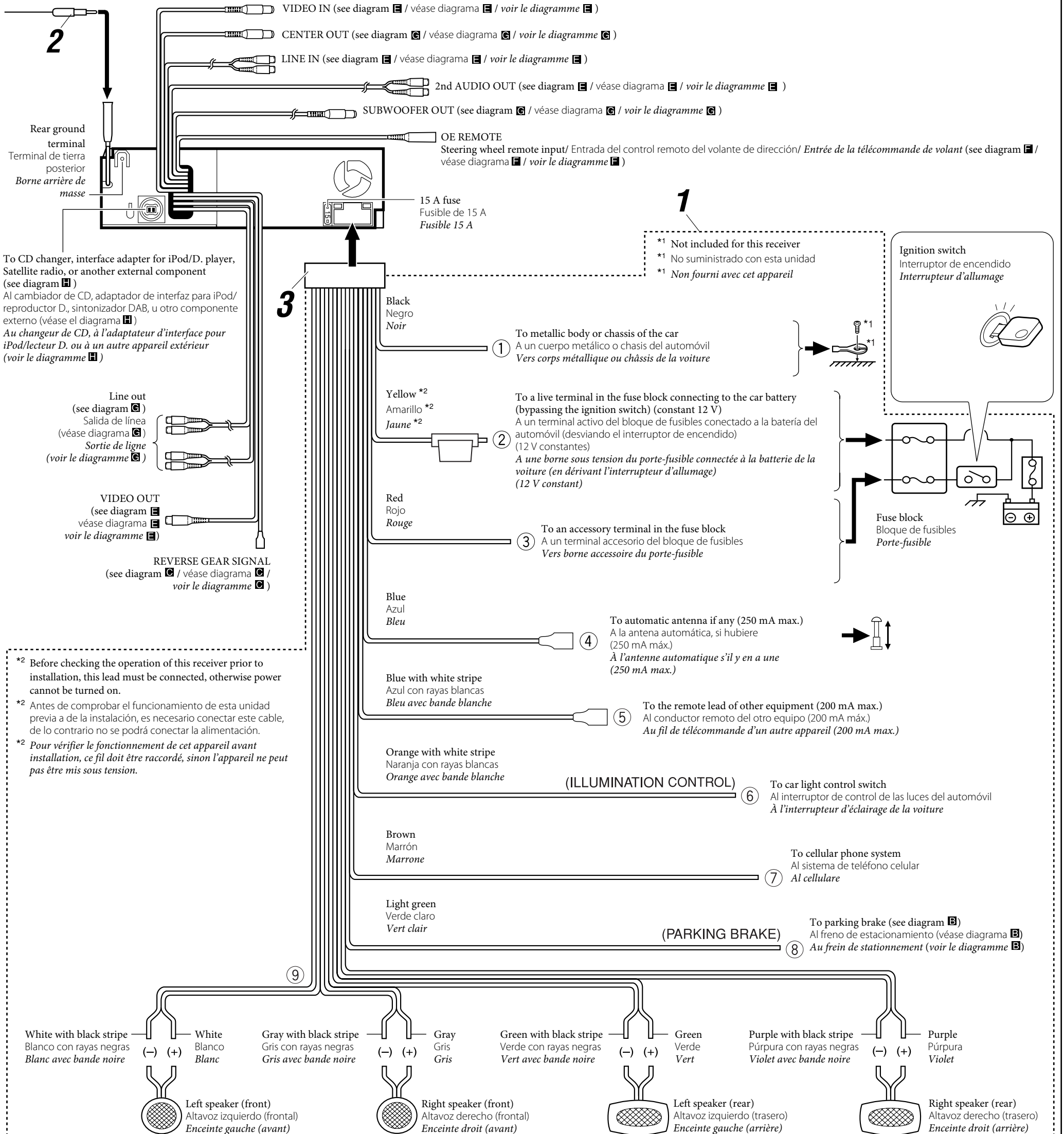
- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the receiver.

Antes de la conexión: Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves en la unidad. Los cordones del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil podrían ser de diferentes en color.

- 1 Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.
- 2 Conecte el cable de antena.
- 3 Por último, conecte el cable de alimentación a la unidad.

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil. Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

- 1 Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
- 2 Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
- 3 Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.

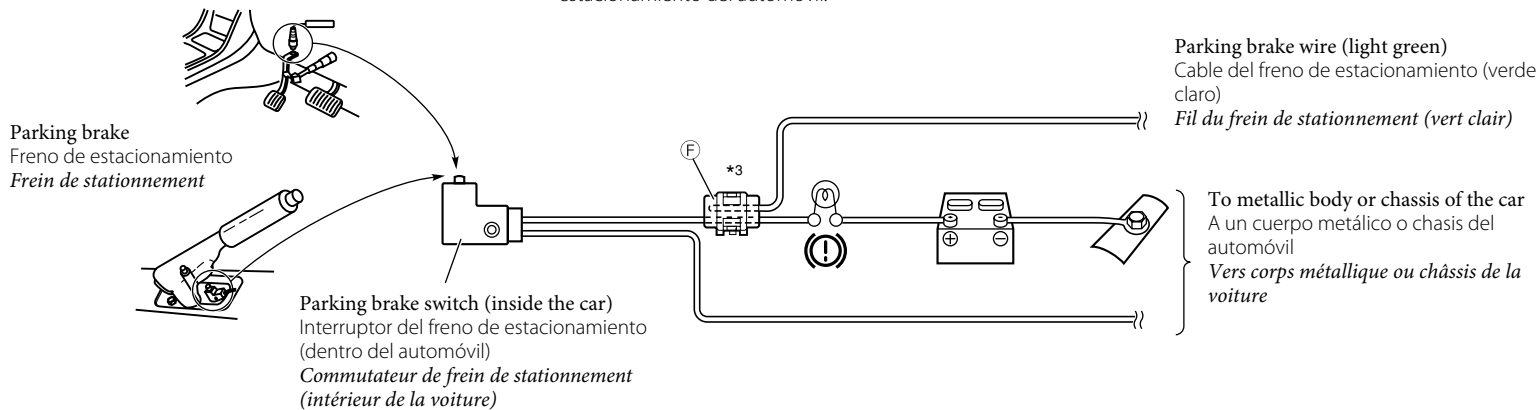


B Connecting the parking brake wire / Conexión del cable del freno de estacionamiento / Connexion du cordon de frein de stationnement

Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.

Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento al sistema de freno de estacionamiento del automóvil.

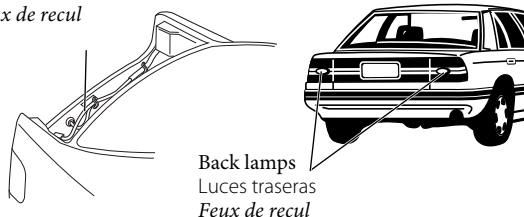
Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement.



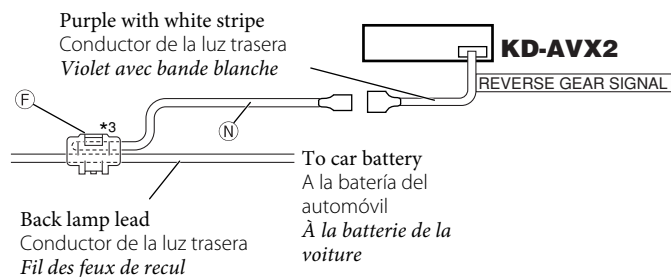
C Connecting the back camera lead / Conexión del conductor de la cámara trasera / Connexion du fil de la caméra de recul

Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk.
Localice el conductor de la luz trasera en el compartimento de equipajes.
Localisez le fil des feux de recul dans le coffre.

Back lamp lead
Conductor de la luz trasera
Fil des feux de recul



To back lamp
A la luz trasera
Aux feux de recul



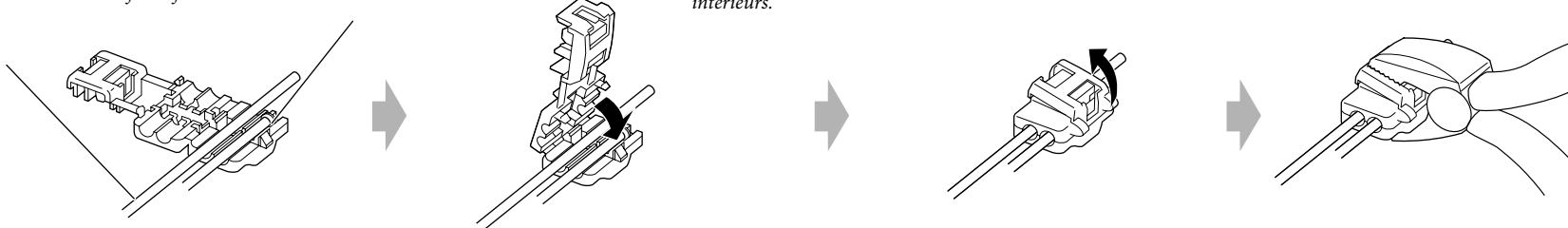
D Connecting the crimp connector*3 / Conexión del conector de presión*3 / Connexion de la cosse sertie*3

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
Conecte la batería y el interruptor del freno de estacionamiento.
Fil connectant la batterie et l'interrupteur de frein de stationnement.

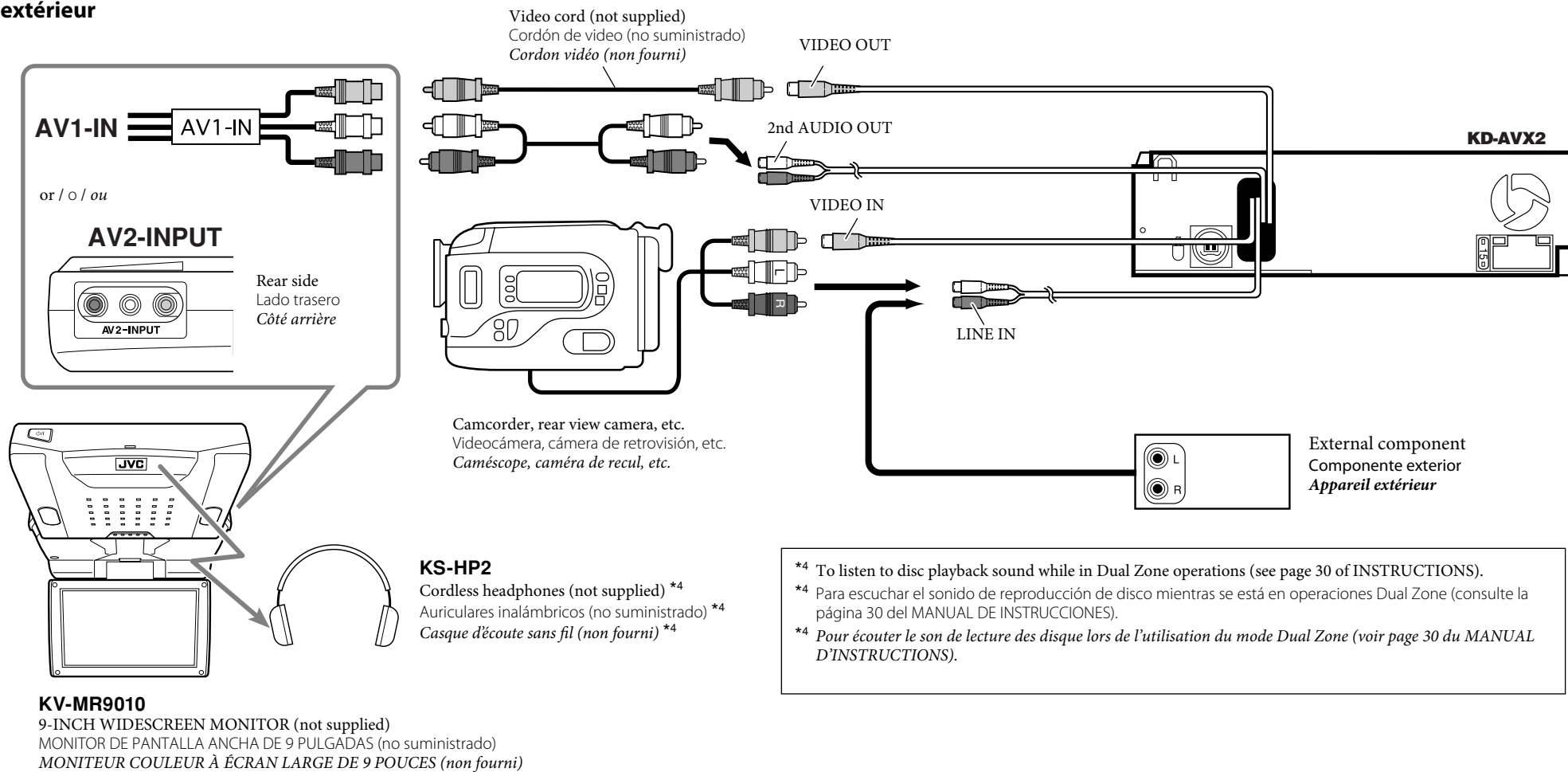
Attach the parking brake wire to this point.
Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento a este punto.
Attachez le fil du frein de stationnement ici.

Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
Conecte la parte metálica del engarce a los cables interiores.
Mettez en contact la partie métallique de la cosse à sertir et des fils intérieurs.

Pinch the crimp firmly.
Apriete firmemente el engarce.
Pincez la cosse à sertir fermement.



E Connections for external component playback / Conexiones para la reproducción del componente externo / Connexions pour un appareil de lecture extérieur

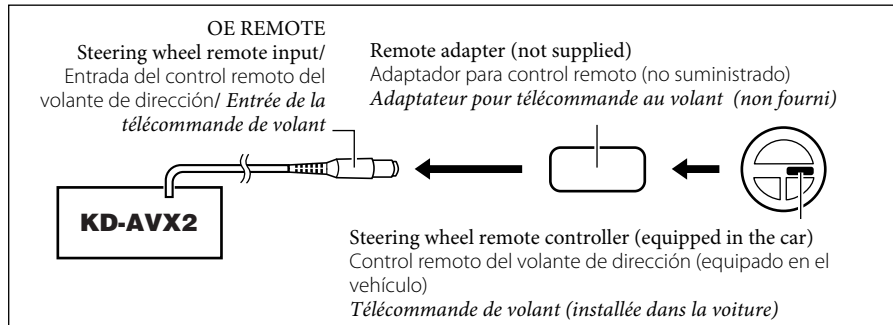


F Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Conexión al control remoto del volante de dirección / Connexion de la télécommande de volant

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this receiver using the controller. For connection, an exclusive remote adapter (not supplied) which matches your car is required. For details, consult the same car audio dealer as where the receiver is purchased.

Si su vehículo está equipado con control remoto en el volante de dirección, podrá hacer funcionar este receptor utilizando dicho control. Para la conexión, se requiere un adaptador remoto exclusivo (no suministrado) que sea adecuado para su automóvil. Para los detalles, consulte con el concesionario car audio donde compró el receptor.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour la connexion, un adaptateur de télécommande exclusif (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est requis. Pour en savoir plus, consultez le revendeur autoradio auprès duquel vous avez acheté cet autoradio.



G Connecting the external amplifiers / Conexión a los amplificadores externos / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

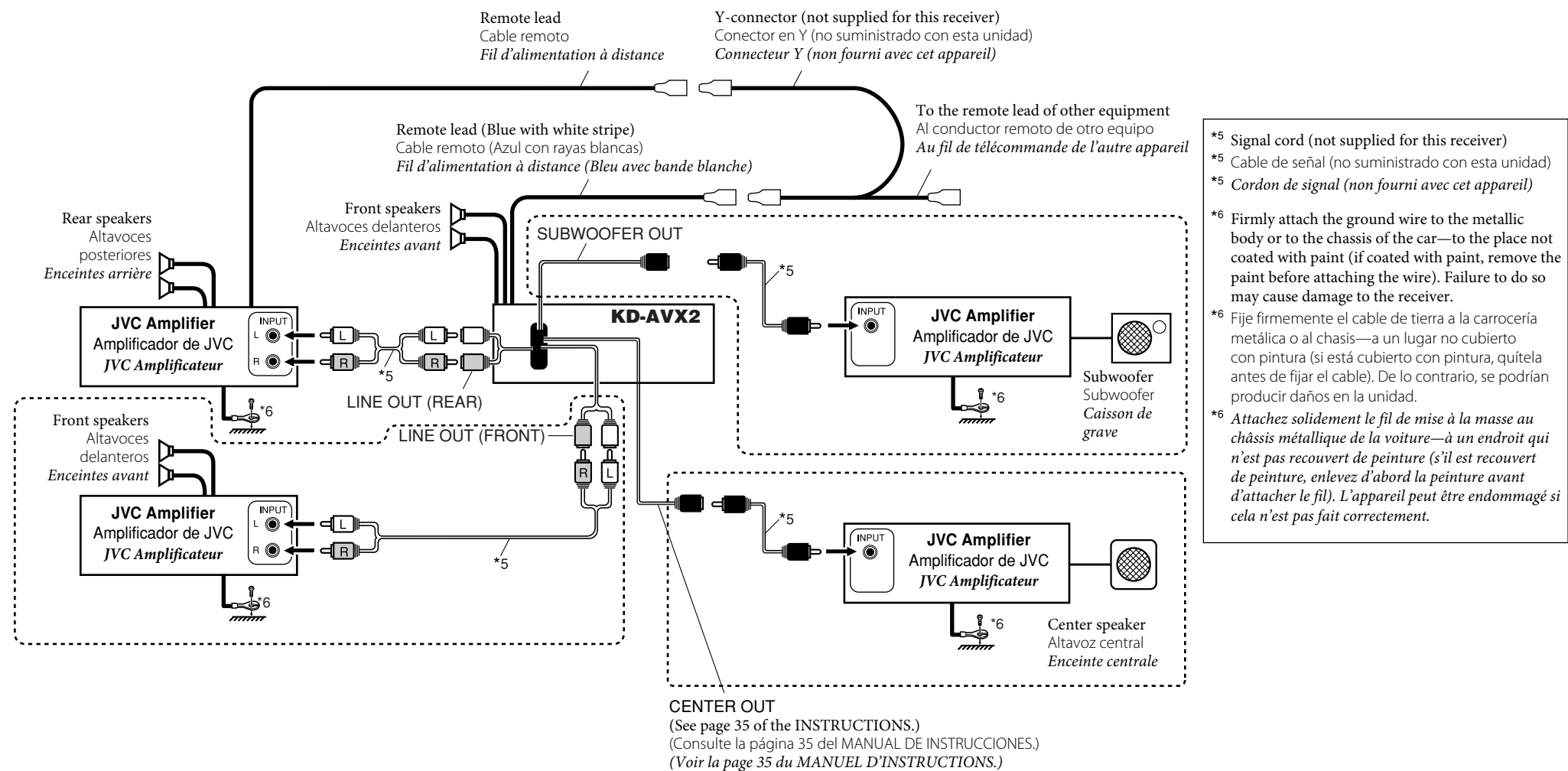
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this receiver.
- **For amplifier only:**
 - **Disconnect the speakers from this receiver, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this receiver unused.**
 - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the receiver. See page 40 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

Usted podrá conectar amplificadores para mejorar el sistema estéreo de su automóvil.

- Conecte el conductor remoto (azul con rayas blancas) al conductor remoto del otro equipo para poderlo controlar a través de esta unidad.
- **Sólo para el amplificador:**
 - **Desconecte los altavoces de esta unidad y conéctelos al amplificador. Los cables de los altavoces de esta unidad quedan sin usar.**
 - Podrá desconectar el amplificador incorporado y enviar las señales de audio solamente al(los) amplificador(es) externo(s) para obtener sonidos nítidos y evitar que se caliente el interior de la unidad. Véase la página 40 de las MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES (volumen separado).

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour améliorer votre système autoradio.

- Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.
- **Pour l'amplificateur seulement:**
 - **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**
 - Vous pouvez désactiver l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement à un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs afin d'obtenir un son clair et pour éviter un échauffement interne de l'appareil. Référez-vous à la page 40 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS (volume séparé).



H Connecting other external components / Conexión de otros componentes externos / Connexion d'un autre appareil extérieur

CAUTION:

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the receiver is turned off.

PRECAUCION:

Antes de conectar el cambiador de componentes externos, asegúrese de que el receptor esté apagado.

PRECAUTION:

Avant de connecter votre appareil extérieur, assurez-vous que l'autoradio est hors tension.

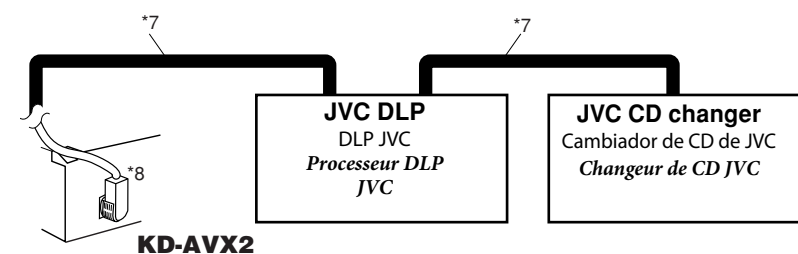
JVC CD changer and DLP (Down Link Processor) / Cambiador de CD de JVC y DLP ("Down Link Processor") JVC / Changeur de CD JVC et Processeur DLP (Processeur de signaux satellite-terre) JVC

- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 38 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Ajuste "External Input" a "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (consulte la página 38 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES). / Réglez "External Input" sur "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (voir la page 38 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

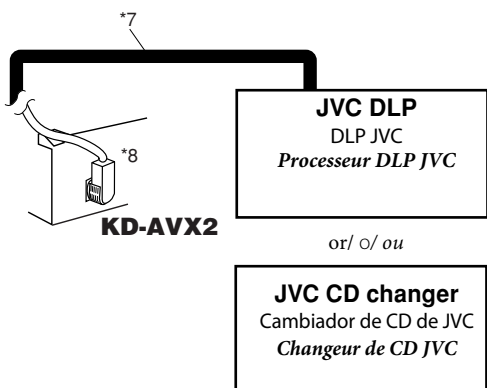
You can connect both components in series as illustrated below.

Podrá conectar ambos componentes en serie, tal como se observa en la ilustración de abajo.

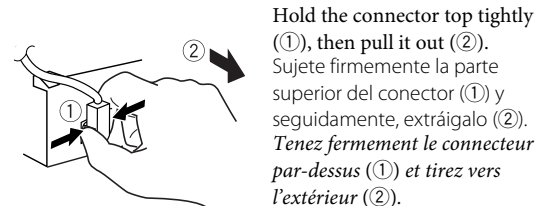
Vous pouvez connecter les deux appareils en série comme montré sur l'illustration.



- *7 Signal cord supplied with your JVC CD changer or DLP
- *7 Cable de señal suministrado con su cambiador de CD o DLP JVC
- *7 Cordon de signal fourni avec votre changeur de CD ou processeur DLP JVC



- *8 To disconnect the CD/SIRIUS® connector
- *8 Para desconectar el cable CD/SIRIUS®
- *8 Pour déconnecter le connecteur CD/SIRIUS®



Hold the connector top tightly (1), then pull it out (2).
Sujete firmemente la parte superior del conector (1) y seguidamente, extráigalo (2).
Tenez fermement le connecteur par-dessus (1) et tirez vers l'extérieur (2).

Continue on the next page...

Apple iPod®/JVC D. player and JVC DLP (Down Link Processor)/Apple iPod®/Reproductor D. JVC y DLP ("Down Link Processor") JVC /iPod® Apple/Lecteur D. JVC et Processeur DLP (Processeur de signaux satellite-terre) JVC

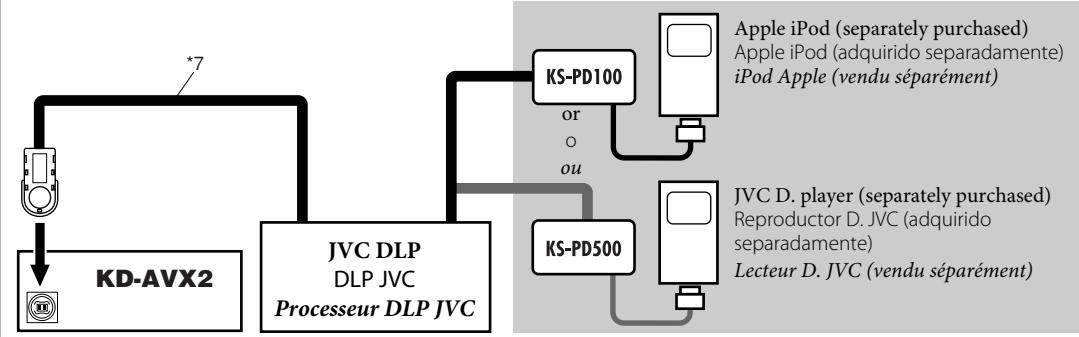
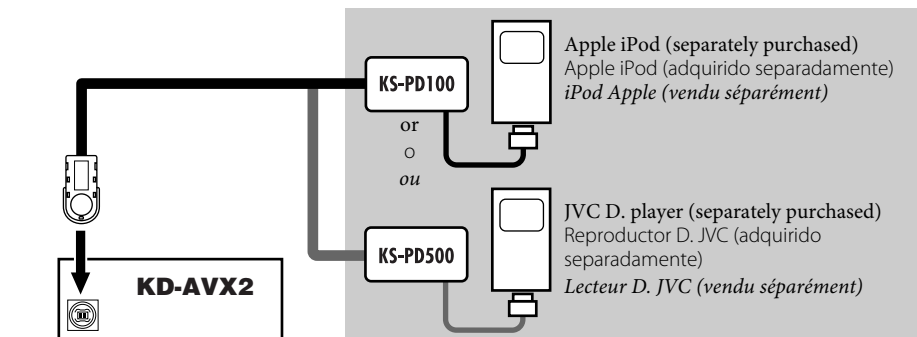
- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 38 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Ajuste "External Input" a "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (consulte la página 38 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES). / Réglez "External Input" sur "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (voir la page 38 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

The iPod®9 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).
Puede conectar el iPod®9 o el reproductor D. usando un adaptador de interfaz (no suministrado)—KS-PD100 (para iPod) o KS-PD500 (para el reproductor D.).
Le iPod®9 ou le lecteur D. peut être connecté en utilisant un adaptateur d'interface (non fourni)—KS-PD100 (pour iPod) ou KS-PD500 (pour le lecteur D.).

You can also connect both JVC DLP and interface adapter in series as illustrated below.

También podrá conectar tanto un DLP JVC como un adaptador de interfaz en serie, tal como se muestra en la ilustración de abajo.

Vous pouvez aussi connecter à la fois JVC DLP et l'adaptateur d'interface en série comme montré sur l'illustration ci-dessous.



- *9 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- *9 iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Computer, Inc., registrada en los EE. UU. y otros países.
- *9 iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Computer, Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

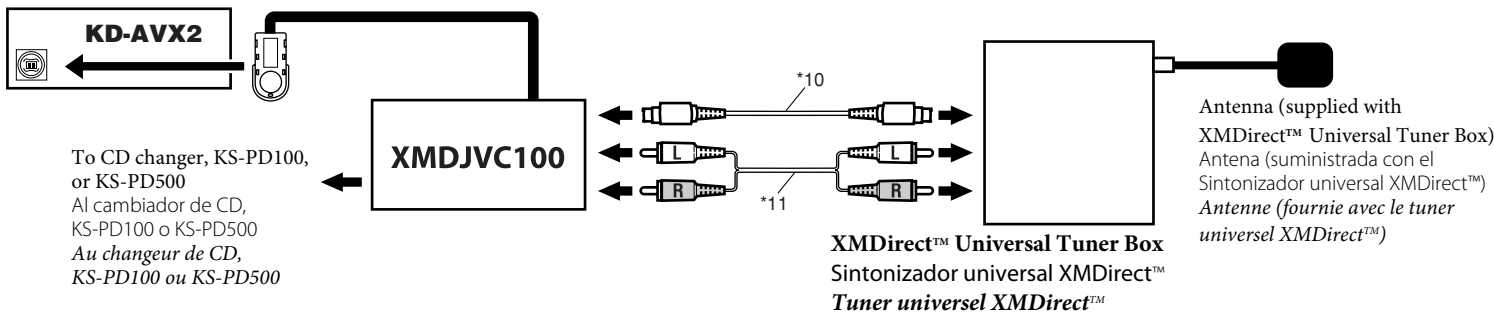
CD changer jack
Jack para el cambiador de CD
Prise du changeur de CD

XM Satellite radio / radio satelital XM / radio satellite XM

- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 38 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Ajuste "External Input" a "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (consulte la página 38 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES). / Réglez "External Input" sur "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (voir la page 38 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

- For listening to the XM Satellite radio, you can also connect XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box (separately purchased) through this unit using JVC Smart Digital Adapter—XMDJVC100 (not supplied).
- Para escuchar la radio satelital XM, también puede conectar el Sintonizador universal XMDirect™ (adquirido por separado) al receptor mediante un adaptador Smart Digital XMDJVC100 de JVC (no suministrado).
- Pour écouter la radio satellite XM, vous pouvez aussi connecter le tuner universel XMDirect™ (vendu séparément) à cet appareil en utilisant l'adaptateur numérique intelligent JVC—XMDJVC100 (non fourni).

CD changer jack
Jack para el cambiador de CD
Prise du changeur de CD



- *10 Signal cord supplied with your Smart Digital Adapter
- *10 Cable de señal suministrado con el adaptador Smart Digital
- *10 Cordon de signal fourni avec votre adaptateur numérique intelligent
- *11 Audio signal cord supplied with your Smart Digital Adapter
- *11 Cable de señal de audio suministrado con el adaptador Smart Digital
- *11 Cordon audio fourni avec votre adaptateur numérique intelligent

JVC PnP (Plug and Play) / PnP ("Plug and Play") JVC / PnP ("Plug and Play") JVC

- Set "External Input" to "External Input" (see page 38 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Ajuste "External Input" a "External Input" (consulte la página 38 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES). / Réglez "External Input" sur "External Input" (voir la page 38 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

You can also connect JVC PnP through this receiver using JVC SIRIUS radio adapter, KS-U100K (not supplied).

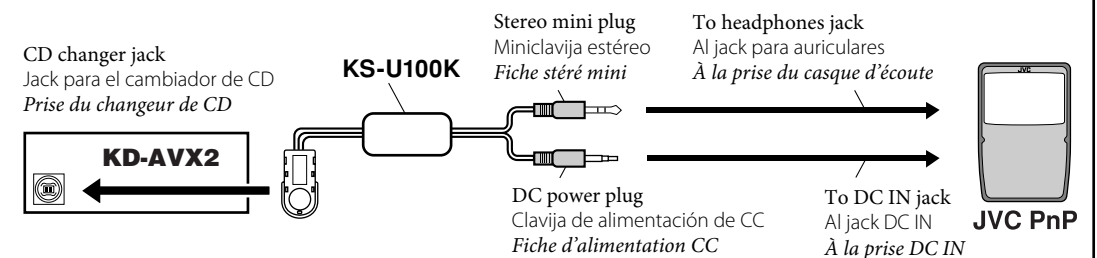
- Turning on/off the receiver can also turn on/off the JVC PnP.

También podrá conectar la PnP JVC a través de este receptor utilizando el adaptador para radio SIRIUS JVC, KS-U100K (no suministrado).

- Al encender/apagar el receptor también se enciende/apaga la PnP JVC.

Vous pouvez aussi connecter le PnP JVC à cet autoradio en utilisant l'adaptateur de radio SIRIUS JVC KS-U100K (non fourni).

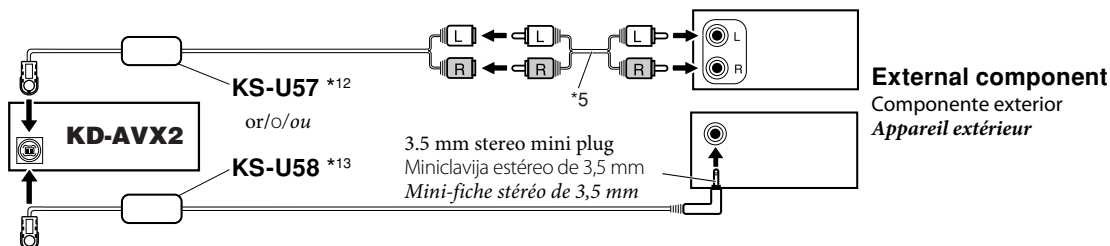
- Mettre sous/hors tension l'autoradio peut aussi mettre sous/hors tension le PnP JVC.



External component / Componente exterior / Appareil extérieur

- Set "External Input" to "External Input" (see page 38 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Ajuste "External Input" a "External Input" (consulte la página 38 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES). / Réglez "External Input" sur "External Input" (voir la page 38 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

CD changer jack
Jack para el cambiador de CD
Prise du changeur de CD



- *12 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this receiver)
- *12 Adaptador de entrada de línea KS-U57 (no suministrado con esta unidad)
- *12 Adaptateur pour entrée de ligne KS-U57 (non fourni avec cet appareil)

- *13 Aux Input Adapter KS-U58 (optionally purchased)
- *13 Adaptador de entrada auxiliar KS-U58 (adquirido opcionalmente)
- *13 Adaptateur pour entrée auxiliaire KS-U58 (vendu séparément)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- The fuse blows.**
 - * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- Power cannot be turned on.**
 - * Is the yellow lead connected?
- No sound from the speakers.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- Sound is distorted.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- Noise interferes with sounds.**
 - * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- Receiver becomes hot.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- This receiver does not work at all.**
 - * Have you reset your receiver?

LOCALIZACION DE AVERIAS

- El fusible se quema.**
 - * ¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?
- No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
 - * ¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?
- No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
 - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?
- El sonido presenta distorsión.**
 - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
 - * ¿Están los terminales "-" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- Perturbación de ruido.**
 - * ¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?
- La unidad se calienta.**
 - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
 - * ¿Están los terminales "-" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- Este receptor no funciona en absoluto.**
 - * ¿Reinicializó el receptor?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- Le fusible saute.**
 - * Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils raccordés correctement?
- L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
 - * Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?
- Pas de son des enceintes.**
 - * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?
- Le son est déformé.**
 - * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
 - * Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- Interférence avec les sons.**
 - * La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?
- L'appareil devient chaud.**
 - * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
 - * Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
 - * Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

JVC



ENGLISH

DEUTSCH

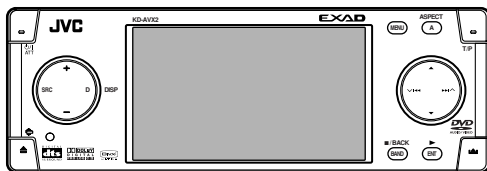
FRANÇAIS

NEDERLANDS

DVD/CD RECEIVER
DVD-/CD RECEIVER
RÉCEPTEUR DVD/CD
DVD/CD-RECEIVER

KD-AVX2

EXAD



DIGITAL
dts
SURROUND

DVD
AUDIO/VIDEO

DOLBY
DIGITAL
PRO LOGIC II

COMPACT
disc
DIGITAL VIDEO

For canceling the display demonstration, see page 10.
Zum Abbrechen der Displaydemonstration siehe Seite 10.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 10.
Zie bladzijde 10 voor het annuleren van de displaydemonstratie.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Für den Einbau und die Anschlüsse siehe das eigenständige Handbuch.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.
Bijzonderheden over de installatie en aansluiting van het apparaat vindt u in de desbetreffende handleiding.

INSTRUCTIONS

BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS
GEbruIKSAANWIJZING

LVT1455-001A
[E]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.	ADVARSEL: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til strålingen.	WARNING: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når den öppnas och spårren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen.	VARO: Arviassa ja suojauslaitus ohjattuina tai viallisena olet atittuna näkyville ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteeen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)
--	---	---	--

For safety....

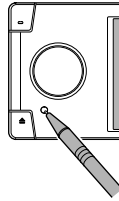
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

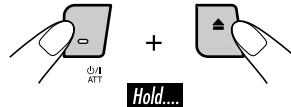
How to reset your unit



This will reset the microcomputer. Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

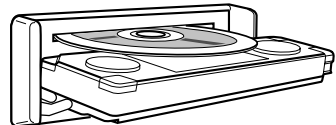
How to forcibly eject a disc

If a disc cannot be recognized by the receiver or cannot be ejected, ejects the disc as follows.



“NO EJECT?” (or “EJECT OK?”) and “EMERGENCY EJECT?” appear on the monitor.

Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select “EMERGENCY EJECT?”, then press ENT.



- If this does not work, reset your receiver.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

WARNINGS:

- **DO NOT install any receiver in locations where;**
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- **The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.**
- **If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.

Characters shown on the monitor

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), the following characters will be used to show the various information on the monitor..

- You can also use the following characters to assign titles (see page 45).

Á	À	Â	Ã	Ä
Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ĝ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Õ
Ö	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Û	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ž	ß
Ɔ	Ɔ	Ɔ	Ɔ	Ɔ
ı	u	ö	space	

á	à	â	ã	ä
å	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ĝ	í	ì	î	ï
ñ	ó	ò	ô	õ
ö	ø	ř	ŕ	š
ś	ş	ú	û	ü
ý	ž	ž	ß	
ı	w	y	y	z
z	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ı	ı	ı	ij	space

Upper and lower cases

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	"	#	\$	%
&	'	()	*
+	,	-	.	/
:	;	<	=	>
?	@	_	`	i
ı	£	€	α	space

Numbers and symbols

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this receiver, and the same ID number is imprinted on the receiver’s chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your receiver if stolen.

Introduction—Playable discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs—12 cm and 8 cm —on this receiver:

- **DVD Video:** Recorded in PAL color system with Region Code “2” (see below).
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played.
- **DVD Audio**
- **Video CD (VCD)/audio CD**
- **MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG1,2/DivX:** Recorded either in CD-R/CD-RW or DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM.
 - CD-R/CD-RW: Compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM: Compliant with UDF-Bridge Format*¹.
- *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (DVD Video format only) discs. However the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.*
- *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

Discs cannot be played back

DVD-ROM (data), DVD-RAM, DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

*¹ *A hybrid file system used to provide compatibility with ISO 9660 for accessing any type of files on the disc. (UDF stands for Universal Disk Format.)*

“DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This receiver can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “2”.

Examples:



If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code



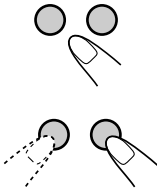

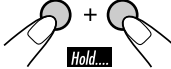
“Region Error” appears on the monitor on the unit and the disc ejects.

“REGION CODE ERROR” also appears on the external monitor.

How to read this manual

The following methods are used to make the explanations simple and easy-to-understand:

- Some related tips and notes are explained in “More about this receiver” (see pages 58 – 62).
- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations as follows:

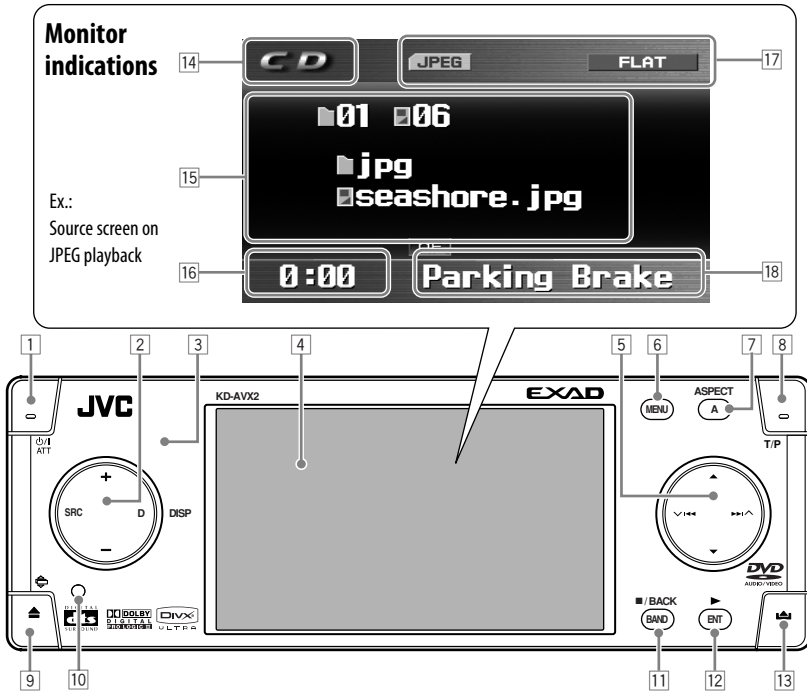
	<p>Press briefly.</p>
	<p>Press repeatedly.</p>
	<p>Press either one.</p>
	<p>Press and hold until your desired response begins.</p>
	<p>Press and hold both buttons at the same time.</p>

Contents

Control panel	6
Remote controller — RM-RK240	7
Getting started.....	10
Radio operations	12
FM RDS operations.....	15
Disc operations	18
Unique disc functions.....	23
Disc surround playback	25
On-Screen disc operations	27
Other disc operations	31
Dual Zone operations	33
AV Menu settings.....	34
Other main functions	45
CD changer operations	46
DAB tuner operations.....	48
External component operations	53
iPod®/D. player operations	54
Maintenance	56
Language codes.....	57
More about this receiver	58
Troubleshooting	63
Specifications	67

Control panel

Parts identification



1 ϕ /I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button

- 2 • +/- (volume +/-) button
 • SRC (source) button
 • DISP (D: display) button

3 Remote Sensor

4 Monitor

- 5 • ▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons
 • ▼ ◀◀/▶▶ ▲ buttons

6 MENU button

7 ASPECT (A) button

8 T/P button

- 9 • ▲ (eject) button
 • ⌂ (angle) button

10 Reset button

- 11 • BAND button
 • BACK button
 • ■ (stop) button

12 • ENT (enter) button

- ► (play) button

13 (control panel release) button

Monitor indications

14 Source indicator

15 Main display

16 Clock display

Also indicates volume level when adjusting volume.

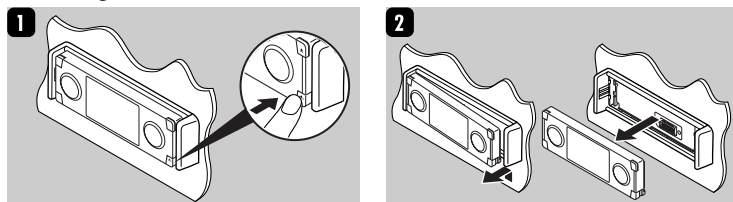
17 Status indicators

18 Alert information area

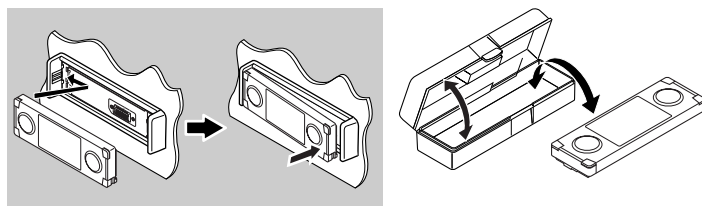
Also indicates volume level bar when adjusting volume.

How to detach/attach the control panel

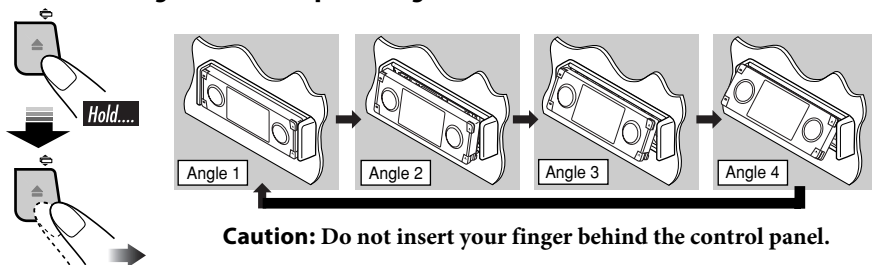
Detaching...



Attaching...

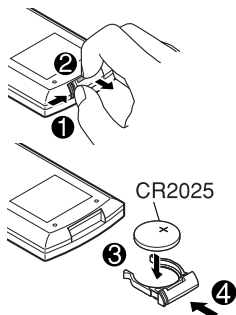


How to change the control panel angle



Remote controller — RM-RK240

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the receiver. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.



- Do not expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

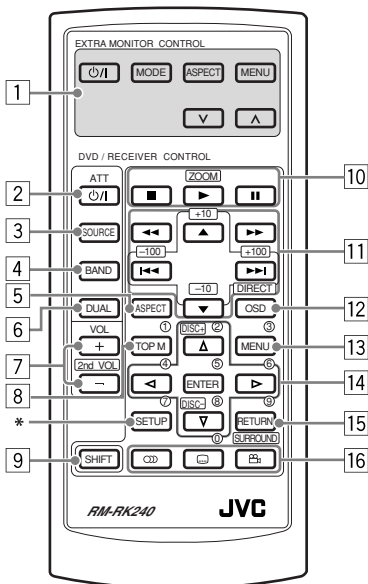
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accidents.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
 - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire.
 - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
 - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
 - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

The receiver is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features



IMPORTANT:

If Dual Zone is activated (see page 33), the remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.

MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons*1
 - O/I (standby/on), MODE, ASPECT, MENU, ∇ and \wedge .

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 O/I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
 - Turns on and off the power and also attenuates the sound.
- 3 SOURCE button
 - Selects the source.
- 4 BAND button
 - Selects the FM/AM/DAB bands.
- 5 ASPECT button
 - Change the aspect of the monitor on the unit when playing back DVD, VCD, etc.
- 6 DUAL button
 - Activate and deactivate Dual Zone.
- 7 VOL + / - buttons
 - Adjusts the volume level.
 - Also function as 2nd VOL +/- buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 8 TOP M (menu) button*2
 - Display the DVD, DVD Audio, DivX, and VCD*3 disc menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10 Basic disc operation buttons*4:
 - (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - ► (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 11 Advanced disc operation/tuner operation buttons*5

For advanced disc operations:

 - \blacktriangle / \blacktriangledown
 - Select the titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio), or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG/DivX).
 - \lll / \ggg (reverse skip/forward skip)
 - \lll / \ggg (reverse search/forward search)*6

* Not used as the SETUP button for this model.

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset stations.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶
 - Functions to search for stations.
Press briefly: auto search
Press and hold: manual search

For DAB tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset channels.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶
 - Changes the services if pressed briefly.
 - Changes the channels if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - ▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - ▲: Enters the main menu of iPod/D. player. (Now ▲ / ▼/◀◀ / ▶▶ work as the menu selection buttons)*7
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly.
(Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

12 OSD button

- Display the on-screen bar.
- Also function as the DIRECT button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can directly select titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio) or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/MPEG/DivX) using the number buttons (see the right column and page 22).

13 MENU button*2

- Display the DVD, DivX, and VCD*2 disc menu. (Not functions for the DVD Audio disc.)

14 Menu operation buttons*2

- Cursor (▲, ▼, ◀, ▶) and ENTER
- ▲ / ▼: Also function as DISC+/- buttons when the source is “CD-CH”.

15 RETURN button*2

16 Special function buttons

- DVD/VCD/DivX: ○○○ (audio)
- DVD/DivX: □□□ (subtitle)
- DVD: ◻ (angle)
- ◻ Also function as the SURROUND button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can change the surround mode (see page 26).

*1 Controllable only if your monitor is one of the JVC monitors — KV-MR9010 or KV-MH6510.

*2 These buttons function as the number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 Only when PBC is not in use.

*4 Not used for CD changer operations.

*5 These buttons function as the +10/-10 and +100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

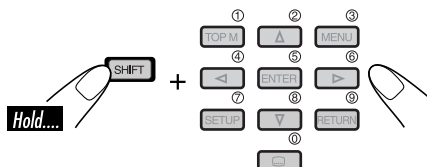
*6 Not used for JPEG operations.

*7 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.

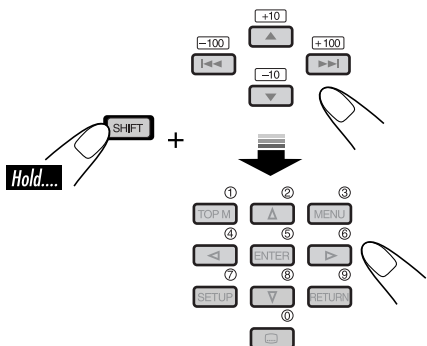
▼: Confirms the selection.

How to select a number

To select a number from 0 – 9:



To select a number greater than 9:



- +100/-100 buttons used for searching track number greater than 99 (not available for CD/VCD/DVD/DVD audio).

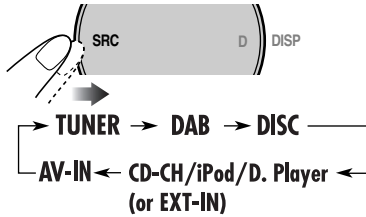
Getting started

Basic operations

1 Turn on the power.

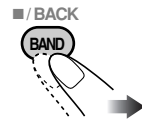


2



You cannot select some sources if they are not ready.

3



For FM/AM tuner

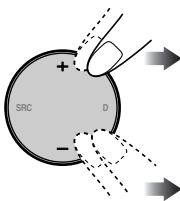


For DAB tuner



4

Adjust the volume.



Volume level indicator

5

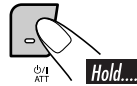
Adjust the equalizer as you want.
(See pages 42.)

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT)



To restore the sound, press it again.

To turn off the power



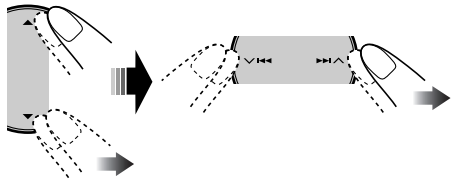
Canceling demonstration and setting the clock

1



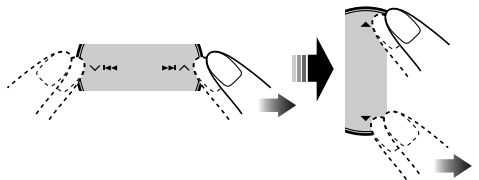
2 Select "Setup", then,

- 1 Select "Display", "Demonstration", then "Off" to cancel demonstration.
- 2 Select "Clock", "Time Set", and go to the next step to set the clock.

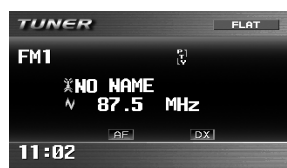
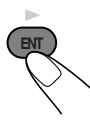


3 Set the hour and minute.

- 1 Select "Hour", then adjust the hour.
- 2 Select "Minute", then adjust the minute.



4 Finish the procedure.



- See the example on “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” below to change the clock from 24 hours to 12 hours.

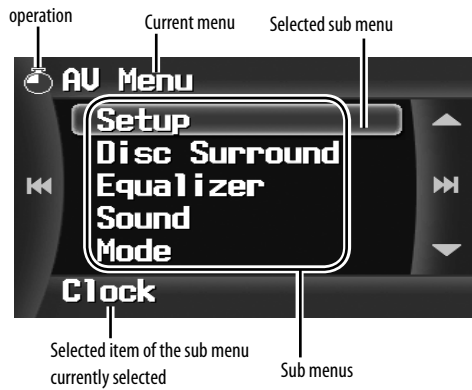
Basic procedure of AV Menu operation

You can adjust various settings of the unit from AV Menu.

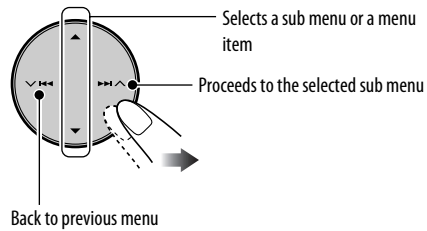
- To call up AV Menu...



Displays remaining time to continue the menu operation



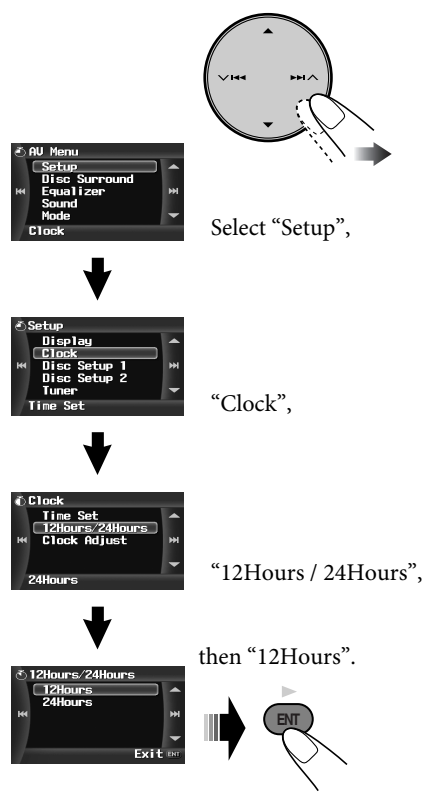
- To select an menu item and proceed to the sub menu...



- To go back to the previous screen and adjust other items...

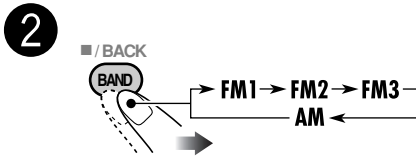
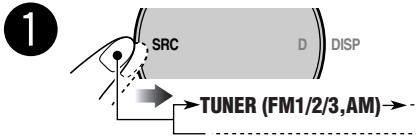


Ex.: To change the clock from 24 hours to 12 hours, after pressing MENU...

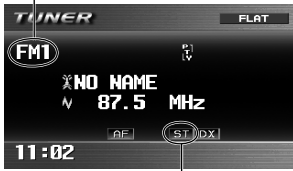


- To cancel menu operations and return to the source screen, press DISP (D).
- See pages 34 – 44 for information of the sub menu and menu items.

Radio operations



Selected band appears.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

3 **Start searching for a station.**



When a station is received, searching stops.

To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

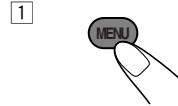
In step 3 above...



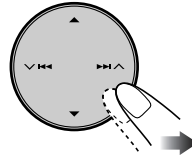
2 Select the desired station frequencies.



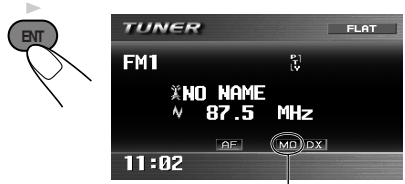
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive



2 Select "Mode", "Mono", then "On".



3 Finish the procedure.

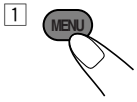


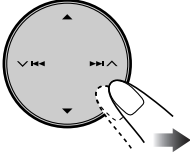
Lights up when monaural mode is activated.

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

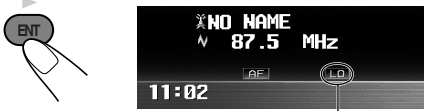
To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to set "Mono" to "Off". The MO indicator goes off.

To tune in strong-signal FM station only

- 1  MENU
- 2 Select “Mode”, “DX / Local”, then “Local”.



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Lights up when “Local” mode is activated.

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

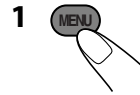
To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure to set “DX / Local” to “DX”. The LO indicator goes off and the DX indicator lights up.

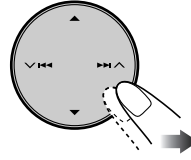
Storing stations in memory

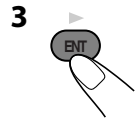
You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

After selecting the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want...

- 1  MENU
- 2 Select “Mode”, then “SSM”.



- 3  ENT




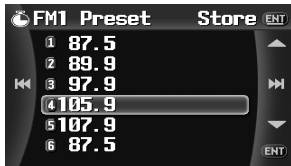
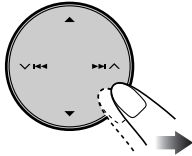
“SSM” is shown until automatic presetting is over.

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting


After tuning in the station you want to preset...

- 1  MENU
- 2 Select "List", then a preset number (1-6) you want store the station into.



EX.: Storing 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of FM1

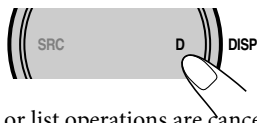
- You can also display the list by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons.

- 3  ENT **Hold...**







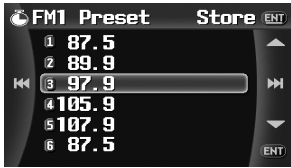
Stored preset number flashes for a while.

How to exit from menus or lists

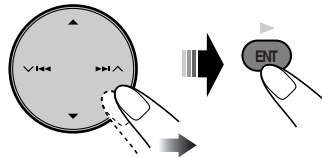


Menu or list operations are canceled and the screen returns to the source screen.

Listening to a preset station

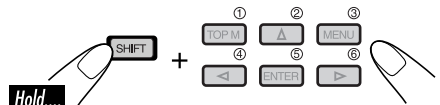
- 1  SRC DISP
TUNER (FM1/2/3,AM)
- 2  /BACK BAND
FM1 → FM2 → FM3
AM ←
- 3   Hold... 

- 4 Select a preset number (1-6) you want.

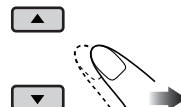


- You can change the preset list between FM1/2/3 by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons (or by pressing ▲/▼ buttons repeatedly) when selecting any of the FM bands.

When using the remote controller...



or

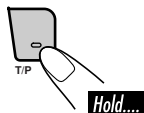


FM RDS operations

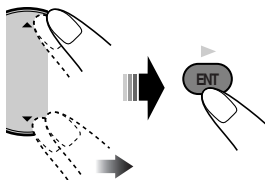
Searching for your favorite FM RDS programme

You can tune in to a station broadcasting your favorite programme by searching for a PTY code.

1



2 Select one of the twenty-nine PTY codes.



The preset programmes appears at first. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select other programmes.

If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

- Press and hold ▲ / ▼ to move the list rapidly.
- To store your favorite programme, see page 16.

PTY codes

News (News), Affairs (Current Affairs), Info (Information), Sport (Sport), Educate (Education), Drama (Drama), Culture (Cultures), Science (Science), Varied (Varied Speech), Pop M (Pop Music), Rock M (Rock Music), Easy M (Easy Listening), Light M (Light Classics M), Classics (Serious Classics), Other M (Other Music), Weather (Weather & Metr), Finance (Finance), Children (Children's Progs), Social (Social Affairs), Religion (Religion), Phone In (Phone In), Travel (Travel & Touring), Leisure (Leisure & Hobby), Jazz (Jazz Music), Country (Country Music), Nation M (National Music), Oldies (Oldies Music), Folk M (Folk Music), Document (Documentary)

- The code names in the parentheses appear on the list screen.

What you can do with RDS

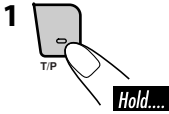
RDS (Radio Data System) allows FM stations to send an additional signal along with their regular programme signals.

By receiving the RDS data, this receiver can do the following:

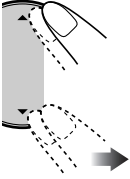
- Programme Type (PTY) Search (See the left column.)
- Temporarily switches to Traffic Announcement—TA Standby Reception. (see page 16)
- Temporarily switches to your favorite programme—PTY Standby Reception. (See pages 17 and 44.)
- Tracing the same programme automatically—Network-Tracking Reception (See page 17.)
- Programme Search (See page 40.)

Storing your favorite programmes

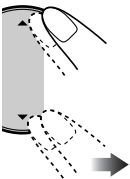
You can store six favorite programme types.



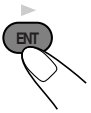
2 Select a PTY code you want to store.



4 Select a preset number (1–6) you want.



5 Finish the procedure.



Stored programme name flashes for a while.

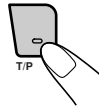
Using the standby receptions

TA Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception allows the receiver to switch temporarily to Traffic Announcement (TA) from any source other than AM.

- The volume changes to the preset TA volume level (see page 40).
- If the DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service.

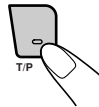
To activate TA Standby Reception



T/P either lights up or flashes.

- If **T/P** lights up, TA Standby Reception is activated.
- If **T/P** flashes, TA Standby Reception is not yet activated. (This occurs when you are listening to an FM station without the RDS signals required for TA Standby Reception.) To activate TA Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or DAB service) providing these signals. **T/P** will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the TA Standby Reception




T/P goes off.

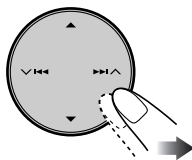
PTY Standby Reception

PTY Standby Reception allows the receiver to switch temporarily to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.

- If the DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service.

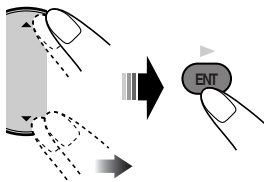
To activate and select your favorite PTY code for PTY Standby Reception,

- 1 
- 2 Select “Mode”, “PTY Standby”, then the PTY code below “Off”.



PTY code list appears.

- 3 Select a PTY code you want.



PTY either lights up or flashes.

- If **PTY** lights up, PTY Standby Reception is activated.
- If **PTY** flashes, PTY Standby Reception is not yet activated.

To activate PTY Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or DAB service) providing these signals. The PTY indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the PTY Standby Reception, select “Off” on “PTY Standby” in the “Mode” menu.

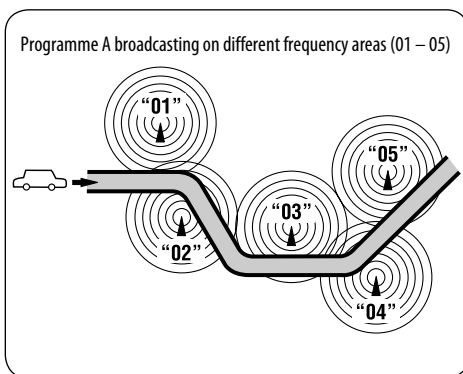
PTY goes off.

Tracking the same programme— Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this receiver automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated (**AF** lights up when the power is turned on for the first time).

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see “AF-Regional” on page 40.



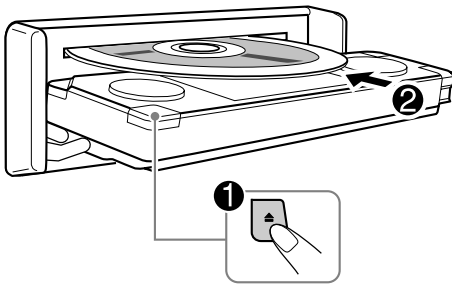
Disc operations

Playing a disc in the receiver

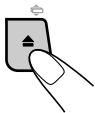
The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD Video/Audio: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc is an audio CD, CD Text, MP3/WMA/WAV, JPEG, MPEG, DivX, or VCD without PBC, all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

- If a title list or disc menu appears while playing a DVD Video/Audio or VCD with PBC, see “Disc menu operations” on page 24.



To eject a disc



The following marks are used to indicate the playable discs...



DVD Video



DVD Audio



Video CD with/without PBC



Video CD with PBC only



MPEG disc



JPEG disc


Audio CD/
CD TextMP3/WMA/WAV
disc

DivX disc



All discs listed here

Before performing any operations, make sure the following...

- The operations explained on pages 20 – 25 are mainly of the remote controller.
 -  shows functions which you can also use on the unit.

If “⊗” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the receiver cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

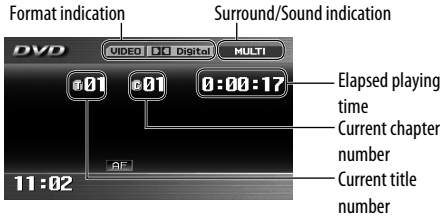
- In some cases, without showing “⊗”, operations will not be accepted.

• **When inserting a DVD video/DVD Audio disc:**

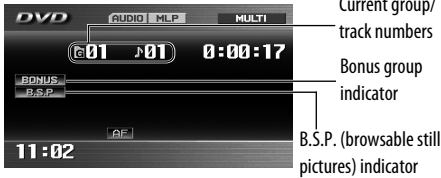
Video/picture playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).

When an DVD is playing back



When a DVD Audio disc is playing back

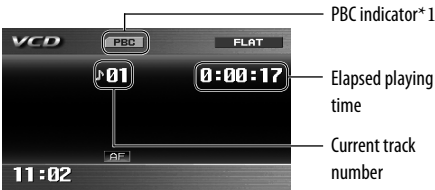


- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting a VCD:**

VCD playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).



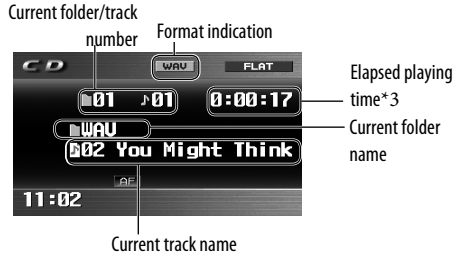
*1 Appears when the PBC function is in use.

- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting an MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG/DivX disc*2:**

After showing the total folder and file number...

Ex.: When an WAV file is detected

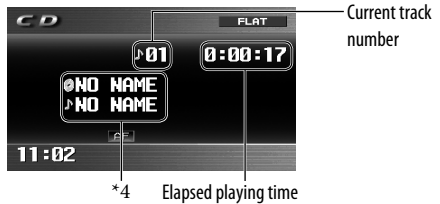


*2 When playing back a JPEG/MPEG/DivX disc, press DISP (D) to display the screen. (Picture/video playback is automatically starts when the parking brake is applied.)

*3 Does not appear for JPEG disc.

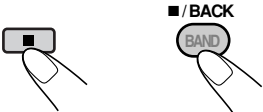
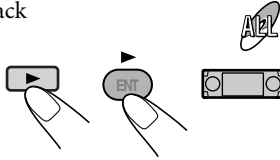





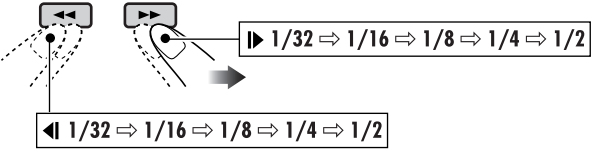




• **When inserting a CD Text/audio CD:**

After showing the total track number and total playing time...



*4 Disc title/performer and track title are displayed when playing a CD Text.

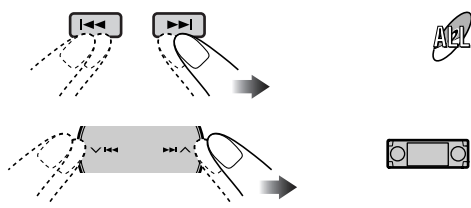
Basic operations

Operations	Monitor indication and/or next operation
<p>To stop playback</p> 	<p>When you start playback again, playback starts from where it has been stopped (Resume play).</p> 
<p>To stop play temporarily</p> 	<p>Playback is paused.</p>  <p>A still picture appears.</p> <p>Ⓐ Frame by frame playback </p>  <p>Ⓑ Slow motion playback </p>  <p>▶ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</p> <p>◀ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sound comes out during Slow Motion Playback. • When playing a VCD, Reverse Slow Motion Playback is prohibited. <p>To resume normal play:</p> 
<p>To replay the previous scenes—One Touch Replay</p> 	<p>The playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This function works only within the same title. • For some DVDs, this function does not work.  

- During play, on-screen guide icons appear on the monitor for a while (see page 62).

To go to the next or previous chapters/tracks

- For DVD: During play or pause

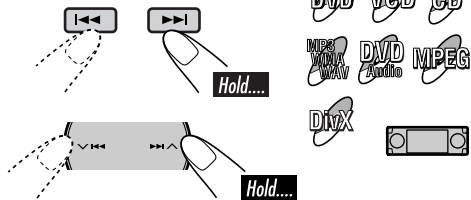


To locate a particular title/group/ chapter/track directly

- For DVD Video/DVD Audio:
During play or pause—select a chapter/ track.
During stop—select a title/group.
- For MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG:
Select a track within the same folder.

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter/track

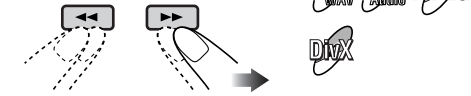
While playing back...



* The search speed changes to x2 ⇒ x10 (▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2 for MPEG/DivX), but the information shown on the monitor is only for DVD/VCD/MPEG/DivX.

To forward or reverse search the chapter/track

While playing back...



The information shown is only for DVD/VCD:

- ▶▶ x2 ⇒ x5 ⇒ x10 ⇒ x20 ⇒ x60
- ◀◀ x2 ⇒ x5 ⇒ x10 ⇒ x20 ⇒ x60

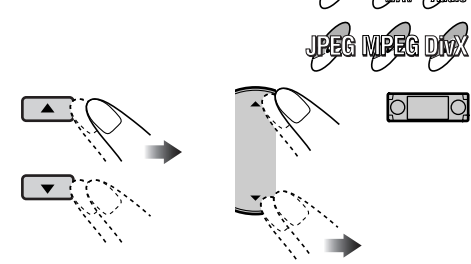
* The search speed of an MPEG/DivX file is 3 steps - ▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2/3.

- To resume normal speed

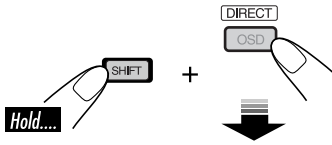


Select the number corresponding to the item you want (see page 9).

To locate a title/group/folder



**To locate a particular title/
group/folder**

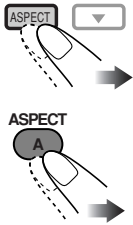


Within 10 seconds,
press the number
buttons (see page 9).

IMPORTANT:

- For MP3/WMA/WAV discs: It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit number at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

To adjust the screen shape on the unit

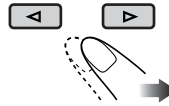


- See “Aspect” on page 36 for the detail.

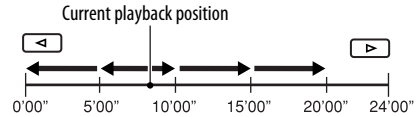
**To skip to the next or previous
scene**



You can skip the scene back and forward by 5 minutes.



Ex.: when you are playing a 24-minute MPEG file and the elapsed playing time is 8'24”...



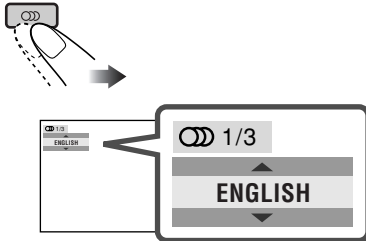
- The first pressing of the buttons skips the scene to the nearest multiple-of-5 playing time (except current playing time).
- This function does not work when remaining time to skip forward or back is under 5 minutes.

Unique disc functions

Selecting audio languages

For DVD and DivX:

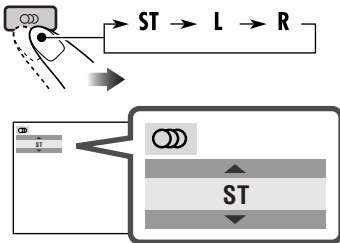
You can select the language to listen to if the disc has multiple audio languages.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

For VCD:

You can select the audio channel to play. (This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.)



ST: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.

L: To listen to the L (left) audio channel.

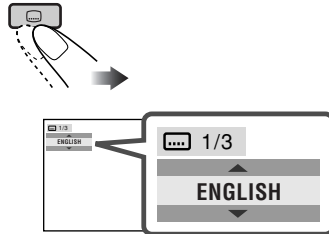
R: To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

Selecting subtitles

You can select the language of the subtitle to be shown on the monitor.



- You can set the initial subtitle language using the AV Menu (see page 37).

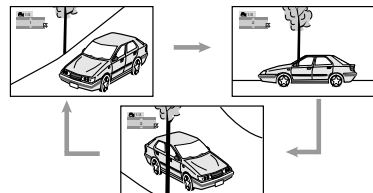
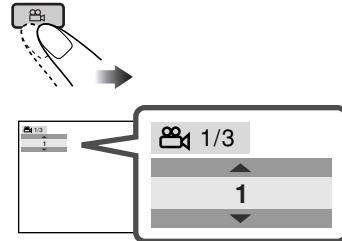


Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the subtitle language, audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting multi-angle views

You can view the same scene at different angles if the disc has multi-angle views.

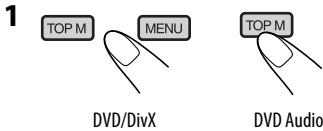


Ex.: When the disc has 3 multi-angle views

Disc menu operations

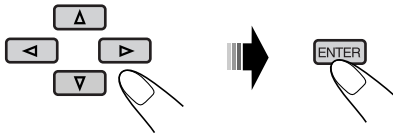
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a disc with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PBC (PlayBack Control).

While playing a DVD/DivX



A title list or disc menu will appear on the monitor.

2 Select the item you want on the menu.



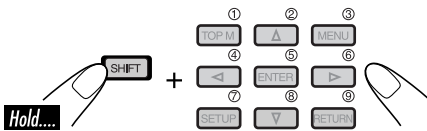
Selected item starts playback.

- On some discs, you can also select items by their numbers.

While playing a VCD



- When a list of items is displayed on the monitor.



- To select a number greater than 9, see “How to select a number” on page 9.

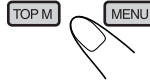
To return to the previous menus



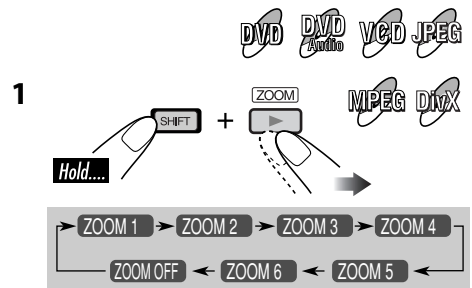
Canceling the PBC playback

- 1
- 2 Select a track to start normal playback using the number buttons (see page 9).

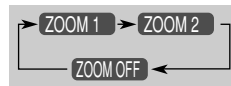
To resume the PBC function



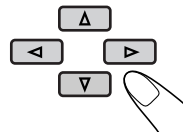
Zoom in



For JPEG disc (effective only when pausing):



2 Move the zoomed-in position.



- For JPEG files:
You cannot move the zoomed-in position when the entire picture is still displayed on the monitor.

To cancel zoom, select “ZOOM OFF” in step 1.

Playing back a bonus group

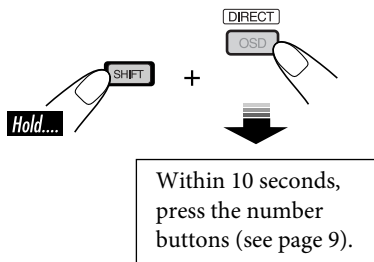
Some DVD Audio discs have a special group called “bonus group” whose contents are not open to the public.



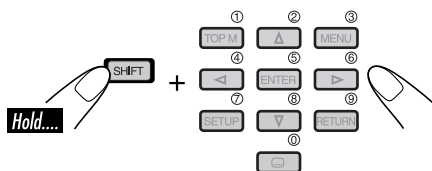
- To play back a bonus group, you have to enter the specific “key number” (a kind of password) for the bonus group. The way of getting the key number depends on the disc.

1 Select the bonus group.

- The bonus group is usually recorded as the last group (for example, if a disc contains four groups including a bonus group, “group 4” is the bonus group).



2 Enter the key number.



3 Follow the interactive instructions shown on the monitor.

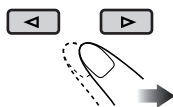
- The entered key number is cleared when the disc is ejected. Repeat steps 1 to 3 above to play back the bonus group again.

Selecting Browsable still pictures

While playing back a track linked to browsable still pictures (B.S.P.), you can select (turn the page) the still picture to be shown on the monitor.



- If a track is linked to B.S.P., they are usually shown in turn automatically during playback.



Disc surround playback

You can enjoy multichannel surround playback of the disc on the unit.

Available surround format

Dolby Digital*1: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with Dolby Digital (DOLBY DIGITAL).

Dolby Pro Logic II: Dolby Pro Logic II is a multichannel playback format to decode all 2 channel sources—stereo source and Dolby Surround encoded source—into 5.1 channels. Dolby Pro Logic II has two modes—Movie mode and Music mode:

- **Pro Logic II Movie**
Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
- **Pro Logic II Music**
Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

DTS (Digital Theater Systems)*2: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with DTS Digital Surround (DTS DIGITAL SURROUND).

Continued on the next page

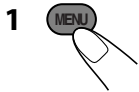
*1: Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless, and the double-D symbol are the trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2: "DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

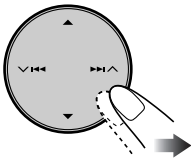
Selecting the surround mode

The unit is set up, by default, to select the optimal surround mode for the digital multichannel disc in the initial setting. You can also choose the surround mode for the 2 channel disc.

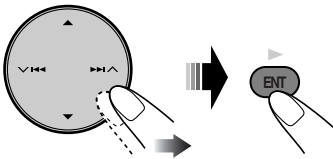
When DISC is selected as the source...



2 Select "Disc Surround".



3 Select the surround setting you want.



Surround Off:

Deactivate the surround function.

Surround On^{*1*2}:

- **Auto^{*3}**: the optimum surround mode is selected automatically when multichannel digital signals are detected.
- **Dolby PLII Movie^{*4*5}**: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Movie.
- **Dolby PLII Music^{*4*5*6}**: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Music.

*1 No sound comes out of the rear speakers and the subwoofer when the FRONT 2CH indicator appears on the monitor.

*2 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the FIX indicator appears on the monitor.

*3 Activates no surround function when the source is a CD (except for DTS CD)/VCD / MP3/WMA/WAV. Select "Dolby PLII Movie" or "Dolby PLII Music" manually to activate the surround function.

*4 Not selectable in the cases below:

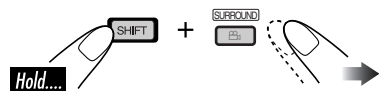
- the disc has 2.1 or more channels of sound tracks (except for MPEG-encoded tracks).
- the disc is an MPEG/DivX disc.

*5 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the front speaker size is set to "Large" (see page 38).

*6 When you select "Dolby PLII Music", you can adjust the following items: "Panorama" and "Center Width". Adjusting "Panorama" to "On" adds "wraparound" sound effect; Activating "Center Width" adjusts the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger (normally select "4").

- No sound comes out from the center speaker when the surround function is not activated.
- Equalizer settings (page 42) become ineffective and unadjustable while the surround function is activated.
- No sound may come out from some speakers depending on the Speaker Size settings (page 38) or the type of the disc played back.
- When Dual Zone is activated, the surround settings become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.

On the remote controller:



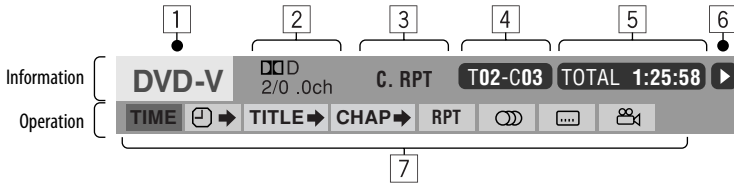
On-Screen disc operations

Operations using the on-screen bar

You can check the disc information and use some functions through the on-screen bar.



On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 • DVD Video/DVD Audio: Audio signal format type
 - VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback mode
 - DVD: T. REP: Title repeat
 - C. REP: Chapter repeat
 - DVD Audio:
 - T. REP: Track repeat
 - VCD: T. REP: Track repeat
 - D. RND: Disc random
 - T. INT: Track intro
 - Plays the beginning 15 seconds of the current track
 - JPEG:T. REP: Track repeat
 - MPEG/DivX:
 - T. REP: Track repeat
 - F. REP: Folder repeat

- 4 Playback information
 - T02-C03** Current title/chapter
 - G02-T03** Current group/track
 - TRACK 01** Current track
 - F001-T001** Current folder/track

- 5 Time indication
 - TOTAL** Elapsed playing time of the disc
 - T. REM** Remaining disc time (for VCD)/ remaining title time (for DVD)
 - TIME** Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track

REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track

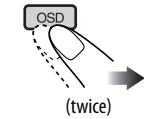
- 6 Playback status
 - Play
 - Forward/reverse search
 - Forward/reverse slow-motion
 - Pause
 - Stop

- 7 Operation icons
 - TIME** Change time indication (see 5)
 - Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
 - TITLE** Title Search (by its number)
 - GROUP** Group Search (by its number)
 - CHAP** Chapter Search (by its number)
 - TRACK** Track Search (by its number)
 - Change the audio language or audio channel
 - Change the subtitle language
 - Change the view angle
 - RPT** Repeat play*
 - INT** Intro play*
 - RND** Random play*

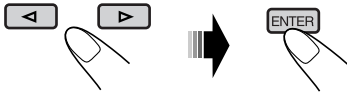
* See also page 31.

Basic on-screen bar operations

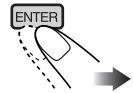
1 Display the on-screen bar.



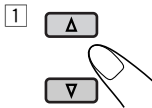
2 Select an item.



3 Make a selection.



- If pop-up menu appears....



or press the number buttons
(see page 9).

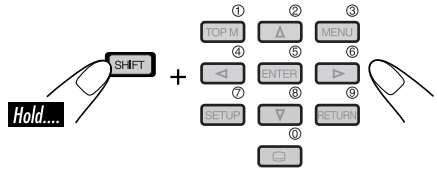


To erase the on-screen bar



To search for a particular point by playing time

- 1 Select .
- 2 Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.



- Ex.:
- To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
 - To enter 54 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 0, 5, 4, 0, then 0.
 - It is always required to enter the hour digit (even "0" hour), but it is not required to enter trailing zeros (the last two digits in the examples above).
 - To correct a misentry, press....



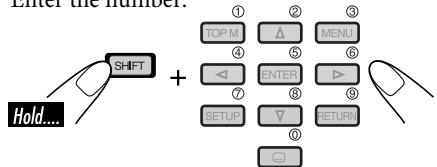
- You can also specify the elapsed playing time by using Δ / ∇ / \triangleleft / \triangleright .

- 3 Finish the procedure.



To search for a particular title/group/chapter/track

- 1 Select **TITLE** \rightarrow (**GROUP** \rightarrow / **CHAP** \rightarrow / **TRACK** \rightarrow).
- 2 Enter the number.



- To correct a misentry, press the number button until the correct number is entered.
- 3 Finish the procedure.

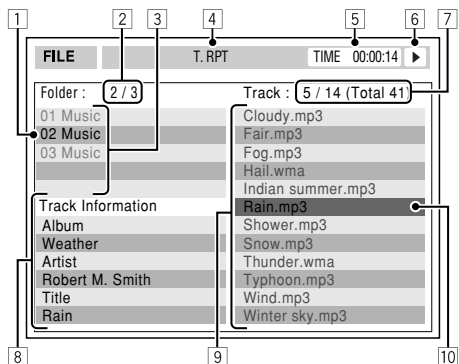


Basic control screen operations

You can search for and play the desired items through the control screen when using the external monitor.

- The control screen automatically appears on the monitor when you insert a disc (external monitor only).
- JPEG/MPEG/DivX control screen appears only when playback stops.

Control screen



Ex.: MP3 playback

- 1 Current folder (Not appears on CD playback)
- 2 Current folder number/total folder number (Not appears on CD playback)
- 3 Folder list (Not appears on CD playback)
- 4 Selected playback mode
- 5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (Not appears on JPEG playback)
- 6 Operation mode icon
▶ (play), ■ (stop), || (pause), ►► (fast-forward), ◀◀ (reverse)
- 7 CD: Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
Others: Current track (file) number/total number of tracks (files) in the current folder (total number of tracks/files on the disc)

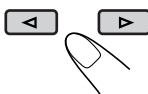
- 8 Track information (Not appears on JPEG/MPEG playback)
- 9 Track (file) list
- 10 Current track (file) (highlighted bar)

To select a folder or track

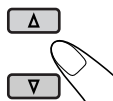


While Dual Zone (see page 33) is on....

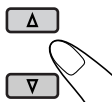
- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track.



To select a track



To change the playback mode

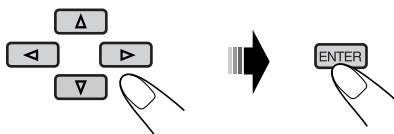


While Dual Zone (see page 33) is on....



- 1 OSD button with a hand icon pointing to it.

- 2 Select a playback mode (see page 31) you want.



List screen operations

You can display the folder list/track list before starting play when using the external monitor and Dual Zone function (see page 33). On this list, you can confirm the contents and start playing a disc.

Folder/track list screens



Folder list

Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
fol130	fol140	fol150	fol160	
fol131	fol141	fol151	fol161	
fol132	fol142	fol152	fol162	
fol133	fol143	fol153	fol163	
fol134	fol144	fol154	fol164	
fol135	fol145	fol155	fol165	
fol136	fol146	fol156	fol166	
fol137	fol147	fol157	fol167	
fol138	fol148	fol158	fol168	
fol139	fol149	fol159	fol169	

Track list

Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
file0131.mp3	file0141.mp3	file0151.wma	file0161.wma	
file0132.mp3	file0142.mp3	file0152.mp3	file0162.mp3	
file0133.wma	file0143.mp3	file0153.wma	file0163.wma	
file0134.mp3	file0144.mp3	file0154.mp3	file0164.mp3	
file0135.mp3	file0145.wma	file0155.mp3	file0165.wma	
file0136.wma	file0146.mp3	file0156.mp3	file0166.wma	
file0137.wma	file0147.wma	file0157.mp3	file0167.wma	
file0138.mp3	file0148.mp3	file0158.wma	file0168.wma	
file0139.mp3	file0149.wma	file0159.wma	file0169.mp3	
file0140.wma	file0150.wma	file0160.wma	file0170.mp3	

Ex.: Track list for MP3/WMA

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

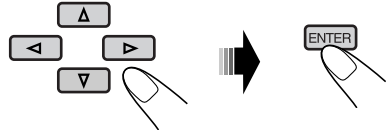
While Dual Zone is on and the disc play stops...

1 Display the folder list.

MENU

Each time you press the button, the list screen comes on and goes off.

2 Select a folder on the list.

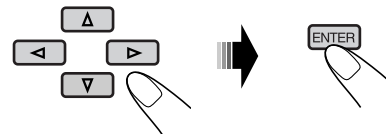


The track list of the selected folder appears.

To go back to the folder list

RETURN

3 Select a track on the list.




Other disc operations

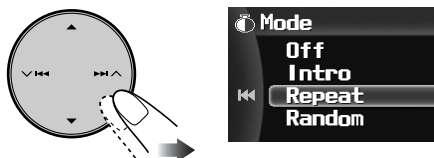


Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1  (On the unit)

2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Playback mode indicator appears.

Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
------	-------------------------------

Track: All tracks of the disc.

-  INT lights up.

Folder*¹: First tracks of all folders.

-  INT lights up.

Off: Cancels.

*¹ Only while playing a disc containing folders.

Repeat

- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Mode	Plays repeatedly
------	------------------

Chapter*²: The current chapter.

-  CHAP RPT lights up.

Title*²: The current title.

-  TITLE RPT lights up.

Track*³: The current track.

-  RPT lights up.

Folder*¹: All tracks of the current folder.

-  RPT lights up.

Off: For DVD: Cancels Repeat play. For other discs: All tracks of the disc.

*² Only while playing a DVD disc.

*³ Except for DVD and JPEG discs.

Random



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Mode	Plays at random
------	-----------------

Folder*¹: All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on.

-  RND lights up.

Disc: All tracks of the disc.

-  RND lights up.

Off: Cancels.

List screen operations

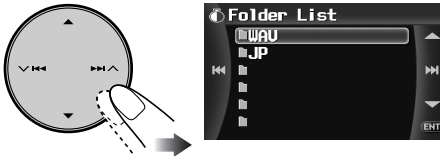
You can display the folder list/file list and select a file directly while playing.

While playing...



- 1 (On the unit)

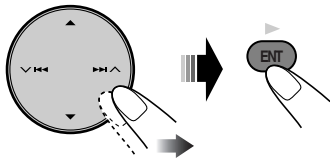
- 2 Select “Mode”, then “List”.



- 3 Select a folder you want.



- 4 Select a file you want to play.

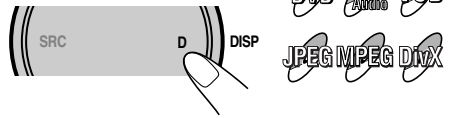


- You can also access the folder list by pressing and holding ▲ / ▼ on the unit.

Other operations

Monitor indication control

To change monitor indication

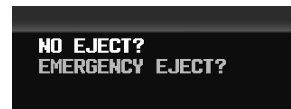


- Each time you press DISP (D), the display changes between the source screen and picture playback.

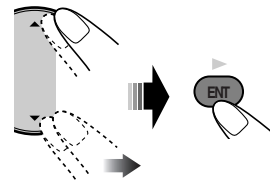
Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

- 1



- 2 Select “NO EJECT?”.



“No Eject” flashes.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select “EJECT OK?”.

Dual Zone operations

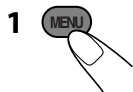
Playing back two sources at a time

You can connect external audio equipment to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug on the rear, and play back a disc separately from the source selected on the unit.

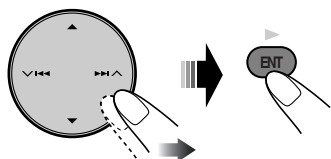


You can activate Dual Zone while listening to any source.

- When Dual Zone is in use, you can only operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.
- When Dual Zone is in use, the surround settings (page 26) become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.



- 2 Select “Dual Zone”, then “On” or “On-Surround”.



Off: Deactivate Dual Zone.

On: Activate Dual Zone.

On-Surround^{*1*}^{*2}:

Activate Dual Zone and add the headphone Surround^{*3} effect to the disc playback sound. Select this when listening the disc playback sound with headphones.

^{*1} Not effective when playing back an MPEG/DivX disc.

^{*2} The surround effect is also added to the sound from the speakers when you select “DISC” as the source.

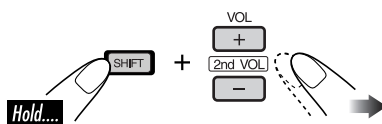
^{*3} JVC original headphone virtual surround system.

The source automatically changes to “DISC” and **DUAL** appears on the monitor.

To select a different source to listen through the speakers, press SRC on the control panel.

- By using the buttons on the control panel, you can operate the newly selected source without affecting Dual Zone operations.

- 3 Adjust the volume through the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug using the remote controller.

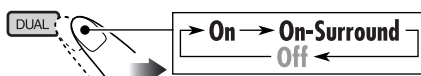


- 4 Operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller by referring to the monitor screen.

To cancel Dual Zone operations, select “Off” on step 2 on the left column. (**DUAL** / **DUAL-SURR** disappears.)

On the remote controller:

You can also activate and deactivate Dual Zone.



To change the Dual Zone mode between “On” and “On-Surround”, select the Dual Zone mode you want on step 2 on the left column.

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

Through the 2nd AUDIO OUT, 2 channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

AV Menu settings

Basic procedure

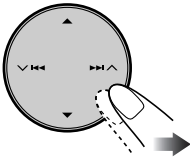
You can adjust various settings of this unit from the AV Menu.

The AV Menu contains the menu items and submenus shown on the figure below.

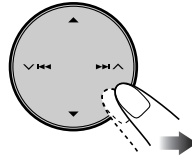
1



2 Select a menu item you want to set.

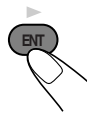


3 adjust the item selected.



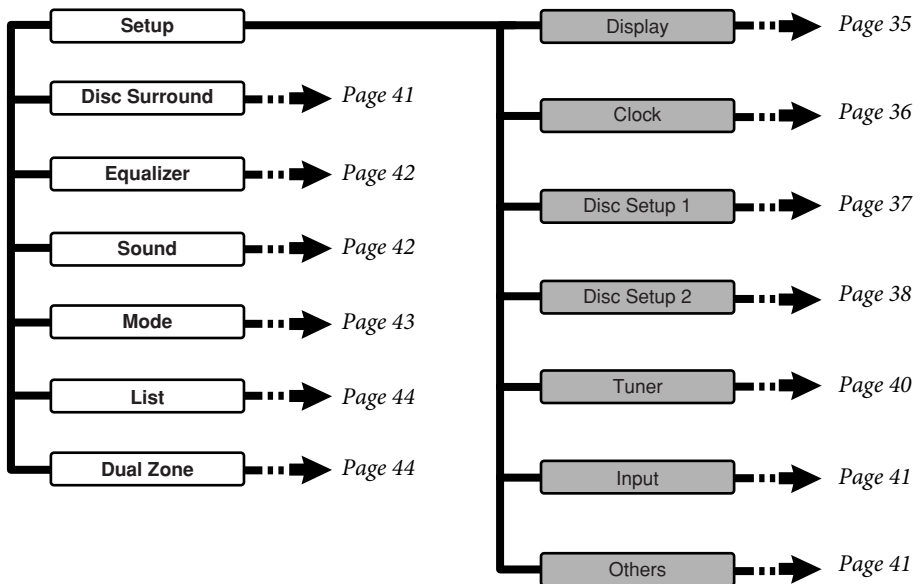
4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



- See also “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” on page 11 for more details of the operation.

Menu items of AV Menu



AV Menu items

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Demonstration	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Activates the demonstration movie on the monitor.</p>
Wall Paper	<p>You can select the background picture of the monitor.</p> <p>Standard [Initial], Rose, Gold, Black, Metal, Metallic-Silver, Metallic-Green, Honeycomb-Red, Honeycomb-Green, Effect-Orange, Effect-Purple, Clown fish, Ocean, Sunset, Earth.</p>
Scroll	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>Once: [Initial]; Scrolls the disc information once.</p> <p>Auto: Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Even if “Scroll” is set to “Off”, you can scroll the display by pressing D DISP for more than one second.
Tag Display	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Shows the tag data while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.</p>
Dimmer	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: Activates dimmer.</p> <p>Auto: [Initial]; Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.</p> <p>Time Set: Sets the Dimmer On/Off time.</p>
Bright	<p>You can adjust brightness of the monitor.</p> <p>–15 (darkest) to +15 (brightest)</p> <p>[Initial]; 00</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To adjust the brightness of playback picture, adjust “Bright” on “Screen Control” below.
Screen Control^{*1}	<p>You can adjust color and brightness of playback pictures of “DISC” and “AV-IN”. The setting is stored separately for “DISC” and “AV-IN”.</p> <p>–15 to +15</p> <p>[Initial]; 00</p> <p>Bright: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark.</p> <p>Contrast: Adjust the contrast of the bright and dark portion.</p> <p>Color: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker.</p> <p>Tint: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural.</p>









*1 Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies, or “AV-IN”.

Indications

Selectable settings, [reference page]

Aspect*¹

You can change the screen shape on the monitor according to the aspect ratio of the source. Choose the optimum one from the followings.

	Aspect ratio of incoming signal	
	4:3	16:9
Normal: For original shape of 4:3		
Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9		
Just:		
Zoom:		
Auto:	The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.	

- You can also adjust the screen shape by pressing ASPECT (A) on the control panel or ASPECT on the remote controller. [22]

Time Set

You can adjust the internal clock on the unit. [10]
[Initial]; 0: 00

12Hours / 24Hours

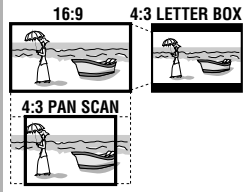
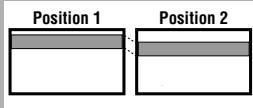
12Hours / 24Hours, [11]
[Initial]; 24Hours

Clock Adjust

Auto: [Initial]; The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock time data in the RDS signal.

Off: Cancels.

*¹ Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies.

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Menu Language^{*1}	Select the initial disc menu language.
Audio Language^{*1}	Select the initial audio language.
Sub Title^{*1}	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (OFF).
OSD Language^{*1}	Select the language for some indications shown on the external monitor.
Monitor Type 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16:9: [Initial]; Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9. • 4:3LB [LETTER BOX]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen. • 4:3PS [PAN SCAN]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen. Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.
OSD Position 	Select the position of the on-screen bar [27]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: [Initial]; Higher position • 2: Lower position
File Type	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio: [Initial]; Plays back MP3/WMA/WAV files. • Picture: Plays back JPEG files. • Video: Plays back MPEG 1/2 or DivX files.
DivX Regi. Code (DivX Registration Code)	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a disc in which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.

^{*1} For the language settings, see also the language codes list on page 57.

^{*2} Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

Indications

Selectable settings, [reference page]

D. (Dynamic) Range Compres.
(Compression)*¹

You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.

- **AUTO** : Select this to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software).
- **ON** : [Initial]; Select this to always use this function.

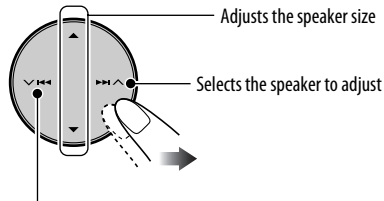
Speaker Size*¹

You can adjust the speaker size setting for the front/rear speakers and the center speaker according to the speaker you use when the source is a disc and playback stops.

- **Front SPK**: Small, Large [Initial]
- **Center SPK**: None [Initial], Small, Large^{<1>}
- **Rear SPK** : None^{<2>}, Small, Large [Initial]
- **Subwoofer**: On [Initial], Off^{<2>}

^{<1>} Not selectable when “Large” is selected neither for the front nor the rear speakers.

^{<2>} Not effective when the surround function is not in effect.



Selects the speaker to adjust

- When selecting “None” or “Off” for all speakers other than the front...
 - Disc Surround setting [41] automatically changes to “Surround Off”.
 - Disc Surround setting [41] becomes unadjustable.

*¹ Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

*² Selectable only when DISC is the source.

Indications

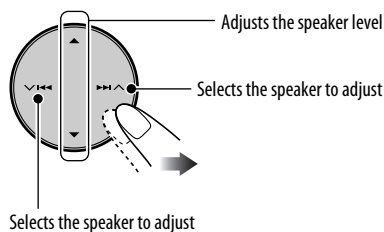
Selectable settings, [reference page]

Speaker Level*¹

You can adjust the output level of each speaker monitoring the test tone.

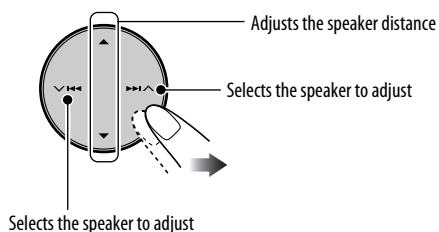
Press and hold ENT to activate (or cancel) the test tone.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Subwoofer*²/Rear Lch:** adjust the output level of each speaker in the range of -10dB +10dB. [Initial]; 00dB

Speaker Distance*⁴

You can adjust the speaker output timing separately for each speaker according to the distance from the speakers to the listening position.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Rear Lch:** adjust the speaker distance in the range of 15 cm to 600 cm in 15-cm step. [Initial]; 120 cm (for center speaker), 150 cm (for the other speakers)



*¹ When activating the test tone, white noise comes out and cycles between the speakers activated on "Speaker Size" [38] for about 2 seconds each. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly while the test tone comes out from the target speaker to adjust the settings (the test tone continues to come out from the target speaker during the adjustment).

*² The setting is effective only when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on "Subwoofer" [43] for other cases.

*³ Selectable only when DISC is the source.

*⁴ Unselectable when all the speakers other than front ones are deactivated on "Speaker Size" [38].

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
AF Regional (Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception)	When the received signals from the current station become weak... Off: Cancels. AF Regional: Switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REG light up. AF: [Initial]; Switches to another station (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [17]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AF lights up.
TA Volume	[Initial: VOL 15]; VOL 00 — VOL 30 or 50*1, [16, 51]
Program Search	Off: [Initial]; Cancels On: Using the AF data, the receiver tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset RDS station is if the preset station signals are not sufficient.
IF Band Width	In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard. Auto: [Initial]; Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) Wide: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
DAB AF*2	Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations. [52].

*1 Depends on the amplifier gain control.

*2 Appears only when DAB tuner is connected.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Input	AV Input	<p>You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks.</p> <p>Off: Select when you do not need AV-Input as a source (AV-IN is deleted from the source items).</p> <p>Audio&Video: [Initial]</p> <p>Select this when connecting an AV component such as a VCR.</p> <p>Audio: Select this when connecting an audio component such as a cassette deck.</p> <p>Camera^{*1}: Select this when connecting the rear view camera. The rear view through the camera is automatically displayed on the monitor when you change the gear to the back position.</p> <p>Camera Reverse^{*1}: The mirror image of the rear view through the rear view camera is automatically displayed on the monitor when you change the gear to the back position. (The monitor on the unit only; the normal rear view appears on the external monitor.).</p>
	External Input	<p>Changer/iPod/D. Player^{*2}: [Initial]</p> <p>To use a JVC CD changer, iPod, JVC D. player, etc. [46, 54]</p> <p>External Input: To use any external component other than above. [53]</p>
Others	Beep	<p>You can deactivate the key-touch tone if you do not want it to beep each time you press a button.</p> <p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Activates the key-touch tone.</p>
	Telephone Muting	<p>Off: [Initial]; Cancels.</p> <p>Muting1/Muting2: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.</p>
Disc Surround ^{*3}	Surround Off	Select to deactivate the surround function.
	Surround On	<p>Select to activate the surround function. [26]</p> <p>Auto [Initial], Dolby PLII Movie^{*4}, Dolby PLII Music^{*4}</p>

^{*1} Reverse gear signal connection is needed to change the monitor view automatically. See Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

^{*2} The source indication changes automatically depending on the type of external component connected.

^{*3} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

^{*4} For the menu items of "Dolby PLII Movie" and "Dolby PLII Music", see page 26.

Indications

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/
Jazz/Dance/Country/
Reggae/Classic/User
1/User 2/User 3

Equalizer^{*1}

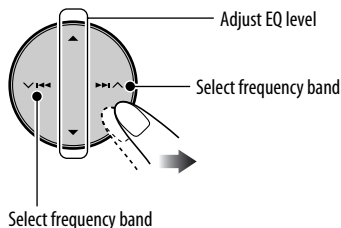
Selectable settings, [reference page]

You can select a preset equalizer settings.

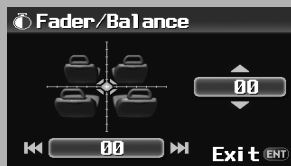
[Initial]; Flat

You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in User 1/2/3.

- 1 Select the frequency band to adjust—
60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1kHz, 2.5kHz, 6.3kHz, 15kHz.
- 2 Adjust the level of the selected band (-05 to +05).
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to adjust other frequency bands.
- 4 Press ENT.
- 5 Select the preset name (User 1, User 2, User 3) you want to store the setting into.
- 6 Press ENT.



Fader/Balance



Sound

Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.

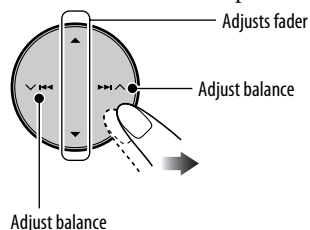
- Upmost—front only
- Downmost—rear only

When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (00).

Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.

- Leftmost—left only
- Rightmost—right only

Press ENT to finish the procedure.



^{*1} Not selectable when DISC is the source and the surround function is activated (see page 26).

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Sound	Volume Adjust	Adjust and store the volume level of each source except FM. Once you have made an adjustment, it is memorized, and the volume level will automatically increase or decrease by adjusted level when you change the source. Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level. • -12 (min.) to +12 (max.) [Initial: 00]
	Subwoofer	Adjust the settings below in the submenu: • Phase: Subwoofer phase. Select either “ Normal ” or “ Reverse ”, which reproduces a better sound. • Level*¹: Subwoofer output level. Level: -06 (dB) to +08 (dB) [Initial: 00 (dB)].
	High Pass Filter	Through: [Initial]; Select when the subwoofer is not connected. On: Select when the subwoofer is connected.
	Crossover	Adjust the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer. 80Hz, 120Hz [Initial], 150Hz
	Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this receiver. Amplifier Off: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. Low Power: VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) High Power: [Initial]; VOL 00 – VOL 50
	Rear Speaker*²	You can activate/deactivate the rear speakers. Off, On [Initial]
Mode	Mono*³	Activate when the FM broadcasting is hard to receive. [12] Off [Initial], On
	DX / Local*³	Select FM reception sensitivity. [12] DX [Initial], Local

*¹ The setting is ineffective when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on “Speaker Level” [39] for the cases.

*² Functions only when Dual Zone is activated. (See page 33.)

*³ Appears only when Tuner is the source.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mode	SSM* ¹	Search for FM stations and store them as preset stations automatically. [13]
	Title Entry* ²	You can enter names for specific source name for AV Input and External Input, etc. [45]
	Off/Intro/Repeat/ Random* ³	You can select the playback mode of the disc in the unit and the discs in the CD changer [31, 47]
	D. Range Control* ⁴ (Dynamic Range Control)	Reinforce the low level sound of DAB services. [49] Off [Initial], 1, 2, 3 .
	PTY Standby* ⁵	Activates PTY Standby Reception with one of the 29 PTY codes. [15, 51] Off [Initial], News , and 28 PTY codes [15].
	Announce Standby* ⁴ (Announcement Standby Reception)	You can activate/deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception function and select one of the 9 announcement types for the function. [51] Off [Initial], Transport News ⇄ Warning ⇄ News ⇄ Weather ⇄ Event ⇄ Special event ⇄ Radio Info (Radio Information) ⇄ Sports news ⇄ Financial news ⇄ (back to the beginning)
List		Select radio stations, folders, files and discs from the list on the screen. [14, 32, 46, 50] • The accessible lists differ depending on the sources.
Dual Zone		Activate/deactivate the Dual Zone function. [33] Off [Initial], On, On-Surround

*¹ Appears only when Tuner is the source.

*² Appears when the source is below: AV-IN, EXT-IN, CD-CH, or conventional CD.

*³ Selectable playback mode differs depending on the disc type. For the available playback mode, see page 31 and 47.

*⁴ Appears only when DAB tuner is the source.

*⁵ Appears only when Tuner or DAB Tuner is the source.

Other main functions

Assigning titles to the sources

You can assign titles to CDs (both in this receiver and in the CD changer), and change the source names of AV-INPUT and EXT-INPUT.

Sources	Maximum number of characters
AV-INPUT/EXT-INPUT	Up to 16 characters
DISC/CD-CH	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)

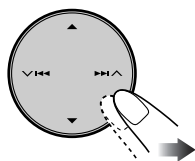
- You can assign a title only to the conventional CD (CD-DA).

1 Select the source.

- For AV-IN/EXT-IN: Select the source.
- For a CD in this receiver: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select "CD-CH", then select a disc number.



3 Select "Mode", then "Title Entry".



Ex.: When you select "AV-IN" as the source

4 Assign a title.

- Select a character set.



- Select a character.



- For available characters, see page 3.

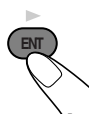
- Move to the next (or previous) character position.



- Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.



5 Finish the procedure.



To erase the entire title

In step 3 on the left column...



CD changer operations

About the CD changer

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

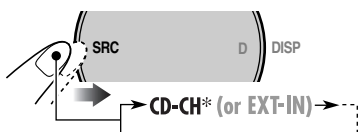
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.

Before operating your CD changer:

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- You cannot control and play any DVD Video/Audio, VCD, WMA, WAV, MPEG, or JPEG disc in the CD changer.

All tracks of the inserted discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the magazine from the CD changer.

1



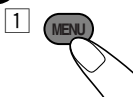
* If you have changed "External Input" setting to "External Input" (see page 41), you cannot select the CD changer.



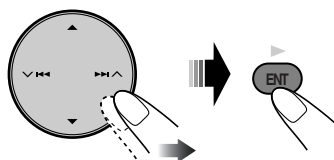
Selected disc number

2

Select a disc.

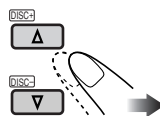


- 2 Select "List", then the disc you want to play back.



- When the current disc is an MP3 disc, you can move to FOLDER LIST by pressing **▶▶** **▲**.

When using the remote controller....



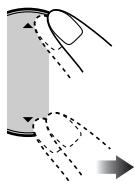
To fast-forward or reverse the track



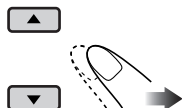
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3 discs)

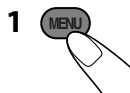


When using the remote controller...

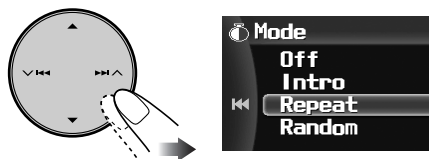


Selecting the playback modes

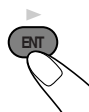
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.



2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
------	-------------------------------

Track:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INT lights up.
Folder*:	First tracks of all folders in the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INT lights up.
Disc:	First tracks of all the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
------	------------------

Track:	The current track. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

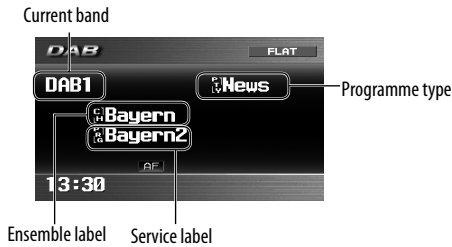
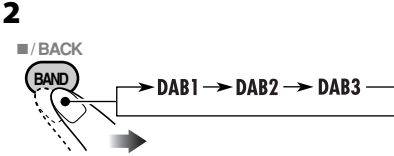
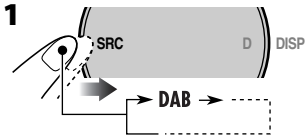
Mode	Plays at random
------	-----------------

Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
All:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

* Only while playing an MP3 disc

DAB tuner operations

Listening to the DAB tuner

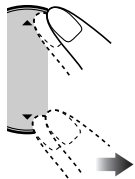


3 Start searching for an ensemble.



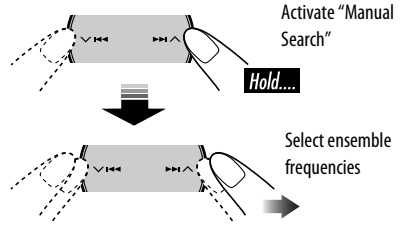
When an ensemble is received, searching stops.
To stop searching, press the same button again.

4 Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.



To tune in to an ensemble manually

In step 3...



What is DAB system?

DAB can deliver digital quality sound without any annoying interference and signal distortion. Furthermore, it can carry text, pictures, and data. When transmitting, DAB combines several programmes (called “services”) to form one “ensemble”. In addition, each “service”—called “primary service”—can also be divided into its components (called “secondary service”). A typical ensemble has six or more programmes (services) broadcast at the same time.

By connecting the DAB tuner, this receiver can do the following:

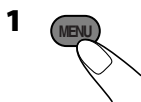
- Tracing the same programme automatically —Alternative Frequency Reception (see page 52).

It is recommended to use DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) tuner KT-DB1000 with your receiver. If you have another DAB tuner, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.

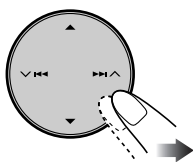
- Refer also to the Instructions supplied for your DAB tuner.

■ When surrounding sounds are noisy

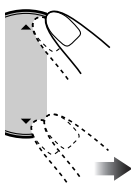
Some service provides Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve for your listening.



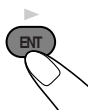
2 Select “MODE”, then “D. Range Control”.



3 Select one of the DRC signal level (DRC 1/2/3).



4 Finish the procedure.



DRC indicator appears.

To search for your favorite service

You can search for either Dynamic or Static PTY codes.

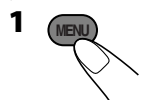
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 15 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and the FM tuner.
- Search will be performed on the DAB tuner only.

- The DRC indicator will be highlighted only when receiving DRC signals from the tuned service.

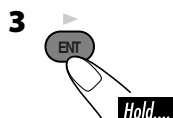
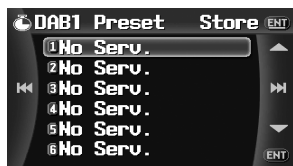
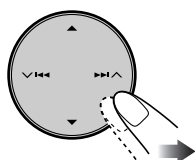
Storing DAB services in memory

You can preset six DAB services (primary) for each band.

After tuning in the ensemble (primary service) you want to preset...



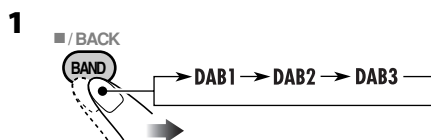
2 Select “List”, then a preset number (1-6) you want to store the ensemble into.



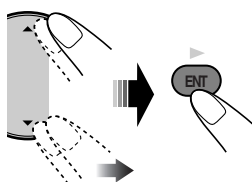
Preset number flashes.

Tuning in to a preset DAB service

When the source is DAB...

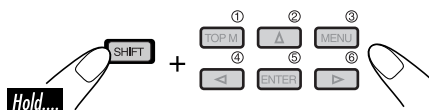


3 Select a preset number you want.



- You can also access the preset list by pressing “MENU” on the unit and selecting “List”.

When using the remote controller...



Using the standby receptions

TA (Road Traffic News) Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 16 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot activate TA Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for FM tuner.
- The volume changes to the preset TA volume level (see page 40).

PTY Standby Reception

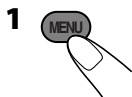
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 17 for FM RDS stations.
- PTY Standby Reception for DAB tuner works only using a dynamic PTY code.
- You can neither store your favorite PTY nor activate PTY Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.
- You can activate and deactivate PTY Standby Reception when the source is either “FM” or “DAB”.

Announcement Standby Reception

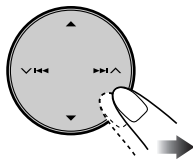
Announcement Standby Reception allows the receiver to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

To select your favorite announcement type, see page 44.

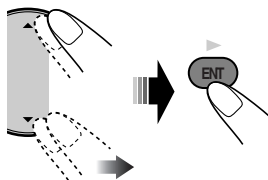
To activate the Announcement Standby Reception



- 2 Select “Mode”, then “Announce Standby”.



- 3 Select an announcement type you want to preset.



ANN indicator appears.

- If the ANN indicator lights up, Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If the ANN indicator flashes, Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
To activate, tune in to another service providing these signals. The ANN indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception

Select “Off” in step 3 above.
The ANN indicator goes off.

Tracing the same programme— Alternative Frequency Reception

You can keep listening to the same programme by activating the Alternative Frequency Reception.

- While receiving a DAB service:**
 When driving in an area where a DAB service cannot be received, this receiver automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- While receiving an FM RDS station:**
 When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this receiver automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 40.

To show the Dynamic Label Segment (DLS) information



Service frequency is displayed.



While listening to an ensemble that supports DLS....



Dynamic Label Segment (DLS—DAB radio text information) is displayed.

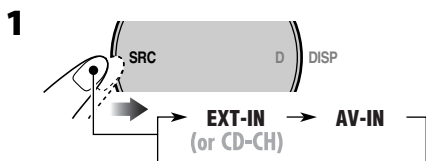
* Lights up when receiving a service providing Dynamic Label Segment (DLS)—DAB radio text information.

External component operations

Playing an external component

You can connect an external component to LINE IN plug and VIDEO IN plug on the rear, or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the KS-U57 Line Input Adapter (not supplied) or KS-U58 AUX Input Adapter (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).



AV-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN and/or VIDEO IN.

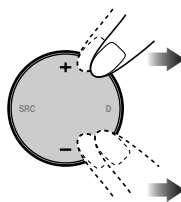
- To change the setting of AV INPUT, see page 41.

EXT-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- If “EXT-IN” does not appear, see page 41 and select the external input (EXT-IN).

2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 42.)

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

- You can also use the equivalent buttons on the remote controller in the operations below.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:

Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

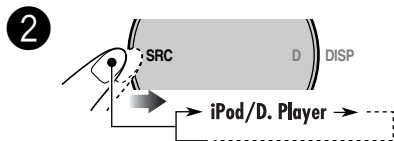
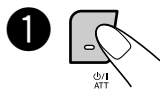
- Interface adapter for iPod**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Cautions:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

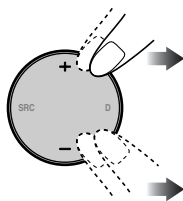
Preparations:

Make sure "Changer/iPod/D. player" is selected for the external input setting, see page 41.



Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused (iPod) or stopped (D. player) previously.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 42.)

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause (iPod) or stop (D. player) playback



To resume playback, press it again.

To fast-forward or reverse the track



To go to the next or previous tracks



Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu of the iPod or D. player.



Now the ▲/▼/◀/▶/⏪/⏩/⏮/⏭ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*1.

- 2 Select the desired menu.



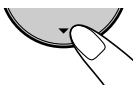
For iPod:

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔
Composers ↔ Genres ↔ Songs ↔

For D. player:

Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔
Track ↔ Genre ↔

- 3 Confirm the selection.



To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

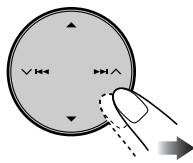
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until the desired track is confirmed.
- Holding ▼ |◀◀/▶▶| ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

*1 The menu selecting mode will be canceled:
 - If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.
 - When you confirm the selection of a track.

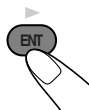
Selecting the playback modes

- 1 MENU

- 2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Repeat/Random playback.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
One:	Functions the same as “Repeat One” of the iPod or “Repeat Mode One” for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
All:	Functions the same as “Repeat All” of the iPod or “Repeat Mode All” for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

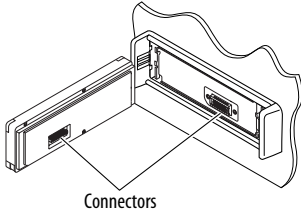
Mode	Plays at random
Album:	Functions the same as “Shuffle Album” of the iPod. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Song:	Functions the same as “Shuffle Songs” of the iPod. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
On:	Functions the same as “Random Play On” of the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the receiver turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.



To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this receiver may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.



Do not use the following discs:



Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	IK	Inupiak	RN	Kirundi
AB	Abkhazian	IN	Indonesian	RO	Rumanian
AF	Afrikaans	IS	Icelandic	RW	Kinyarwanda
AM	Ameharic	IW	Hebrew	SA	Sanskrit
AR	Arabic	JI	Yiddish	SD	Sindhi
AS	Assamese	JW	Javanese	SG	Sangho
AY	Aymara	KA	Georgian	SH	Serbo-Croatian
AZ	Azerbaijani	KK	Kazakh	SI	Singhalese
BA	Bashkir	KL	Greenlandic	SK	Slovak
BE	Byelorussian	KM	Cambodian	SL	Slovenian
BG	Bulgarian	KN	Kannada	SM	Samoaan
BH	Bihari	KO	Korean (KOR)	SN	Shona
BI	Bislama	KS	Kashmiri	SO	Somali
BN	Bengali, Bangla	KU	Kurdish	SQ	Albanian
BO	Tibetan	KY	Kirghiz	SR	Serbian
BR	Breton	LA	Latin	SS	Siswati
CA	Catalan	LN	Lingala	ST	Sesotho
CO	Corsican	LO	Laothian	SU	Sundanese
CS	Czech	LT	Lithuanian	SW	Swahili
CY	Welsh	LV	Latvian, Lettish	TA	Tamil
DZ	Bhutani	MG	Malagasy	TE	Telugu
EL	Greek	MI	Maori	TG	Tajik
EO	Esperanto	MK	Macedonian	TH	Thai
ET	Estonian	ML	Malayalam	TI	Tigrinya
EU	Basque	MN	Mongolian	TK	Turkmen
FA	Persian	MO	Moldavian	TL	Tagalog
FI	Finnish	MR	Marathi	TN	Setswana
FJ	Fiji	MS	Malay (MAY)	TO	Tonga
FO	Faroese	MT	Maltese	TR	Turkish
FY	Frisian	MY	Burmese	TS	Tsonga
GA	Irish	NA	Nauru	TT	Tatar
GD	Scots Gaelic	NE	Nepali	TW	Twi
GL	Galician	NO	Norwegian	UK	Ukrainian
GN	Guarani	OC	Occitan	UR	Urdu
GU	Gujarati	OM	(Afan) Oromo	UZ	Uzbek
HA	Hausa	OR	Oriya	VI	Vietnamese
HI	Hindi	PA	Panjabi	VO	Volapuk
HR	Croatian	PL	Polish	WO	Wolof
HU	Hungarian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	XH	Xhosa
HY	Armenian	PT	Portuguese	YO	Yoruba
IA	Interlingua	QU	Quechua	ZU	Zulu
IE	Interlingue	RM	Rhaeto-Romance		

More about this receiver

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the receiver, you can also turn on the power.

Selecting the sources

- When no disc is loaded in the receiver and Dual Zone is off, “DISC” cannot be selected.
- Without connecting to the CD changer or the DAB tuner, “CD-CH” or “DAB” cannot be selected.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate.

- If a DAB tuner is connected and Alternative Frequency Reception for DAB services (DAB AF) is activated, Network-Tracking Reception (AF Regional) is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See pages 17, 40, 44, 52.)
- TA Standby Reception and PTY Standby Reception will be temporarily canceled while listening to an AM station.

Disc operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to the music/picture/movie files and their file names.
- This receiver can also play back 8 cm discs.
- This receiver can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.
 - The first track will be skipped if a different type of file is detected first.
- When a disc has been loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc). Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source (without activating Dual Zone), disc play starts automatically.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This receiver can play back either MP3/WMA/WAV files, JPEG files, or MPEG/DivX files if a disc includes any of the files. Set the playback file type on AV Menu (page 37) before playing back a disc containing files of different kinds.
- Only for CD-R/CD-RW: This receiver can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some Recordable/Rewritable discs may not play back on this receiver because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
 - Discs are dirty or scratched.
 - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the receiver.
 - The pickup lens inside the receiver is dirty.
 - Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
 - Discs which are not written in UDF-Bridge Format (eg. UDF format or ISO format).
 - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.).
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.
- Do not use the following discs:
 - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
 - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.
 Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damages to discs.

Playing an MP3/WMA/WAV disc

- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This receiver can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA/WAV files.
- This receiver can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
 - Bit rate: MP3: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
 - Sampling frequency:
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for WMA)
44.1 kHz (for WAV)
 - Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav>).
 - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
 - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
 - Romeo: up to 128 characters
 - Joliet: up to 64 characters
 - Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This receiver can recognize the total of 3500 files, 250 folders (maximum of 999 files per folder).

- This receiver can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This receiver cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded in an unappropriated format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - WMA files recorded with MBR (Multiple Bit Rate) format.
 - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Playing a JPEG disc

- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution. (If a file has been recorded at a resolution of more than 640 x 480, it will take a long time to be shown.)
- This System can play only baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.
Baseline JPEG format: Used for digital cameras, web, etc.
Progressive JPEG format: Used for web.
Lossless JPEG format: An old type and rarely used now.
- If progressive or lossless JPEG files are played back, a black screen appears. In this case, stop playback and select a baseline JPEG file. Note that it may take a long time to select another file.

Playing an MPEG disc

- This receiver can play back MPEG 1/2 files with the extension code <.mpeg>.
- Audio stream should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer 2.

Playing an DivX disc

- This receiver can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper or lower).
- When making a disc, use the UDF bridge format.
- This unit supports DivX 6.x, 5.x, 4.x, and 3.11.
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720x480 pixels or less (30 fps) and 720x576 pixels or less (25 fps).
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- This unit does not support GMC (Global Motion Compression).
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- This receiver can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.

AV Menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
After you change any of these language settings, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.

- Even if “4:3PS [PAN SCAN]” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]” with some DVDs. This depends on how they are recorded.
- If you change the “Amplifier Gain” setting from “High Power” to “Low Power” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30”, the receiver automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30”.

Other main functions

- If you try to assign a title to a 31st station or 31st disc, “Name Full” flashes on the monitor. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc on the receiver.

DAB tuner operations

- PTY Standby Reception works for the DAB tuner only using a Dynamic PTY, but not a Static PTY.
- TA Standby Reception for FM RDS station and Road Traffic News Standby Reception for DAB cannot be set separately. The T/P button always work for the both Standby Reception modes when the DAB tuner is connected.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
 - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
 - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 18 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 35). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:










When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

On-screen guide icons

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

- : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages.
- : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages.
- : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views.
- : Playback
- : Pause
- : Forward Slow Motion Playback
- : Reverse Slow Motion Playback
- : Forward search
- : Reverse search

■ Sound modes (preset frequency level settings)

The list below shows the preset frequency level settings for each sound mode (see page 42).

Sound mode	Preset equalizing values						
	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	-02	-01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound cannot be heard from the speakers. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
		Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The receiver does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote controller does not work. 	Dual Zone is activated (see page 33). While Dual Zone is activated, remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Signal” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the source. • Starts playback on the external component connected to the VIDEO IN plug. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
FM/AM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSM automatic presetting does not work. 	Store stations manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static noise while listening to the radio. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable disc cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the disc with the component which you used for recording.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be recognized. 	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Not Support” appears on the monitor. 	Use a file format the unit supports (see page 4).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Disc Error” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert the disc correctly. • Insert a disc recorded and finalized.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Files” appears on the monitor. 	The disc does not have playable files. Insert a disc containing playable files.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No playback picture appears on the monitor. 	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No picture appears on the external monitor at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The edges of the picture are missing on the screen. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select an aspect other than “Zoom”. (See page 36) • Select “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]”. (See page 37.)
MP3/WMA/WAV playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a disc with tracks recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) • Add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to their file names.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noise is generated. 	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to files of different types.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A longer readout time is required. 	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tracks cannot be played back as you have intended them to play. 	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Elapsed playing time is not correct. 	This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name). 	This receiver can only display alphabets (A – Z, a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.	
JPEG/MPEG/DivX playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a disc with JPEG/MPEG/DivX files recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) • Add the extension code <.jpg>, <.mpg>, <.div> to their file names.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a disc into the magazine. • Insert disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Magazine” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the magazine.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset01” – “Reset07” appears on the monitor. 	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The CD changer does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
DAB tuner	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No DAB signal” appears on the monitor. 	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The DAB tuner does not work at all. 	Reconnect this receiver and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Antenna Power NG” appears on the monitor. 	Check the cords and connections.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. Player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Update the firmware version of the D. player. Charge the battery of the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Disconnect” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops while playing back iPod. 	The headphones are disconnected from iPod during playback. Restart the playback operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. “Error 01” appears on the monitor when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Files” or “No Track” appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 1” – “Reset 7” appears on the monitor. 	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 8” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:

Front: 50 W per channel

Rear: 50 W per channel

Continuous Power Output (RMS):

Front: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Rear: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)

Equalizer Control Range:

Frequencies: 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz

Level: ± 10 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

Line-In Level/Impedance:

1.5 V/20 k Ω load

Line-Out Level/Impedance:

2.5 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)

Output Impedance: 1 k Ω

Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:

2.0 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)

Color System: PAL

Video Input (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω

Video Output (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω

Other Terminals:

2nd AUDIO OUT, CD changer, Steering wheel remote input (OE REMOTE)

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:

FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz

AM: (MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz

(LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)

50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:

16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)

Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB

Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz

Stereo Separation: 35 dB

Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[MW Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 μ V

Selectivity: 35 dB

[LW Tuner]

Sensitivity: 50 μ V

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)

Number of Channels: 2 channels (stereo)

Frequency Response:

DVD fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz

fs=192 kHz: 16 Hz to 88 000 Hz

VCD, CD: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz

Dynamic Range: 93 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 95 dB

Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit

MP3 : Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

WMA: Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

MONITOR SECTION

Screen: 3.5-inch wide liquid crystal panel

Number of Pixels: 224 640 pixels

Drive Method:

TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format

Color System: PAL

GENERAL

Power Requirement:

Operating Voltage:

DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)

Grounding System: Negative ground

Allowable Operating Temperature:

0°C to +40°C

Dimensions (W \times H \times D):

Installation Size (approx.):

182 mm \times 52 mm \times 160 mm

Panel Size (approx.):

188 mm \times 58 mm \times 12 mm

Mass (approx.):

1.9 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Haben Sie PROBLEME mit dem Betrieb?

Bitte setzen Sie Ihr Gerät zurück

Siehe Seite Zurücksetzen des Geräts

Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de fonctionnement?

Réinitialisez votre appareil

Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

Hebt u PROBLEMEN met de bediening?

Stel het apparaat terug

Zie de pagina met de paragraaf Het apparaat terugstellen

JVC



JVC KD-AVX2

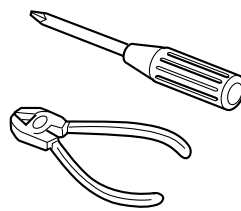
Installation/Connection Manual

Einbau/Anschlußanleitung

Manuel d'installation/raccordement

Handleiding voor installatie/aansluiting

LVT1455-006A
[E]



0106MNMMDWJEIN
EN, GE, FR, NL

©2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This receiver is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any receiver in locations where:
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

DEUTSCH

Dieses Gerät ist für einen Betrieb in **elektrischen Anlagen mit 12 V Gleichstrom und (-) Erdung ausgelegt**. Verfügt Ihr Fahrzeug nicht über diese Anlage, ist ein **Spannungsinverter** erforderlich, der bei JVC Autoradiohändler erworben werden kann.

WARNHINWEISE

- Installieren Sie Geräte **NICHT** an Orten:
 - an denen sie die Bewegungen des Lenkrads und des Ganghebels behindern könnten. Anderenfalls führt diese Behinderung möglicherweise zu ernstesten Verkehrsunfällen.
 - an denen sie den Betrieb von Sicherheitseinrichtungen, z.B. Airbags, behindern könnten. Anderenfalls führt diese Behinderung möglicherweise zu ernstesten Verkehrsunfällen.
 - an denen sie die Sicht behindern.
- Betätigen Sie beim Fahren **KEINE** Geräte. Anderenfalls führt dies möglicherweise zu einem ernstesten Verkehrsunfall.
- Der Fahrer darf während der Fahrt auf keinen Fall auf den Monitor sehen. Anderenfalls könnte der Fahrer abgelenkt werden und einen Unfall verursachen.
- Der Fahrer darf während der Fahrt keine Kopfhörer tragen. Es ist gefährlich, die Außengeräusche während der Fahrt zu blockieren.
- Wenn Sie den Receiver während des Fahrens bedienen müssen, beobachten Sie den Verkehr vor Ihnen sehr genau. Anderenfalls werden Sie möglicherweise in einen ernstesten Verkehrsunfall verwickelt.
- Ist die Feststellbremse nicht angezogen, erscheint blinkend die Meldung „Parking Brake“ auf dem Monitor, und es erfolgt keine Bildwiedergabe.
 - Diese Warnung wird nur angezeigt, wenn das Feststellbremskabel an das in das Fahrzeug eingebaute Feststellbremssystem angeschlossen ist.

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.

AVERTISSEMENTS

- N'INSTALLEZ aucun élément dans les endroits suivants:
 - où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
 - où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les airbags car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.
 - où il peut gêner la visibilité.
- NE COMMANDEZ pas l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit. Regarder le moniteur lorsqu'on est au volant réduit considérablement la vigilance du conducteur et multiplie les risques d'accident.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas utiliser un casque d'écoute quand il est au volant. Il est en effet dangereux de bloquer les sons de la circulation routière pendant la conduite d'un véhicule.
- Si vous avez besoin de commander l'autoradio pendant que vous conduisez, continuez de regarder droit devant vous ou vous risquez de causer un accident de la circulation.
- Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas mis, "Parking Brake" apparaît sur le moniteur et l'image de lecture n'apparaît pas.
 - Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

NEDERLANDS

Dit apparaat mag worden gebruikt bij elektrische systemen die werken op **12 V gelijkstroom met negatieve aarding**. Als uw auto niet is uitgerust met een dergelijk systeem, is een spanningsomzetter vereist. Dit instrument kan worden aangeschaft bij JVC car audio dealers.

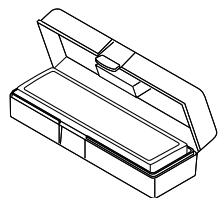
WAARSCHUWING

- Installeer **GEEN** enkele eenheid op een plaats waar:
 - dit een gevaar vormt voor het bedienen van het stuur of de versnelling, aangezien elke belemmering van de juiste werking van het stuur en de versnelling tot een ongeluk kan leiden.
 - dit een gevaar vormt voor de airbag, aangezien elke belemmering van de werking van de airbag tot een dodelijk ongeluk kan leiden.
 - dit het uitzicht belemmert.
- Bedien **GEEN** enkele eenheid terwijl u uw handen aan het stuur nodig hebt, aangezien dit anders tot een ongeluk kan leiden.
- De bestuurder moet tijdens het autorijden niet naar het beeldscherm kijken. Als de bestuurder tijdens het rijden toch naar het beeldscherm kijkt, kan dit tot onverantwoord rijgedrag leiden en ernstige verkeersongelukken veroorzaken.
- De bestuurder mag geen hoofdtelefoon tijdens het autorijden opzetten. Autorijden is uitermate gevaarlijk indien u geluiden van buitenaf niet kunt horen.
- Als u de eenheid wilt bedienen terwijl u aan het rijden bent, is het zaak dat u eerst de weg voor u verkent, aangezien dit anders tot een ongeluk kan leiden.
- "Parking Brake" knippert op de monitor indien de handrem niet is aangetrokken en er wordt nu geen beeld getoond.
 - Deze waarschuwing verschijnt uitsluitend indien het handremdraad met het in de auto ingebouwde handremstelsel is verbonden.

Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this receiver. After checking them, please set them correctly.

A / B
Hard case/Control panel
Etui/Schalttafel
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande
Behuizing/Bedieningspaneel



G
Washer (ø5)
Unterlegscheibe (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)
Sluitring (ø5)



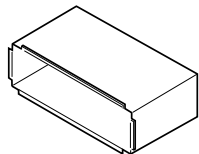
I
Mounting bolt—
M5 x 20 mm
Befestigungsschraube—
M5 x 20 mm
Boulon de montage—
M5 x 20 mm
Bevestigingsbout—
M5 x 20 mm



H
Lock nut (M5)
Sicherungsmutter (M5)
Ecrou d'arrêt (M5)
Contra-moer (M5)



C
Sleeve
Halterung
Manchon
Huis



D
Trim plate
Frontrahmen
Plaque d'assemblage
Sierplaat



J
Rubber cushion
Gummipuffer
Amortisseur en
caoutchouc
Rubberdop



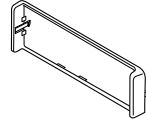
K
Handles
Griffe
Poignées
Hendels



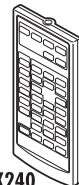
Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Les pièces suivantes sont fournies avec cet appareil. Après vérification, veuillez les placer correctement.

E
Power cord
Stromkabel
Cordon d'alimentation
Stroomkabel



L
Remote controller
Fernbedienung
Télécommande
Afstandsbediening



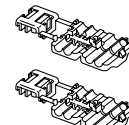
M
Battery
Batterie
Pile
Batterij



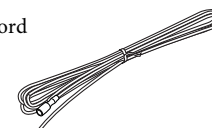
Lijst van onderdelen die u bij installatie en aansluiting nodig hebt

De volgende onderdelen worden bij het apparaat geleverd. Installeer ze op de juiste wijze, nadat u ze hebt gecontroleerd.

F
Crimp connectors
Crimpsluitingen
Raccord à sertir
Krimpaansluitingen



N
Reverse gear signal extension cord
Rückwärtsgangsignal-
Verlängerungskabel
Cordon prolongateur pour le
signal de marche arrière
Verlengingsnoer achteruitrijsignaal



INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this receiver correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear panel to maintain proper ventilation when installed.
- You cannot install the receiver on the car which has any obstacles in the space shown in "Required space for installation" below.

**Required space for installation /
Erforderlicher Platz für Einbau / Espace
nécessaire pour l'installation / Voor de
installatie vereiste ruimte**

EINBAU (IM ARMATURENBRETT)

Die folgende Abbildung zeigt einen typischen Einbau. Bei irgendwelchen Fragen oder wenn Sie Informationen hinsichtlich des Einbausatzes brauchen, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler oder ein Unternehmen das diese Einbausätze vertreibt.

- Sind Sie sich über den richtigen Einbau des Geräts nicht sicher, lassen Sie es von einem qualifizierten Techniker einbauen.
- Sicherstellen, dass nicht das Gebläse an der Rückseite verdeckt wird, um richtige Ventilation beim Einbau zu gewährleisten.
- Sie können nicht den Receiver in einem Fahrzeug einbauen, wo sich Hindernisse im „Erforderlicher Platz für Einbau“ wie unten gezeigt befinden.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

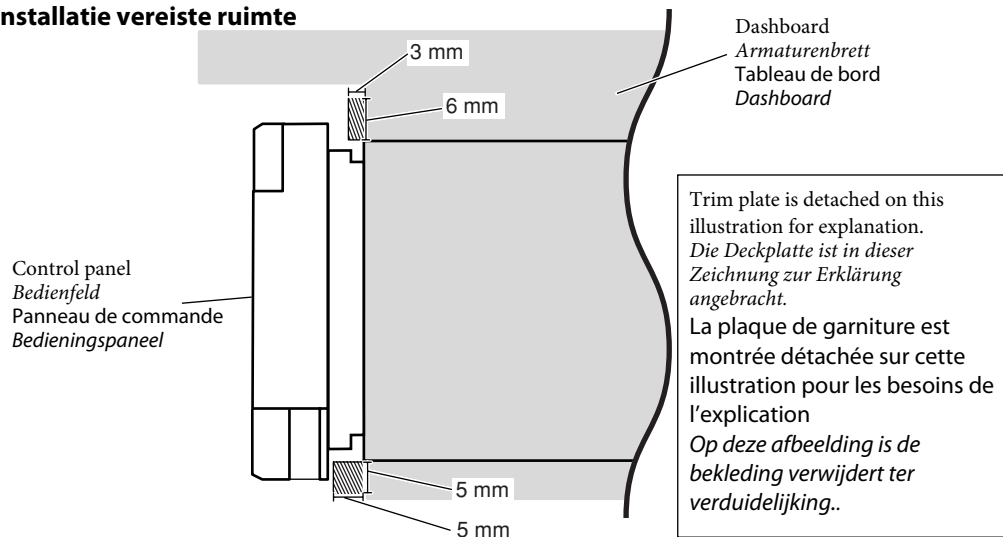
L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.
- Lors de l'installation assurez-vous de ne pas bloquer le ventilateur à l'arrière afin de permettre une ventilation correcte.
- Vous ne pouvez pas installer l'autoradio dans une voiture avec des obstacles situés dans la zone marquée en gris dans l'illustration "Espace nécessaire pour l'installation" ci-dessous.

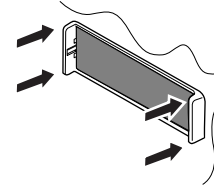
INSTALLATIE (INBOUW IN HET DASHBOARD)

Op de volgende afbeelding kunt u zien hoe de installatie, normaal gesproken, in zijn werk gaat. Neem bij vragen of voor meer bijzonderheden over inbouwpakketten contact op met uw JVC car audio dealer of een dealer of een bedrijf dat inbouwpakketten levert.

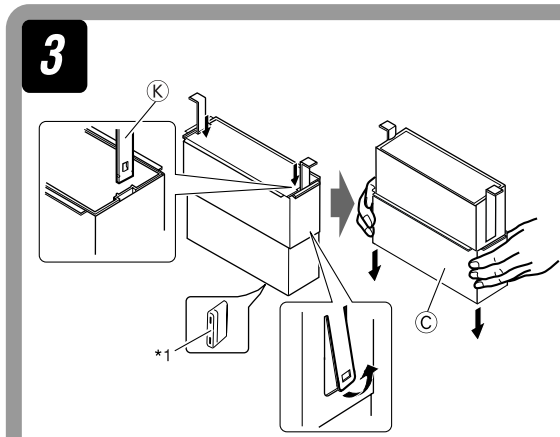
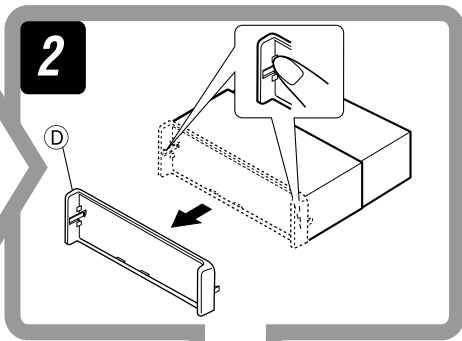
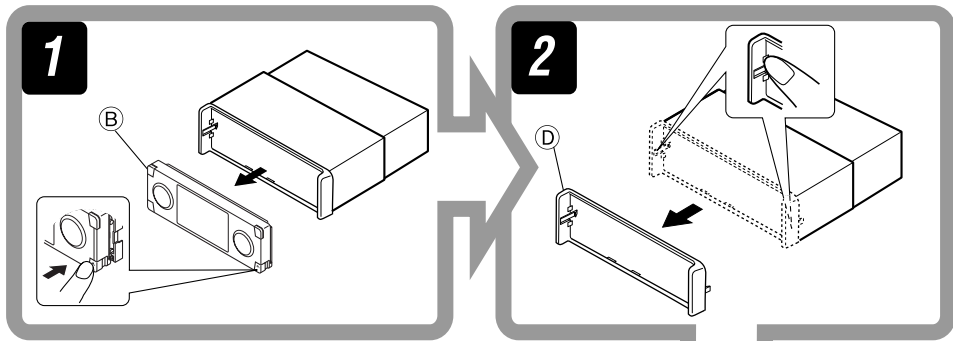
- Als u niet zeker weet hoe u dit apparaat moet installeren, kunt u dit beter door een daartoe gekwalificeerde technicus laten doen.
- Zorg dat u de ventilator op het achterpaneel niet blokkeert en zo de werking verhindert.
- U kunt de receiver niet in een auto installeren als er sprake is van obstakels in de ruimte aangegeven onder het kopje "Voor de installatie vereiste ruimte", hieronder.



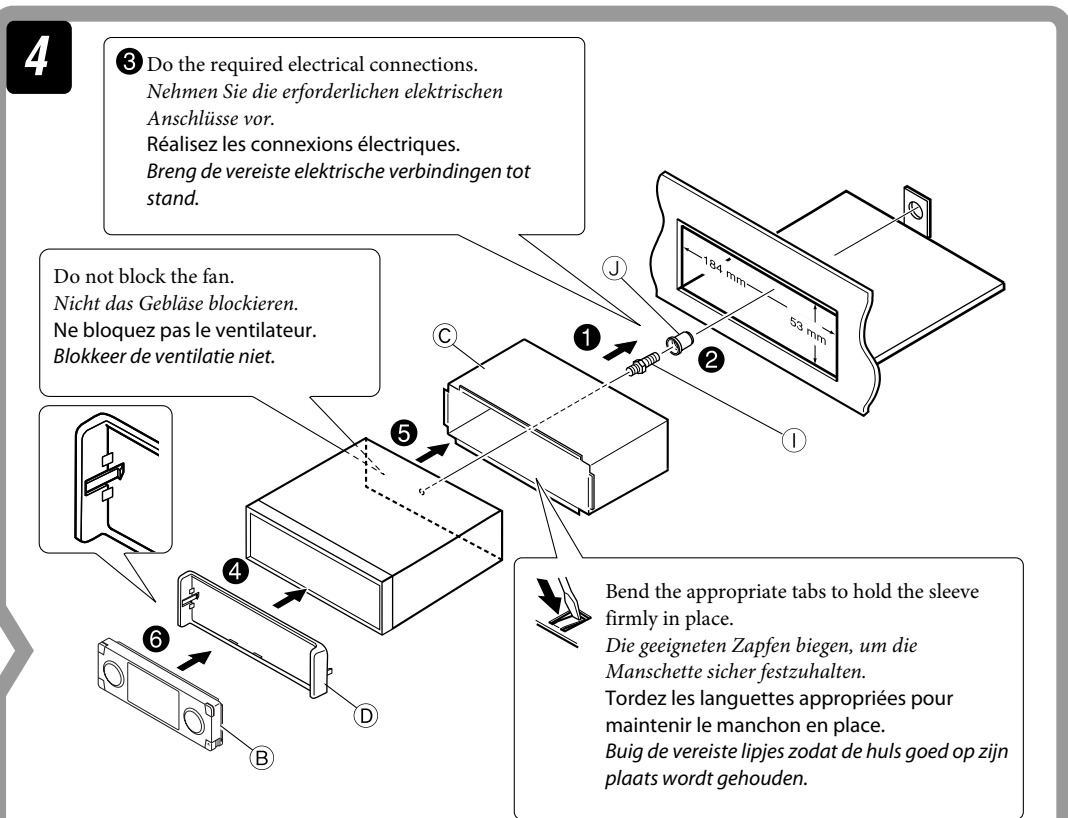
Caution when installing / Vorsicht bei der Installation / Précautions lors de l'installation / Voorzorgen voor het installeren



- Fit the receiver into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.
- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration).
Setzen Sie den Receiver in die Montagemannschette, indem Sie die vier Ecken der Deckplatte verwenden.
- Drücken Sie **NICHT** auf die Platte selber (in der Abbildung schraffiert).
- Fixez l'autoradio sur le manchon de montage en utilisant les quatre coins de la plaque de garniture.
- NE POUSSEZ PAS sur le panneau (en gris sur l'illustration).
- Gebruik de vier hoeken van de afwerkplaat om de receiver in de bevestigingshuls te plaatsen.
- Druk **NIET** op het paneel zelf (het grijze gedeelte in de afbeelding).



*1 When you stand the receiver, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
 *1 Beim Aufstellen des Geräts darauf achten, daß die Sicherung auf der Rückseite nicht beschädigt wird.
 *1 Lorsque vous mettez l'appareil à la verticale, faire attention de ne pas endommager le fusible situé sur l'arrière.
 *1 Wanneer u het apparaat rechtop zet, moet u erop letten dat u de zekering aan de achterkant niet beschadigt.

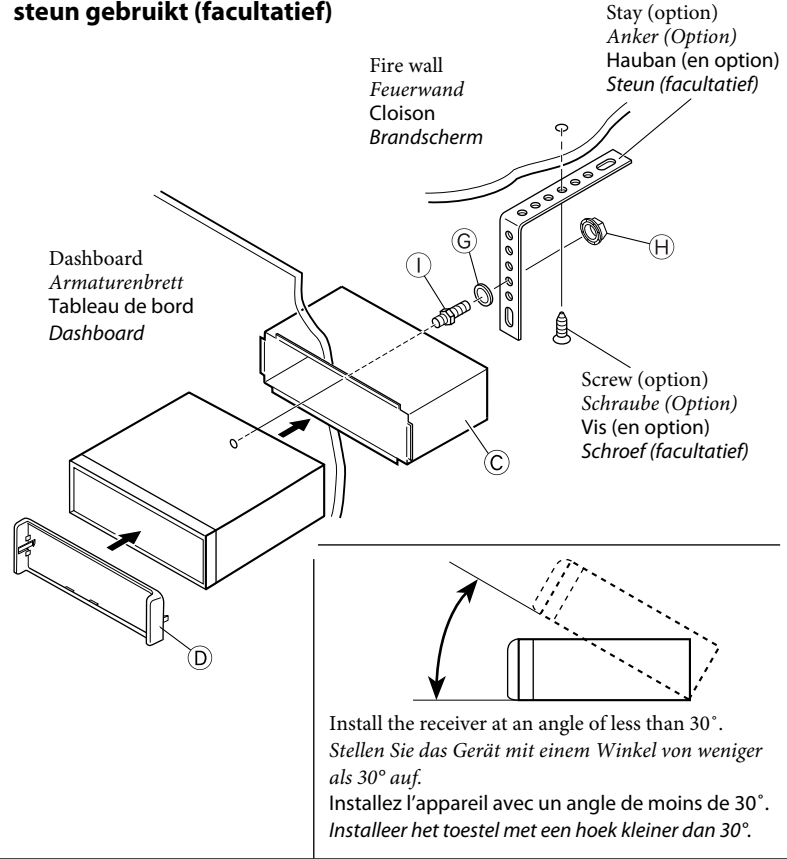


3 Do the required electrical connections.
 Nehmen Sie die erforderlichen elektrischen Anschlüsse vor.
 Réalisez les connexions électriques.
 Breng de vereiste elektrische verbindingen tot stand.

Do not block the fan.
 Nicht das Gebläse blockieren.
 Ne bloquez pas le ventilateur.
 Blokkeer de ventilatie niet.

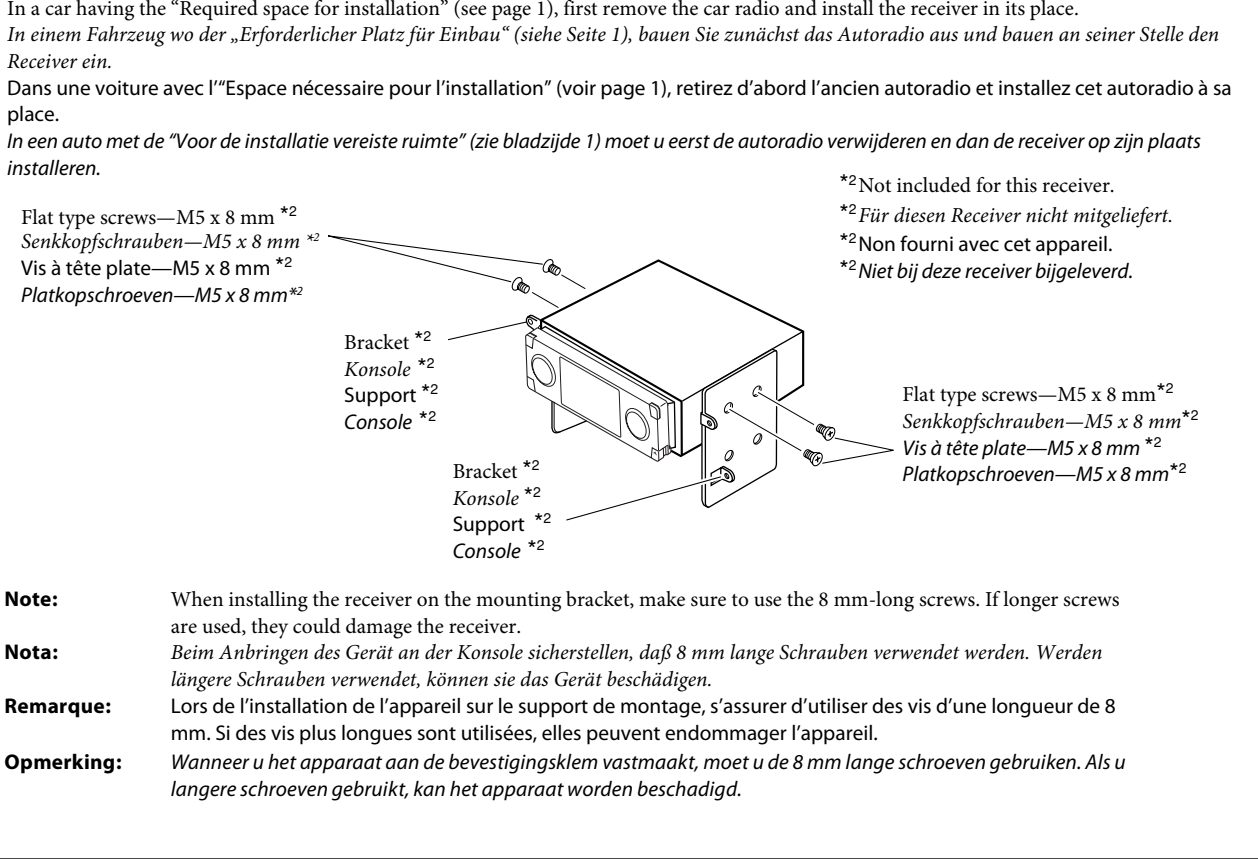
Bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place.
 Die geeigneten Zapfen biegen, um die Manschette sicher festzuhalten.
 Tordez les languettes appropriées pour maintenir le manchon en place.
 Buig de vereiste lipjes zodat de huls goed op zijn plaats wordt gehouden.

When using the optional stay / Beim Verwenden der Anker-Option / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option / Wanneer u de steun gebruikt (facultatief)



Install the receiver at an angle of less than 30°.
 Stellen Sie das Gerät mit einem Winkel von weniger als 30° auf.
 Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°.
 Installeer het toestel met een hoek kleiner dan 30°.

When installing the receiver without using the sleeve / Beim Einbau des Geräts ohne Halterung / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sans utiliser de manchon / Wanneer u het apparaat zonder huis installeert



In a car having the "Required space for installation" (see page 1), first remove the car radio and install the receiver in its place.
 In einem Fahrzeug wo der „Erforderlicher Platz für Einbau“ (siehe Seite 1), bauen Sie zunächst das Autoradio aus und bauen an seiner Stelle den Receiver ein.
 Dans une voiture avec l' "Espace nécessaire pour l'installation" (voir page 1), retirez d'abord l'ancien autoradio et installez cet autoradio à sa place.
 In een auto met de "Voor de installatie vereiste ruimte" (zie bladzijde 1) moet u eerst de autoradio verwijderen en dan de receiver op zijn plaats installeren.

*2 Not included for this receiver.
 *2 Für diesen Receiver nicht mitgeliefert.
 *2 Non fourni avec cet appareil.
 *2 Niet bij deze receiver bijgeleverd.

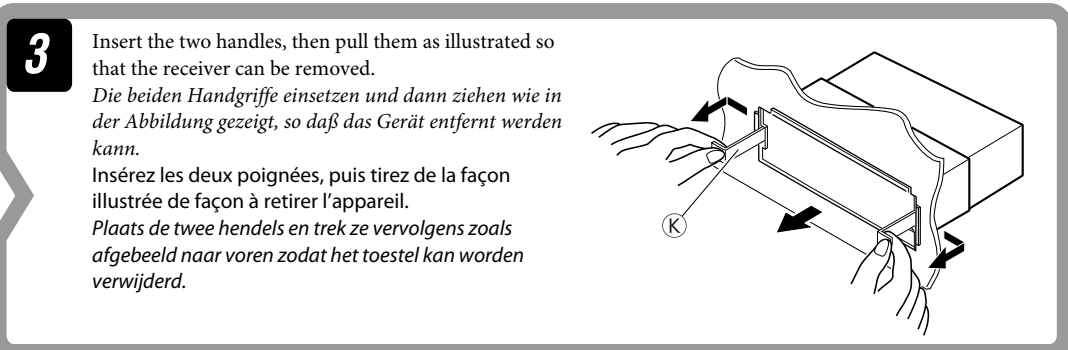
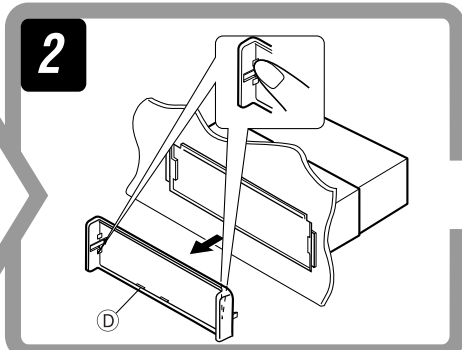
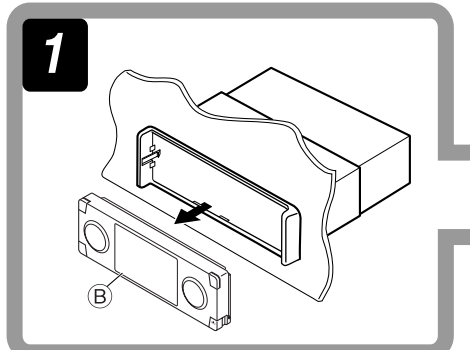
Note: When installing the receiver on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the receiver.
Nota: Beim Anbringen des Gerät an der Konsole sicherstellen, daß 8 mm lange Schrauben verwendet werden. Werden längere Schrauben verwendet, können sie das Gerät beschädigen.
Remarque: Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm. Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.
Opmerking: Wanneer u het apparaat aan de bevestigingsklem vastmaakt, moet u de 8 mm lange schroeven gebruiken. Als u langere schroeven gebruikt, kan het apparaat worden beschadigd.

Removing the receiver
 Before removing the receiver, release the rear section.

Ausbau des Geräts
 Vor dem Ausbau des Geräts den hinteren Teil freigeben.

Retrait de l'appareil
 Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.

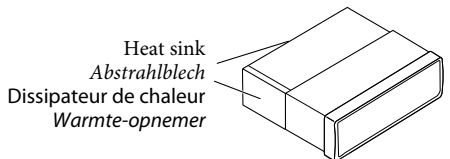
Retrait de l'appareil
 Voordat u het apparaat verwijdert, moet u het achtergedeelte losmaken.



3 Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the receiver can be removed.
 Die beiden Handgriffe einsetzen und dann ziehen wie in der Abbildung gezeigt, so daß das Gerät entfernt werden kann.
 Insérez les deux poignées, puis tirez de la façon illustrée de façon à retirer l'appareil.
 Plaats de twee hendels en trek ze vervolgens zoals afgebeeld naar voren zodat het toestel kan worden verwijderd.

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the receiver.
 • **Be sure to ground this receiver to the car's chassis again after installation.**
Notes:
 • Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
 • It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 43 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
 • To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
 • The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this receiver.



ELEKTRISCHE ANSCHLÜSSE

Zur Vermeidung von Kurzschlüssen empfehlen wir, daß Sie den negativen Batterieanschluß abtrennen und alle elektrischen Anschlüsse herstellen, bevor das Gerät eingebaut wird.
 • **Sicherstellen, daß das Gerät nach dem Einbau a Chassis des Fahrzeugs geerdet wird.**
Hinweise:
 • Die Sicherung mit einer der entsprechenden Nennleistung ersetzen. Brennt die Sicherung häufig durch, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.
 • Es wird empfohlen, Lautsprecher mit einer Maximalleistung von mehr als 50 W anzuschließen (sowohl hinten als auch vorne, mit einer Impedanz von **4 Ω bis 8 Ω**). Wenn die Maximalleistung weniger als 50 W beträgt, stellen Sie „Amplifier Gain“ anders ein, um Schäden an den Lautsprechern zu vermeiden (siehe Seite 43 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).
 • Zur Vermeidung eines Kurzschlusses die Anschlußklemmen der NICHT VERWENDETEN Leitungen mit Isolierklebeband umwickeln.
 • Das Abstrahlblech wird nach dem Gebrauch sehr heiß. Beim Ausbau des Geräts darauf achten, das Abstrahlblech nicht zu berühren.

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

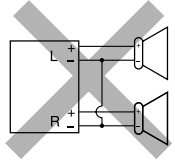
Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.
 • **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**
Remarques:
 • Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
 • Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre **4 Ω et 8 Ω**). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amplifier Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 43 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
 • Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.
 • Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.

ELEKTRISCHE VERBINDINGEN

Om kortsluiting te voorkomen adviseren wij u om de minpool van de accu los te maken en alle elektrische verbindingen tot stand te brengen voordat u het apparaat in de auto installeert.
 • **Aard dit toestel beslist weer op het chassis van de auto na het installeren.**
Opmerkingen:
 • Vervang de zekering door een exemplaar met het aangegeven vermogen. Als de zekering vaak doorslaat, moet u uw JVC car audio dealer raadplegen.
 • Sluit bij voorkeur luidsprekers met een hoger maximaal vermogen dan 50 W (zowel achter als voor, met een impedantie van **4 Ω t/m 8 Ω**) aan. Indien het maximale vermogen lager dan 50 W is, moet u "Amplifier Gain" in de andere stand stellen zodat de luidsprekers niet kunnen worden beschadigd (zie bladzijde 43 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).
 • Om kortsluiting te voorkomen, moet u de aansluitklemmen van ONGEBRUIKTE gekleurde draden met isolatieband bedekken.
 • De warmte-opnemer kan na gebruik erg heet worden. Raak de warmte-opnemer niet aan wanneer u dit apparaat van zijn plaats haalt.

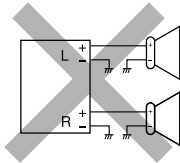
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the receiver will be seriously damaged.
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



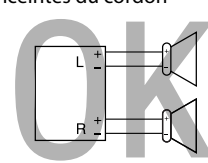
VORSICHTSMASREGELN beim Anschließen der Stromversorgung und Lautsprecher:

- Die Lautsprecherleitungen des Netzkabels NICHT an der Autobatterie anschließen, da sonst das Gerät schwer beschädigt wird.
- VOR dem Anschließen der Lautsprecherleitungen des Spannungsversorgungskabels an die Lautsprecher, die Lautsprecherverdrahtung in Ihrem Auto überprüfen.



PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.
- AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.

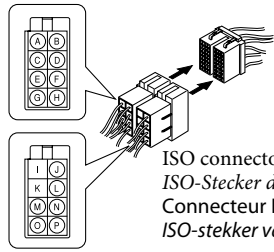


VOORZORGSMAATREGELEN bij het verbinden van de stroomkabeldraad met de speakers:

- Verbind de speakerdraden van de stroomkabel NIET met de accu van de auto; als u dit wel doet, zal het apparaat ernstige schade oplopen.
- Verbind de speakerdraden van de stroomkabel NIET met de accu van de auto; als u dit wel doet, zal het apparaat ernstige schade oplopen.

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit dem ISO-Steckverbinder ausgestattet ist / Si votre voiture est équipée d'un connecteur ISO / Indien uw auto een ISO-aansluiting heeft

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Schließen Sie die ISO-Steckverbinder an, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
- Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.
- Verbind de ISO-stekkers zoals afgebeeld.



From the car body
Von der Fahrzeugkarosserie
De la carrosserie de la voiture
Van het chassis van de auto

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
ISO-Stecker des mitgelieferten Stromkabels
Connecteur ISO pour le cordon d'alimentation fourni
ISO-stekker van het bijgeleverde spanningsnoer

View from the lead side
Von der Kabelseite aus gesehen
Vue à partir du côté des fils
Gezien vanaf de spanningstoevoerkant

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Bei bestimmten VW-/Audi- oder Opel- (Vauxhall-) Fahrzeugen / Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall) / Voor bepaalde VW/Audi en Opel (Vauxhall) auto's

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this receiver.

Es kann erforderlich sein, die Verdrahtung des mitgelieferten Stromkabels zu modifizieren, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.

- Wenden Sie sich vor dem Einbau dieses Receivers an Ihre Auto-Fachwerkstatt.

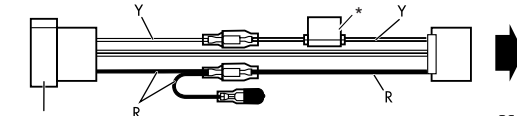
Vous aurez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.

- Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.

U moet mogelijk de bedrading van het bijgeleverde spanningsnoer als afgebeeld veranderen.

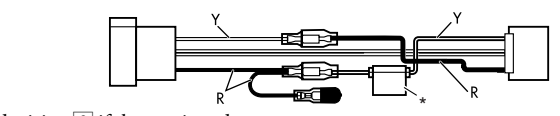
- Raadpleeg een erkend autogarage alvorens deze receiver te installeren.

Original wiring / Originalverdrahtung / Câblage original / Oorspronkelijke bedrading



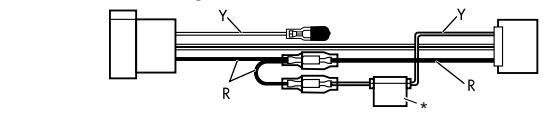
ISO connector
ISO-Steckverbinder
Connecteur ISO
ISO-aansluiting

Modified wiring 1 / Modifizierte Verdrahtung 1 / Câblage modifié 1 / Veranderde bedrading 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the receiver does not turn on.
Verwenden Sie die modifizierte Verdrahtung 2 wenn der Receiver nicht einschaltet.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension.
Gebruik methode 2 voor het veranderen van de bedrading indien de receiver niet wordt ingeschakeld.

Modified wiring 2 / Modifizierte Verdrahtung 2 / Câblage modifié 2 / Veranderde bedrading 2



- * Choking coil / Drosselspule / Bobine d'arrêt / Onderbrekingsspoel
- Y: Yellow / Gelb / Jaune / Geel
- R: Red / Rot / Rouge / Rood

B Connections without using the ISO connectors / Anschlüsse ohne Verwendung der ISO-Steckverbinder / Connexions sans l'utilisation des connecteurs ISO / Verbinden zonder gebruik van ISO-stekkers

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this receiver.

The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- 1 Cut the ISO connector.
- 2 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 3 Connect the aerial cord.
- 4 Finally connect the wiring harness to the receiver.

Vor dem Anschließen: Die Verdrahtung im Fahrzeug sorgfältig überprüfen. Falsche Anschlüsse können ernsthafte Schäden am Gerät hervorrufen.

Die Leiter des Stromkabels und die Leiter des Anschlusses im Fahrzeug können sich farblich unterscheiden.

- 1 Schneiden Sie den ISO-Steckverbinder auf.
- 2 Die farbigen Adern des Stromkabels in der Reihenfolge anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.
- 3 Das Antennenkabel anschließen.
- 4 Die Kabelbäume am Gerät anschließen.

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.

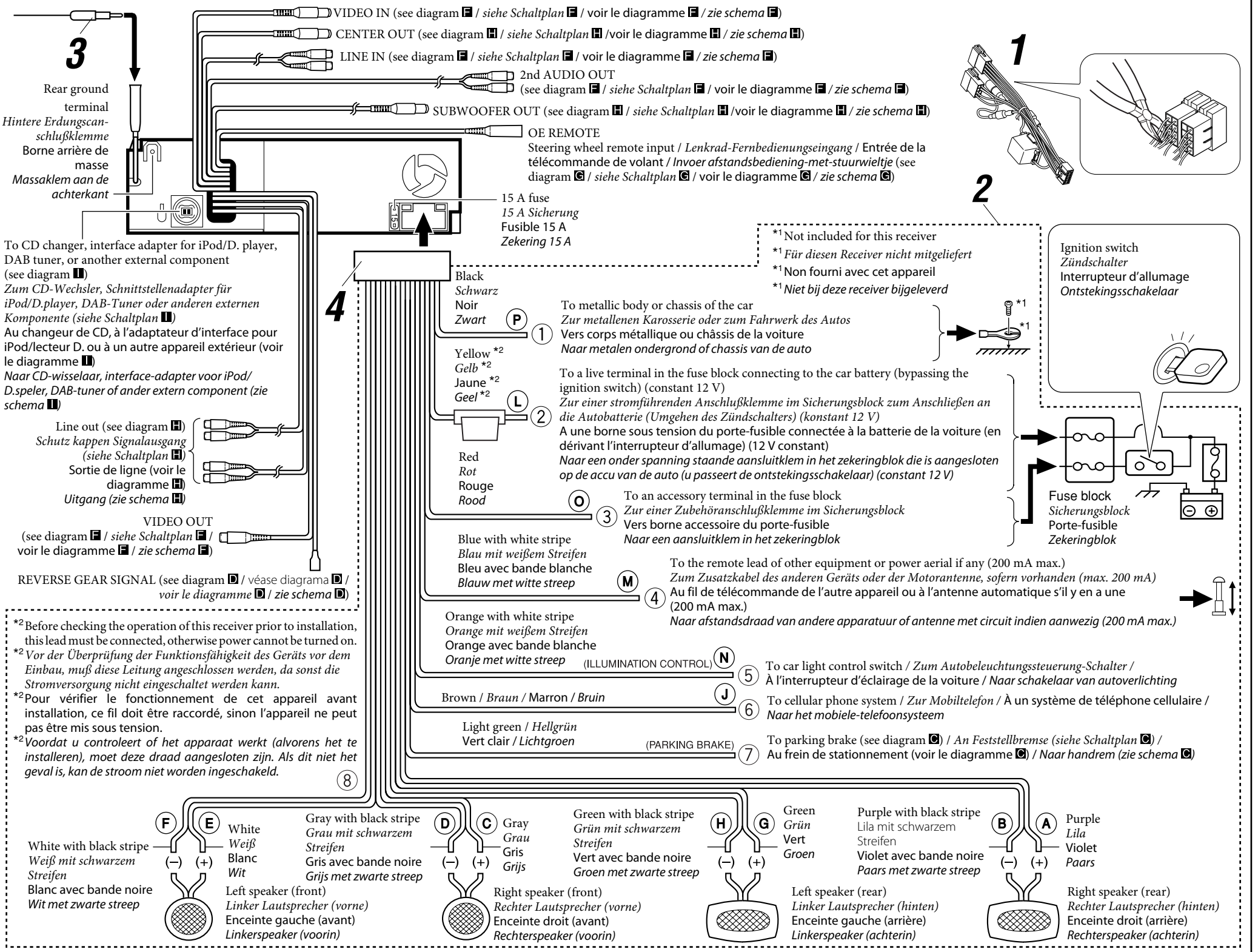
Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

- 1 Coupez le connecteur ISO.
- 2 Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
- 3 Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
- 4 Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.

Alvorens de verbindingen tot stand te brengen: Moet u de bedrading in de auto zorgvuldig. Het apparaat kan door verkeerde verbindingen ernstige schade oplopen.

De draden van het stroomnoer verschillen mogelijk van kleur met de aansluitingen op het chassis van de auto.

- 1 Knip de ISO-stekker af.
- 2 Verbind de gekleurde draden van het stroomnoer in de afbeelding hieronder aangegeven volgorde.
- 3 Sluit de antenne aan.
- 4 Verbind de draadbundel daarna met het apparaat.



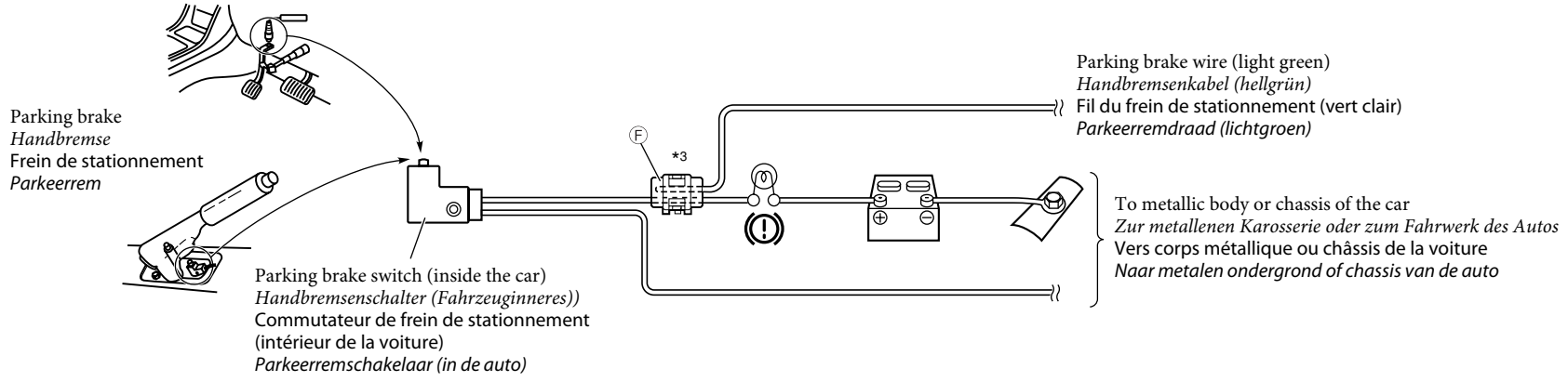
C Connecting the parking brake wire / Anschluss des Handbremsenkabels / Connexion du cordon de frein de stationnement / De parkeerremdraad aansluiten

Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.

Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento al sistema de freno de estacionamiento del automóvil.

Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement.

Sluit de parkeerremdraad op het parkeerremstelsysteem van de auto aan.

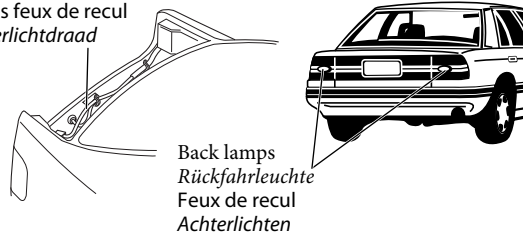


D Connecting the back camera lead / Anschließen der Rückfahrkamera / Connexion du fil de la caméra de recul / Verbinden van het draad van een achteruitkijkcamera (REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL)

Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk.

Suchen Sie die Rückfahrleuchtenleitung im Kofferraum.
Localisez le fil des feux de recul dans le coffre.
Zoek het draad van het achterlicht in de kofferbak.

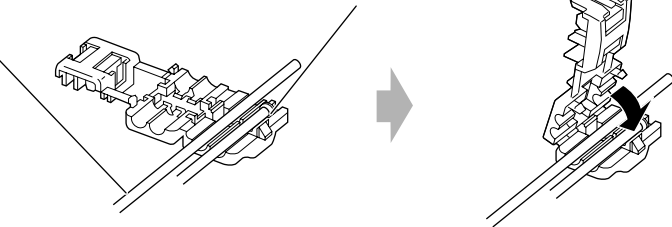
Back lamp lead
Rückfahrleuchtenleitung
Fil des feux de recul
Achterlichtdraad



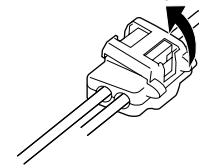
E Connecting the crimp connector*3 / Anschließen des Crimpanschlusses*3 / Connexion de la cosse sertie*3 / Verbinden van de krimpaansluiting*3

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
Verbinden des Batterie- und des Handbremsenkabels halters.
Fil connectant la batterie et l'interrupteur de frein de stationnement.
Draad voor aansluiting van de accu op de parkeerremschakelaar.

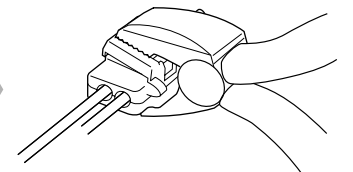
Attach the parking brake wire to this point.
Legen Sie das Handbremsenkabel hier ein.
Attachez le fil du frein de stationnement ici.
Bevestig op dit punt het draad van de parkeerrem.



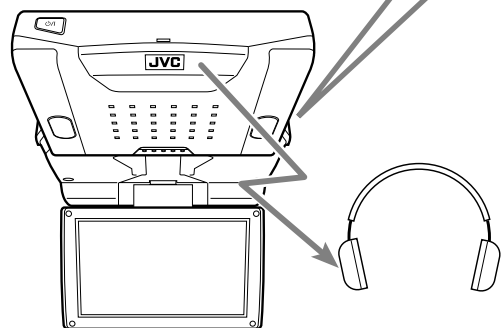
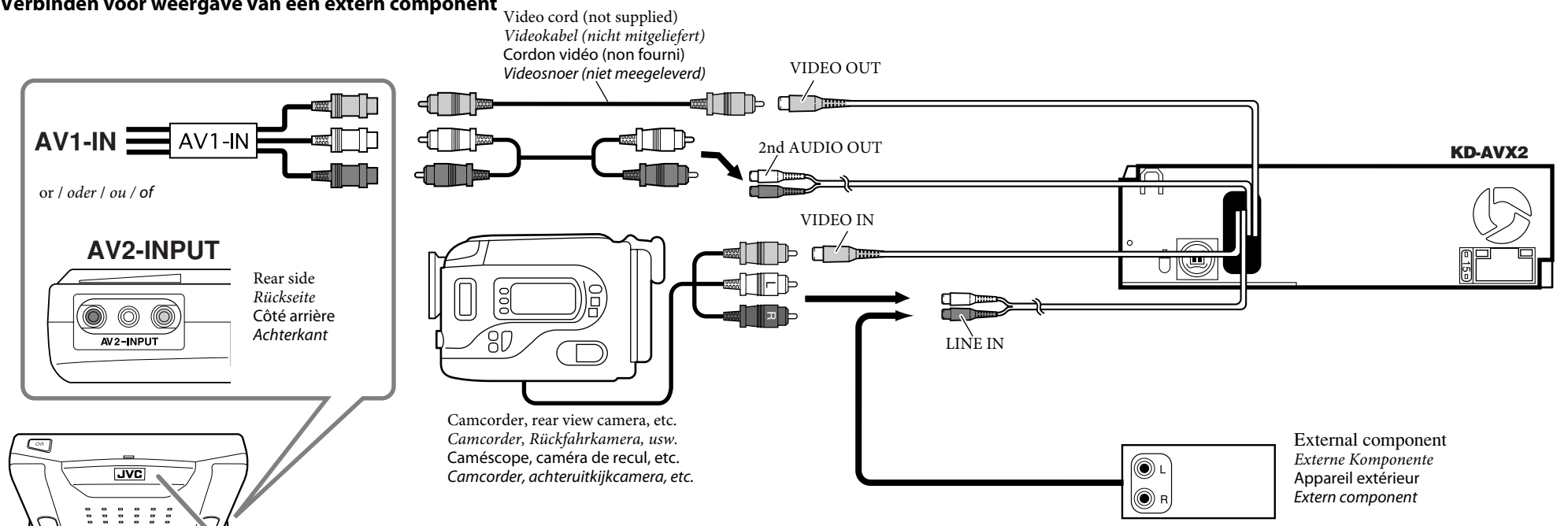
Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
Kontaktieren des Metallteils des Quetschverbinders mit den Kabeln im Inneren.
Mettez en contact la partie métallique de la cosse à sertir et des fils intérieurs.
Zorg ervoor dat het metalen gedeelte van de krimp in contact komt met de interne draden.



Pinch the crimp firmly.
Drücken Sie den Quetschverbinder fest zusammen.
Pincez la cosse à sertir fermement.
Knijp stevig in de krimp.



F Connections for external component playback / Anschlüsse für externe Komponente / Connexions pour un appareil de lecture extérieur / Verbinden voor weergave van een extern component



KS-HP2
Cordless headphones (not supplied) *4
Drahtlose Kopfhörer (nicht mitgeliefert) *4
Casque d'écoute sans fil (non fourni) *4
Snoerloze koptelefoon (niet meegeleverd) *4

KV-MR9010
9-INCH WIDESCREEN MONITOR (not supplied)
9-ZOLL-BREITBILDMONITOR (nicht mitgeliefert)
MONITEUR COULEUR À ÉCRAN LARGE DE 9 POUÇES (non fourni)
9-INCH BREEDBEELD-MONITOR (niet bijgeleverd)

*4 To listen to disc playback sound while in Dual Zone operations (see page 33 of INSTRUCTIONS).
*4 Zum Abhören von Disc-Audio im Dual-Zone-Betrieb (siehe Seite 33 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).
*4 Pour écouter le son de lecture des disque lors de l'utilisation du mode Dual Zone (voir page 33 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
*4 Om in Dual Zone naar een disk te luisteren (zie bladzijde 33 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).

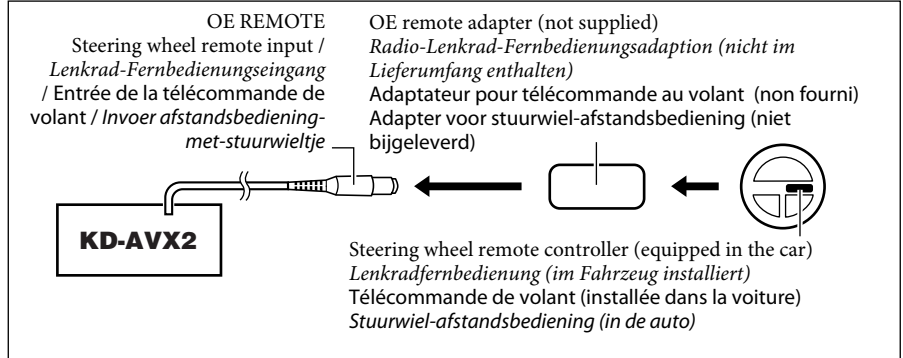
G Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Anschluß an die Lenkradfernbedienung / Connexion de la télécommande de volant / Verbinden met de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this receiver using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit einer Lenkradferndienung ausgestattet ist, können Sie damit diesen Receiver steuern. Hierfür ist ein für Ihr Fahrzeug passender Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption von JVC (nicht im Lieferumfang enthalten) erforderlich. Für weitere Einzelheiten wenden Sie sich an Ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour la connexion, un adaptateur de télécommande exclusif (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est requis. Pour en savoir plus, consultez le revendeur autoradio auprès duquel vous avez acheté cet autoradio.

Indien uw auto een stuurwiel-afstandsbediening heeft, kunt u deze receiver met die afstandsbediening bedienen. Hiervoor heeft u echter een JVC adapter (niet bijgeleverd) nodig die geschikt is voor de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening van uw auto. Raadpleeg uw JVC car audio dealer voor details.



H Connecting the external amplifiers / Anschließen der externen Verstärker / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs / Verbinden van externe versterkers

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this receiver.

For amplifier only:

- Disconnect the speakers from this receiver, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this receiver unused.
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the receiver. See page 43 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

Sie können einen Verstärker anschließen, um Ihre Autostereoanlage zu erweitern.

- Schließen Sie das Fernbedienungskabel (blau mit weißem Streifen) an das Fernbedienungskabel des anderen Geräts an, so daß es über dieses Gerät gesteuert werden kann.

Nur für den Verstärker:

- Die Lautsprecher von diesem Gerät abtrennen und am Verstärker anschließen. Die Lautsprecherleitungen dieses Geräts unbenutzt lassen.
- Sie können den eingebauten Verstärker abschalten und die Audiosignale nur zu dem(n) externen Verstärker(n) ausgeben, um scharfen Ton zu erhalten und Hitzestau im Receiver zu vermeiden. Siehe Seite 43 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG (separate Druckschrift).

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour améliorer votre système autoradio.

- Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.

Pour l'amplificateur seulement:

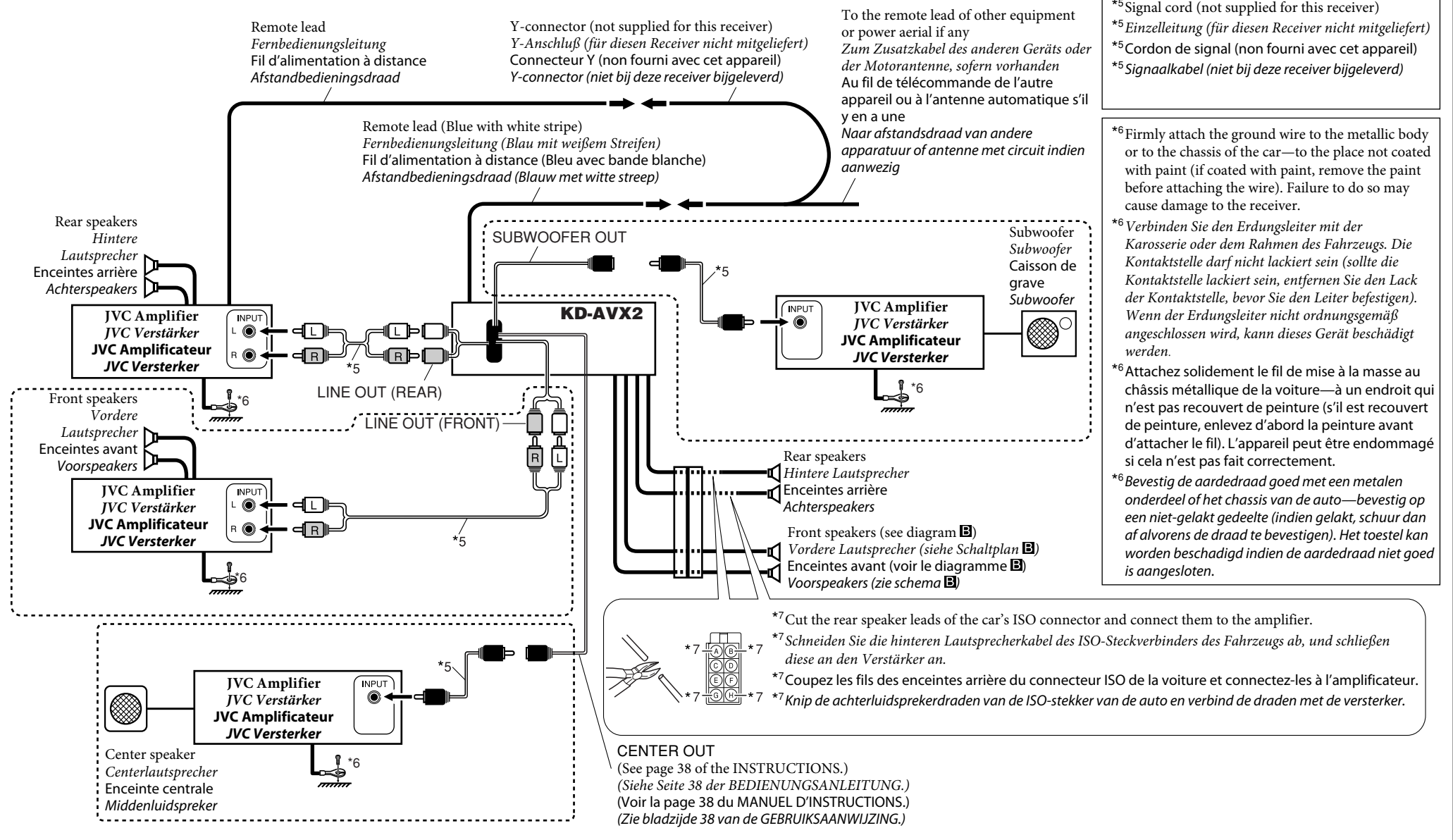
- Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.
- Vous pouvez désactiver l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement à un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs afin d'obtenir un son clair et pour éviter un échauffement interne de l'appareil. Référez-vous à la page 43 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS (volume séparé).

Het is mogelijk om uw autostereosysteem uit te breiden door een versterker aan te sluiten.

- Verbind de externe kabel (blauw met witte streep) met de externe kabel van het andere apparaat zodat deze op afstand vanaf deze apparaat kan worden bediend.

Alleen voor een versterker:

- Koppel de speakers van dit apparaat los en verbind ze aan de versterker. Gebruik de speakerdraden van dit apparaat niet.
- U kunt de ingebouwde versterker uitschakelen en de audiosignalen uitsluitend direct naar een externe versterker(s) sturen voor een helder geluid en om te voorkomen dat er te veel warmte in de receiver wordt opgehoopt. Zie bladzijde 43 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING (afzonderlijk boekje).



Connecting external components / Anschließen der externen Komponenten / Connexion des appareils extérieurs / Verbinden van externe componenten

CAUTION:

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the receiver is turned off.

ACHTUNG:

Vor dem Anschließen der externen Komponenten sicherstellen, dass das Gerät ausgeschaltet ist.

PRECAUTION:

Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

WAARSCHUWING:

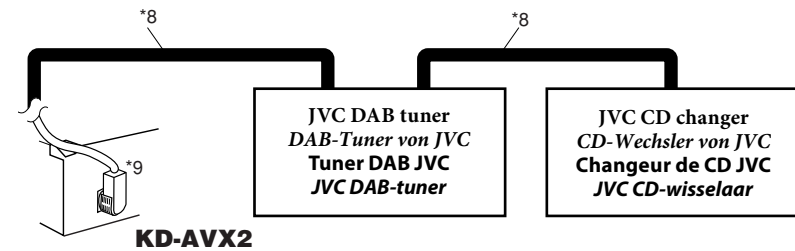
Controleer alvorens de externe componenten aan te sluiten dat dit toestel beslist is uitgeschakeld.

CD changer and DAB tuner / CD-Wechsler und DAB-Tuner / Changeur de CD et tuner DAB / CD-wisselaar en DAB-tuner

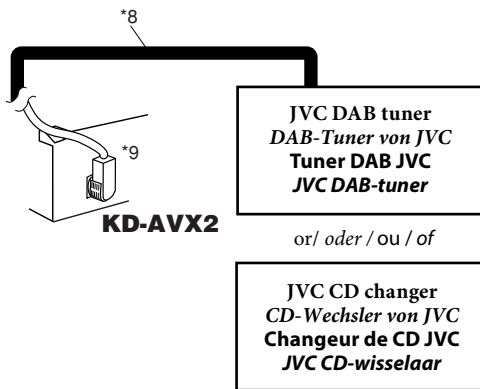
- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 41 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Stellen Sie "External Input" auf "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (siehe Seite 41 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG). / Réglez "External Input" sur "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (voir la page 41 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS). / Stel "External Input" op "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (zie bladzijde 41 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).

You can connect both components in series as illustrated below.

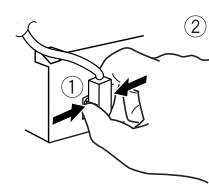
Sie können beide Komponenten in Reihe anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.
Vous pouvez connecter les deux appareils en série comme montré sur l'illustration.
U kunt beide componenten, zoals hieronder afgebeeld, aansluiten.



- *8 Signal cord supplied with your JVC CD changer or DAB tuner
- *8 Anschließen des für CD-Wechsler oder DAB-Tuner von JVC mitgelieferten Kabels
- *8 Cordon de signal fourni avec votre changeur de CD ou Tuner DAB JVC
- *8 Aansluitsnoer bijgeleverd voor uw JVC CD-wisselaar of DAB-tuner



- *9 To disconnect the CD/DAB connector
- *9 Zum Abtrennen des CD/DAB-Steckverbinders
- *9 Pour déconnecter le connecteur CD/DAB
- *9 Ontkoppelen van de CD/DAB-stekker



- Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
- Halten Sie die Steckverbinder-Oberseite fest (①) und ziehen Sie ihn heraus (②).
- Tenez fermement le connecteur par-dessus (①) et tirez vers l'extérieur (②).
- Tartu luujasti liittimen päähän (①), ja vedä se ulos (②).

Apple iPod®/JVC D. player and DAB tuner / Apple iPod®/JVC D. player und DAB-Tuner / iPod® Apple/Lecteur D. JVC et tuner DAB / Apple iPod®/JVC D. speler en DAB-tuner

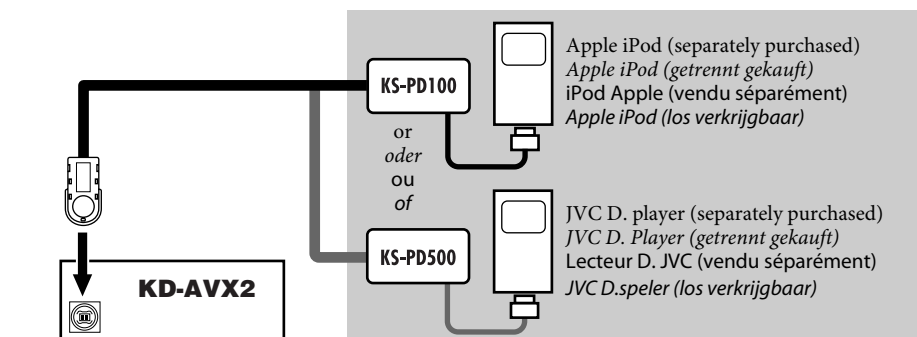
- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 41 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Stellen Sie "External Input" auf "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (siehe Seite 41 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG). / Réglez "External Input" sur "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (voir la page 41 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS). / Stel "External Input" op "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (zie bladzijde 41 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).

The iPod*10 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

Sie können diese Komponenten in Reihe anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt. Der iPod*10 oder D. Player kann mit einem Schnittstellenadapter angeschlossen werden (nicht mitgeliefert)—KS-PD100 (für iPod) oder KS-PD500 (für D. Player).

Le iPod*10 ou le lecteur D. peut être connecté en utilisant un adaptateur d'interface (non fourni)—KS-PD100 (pour iPod) ou KS-PD500 (pour le lecteur D.).

U kunt deze componenten als hieronder afgebeeld aansluiten. De iPod*10 of D. speler kan middels een interface-adaptor (niet bijgeleverd) worden aangesloten—KS-PD100 (voor iPod) of KS-PD500 (voor D. speler).



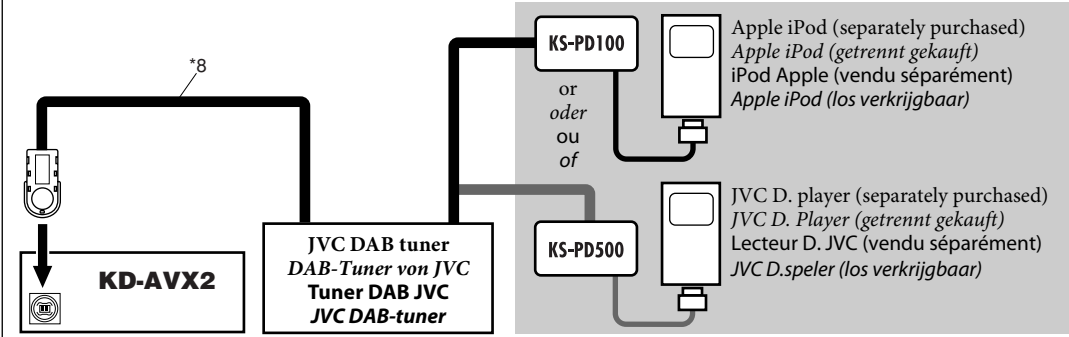
- *10 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- *10 iPod ist ein Warenzeichen von Apple Computer, Inc., eingetragen in den USA und anderen Ländern.
- *10 iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Computer, Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.
- *10 iPod is een handelsmerk van Apple Computer, Inc., geregistreerd in de V.S. en andere landen.

You can also connect both DAB tuner and interface adapter in series as illustrated below.

Sie können auch sowohl DAB-Tuner als auch Schnittstellenadapter in Serie anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.

Vous pouvez aussi connecter à la fois le tuner DAB et l'adaptateur d'interface en série comme montré sur l'illustration ci-dessous.

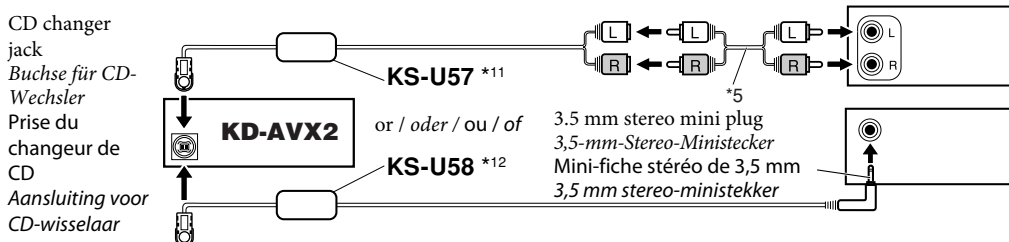
U kunt tevens, zoals hieronder afgebeeld, zowel een DAB-tuner als interface-adaptor tegelijk aansluiten.



- CD changer jack
- Buchse für CD-Wechsler
- Prise du changeur de CD
- Aansluiting voor CD-wisselaar

Other external component / Andere externe Komponenten / Autre appareil extérieur / Ander extern component

- Set "External Input" to "External Input" (see page 41 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Stellen Sie "External Input" auf "External Input" (siehe Seite 41 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG). / Réglez "External Input" sur "External Input" (voir la page 41 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS). / Stel "External Input" op "External Input" (zie bladzijde 41 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).



- External component
- Externe Komponente
- Appareil extérieur
- Extern component

- *11 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this receiver)
- *11 Line-Eingangsadapter KS-U57 (für diesen Receiver nicht mitgeliefert)
- *11 Adaptateur pour entrée de ligne KS-U57 (non fourni avec cet appareil)
- *11 Lijningsadapter KS-U57 (niet bij deze receiver bijgeleverd)
- *12 Aux Input Adapter KS-U58 (optionally purchased)
- *12 Aux-Eingangsadapter KS-U58 (getrennt gekauft)
- *12 Adaptateur pour entrée auxiliaire KS-U58 (vendu séparément)
- *12 Aux-ingangsadapter KS-U58 (los verkrijgbaar)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- The fuse blows.**
 - * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- Power cannot be turned on.**
 - * Is the yellow lead connected?
- No sound from the speakers.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- Sound is distorted.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- Noise interfere with sounds.**
 - * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- Receiver becomes hot.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- This receiver does not work at all.**
 - * Have you reset your receiver?

FEHLERSUCHE

- Die Sicherung brennt durch.**
 - * Sind die roten und schwarzen Leitungen richtig angeschlossen?
- Stromversorgung kann nicht eingeschaltet werden.**
 - * Ist die gelbe Leitung angeschlossen?
- Ton verzerrt.**
 - * Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?
 - * Sind die (-) Anschlussklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?
- Störgeräusche im Klang.**
 - * Ist die hintere Erdungsklemme mit kürzeren und dickeren Kabeln an das Fahrzeugchassis angeschlossen?
- Gerät wird heiß.**
 - * Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?
 - * Sind die (-) Anschlussklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?
- Dieser Receiver funktioniert überhaupt nicht.**
 - * Haben Sie einen Reset am Receiver vorgenommen?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- Le fusible saute.**
 - * Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils raccordés correctement?
- L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
 - * Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?
- Pas de son des enceintes.**
 - * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?
- Le son est déformé.**
 - * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
 - * Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- Interférence avec les sons.**
 - * La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?
- L'appareil devient chaud.**
 - * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
 - * Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
 - * Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

PROBLEMEN OPLOSSEN

- De zekering slaat door.**
 - * Zijn de rode en de zwarte draden op de juiste manier aangesloten?
- De stroom kan niet worden ingeschakeld.**
 - * Is de gele draad aangesloten?
- Er komt geen geluid uit de speakers.**
 - * Is de uitgaande speakerdraad kortgesloten?
- Het geluid wordt vervormd.**
 - * Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geerd?
 - * Zijn de "-" polen van de linker- en de rechtspeakers gemeenschappelijk geerd?
- Geluid wordt door ruis gestoord.**
 - * Is de aarde-aansluiting achter met gebruik van kortere en dikkere snoeren met het chassis van de auto verbonden?
- Het apparaat raakt verhit.**
 - * Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geerd?
 - * Zijn de "-" polen van de linker- en de rechtspeakers gemeenschappelijk geerd?
- Receiver werkt helemaal niet.**
 - * Heeft u de receiver teruggesteld?

JVC



ENGLISH

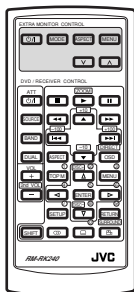
ESPAÑOL

FRANÇAIS

DVD/CD RECEIVER RECEPTOR CON DVD/CD RÉCEPTEUR DVD/CD

KD-AVX2

EXAD



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 10.
Para cancelar la demostración en pantalla, consulte la página 10.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 10.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

INSTRUCTIONS

MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES

MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.	ADVARSEL : Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til strålingen.	WARNING : Synlig och osynlig laserstråling när den öppnas och spårren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen.	VARO : Avlåtessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet allina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)
--	---	---	--

For safety....

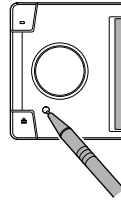
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

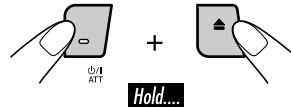
How to reset your unit



This will reset the microcomputer. Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

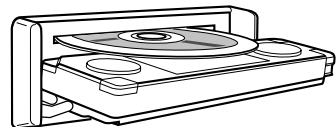
How to forcibly eject a disc

If a disc cannot be recognized by the receiver or cannot be ejected, ejects the disc as follows.



“NO EJECT?” (or “EJECT OK?”) and “EMERGENCY EJECT?” appear on the monitor.

Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select “EMERGENCY EJECT?”, then press ENT.



- If this does not work, reset your receiver.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

WARNINGS:

- **DO NOT** install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.

Characters shown on the monitor

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), the following characters will be used to show the various information on the monitor.

- You can also use the following characters to assign titles (see page 45).

À	Â	Ã	Ä	Å
Ä	Æ	œ	Č	Ć
Ç	É	È	Ê	Ë
Ĝ	Í	Ì	Î	Ī
Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Õ
Ö	Ø	Ř	Ŕ	Š
Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û
Ü	Ý	Ž	Ż	ß
Ɔ	Ɔ	Ɔ	Ɔ	Ɔ
ı	u	ö	space	

á	à	â	ä	å
ä	æ	œ	č	ć
ç	é	è	ê	ë
ě	ĝ	í	ì	î
ï	ñ	ň	ó	ó
ô	ó	ö	õ	ø
ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś
ş	ú	ù	û	ü
ú	w	ý	ÿ	ž
z	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ
ł	ł	ı	ıj	space

Upper and lower cases

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	"	#	\$	%
&	'	()	*
+	,	-	.	/
:	;	<	=	>
?	@	_	`	ı
ı	£	€	α	space

Numbers and symbols

Introduction—Playable discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs—12 cm and 8 cm—on this receiver:

- **DVD Video:** Recorded in PAL color system with Region Code “2” (see below).
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played.
- **DVD Audio**
- **Video CD (VCD)/audio CD**
- **MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG1,2/DivX:** Recorded either in CD-R/CD-RW or DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM.
 - CD-R/CD-RW: Compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM: Compliant with UDF-Bridge Format*¹.
- *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (DVD Video format only) discs. However the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.*
- *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

Discs cannot be played back

DVD-ROM (data), DVD-RAM, DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

*¹ *A hybrid file system used to provide compatibility with ISO 9660 for accessing any type of files on the disc. (UDF stands for Universal Disk Format.)*

“DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This receiver can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “2”.

Examples:



If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code



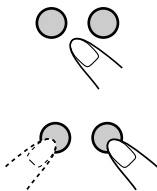

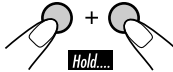
“Region Error” appears on the monitor on the unit and the disc ejects.

“REGION CODE ERROR” also appears on the external monitor.

How to read this manual

The following methods are used to make the explanations simple and easy-to-understand:

- Some related tips and notes are explained in “More about this receiver” (see pages 58 – 62).
- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations as follows:

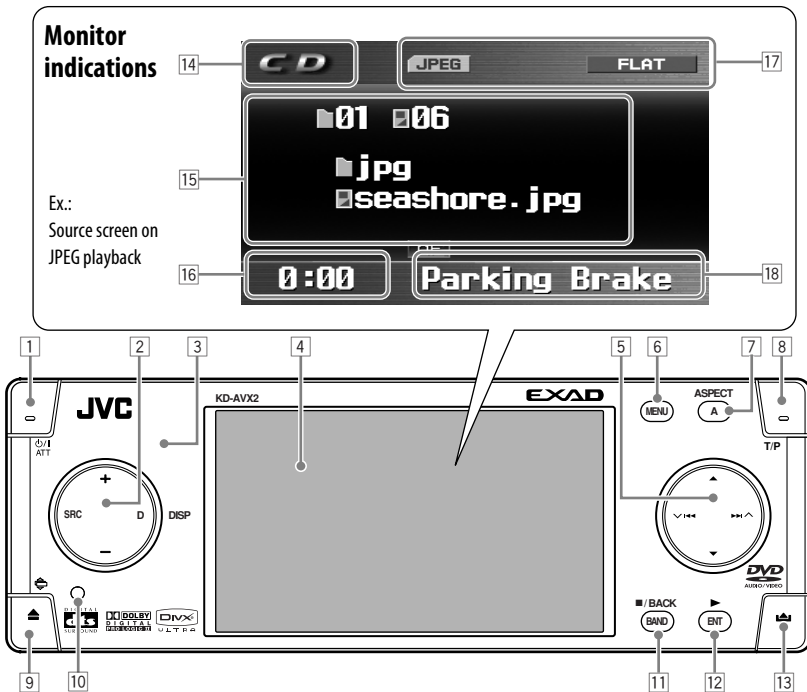
	<p>Press briefly.</p>
	<p>Press repeatedly.</p>
	<p>Press either one.</p>
	<p>Press and hold until your desired response begins.</p>
	<p>Press and hold both buttons at the same time.</p>

Contents

Control panel	6
Remote controller — RM-RK240	7
Getting started.....	10
Radio operations	12
FM RDS operations.....	15
Disc operations.....	18
Unique disc functions.....	23
Disc surround playback	25
On-Screen disc operations	27
Other disc operations	31
Dual Zone operations	33
AV Menu settings.....	34
Other main functions	45
CD changer operations	46
DAB tuner operations.....	48
External component operations	53
iPod®/D. player operations	54
Maintenance	56
Language codes.....	57
More about this receiver	58
Troubleshooting	63
Specifications	67

Control panel

Parts identification



- 1 ϕ /I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
- 2 • +/- (volume +/-) button
 - SRC (source) button
 - DISP (D: display) button
- 3 Remote Sensor
- 4 Monitor
- 5 • \blacktriangle (up) / \blacktriangledown (down) buttons
 - \blacktriangledown \blacktriangleleft / \blacktriangleright \blacktriangle buttons
- 6 MENU button
- 7 ASPECT (A) button
- 8 T/P button
- 9 • \blacktriangle (eject) button
 - \blacktriangle (angle) button
- 10 Reset button
- 11 • BAND button
 - BACK button
 - \blacksquare (stop) button

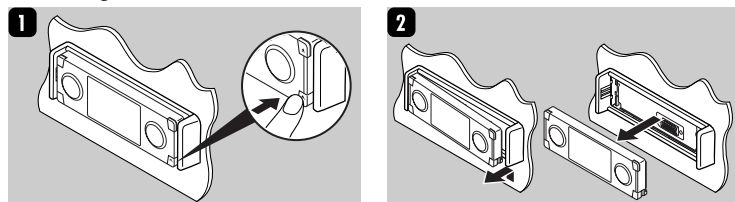
- 12 • ENT (enter) button
 - \blacktriangleright (play) button
- 13 \blacktriangle (control panel release) button

Monitor indications

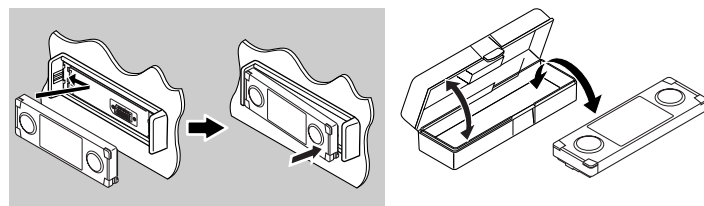
- 14 Source indicator
- 15 Main display
- 16 Clock display
 - Also indicates volume level when adjusting volume.
- 17 Status indicators
- 18 Alert information area
 - Also indicates volume level bar when adjusting volume.

How to detach/attach the control panel

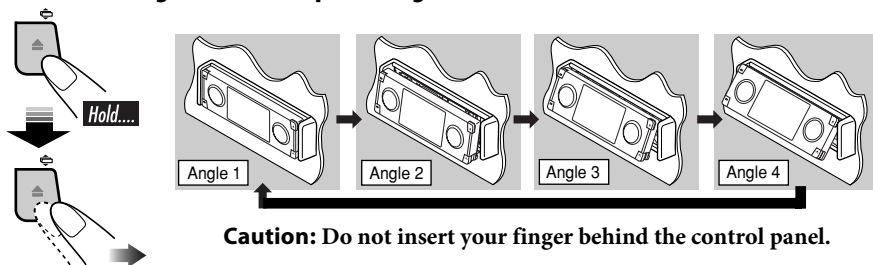
Detaching...



Attaching...

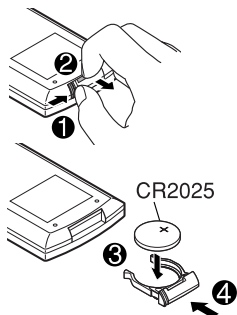


How to change the control panel angle



Remote controller — RM-RK240

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the receiver. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.



- Do not expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

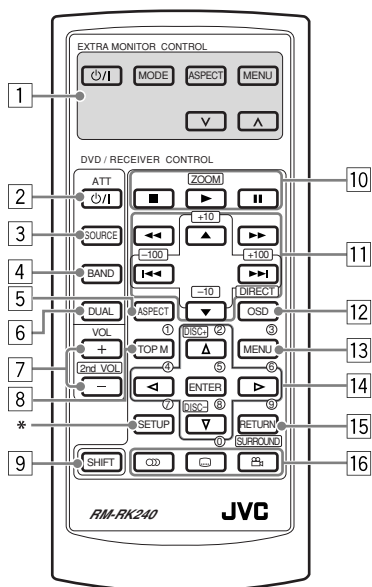
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accidents.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
 - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire.
 - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
 - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
 - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

The receiver is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features



* Not used as the SETUP button for this model.

IMPORTANT:

If Dual Zone is activated (see page 33), the remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.

MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons*1
 - O/I (standby/on), MODE, ASPECT, MENU, ∇ and \wedge .

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 O/I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
 - Turns on and off the power and also attenuates the sound.
- 3 SOURCE button
 - Selects the source.
- 4 BAND button
 - Selects the FM/AM/DAB bands.
- 5 ASPECT button
 - Change the aspect of the monitor on the unit when playing back DVD, VCD, etc.
- 6 DUAL button
 - Activate and deactivate Dual Zone.
- 7 VOL + / - buttons
 - Adjusts the volume level.
 - Also function as 2nd VOL +/- buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 8 TOP M (menu) button*2
 - Display the DVD, DVD Audio, DivX, and VCD*3 disc menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10 Basic disc operation buttons*4:
 - (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - ► (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 11 Advanced disc operation/tuner operation buttons*5

For advanced disc operations:

 - \blacktriangle / \blacktriangledown
 - Select the titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio), or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG/DivX).
 - \lll / \ggg (reverse skip/forward skip)
 - \lll / \ggg (reverse search/forward search)*6

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset stations.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
 - Functions to search for stations.
Press briefly: auto search
Press and hold: manual search

For DAB tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset channels.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
 - Changes the services if pressed briefly.
 - Changes the channels if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - ▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - ▲: Enters the main menu of iPod/D. player. (Now ▲ / ▼/|◀◀ / ▶▶| work as the menu selection buttons)*7
- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

12 OSD button

- Display the on-screen bar.
- Also function as the DIRECT button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can directly select titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio) or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/MPEG/DivX) using the number buttons (see the right column and page 22).

13 MENU button*2

- Display the DVD, DivX, and VCD*2 disc menu. (Not functions for the DVD Audio disc.)

14 Menu operation buttons*2

- Cursor (△, ▽, ◀, ▶) and ENTER
- △ / ▽ : Also function as DISC+/- buttons when the source is “CD-CH”.

15 RETURN button*2

16 Special function buttons

- DVD/VCD/DivX: ○○○ (audio)
- DVD/DivX: □□□ (subtitle)
- DVD: ◻◻ (angle)
- ◻◻ Also function as the SURROUND button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can change the surround mode (see page 26).

*1 Controllable only if your monitor is one of the JVC monitors — KV-MR9010 or KV-MH6510.

*2 These buttons function as the number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 Only when PBC is not in use.

*4 Not used for CD changer operations.

*5 These buttons function as the +10/-10 and +100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

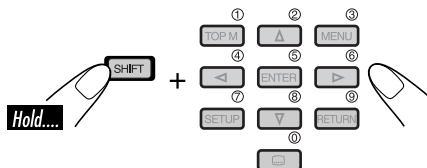
*6 Not used for JPEG operations. No sound can be heard (DVD/VCD/MPEG/DivX).

*7 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.

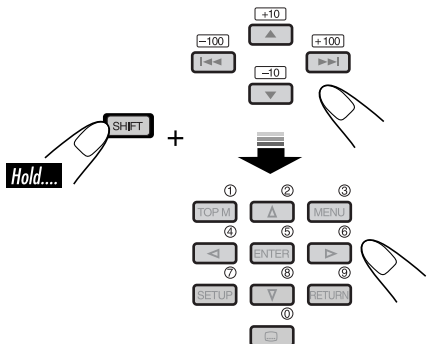
▼: Confirms the selection.

How to select a number

To select a number from 0 – 9:



To select a number greater than 9:



- +100/-100 buttons used for searching track number greater than 99 (not available for CD/VCD/DVD/DVD audio).

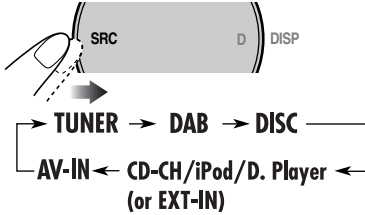
Getting started

Basic operations

1 Turn on the power.

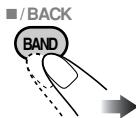


2

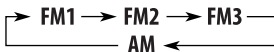


You cannot select some sources if they are not ready.

3



For FM/AM tuner

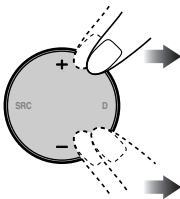


For DAB tuner



4

Adjust the volume.



Volume level indicator

5

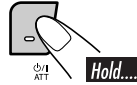
Adjust the equalizer as you want.
(See pages 42.)

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT)



To restore the sound, press it again.

To turn off the power



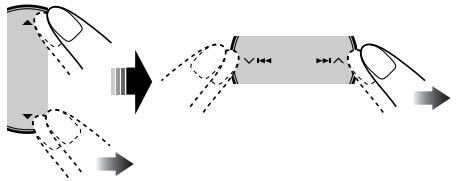
Canceling demonstration and setting the clock

1



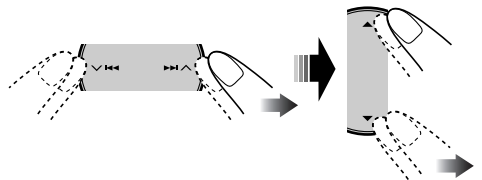
2 Select "Setup", then,

- 1 Select "Display", "Demonstration", then "Off" to cancel demonstration.
- 2 Select "Clock", "Time Set", and go to the next step to set the clock.

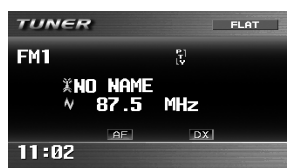
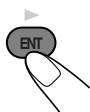


3 Set the hour and minute.

- 1 Select "Hour", then adjust the hour.
- 2 Select "Minute", then adjust the minute.



4 Finish the procedure.

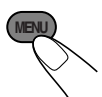


- See the example on “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” below to change the clock from 24 hours to 12 hours.

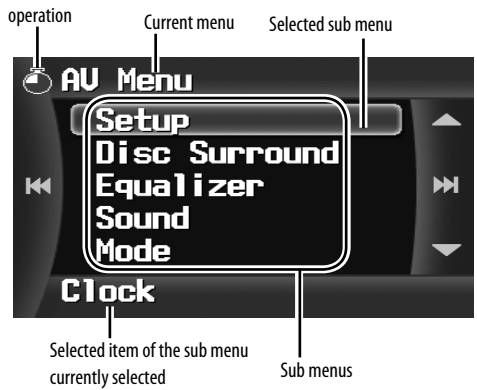
Basic procedure of AV Menu operation

You can adjust various settings of the unit from AV Menu.

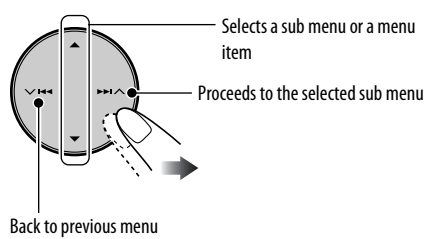
- To call up AV Menu...



Displays remaining time to continue the menu operation



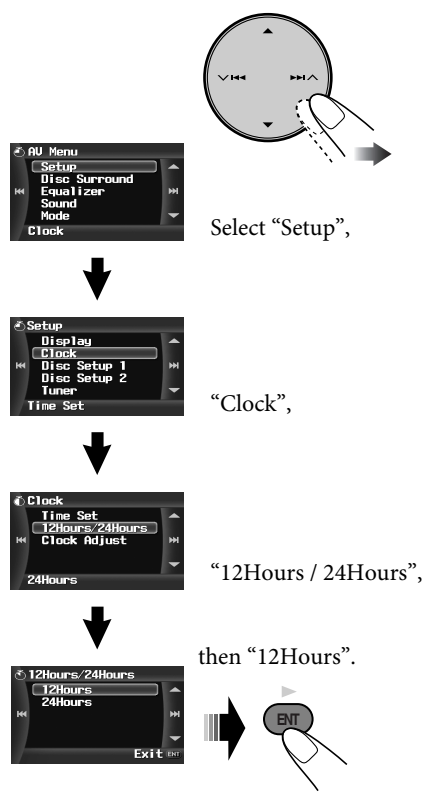
- To select an menu item and proceed to the sub menu...



- To go back to the previous screen and adjust other items...

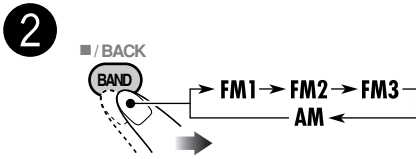
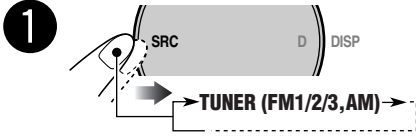


Ex.: To change the clock from 24 hours to 12 hours, after pressing MENU...

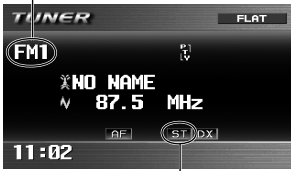


- To cancel menu operations and return to the source screen, press DISP (D).
- See pages 34 – 44 for information of the sub menu and menu items.

Radio operations



Selected band appears.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

3 **Start searching for a station.**



When a station is received, searching stops.

To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

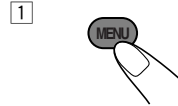
In step 3 above...



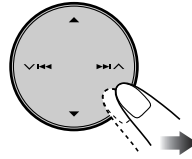
2 Select the desired station frequencies.



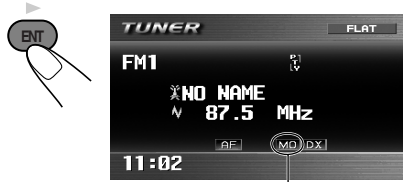
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive



2 Select "Mode", "Mono", then "On".



3 Finish the procedure.




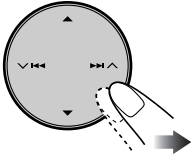
Lights up when monaural mode is activated.

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

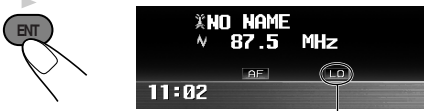
To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to set "Mono" to "Off". The MO indicator goes off.

To tune in strong-signal FM station only

- 1 
- 2 Select “Mode”, “DX / Local”, then “Local”.



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Lights up when “Local” mode is activated.

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.


To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure to set “DX / Local” to “DX”. The LO indicator goes off and the DX indicator lights up.

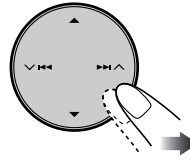
Storing stations in memory

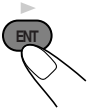
You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

After selecting the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want...

- 1 
- 2 Select “Mode”, then “SSM”.



- 3 



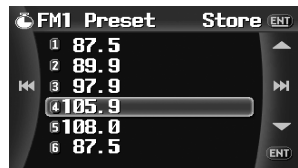
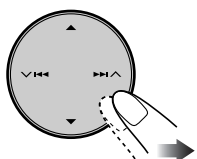
“SSM” is shown until automatic presetting is over.

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

After tuning in the station you want to preset...

- 1 MENU
- 2 Select "List", then a preset number (1-6) you want store the station into.



EX.: Storing 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of FM1

- You can also display the list by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons.

- 3 ENT *Hold...*



Stored preset number flashes for a while.

How to exit from menus or lists

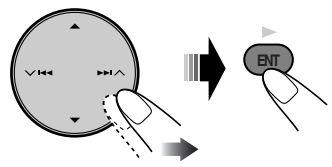


Menu or list operations are canceled and the screen returns to the source screen.

Listening to a preset station

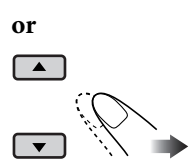
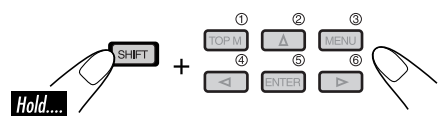
- 1 SRC DISP
→ TUNER (FM1/2/3, AM) →
- 2 BAND
FM1 → FM2 → FM3
AM ←
- 3 ENT *Hold...*

- 4 Select a preset number (1-6) you want.



- You can change the preset list between FM1/2/3 by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons (or by pressing ▲/▼ buttons repeatedly) when selecting any of the FM bands.

When using the remote controller...

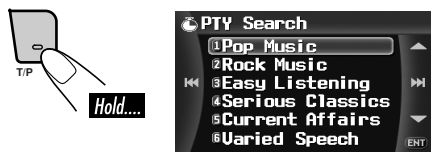


FM RDS operations

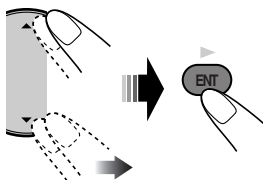
Searching for your favorite FM RDS programme

You can tune in to a station broadcasting your favorite programme by searching for a PTY code.

1



2 Select one of the twenty-nine PTY codes.



The preset programmes appears at first. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select other programmes.

If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

- Press and hold ▲ / ▼ to move the list rapidly.
- To store your favorite programme, see page 16.

PTY codes

News (News), Affairs (Current Affairs), Info (Information), Sport (Sport), Educate (Education), Drama (Drama), Culture (Cultures), Science (Science), Varied (Varied Speech), Pop M (Pop Music), Rock M (Rock Music), Easy M (Easy Listening), Light M (Light Classics M), Classics (Serious Classics), Other M (Other Music), Weather (Weather & Metr), Finance (Finance), Children (Children's Progs), Social (Social Affairs), Religion (Religion), Phone In (Phone In), Travel (Travel & Touring), Leisure (Leisure & Hobby), Jazz (Jazz Music), Country (Country Music), Nation M (National Music), Oldies (Oldies Music), Folk M (Folk Music), Document (Documentary)

- The code names in the parentheses appear on the list screen.

What you can do with RDS

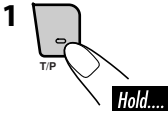
RDS (Radio Data System) allows FM stations to send an additional signal along with their regular programme signals.

By receiving the RDS data, this receiver can do the following:

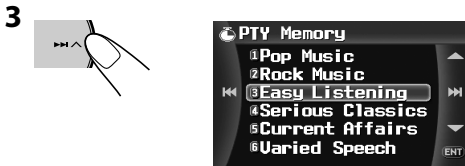
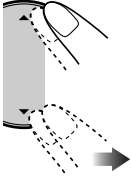
- Programme Type (PTY) Search (See the left column.)
- Temporarily switches to Traffic Announcement—TA Standby Reception. (see page 16)
- Temporarily switches to your favorite programme—PTY Standby Reception. (See pages 17 and 44.)
- Tracing the same programme automatically—Network-Tracking Reception (See page 17.)
- Programme Search (See page 40.)

Storing your favorite programmes

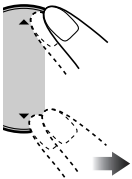
You can store six favorite programme types.



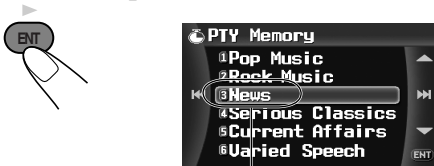
2 Select a PTY code you want to store.



4 Select a preset number (1–6) you want.



5 Finish the procedure.



Stored programme name flashes for a while.

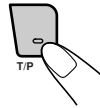
Using the standby receptions

TA Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception allows the receiver to switch temporarily to Traffic Announcement (TA) from any source other than AM.

- The volume changes to the preset TA volume level (see page 40).
- If the DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service.

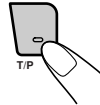
To activate TA Standby Reception



T/P either lights up or flashes.

- If **T/P** lights up, TA Standby Reception is activated.
- If **T/P** flashes, TA Standby Reception is not yet activated. (This occurs when you are listening to an FM station without the RDS signals required for TA Standby Reception.) To activate TA Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or DAB service) providing these signals. **T/P** will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the TA Standby Reception




T/P goes off.

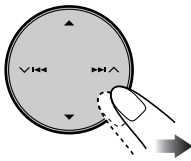
PTY Standby Reception

PTY Standby Reception allows the receiver to switch temporarily to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.

- If the DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service.

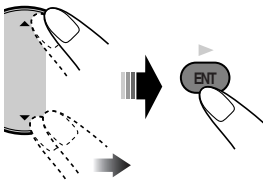
To activate and select your favorite PTY code for PTY Standby Reception,

- 1 
- 2 Select "Mode", "PTY Standby", then the PTY code below "Off".



PTY code list appears.

- 3 Select a PTY code you want.



PTY either lights up or flashes.

- If **PTY** lights up, PTY Standby Reception is activated.
- If **PTY** flashes, PTY Standby Reception is not yet activated.

To activate PTY Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or DAB service) providing these signals. The PTY indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

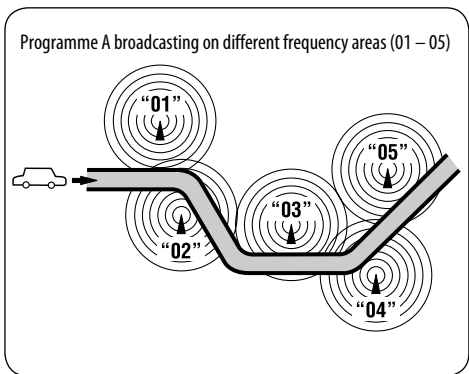
To deactivate the PTY Standby Reception, select "Off" on "PTY Standby" in the "Mode" menu.

PTY goes off.

Tracking the same programme— Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this receiver automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated (**AF** lights up when the power is turned on for the first time).
To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see "AF-Regional" on page 40.



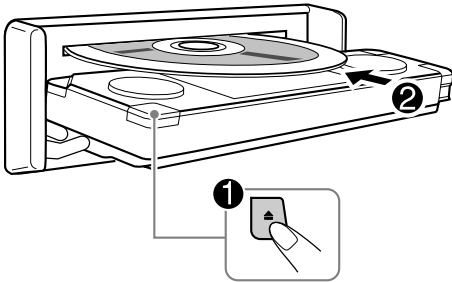
Disc operations

Playing a disc in the receiver

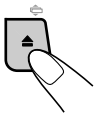
The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD Video/Audio: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc is an audio CD, CD Text, MP3/WMA/WAV, JPEG, MPEG, DivX, or VCD without PBC, all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

- If a title list or disc menu appears while playing a DVD Video/Audio or VCD with PBC, see “Disc menu operations” on page 24.



To eject a disc



The following marks are used to indicate the playable discs...



DVD Video



DVD Audio



Video CD with/without PBC



Video CD with PBC only



MPEG disc



JPEG disc

Audio CD/
CD TextMP3/WMA/WAV
disc

DivX disc



All discs listed here

Before performing any operations, make sure the following...

- The operations explained on pages 20 – 25 are mainly of the remote controller.
 - shows functions which you can also use on the unit.

If “” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the receiver cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

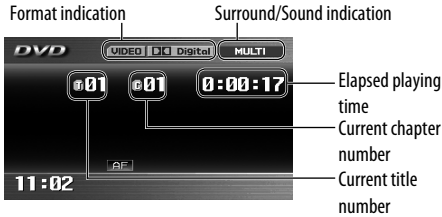
- In some cases, without showing “”, operations will not be accepted.

• **When inserting a DVD video/DVD Audio disc:**

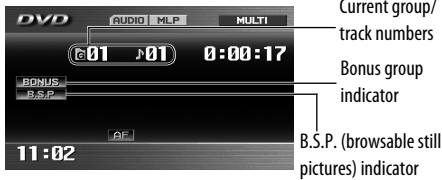
Video/picture playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).

When an DVD is playing back



When a DVD Audio disc is playing back

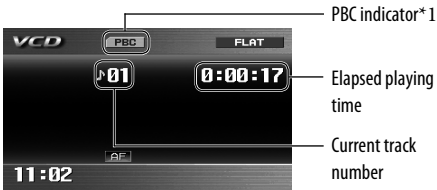


- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting a VCD:**

VCD playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).



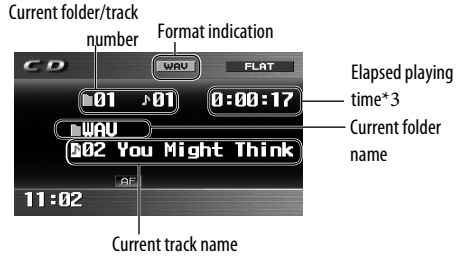
*1 Appears when the PBC function is in use.

- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting an MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG/DivX disc*2:**

After showing the total folder and file number...

Ex.: When an WAV file is detected

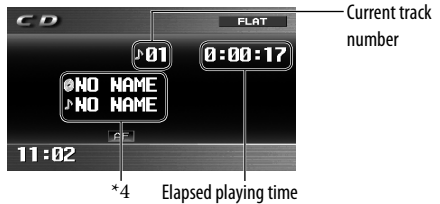


*2 When playing back a JPEG/MPEG/DivX disc, press DISP (D) to display the screen. (Picture/video playback is automatically starts when the parking brake is applied.)

*3 Does not appear for JPEG disc.

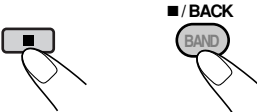
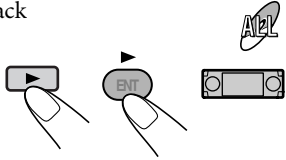





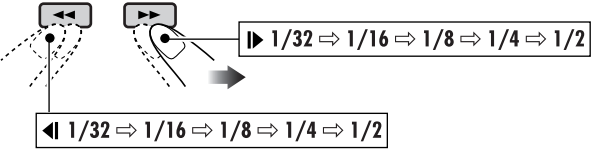

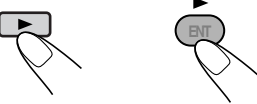


• **When inserting a CD Text/audio CD:**

After showing the total track number and total playing time...



*4 Disc title/performer and track title are displayed when playing a CD Text.

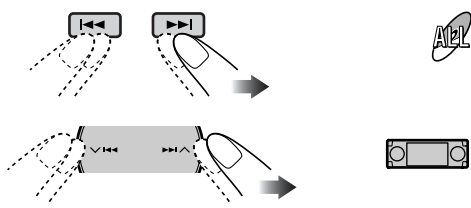
Basic operations

Operations	Monitor indication and/or next operation
<p>To stop playback</p> 	<p>When you start playback again, playback starts from where it has been stopped (Resume play).</p> 
<p>To stop play temporarily</p> 	<p>Playback is paused.</p>  <p>A still picture appears.</p> <p>(A) Frame by frame playback </p>  <p>(B) Slow motion playback </p>  <p>▶ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</p> <p>◀ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sound comes out during Slow Motion Playback. • When playing a VCD, Reverse Slow Motion Playback is prohibited. <p>To resume normal play:</p> 
<p>To replay the previous scenes—One Touch Replay</p> 	<p>The playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This function works only within the same title. • For some DVDs, this function does not work.  

• During play, on-screen guide icons appear on the monitor for a while (see page 62).

To go to the next or previous chapters/tracks

- For DVD: During play or pause

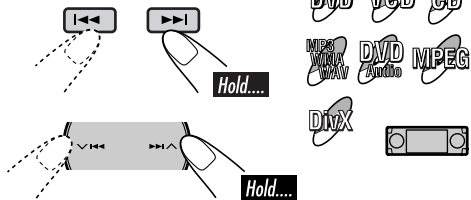


To locate a particular title/chapter/track directly

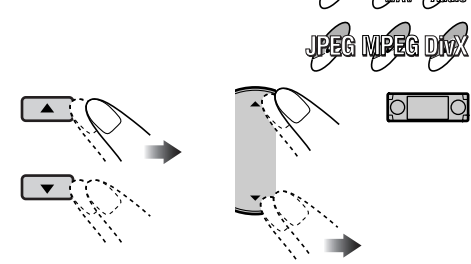
- For DVD Video/DVD Audio:
During play or pause—select a chapter/track.
During stop—select a title/track.
- For MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG:
Select a track within the same folder.

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter/track

While playing back...



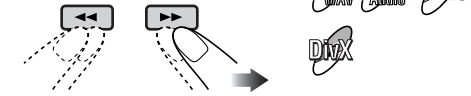
To locate a title/group/folder



* The search speed changes to x2 ⇔ x10 (▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2 for MPEG/DivX), but the information shown on the monitor is only for DVD/VCD/MPEG/DivX.

To forward or reverse search the chapter/track

While playing back...



The information shown is only for DVD/VCD:

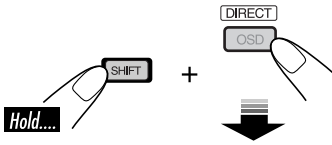
- ▶▶ x2 ⇔ x5 ⇔ x10 ⇔ x20 ⇔ x60
- ◀◀ x2 ⇔ x5 ⇔ x10 ⇔ x20 ⇔ x60

* The search speed of an MPEG/DivX file is 3 steps - ▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2/3.

- To resume normal speed



**To locate a particular title/
group/folder**

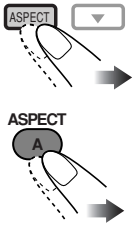


Within 10 seconds,
press the number
buttons (see page 9).

IMPORTANT:

- For MP3/WMA/WAV discs: It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit number at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

To adjust the screen shape on the unit

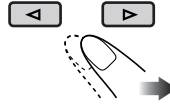


- See “Aspect” on page 36 for the detail.

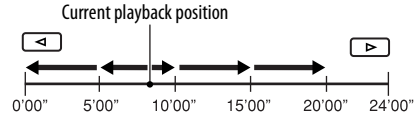
**To skip to the next or previous
scene**



You can skip the scene back and forward by 5 minutes.



Ex.: when you are playing a 24-minute MPEG file and the elapsed playing time is 8'24”...



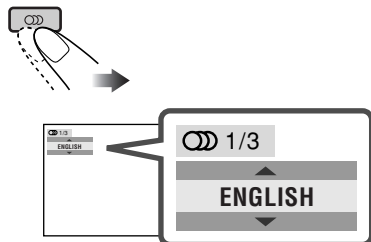
- The first pressing of the buttons skips the scene to the nearest multiple-of-5 playing time (except current playing time).
- This function does not work when remaining time to skip forward or back is under 5 minutes.

Unique disc functions

Selecting audio languages

For DVD and DivX:

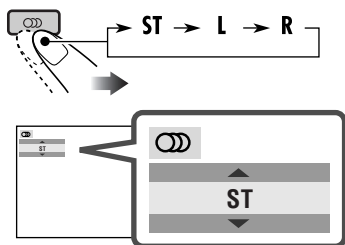
You can select the language to listen to if the disc has multiple audio languages.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

For VCD:

You can select the audio channel to play. (This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.)



ST: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.

L: To listen to the L (left) audio channel.

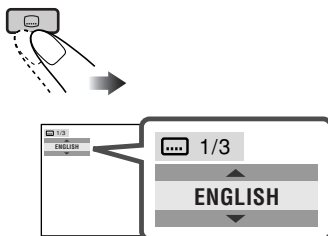
R: To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

Selecting subtitles

You can select the language of the subtitle to be shown on the monitor.



- You can set the initial subtitle language using the AV Menu (see page 37).

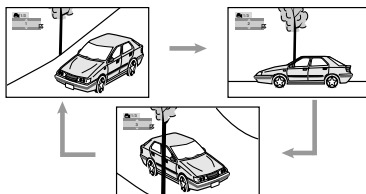
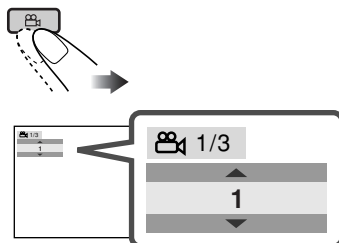


Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the subtitle language, audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting multi-angle views

You can view the same scene at different angles if the disc has multi-angle views.

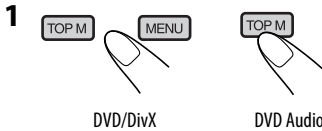


Ex.: When the disc has 3 multi-angle views

Disc menu operations

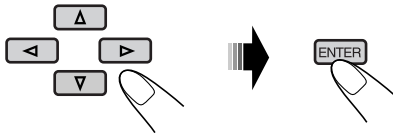
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a disc with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PBC (PlayBack Control).

While playing a DVD/DivX



A title list or disc menu will appear on the monitor.

2 Select the item you want on the menu.



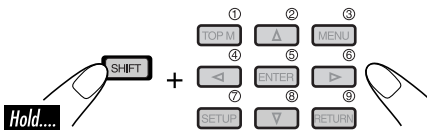
Selected item starts playback.

- On some discs, you can also select items by their numbers.

While playing a VCD



- When a list of items is displayed on the monitor.

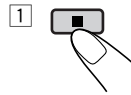


- To select a number greater than 9, see “How to select a number” on page 9.

To return to the previous menus

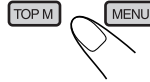


Canceling the PBC playback

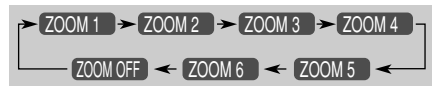
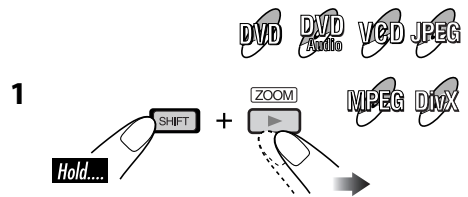


- 2 Select a track to start normal playback using the number buttons (see page 9).

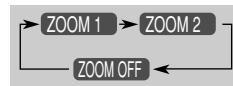
To resume the PBC function



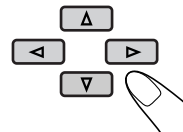
Zoom in



For JPEG disc (effective only when pausing):



2 Move the zoomed-in position.



- For JPEG files:
You cannot move the zoomed-in position when the entire picture is still displayed on the monitor.

To cancel zoom, select “ZOOM OFF” in step 1.

Playing back a bonus group

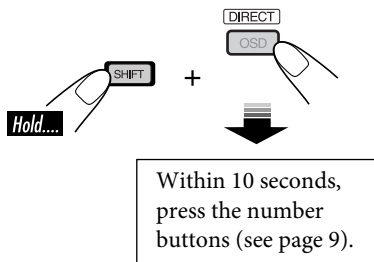
Some DVD Audio discs have a special group called “bonus group” whose contents are not open to the public.



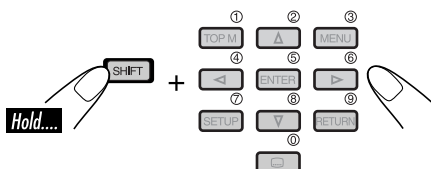
- To play back a bonus group, you have to enter the specific “key number” (a kind of password) for the bonus group. The way of getting the key number depends on the disc.

1 Select the bonus group.

- The bonus group is usually recorded as the last group (for example, if a disc contains four groups including a bonus group, “group 4” is the bonus group).



2 Enter the key number.



3 Follow the interactive instructions shown on the monitor.

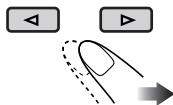
- The entered key number is cleared when the disc is ejected. Repeat steps 1 to 3 above to play back the bonus group again.

Selecting Browsable still pictures

While playing back a track linked to browsable still pictures (B.S.P.), you can select (turn the page) the still picture to be shown on the monitor.



- If a track is linked to B.S.P., they are usually shown in turn automatically during playback.



Disc surround playback

You can enjoy multichannel surround playback of the disc on the unit.

Available surround format

Dolby Digital*1: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with Dolby Digital ().

Dolby Pro Logic II: Dolby Pro Logic II is a multichannel playback format to decode all 2 channel sources—stereo source and Dolby Surround encoded source—into 5.1 channels. Dolby Pro Logic II has two modes—Movie mode and Music mode:

- Pro Logic II Movie**
Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
- Pro Logic II Music**
Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

DTS (Digital Theater Systems)*2: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with DTS Digital Surround ().

Continued on the next page

*1: Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless, and the double-D symbol are the trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2: "DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

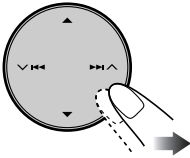
Selecting the surround mode

The unit is set up, by default, to select the optimal surround mode for the digital multichannel disc in the initial setting. You can also choose the surround mode for the 2 channel disc.

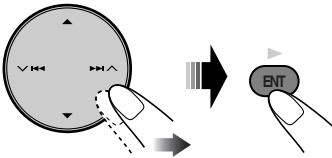
When DISC is selected as the source...



2 Select "Disc Surround".



3 Select the surround setting you want.



Surround Off:

Deactivate the surround function.

Surround On^{*1*2}:

- **Auto**^{*3}: the optimum surround mode is selected automatically when multichannel digital signals are detected.
- **Dolby PLII Movie**^{*4*5}: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Movie.
- **Dolby PLII Music**^{*4*5*6}: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Music.

*1 No sound comes out of the rear speakers and the subwoofer when the FRONT 2CH indicator appears on the monitor.

*2 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the FIX indicator appears on the monitor.

*3 Activates no surround function when the source is a CD (except for DTS CD)/VCD / MP3/WMA/WAV. Select "Dolby PLII Movie" or "Dolby PLII Music" manually to activate the surround function.

*4 Not selectable in the cases below:

- the disc has 2.1 or more channels of sound tracks (except for MPEG-encoded tracks).
- the disc is an MPEG/DivX disc.

*5 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the front speaker size is set to "Large" (see page 38).

*6 When you select "Dolby PLII Music", you can adjust the following items: "Panorama" and "Center Width". Adjusting "Panorama" to "On" adds "wraparound" sound effect; Activating "Center Width" adjusts the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger (normally select "4").

- No sound comes out from the center speaker when the surround function is not activated.
- Equalizer settings (page 42) become ineffective and unadjustable while the surround function is activated.
- No sound may come out from some speakers depending on the Speaker Size settings (page 38) or the type of the disc played back.
- When Dual Zone is activated, the surround settings become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.

On the remote controller:



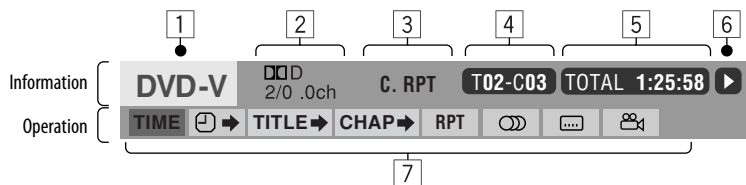
On-Screen disc operations

Operations using the on-screen bar

You can check the disc information and use some functions through the on-screen bar.



On-screen bar

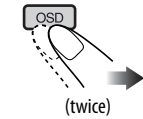


- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 Disc type</p> <p>2 • DVD Video/DVD Audio: Audio signal format type
• VCD: PBC</p> <p>3 Playback mode
DVD: T. RPT: Title repeat
C. RPT: Chapter repeat
DVD Audio:
T. RPT: Track repeat
VCD: T. RPT: Track repeat
D. RND: Disc random
T. INT: Track intro
Plays the beginning 15 seconds of the current track
JPEG: T. RPT: Track repeat
MPEG/DivX:
T. RPT: Track repeat
F. RPT: Folder repeat</p> <p>4 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
G02-T03 Current group/track
TRACK 01 Current track
F001-T001 Current folder/track</p> <p>5 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM Remaining disc time (for VCD)/remaining title time (for DVD)
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track</p> | <p>REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track</p> <p>6 Playback status
 Play
 Forward/reverse search
 Forward/reverse slow-motion
 Pause
 Stop</p> <p>7 Operation icons
TIME Change time indication (see 5)
 Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE Title Search (by its number)
GROUP Group Search (by its number)
CHAP Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK Track Search (by its number)
 Change the audio language or audio channel
 Change the subtitle language
 Change the view angle
RPT Repeat play*
INT Intro play*
RND Random play*</p> |
|---|--|

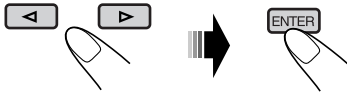
* See also page 31.

Basic on-screen bar operations

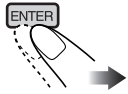
1 Display the on-screen bar.



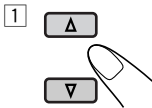
2 Select an item.



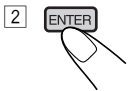
3 Make a selection.



- If pop-up menu appears....



or press the number buttons
(see page 9).

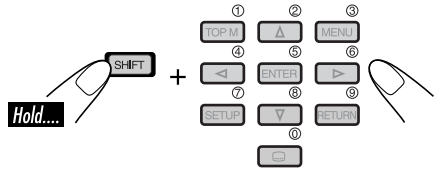


To erase the on-screen bar



To search for a particular point by playing time

- 1 Select .
- 2 Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.



- Ex.:
- To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
 - To enter 54 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 0, 5, 4, 0, then 0.
 - It is always required to enter the hour digit (even "0" hour), but it is not required to enter trailing zeros (the last two digits in the examples above).
 - To correct a misentry, press....



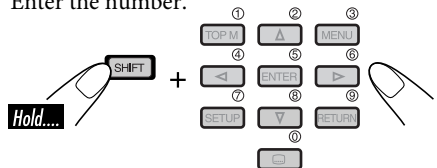
- You can also specify the elapsed playing time by using Δ / ∇ / \triangleleft / \triangleright .

- 3 Finish the procedure.



To search for a particular title/group/chapter/track

- 1 Select **TITLE** \rightarrow (**GROUP** \rightarrow / **CHAP** \rightarrow / **TRACK** \rightarrow).
- 2 Enter the number.



- To correct a misentry, press the number button until the correct number is entered.

- 3 Finish the procedure.

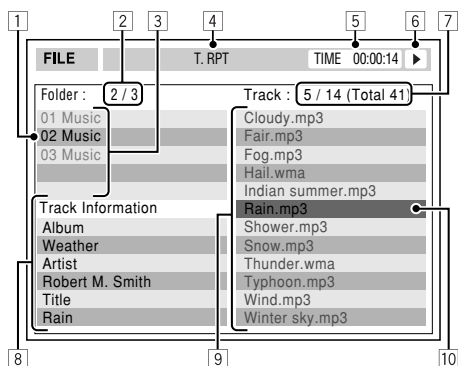


Basic control screen operations

You can search for and play the desired items through the control screen when using the external monitor.

- The control screen automatically appears on the monitor when you insert a disc (external monitor only).
- JPEG/MPEG/DivX control screen appears only when playback stops.

Control screen



Ex.: MP3 playback

- 1 Current folder (Not appears on CD playback)
- 2 Current folder number/total folder number (Not appears on CD playback)
- 3 Folder list (Not appears on CD playback)
- 4 Selected playback mode
- 5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (Not appears on JPEG playback)
- 6 Operation mode icon
▶ (play), ■ (stop), || (pause), ►► (fast-forward), ◀◀ (reverse)
- 7 CD: Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
Others: Current track (file) number/total number of tracks (files) in the current folder (total number of tracks/files on the disc)

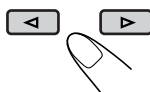
- 8 Track information (Not appears on JPEG/MPEG/DivX playback)
- 9 Track (file) list
- 10 Current track (file) (highlighted bar)

To select a folder or track

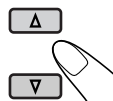


While Dual Zone (see page 33) is on....

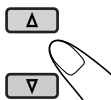
- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track.



To select a track

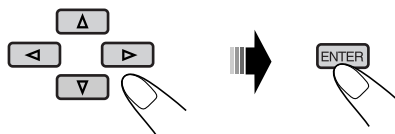


To change the playback mode



While Dual Zone (see page 33) is on....

- 1 Press the OSD button.
- 2 Select a playback mode (see page 31) you want.



List screen operations

You can display the folder list/track list before starting play when using the external monitor and Dual Zone function (see page 33). On this list, you can confirm the contents and start playing a disc.

Folder/track list screens



Folder list

Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
fol130	fol140	fol150	fol160	
fol131	fol141	fol151	fol161	
fol132	fol142	fol152	fol162	
fol133	fol143	fol153	fol163	
fol134	fol144	fol154	fol164	
fol135	fol145	fol155	fol165	
fol136	fol146	fol156	fol166	
fol137	fol147	fol157	fol167	
fol138	fol148	fol158	fol168	
fol139	fol149	fol159	fol169	

Track list

Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
file0131.mp3	file0141.mp3	file0151.wma	file0161.wma	
file0132.mp3	file0142.mp3	file0152.mp3	file0162.mp3	
file0133.wma	file0143.mp3	file0153.wma	file0163.wma	
file0134.mp3	file0144.mp3	file0154.mp3	file0164.mp3	
file0135.mp3	file0145.wma	file0155.mp3	file0165.wma	
file0136.wma	file0146.mp3	file0156.mp3	file0166.wma	
file0137.wma	file0147.wma	file0157.mp3	file0167.wma	
file0138.mp3	file0148.mp3	file0158.wma	file0168.wma	
file0139.mp3	file0149.wma	file0159.wma	file0169.mp3	
file0140.wma	file0150.wma	file0160.wma	file0170.wma	

Ex.: Track list for MP3/WMA

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

While Dual Zone is on and the disc play stops...

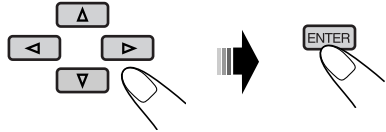
1 Display the folder list.

MENU



Each time you press the button, the list screen comes on and goes off.

2 Select a folder on the list.



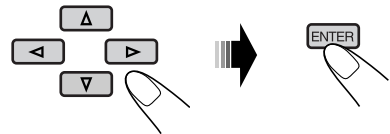
The track list of the selected folder appears.

To go back to the folder list

RETURN




3 Select a track on the list.



Other disc operations

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1  (On the unit)

2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Playback mode indicator appears.

Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
Track:	All tracks of the disc.
Folder*¹:	First tracks of all folders.
Off:	Cancels.

All tracks of the disc.

-  INT lights up.

First tracks of all folders.

-  INT lights up.

Cancels.

*¹ Only while playing a disc containing folders.

Repeat



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Mode	Plays repeatedly
Chapter*²:	The current chapter.
Title*²:	The current title.
Track*³:	The current track.
Folder*¹:	All tracks of the current folder.
Off:	For DVD: Cancels Repeat play. For other discs: All tracks of the disc.

The current chapter.

-  CHAP RPT lights up.

The current title.

-  TITLE RPT lights up.

The current track.

-  TRACK RPT lights up.

All tracks of the current folder.

-  FOLDER RPT lights up.

For DVD: Cancels Repeat play. For other discs: All tracks of the disc.

*² Only while playing a DVD disc.

*³ Except for DVD and JPEG discs.

Random



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Mode	Plays at random
Folder*¹:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on.
Disc:	All tracks of the disc.
Off:	Cancels.

All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on.

-  RND lights up.

All tracks of the disc.

-  RND lights up.

Cancels.

List screen operations

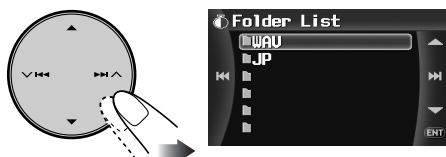
You can display the folder list/file list and select a file directly while playing.

While playing...



1 (On the unit)

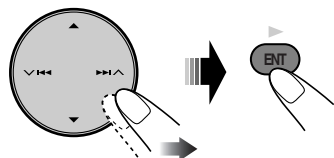
2 Select “Mode”, then “List”.



3 Select a folder you want.



4 Select a file you want to play.



- You can also access the folder list by pressing and holding ▲ / ▼ on the unit.

Other operations

Monitor indication control

To change monitor indication

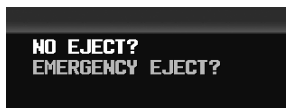


- Each time you press DISP (D), the display changes between the source screen and picture playback.

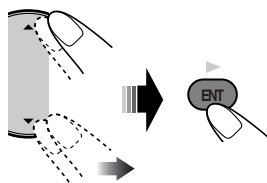
Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

1 **Hold....**



2 Select “NO EJECT?”.



“No Eject” flashes.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select “EJECT OK?”.

Dual Zone operations

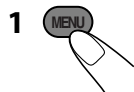
Playing back two sources at a time

You can connect external audio equipment to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug on the rear, and play back a disc separately from the source selected on the unit.

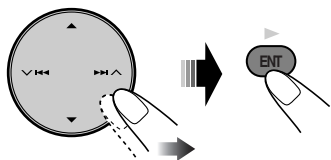


You can activate Dual Zone while listening to any source.

- When Dual Zone is in use, you can only operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.
- When Dual Zone is in use, the surround settings (page 26) become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.



2 Select “Dual Zone”, then “On” or “On-Surround”.



Off: Deactivate Dual Zone.

On: Activate Dual Zone.

On-Surround^{*1*}^{*2}:

Activate Dual Zone and add the headphone Surround^{*3} effect to the disc playback sound. Select this when listening the disc playback sound with headphones.

^{*1} Not effective when playing back an MPEG/DivX disc.

^{*2} The surround effect is also added to the sound from the speakers when you select “DISC” as the source.

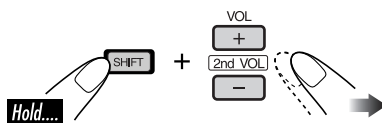
^{*3} JVC original headphone virtual surround system.

The source automatically changes to “DISC” and **DUAL** appears on the monitor.

To select a different source to listen through the speakers, press SRC on the control panel.

- By using the buttons on the control panel, you can operate the newly selected source without affecting Dual Zone operations.

3 Adjust the volume through the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug using the remote controller.

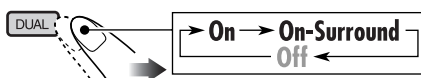


4 Operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller by referring to the monitor screen.

To cancel Dual Zone operations, select “Off” on step 2 on the left column. (**DUAL** / **DUAL-SURR** disappears.)

On the remote controller:

You can also activate and deactivate Dual Zone.



To change the Dual Zone mode between “On” and “On-Surround”, select the Dual Zone mode you want on step 2 on the left column.

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

Through the 2nd AUDIO OUT, 2 channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

AV Menu settings

Basic procedure

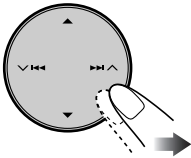
You can adjust various settings of this unit from the AV Menu.

The AV Menu contains the menu items and submenus shown on the figure below.

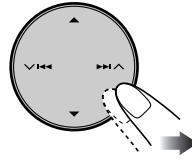
1



2 Select a menu item you want to set.



3 adjust the item selected.



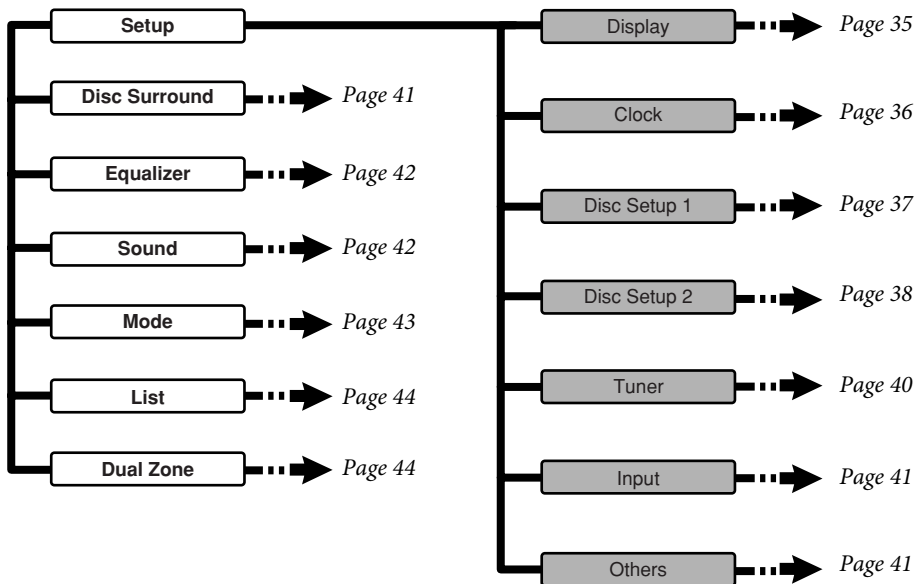
4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



- See also “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” on page 11 for more details of the operation.









Menu items of AV Menu



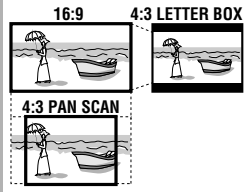
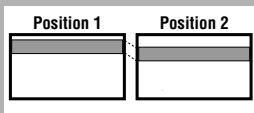
AV Menu items

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Demonstration	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Activates the demonstration movie on the monitor.</p>
Wall Paper	<p>You can select the background picture of the monitor.</p> <p>Standard [Initial], Rose, Gold, Black, Metal, Metallic-Silver, Metallic-Green, Honeycomb-Red, Honeycomb-Green, Effect-Orange, Effect-Purple, Clown fish, Ocean, Sunset, Earth.</p>
Scroll	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>Once: [Initial]; Scrolls the disc information once.</p> <p>Auto: Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Even if “Scroll” is set to “Off”, you can scroll the display by pressing D DISP for more than one second.
Tag Display	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Shows the tag data while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.</p>
Dimmer	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: Activates dimmer.</p> <p>Auto: [Initial]; Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.</p> <p>Time Set: Sets the Dimmer On/Off time.</p>
Bright	<p>You can adjust brightness of the monitor.</p> <p>-15 (darkest) to +15 (brightest)</p> <p>[Initial]; 00</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To adjust the brightness of playback picture, adjust “Bright” on “Screen Control” below.
Screen Control^{*1}	<p>You can adjust color and brightness of playback pictures of “DISC” and “AV-IN”. The setting is stored separately for “DISC” and “AV-IN”.</p> <p>-15 to +15</p> <p>[Initial]; 00</p> <p>Bright: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark.</p> <p>Contrast: Adjust the contrast of the bright and dark portion.</p> <p>Color: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker.</p> <p>Tint: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural.</p>

*1 Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies, or “AV-IN”.

Indications		Selectable settings, [reference page]		
Display	Aspect ^{*1}	You can change the screen shape on the monitor according to the aspect ratio of the source. Choose the optimum one from the followings.		
		Aspect ratio of incoming signal		
		4:3	16:9	
		Normal: For original shape of 4:3		
		Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9		
		Just:		
Zoom:				
Auto:	The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can also adjust the screen shape by pressing ASPECT (A) on the control panel or ASPECT on the remote controller. [22] 		
Clock	Time Set	You can adjust the internal clock on the unit. [10] [Initial]; 0: 00		
	12Hours / 24Hours	12Hours / 24Hours , [11] [Initial]; 24Hours		
	Clock Adjust	Auto: [Initial]; The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock time data in the RDS signal. Off: Cancels.		

*1 Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies.

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Menu Language ^{*1}	Select the initial disc menu language.
Audio Language ^{*1}	Select the initial audio language.
Sub Title ^{*1}	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (OFF).
OSD Language ^{*1}	Select the language for some indications shown on the external monitor.
Monitor Type 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16:9: [Initial]; Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9. • 4:3LB [LETTER BOX]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen. • 4:3PS [PAN SCAN]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen. Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.
OSD Position 	Select the position of the on-screen bar [27]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: [Initial]; Higher position • 2: Lower position
File Type	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio: [Initial]; Plays back MP3/WMA/WAV files. • Picture: Plays back JPEG files. • Video: Plays back MPEG 1/2 or DivX files.
DivX Regi. Code (DivX Registration Code)	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a disc in which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.

^{*1} For the language settings, see also the language codes list on page 57.

^{*2} Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

Indications

D. (Dynamic) Range Compres.
(Compression)*1

Selectable settings, [reference page]

You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.

- **AUTO** : Select this to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software).
- **ON** : [Initial]; Select this to always use this function.

Speaker Size*1

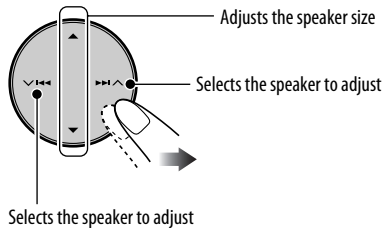


You can adjust the speaker size setting for the front/rear speakers and the center speaker according to the speaker you use when the source is a disc and playback stops.

- **Front SPK**: Small, Large [Initial]
- **Center SPK**: None [Initial], Small, Large<1>
- **Rear SPK** : None<2>, Small, Large [Initial]
- **Subwoofer**: On [Initial], Off<2>
- Speaker size: "Large" for 13-cm diameter or more; "Small" for 13 cm or less.

<1> Not selectable when "Large" is selected neither for the front nor the rear speakers.

<2> Not effective when the surround function is not in effect.



Selects the speaker to adjust

- When selecting "None" or "Off" for all speakers other than the front...
 - Disc Surround setting [41] automatically changes to "Surround Off".
 - Disc Surround setting [41] becomes unadjustable.

*1 Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

*2 Selectable only when DISC is the source.

Indications

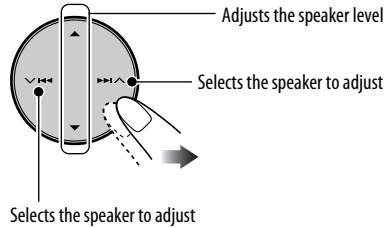
Selectable settings, [reference page]

Speaker Level*¹

You can adjust the output level of each speaker monitoring the test tone.

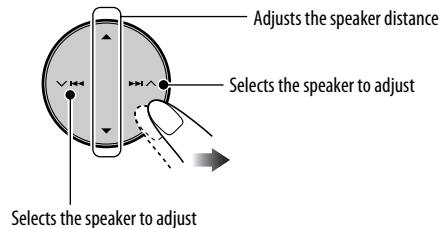
Press and hold ENT to activate (or cancel) the test tone.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Subwoofer*²/Rear Lch:** adjust the output level of each speaker in the range of -10dB +10dB. [Initial]; 00dB

Speaker Distance*⁴

You can adjust the speaker output timing separately for each speaker according to the distance from the speakers to the listening position.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Rear Lch:** adjust the speaker distance in the range of 15 cm to 600 cm in 15-cm step. [Initial]; 120 cm (for center speaker), 150 cm (for the other speakers)



*¹ When activating the test tone, white noise comes out and cycles between the speakers activated on "Speaker Size" [38] for about 2 seconds each. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly while the test tone comes out from the target speaker to adjust the settings (the test tone continues to come out from the target speaker during the adjustment).

*² The setting is effective only when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on "Subwoofer" [43] for other cases.

*³ Selectable only when DISC is the source.

*⁴ Unselectable when all the speakers other than front ones are deactivated on "Speaker Size" [38].

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
AF Regional (Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception)	<p>When the received signals from the current station become weak...</p> <p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>AF Regional: Switches to another station broadcasting the same programme.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REG light up. <p>AF: [Initial]; Switches to another station (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [17].</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AF lights up.
TA Volume	<i>[Initial: VOL 15];</i> VOL 00 — VOL 30 or 50*1, [16, 51]
Program Search	<p>Off: [Initial]; Cancels</p> <p>On: Using the AF data, the receiver tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset RDS station is if the preset station signals are not sufficient.</p>
IF Band Width	<p>In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard.</p> <p>Auto: [Initial]; Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)</p> <p>Wide: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.</p>
DAB AF*2	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations. [52].</p>

*1 Depends on the amplifier gain control.

*2 Appears only when DAB tuner is connected.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Input	AV Input	<p>You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks.</p> <p>Off: Select when you do not need AV-Input as a source (AV-IN is deleted from the source items).</p> <p>Audio&Video: [Initial]</p> <p>Select this when connecting an AV component such as a VCR.</p> <p>Audio: Select this when connecting an audio component such as a cassette deck.</p> <p>Camera^{*1}: Select when connecting the rear view camera.</p> <p>Camera Reverse^{*1}: The mirror image of the rear view is displayed on the monitor. (The monitor on the receiver only; the normal rear view appears on the external monitor.)</p>
	External Input	<p>Changer/iPod/D. Player^{*2}: [Initial] To use a JVC CD changer, iPod, JVC D. player, etc. [46, 54]</p> <p>External Input: To use any external component other than above. [53]</p>
Others	Beep	<p>You can deactivate the key-touch tone if you do not want it to beep each time you press a button.</p> <p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Activates the key-touch tone.</p>
	Telephone Muting	<p>Off: [Initial]; Cancels.</p> <p>Muting1/Muting2: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.</p>
Disc Surround ^{*3}	Surround Off	Select to deactivate the surround function.
	Surround On	<p>Select to activate the surround function. [26]</p> <p>Auto [Initial], Dolby PLII Movie^{*4}, Dolby PLII Music^{*4}</p>

^{*1} Reverse lamp wire connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume). The rear view through the camera appears on the monitor in "Full" aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position.

^{*2} The source indication changes automatically depending on the type of external component connected.

^{*3} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

^{*4} For the menu items of "Dolby PLII Movie" and "Dolby PLII Music", see page 26.

Indications

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/
Jazz/Dance/Country/
Reggae/Classic/User
1/User 2/User 3

Equalizer^{*1}

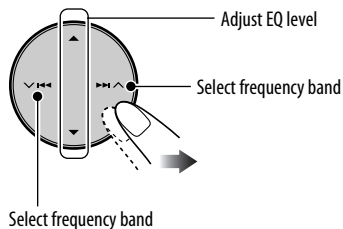
Selectable settings, [reference page]

You can select a preset equalizer settings.

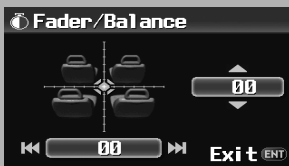
[Initial]; Flat

You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in User 1/2/3.

- 1 Select the frequency band to adjust—
60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1kHz, 2.5kHz, 6.3kHz, 15kHz.
- 2 Adjust the level of the selected band (-05 to +05).
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to adjust other frequency bands.
- 4 Press ENT.
- 5 Select the preset name (User 1, User 2, User 3) you want to store the setting into.
- 6 Press ENT.



Fader/Balance



Sound

Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.

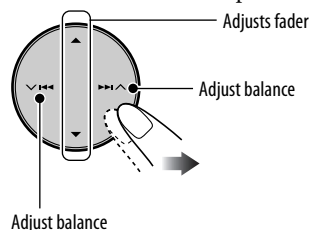
- Upmost—front only
- Downmost—rear only

When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (00).

Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.

- Leftmost—left only
- Rightmost—right only

Press ENT to finish the procedure.



^{*1} Not selectable when DISC is the source and the surround function is activated (see page 26).

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Sound	Volume Adjust	Adjust and store the volume level of each source except FM. Once you have made an adjustment, it is memorized, and the volume level will automatically increase or decrease by adjusted level when you change the source. Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level. • -12 (min.) to +12 (max.) [Initial: 00]
	Subwoofer	Adjust the settings below in the submenu: • Phase: Subwoofer phase. Select either “ Normal ” or “ Reverse ”, which reproduces a better sound. • Level*¹: Subwoofer output level. Level: -06 (dB) to +08 (dB) [Initial: 00 (dB)].
	High Pass Filter	Through: [Initial]; Select when the subwoofer is not connected. On: Select when the subwoofer is connected.
	Crossover	Adjust the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer. 80Hz, 120Hz [Initial], 150Hz
	Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this receiver. Amplifier Off: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. Low Power: VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) High Power: [Initial]; VOL 00 – VOL 50
	Rear Speaker*²	You can activate/deactivate the rear speakers. Off, On [Initial]
Mode	Mono*³	Activate when the FM broadcasting is hard to receive. [12] Off [Initial], On
	DX / Local*³	Select FM reception sensitivity. [12] DX [Initial], Local

*¹ The setting is ineffective when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on “Speaker Level” [39] for the cases.

*² Functions only when Dual Zone is activated. (See page 33.)

*³ Appears only when Tuner is the source.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mode	SSM* ¹	Search for FM stations and store them as preset stations automatically. [13]
	Title Entry* ²	You can enter names for specific source name for AV Input and External Input, etc. [45]
	Off/Intro/Repeat/ Random* ³	You can select the playback mode of the disc in the unit and the discs in the CD changer [31, 47]
	D. Range Control* ⁴ (Dynamic Range Control)	Reinforce the low level sound of DAB services. [49] Off [Initial], 1, 2, 3 .
	PTY Standby* ⁵	Activates PTY Standby Reception with one of the 29 PTY codes. [15, 51] Off [Initial], News , and 28 PTY codes [15].
	Announce Standby* ⁴ (Announcement Standby Reception)	You can activate/deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception function and select one of the 9 announcement types for the function. [51] Off [Initial], Transport News ⇄ Warning ⇄ News ⇄ Weather ⇄ Event ⇄ Special event ⇄ Radio Info (Radio Information) ⇄ Sports news ⇄ Financial news ⇄ (back to the beginning)
List		Select radio stations, folders, files and discs from the list on the screen. [14, 32, 46, 50] • The accessible lists differ depending on the sources.
Dual Zone		Activate/deactivate the Dual Zone function. [33] Off [Initial], On, On-Surround

*¹ Appears only when Tuner is the source.

*² Appears when the source is below: AV-IN, EXT-IN, CD-CH, or conventional CD.

*³ Selectable playback mode differs depending on the disc type. For the available playback mode, see page 31 and 47.

*⁴ Appears only when DAB tuner is the source.

*⁵ Appears only when Tuner or DAB Tuner is the source.

Other main functions

Assigning titles to the sources

You can assign titles to CDs (both in this receiver and in the CD changer), and change the source names of AV-INPUT and EXT-INPUT.

Sources	Maximum number of characters
AV-INPUT/EXT-INPUT	Up to 16 characters
DISC/CD-CH	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)

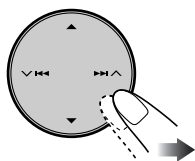
- You can assign a title only to the conventional CD (CD-DA).

1 Select the source.

- For AV-IN/EXT-IN: Select the source.
- For a CD in this receiver: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select a disc number.



3 Select "Mode", then "Title Entry".



Ex.: When you select "AV-IN" as the source

4 Assign a title.

- Select a character set.



- Select a character.



- For available characters, see page 3.

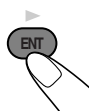
- Move to the next (or previous) character position.



- Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.



5 Finish the procedure.



To erase the entire title

In step 3 on the left column...



CD changer operations

About the CD changer

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

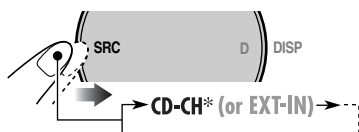
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.

Before operating your CD changer:

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- You cannot control and play any DVD Video/Audio, VCD, WMA, WAV, MPEG, or JPEG disc in the CD changer.

All tracks of the inserted discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the magazine from the CD changer.

1

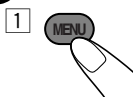


* If you have changed "External Input" setting to "External Input" (see page 41), you cannot select the CD changer.

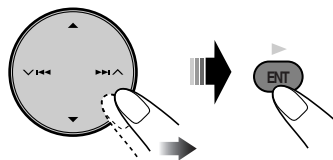


Selected disc number

2 Select a disc.

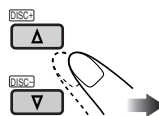


2 Select "List", then the disc you want to play back.



- When the current disc is an MP3 disc, you can move to FOLDER LIST by pressing .

When using the remote controller....



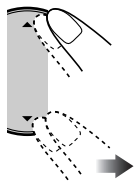
To fast-forward or reverse the track



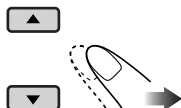
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3 discs)

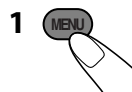


When using the remote controller...

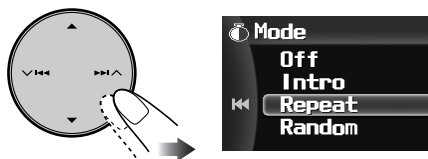


Selecting the playback modes

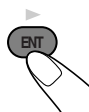
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.



2 Select "Mode", then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
------	-------------------------------

Track:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Folder*:	First tracks of all folders in the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Disc:	First tracks of all the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
------	------------------

Track:	The current track. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

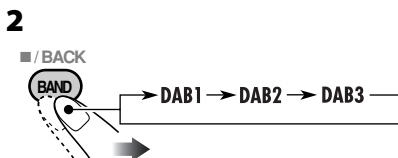
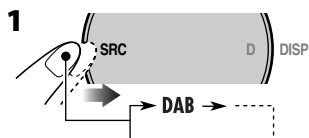
Mode	Plays at random
------	-----------------

Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
All:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

* Only while playing an MP3 disc

DAB tuner operations

Listening to the DAB tuner



Current band



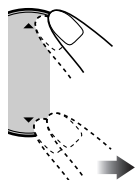
3 Start searching for an ensemble.



When an ensemble is received, searching stops.

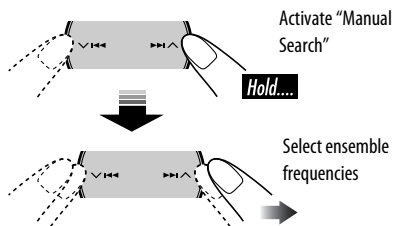
To stop searching, press the same button again.

4 Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.



To tune in to an ensemble manually

In step 3...



What is DAB system?

DAB can deliver digital quality sound without any annoying interference and signal distortion. Furthermore, it can carry text, pictures, and data. When transmitting, DAB combines several programmes (called “services”) to form one “ensemble”. In addition, each “service”—called “primary service”—can also be divided into its components (called “secondary service”). A typical ensemble has six or more programmes (services) broadcast at the same time.

By connecting the DAB tuner, this receiver can do the following:

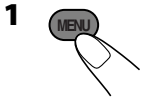
- Tracing the same programme automatically —Alternative Frequency Reception (see page 52).

It is recommended to use DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) tuner KT-DB1000 with your receiver. If you have another DAB tuner, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.

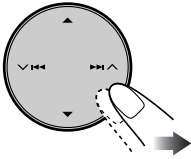
- Refer also to the Instructions supplied for your DAB tuner.

When surrounding sounds are noisy

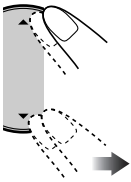
Some service provides Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve for your listening.



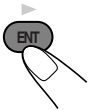
2 Select “MODE”, then “D. Range Control”.



3 Select one of the DRC signal level (DRC 1/2/3).



4 Finish the procedure.



DRC indicator appears.

To search for your favorite service

You can search for either Dynamic or Static PTY codes.

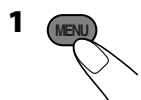
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 15 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and the FM tuner.
- Search will be performed on the DAB tuner only.

- The DRC indicator will be highlighted only when receiving DRC signals from the tuned service.

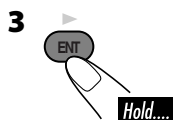
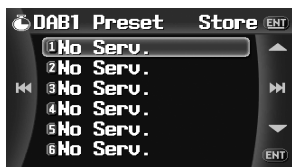
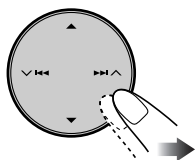
Storing DAB services in memory

You can preset six DAB services (primary) for each band.

After tuning in the ensemble (primary service) you want to preset...



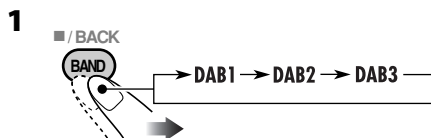
2 Select "List", then a preset number (1-6) you want to store the ensemble into.



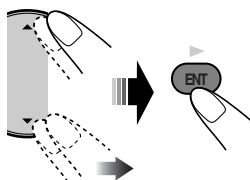
Preset number flashes.

Tuning in to a preset DAB service

When the source is DAB...

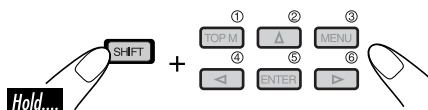


3 Select a preset number you want.



- You can also access the preset list by pressing "MENU" on the unit and selecting "List".

When using the remote controller...



Using the standby receptions

TA (Road Traffic News) Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 16 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot activate TA Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for FM tuner.
- The volume changes to the preset TA volume level (see page 40).

PTY Standby Reception

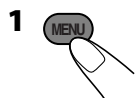
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 17 for FM RDS stations.
- PTY Standby Reception for DAB tuner works only using a dynamic PTY code.
- You can neither store your favorite PTY nor activate PTY Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.
- You can activate and deactivate PTY Standby Reception when the source is either “FM” or “DAB”.

Announcement Standby Reception

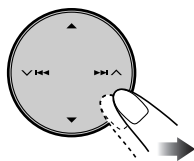
Announcement Standby Reception allows the receiver to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

To select your favorite announcement type, see page 44.

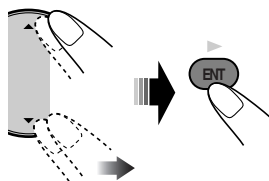
To activate the Announcement Standby Reception



- 2** Select “Mode”, then “Announce Standby”.



- 3** Select an announcement type you want to preset.



ANN indicator appears.

- If the ANN indicator lights up, Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If the ANN indicator flashes, Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
To activate, tune in to another service providing these signals. The ANN indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception

Select “Off” in step **3** above.
The ANN indicator goes off.

Tracing the same programme— Alternative Frequency Reception

You can keep listening to the same programme by activating the Alternative Frequency Reception.

- While receiving a DAB service:**
 When driving in an area where a DAB service cannot be received, this receiver automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- While receiving an FM RDS station:**
 When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this receiver automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 40.

To show the Dynamic Label Segment (DLS) information



Service frequency is displayed.



While listening to an ensemble that supports DLS....



Dynamic Label Segment (DLS—DAB radio text information) is displayed.

* Lights up when receiving a service providing Dynamic Label Segment (DLS)—DAB radio text information.

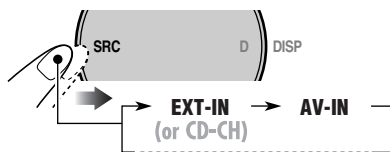
External component operations

Playing an external component

You can connect an external component to LINE IN plug and VIDEO IN plug on the rear, or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the KS-U57 Line Input Adapter (not supplied) or KS-U58 AUX Input Adapter (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

1



AV-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN and/or VIDEO IN.

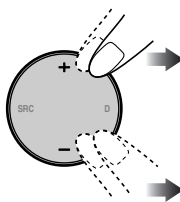
- To change the setting of AV INPUT, see page 41.

EXT-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- If “EXT-IN” does not appear, see page 41 and select the external input (EXT-IN).

2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 42.)

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

- You can also use the equivalent buttons on the remote controller in the operations below.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:

Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

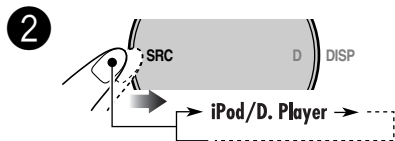
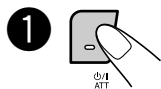
- Interface adapter for iPod**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Cautions:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

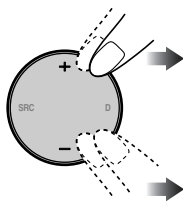
Preparations:

Make sure "Changer/iPod/D. player" is selected for the external input setting, see page 41.



Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused (iPod) or stopped (D. player) previously.

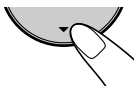
3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 42.)

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause (iPod) or stop (D. player) playback



To resume playback, press it again.

To fast-forward or reverse the track



To go to the next or previous tracks



Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu of the iPod or D. player.



Now the ▲/▼/↔/◀▶/▶▶|▲ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*1.

- 2 Select the desired menu.



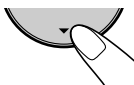
For iPod:

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔
Composers ↔ Genres ↔ Songs ↔

For D. player:

Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔
Track ↔ Genre ↔

- 3 Confirm the selection.



To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

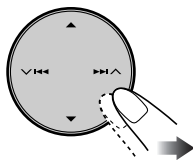
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until the desired track is confirmed.
- Holding ▼ |◀◀/▶▶| ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

- *1 The menu selecting mode will be canceled:
- If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.
 - When you confirm the selection of a track.

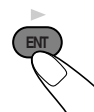
Selecting the playback modes

- 1 MENU

- 2 Select "Mode", then your desired playback mode.



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Repeat/Random playback.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
One:	Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode One" for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode All" for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

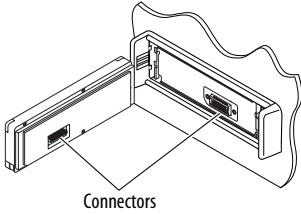
Mode	Plays at random
Album:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Album" of the iPod <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
On:	Functions the same as "Random Play On" of the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the receiver turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.



Center holder

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this receiver may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.



Do not use the following discs:



Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	IK	Inupiak	RN	Kirundi
AB	Abkhazian	IN	Indonesian	RO	Rumanian
AF	Afrikaans	IS	Icelandic	RW	Kinyarwanda
AM	Ameharic	IW	Hebrew	SA	Sanskrit
AR	Arabic	JI	Yiddish	SD	Sindhi
AS	Assamese	JW	Javanese	SG	Sangho
AY	Aymara	KA	Georgian	SH	Serbo-Croatian
AZ	Azerbaijani	KK	Kazakh	SI	Singhalese
BA	Bashkir	KL	Greenlandic	SK	Slovak
BE	Byelorussian	KM	Cambodian	SL	Slovenian
BG	Bulgarian	KN	Kannada	SM	Samoaan
BH	Bihari	KO	Korean (KOR)	SN	Shona
BI	Bislama	KS	Kashmiri	SO	Somali
BN	Bengali, Bangla	KU	Kurdish	SQ	Albanian
BO	Tibetan	KY	Kirghiz	SR	Serbian
BR	Breton	LA	Latin	SS	Siswati
CA	Catalan	LN	Lingala	ST	Sesotho
CO	Corsican	LO	Laothian	SU	Sundanese
CS	Czech	LT	Lithuanian	SW	Swahili
CY	Welsh	LV	Latvian, Lettish	TA	Tamil
DZ	Bhutani	MG	Malagasy	TE	Telugu
EL	Greek	MI	Maori	TG	Tajik
EO	Esperanto	MK	Macedonian	TH	Thai
ET	Estonian	ML	Malayalam	TI	Tigrinya
EU	Basque	MN	Mongolian	TK	Turkmen
FA	Persian	MO	Moldavian	TL	Tagalog
FI	Finnish	MR	Marathi	TN	Setswana
FJ	Fiji	MS	Malay (MAY)	TO	Tonga
FO	Faroese	MT	Maltese	TR	Turkish
FY	Frisian	MY	Burmese	TS	Tsonga
GA	Irish	NA	Nauru	TT	Tatar
GD	Scots Gaelic	NE	Nepali	TW	Twi
GL	Galician	NO	Norwegian	UK	Ukrainian
GN	Guarani	OC	Occitan	UR	Urdu
GU	Gujarati	OM	(Afan) Oromo	UZ	Uzbek
HA	Hausa	OR	Oriya	VI	Vietnamese
HI	Hindi	PA	Panjabi	VO	Volapuk
HR	Croatian	PL	Polish	WO	Wolof
HU	Hungarian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	XH	Xhosa
HY	Armenian	PT	Portuguese	YO	Yoruba
IA	Interlingua	QU	Quechua	ZU	Zulu
IE	Interlingue	RM	Rhaeto-Romance		

More about this receiver

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the receiver, you can also turn on the power.

Selecting the sources

- When no disc is loaded in the receiver and Dual Zone is off, “DISC” cannot be selected.
- Without connecting to the CD changer or the DAB tuner, “CD-CH” or “DAB” cannot be selected.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate.

- If a DAB tuner is connected and Alternative Frequency Reception for DAB services (DAB AF) is activated, Network-Tracking Reception (AF Regional) is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See pages 17, 40, 44, 52.)
- TA Standby Reception and PTY Standby Reception will be temporarily canceled while listening to an AM station.

Disc operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to the music/picture/movie files and their file names.
- This receiver can also play back 8 cm discs.
- This receiver can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.
 - The first track will be skipped if a different type of file is detected first.
- When a disc has been loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc). Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source (without activating Dual Zone), disc play starts automatically.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This receiver can play back either MP3/WMA/WAV files, JPEG files, or MPEG/DivX files if a disc includes any of the files. Set the playback file type on AV Menu (page 37) before playing back a disc containing files of different kinds.
- Only for CD-R/CD-RW: This receiver can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some Recordable/Rewritable discs may not play back on this receiver because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
 - Discs are dirty or scratched.
 - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the receiver.
 - The pickup lens inside the receiver is dirty.
 - Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
 - Discs which are not written in UDF-Bridge Format (eg. UDF format or ISO format).
 - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.).
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.
- Do not use the following discs:
 - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
 - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.
 Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damages to discs.

Playing an MP3/WMA/WAV disc

- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This receiver can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA/WAV files.
- This receiver can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
 - Bit rate: MP3: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
 - Sampling frequency:
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for WMA)
44.1 kHz (for WAV)
 - Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav>).
 - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
 - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
 - Romeo: up to 128 characters
 - Joliet: up to 64 characters
 - Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This receiver can recognize the total of 3500 files, 250 folders (maximum of 999 files per folder).

- This receiver can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This receiver cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded in an unappropriated format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - WMA files recorded with MBR (Multiple Bit Rate) format.
 - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATAC3, etc.

Playing a JPEG disc

- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution. (If a file has been recorded at a resolution of more than 640 x 480, it will take a long time to be shown.)
- This System can play only baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.
Baseline JPEG format: Used for digital cameras, web, etc.
Progressive JPEG format: Used for web.
Lossless JPEG format: An old type and rarely used now.
- If progressive or lossless JPEG files are played back, a black screen appears. In this case, stop playback and select a baseline JPEG file. Note that it may take a long time to select another file.

Playing an MPEG disc

- This receiver can play back MPEG 1/2 files with the extension code <.mpeg>.
- Audio stream should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer 2.

Playing an DivX disc

- This receiver can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper or lower).
- When making a disc, use the UDF bridge format.
- This unit supports DivX 6.x, 5.x, 4.x, and 3.11.
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720x480 pixels or less (30 fps) and 720x576 pixels or less (25 fps).
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- This unit does not support GMC (Global Motion Compression).
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- This receiver can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.

AV Menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
After you change any of these language settings, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.

- Even if “4:3PS [PAN SCAN]” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]” with some DVDs. This depends on how they are recorded.
- If you change the “Amplifier Gain” setting from “High Power” to “Low Power” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30”, the receiver automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30”.

Other main functions

- If you try to assign a title to a 31st station or 31st disc, “Name Full” flashes on the monitor. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc on the receiver.

DAB tuner operations

- PTY Standby Reception works for the DAB tuner only using a Dynamic PTY, but not a Static PTY.
- TA Standby Reception for FM RDS station and Road Traffic News Standby Reception for DAB cannot be set separately. The T/P button always work for the both Standby Reception modes when the DAB tuner is connected.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
 - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
 - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 18 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 35). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:










When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

On-screen guide icons

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages.
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages.
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views.
-  : Playback
-  : Pause
-  : Forward Slow Motion Playback
-  : Reverse Slow Motion Playback
-  : Forward search
-  : Reverse search

■ Sound modes (preset frequency level settings)

The list below shows the preset frequency level settings for each sound mode (see page 42).

Sound mode	Preset equalizing values						
	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	-02	-01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound cannot be heard from the speakers. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
		Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The receiver does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote controller does not work. 	Dual Zone is activated (see page 33). While Dual Zone is activated, remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Signal” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the source. • Starts playback on the external component connected to the VIDEO IN plug. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
FM/AM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSM automatic presetting does not work. 	Store stations manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static noise while listening to the radio. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable disc cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the disc with the component which you used for recording.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be recognized. 	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Not Support” appears on the monitor. 	Use a file format the unit supports (see page 4).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Disc Error” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert the disc correctly. • Insert a disc recorded and finalized.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Files” appears on the monitor. 	The disc does not have playable files. Insert a disc containing playable files.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No playback picture appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parking brake wire is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No picture appears on the external monitor at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The edges of the picture are missing on the screen. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select an aspect other than “Zoom”. (See page 36) • Select “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]”. (See page 37.)
MP3/WMA/WAV playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a disc with tracks recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) • Add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to their file names.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noise is generated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to files of different types.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A longer readout time is required. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tracks cannot be played back as you have intended them to play. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Elapsed playing time is not correct. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This receiver can only display alphabets (A – Z, a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols. 	
JPEG/MPEG/DivX playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a disc with JPEG/MPEG/DivX files recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) • Add the extension code <.jpg>, <.mpg>, <.div> to their file names.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a disc into the magazine. • Insert disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Magazine” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the magazine.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset01” – “Reset07” appears on the monitor. 	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The CD changer does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
DAB tuner	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No DAB signal” appears on the monitor. 	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The DAB tuner does not work at all. 	Reconnect this receiver and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Antenna Power NG” appears on the monitor. 	Check the cords and connections.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. Player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Update the firmware version of the D. player. Charge the battery of the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Disconnect” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops while playing back iPod. 	The headphones are disconnected from iPod during playback. Restart the playback operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. “Error 01” appears on the monitor when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Files” or “No Track” appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 1” – “Reset 7” appears on the monitor. 	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 8” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:

Front: 50 W per channel

Rear: 50 W per channel

Continuous Power Output (RMS):

Front: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Rear: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)

Equalizer Control Range:

Frequencies: 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz

Level: ± 10 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

Line-In Level/Impedance:

1.5 V/20 k Ω load

Line-Out Level/Impedance:

Center-Out Level/Impedance:

Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:

2.5 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)

Color System: PAL

Video Input (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω

Video Output (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω

Other Terminals:

2nd AUDIO OUT, CD changer, Steering wheel remote input (OE REMOTE)

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:

FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz

AM: (MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz

(LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)

50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:

16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)

Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB

Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz

Stereo Separation: 35 dB

Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[MW Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 μ V

Selectivity: 35 dB

[LW Tuner]

Sensitivity: 50 μ V

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)

Number of Channels: 2 channels (stereo)

Frequency Response:

DVD fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz

fs=192 kHz: 16 Hz to 88 000 Hz

VCD, CD: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz

Dynamic Range: 93 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 95 dB

Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit

MP3 : Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

WMA: Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

MONITOR SECTION

Screen: 3.5-inch wide liquid crystal panel

Number of Pixels: 224 640 pixels

Drive Method:

TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format

Color System: PAL

GENERAL

Power Requirement:

Operating Voltage:

DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)

Grounding System: Negative ground

Allowable Operating Temperature:

0°C to +40°C

Dimensions (W \times H \times D):

Installation Size (approx.):

182 mm \times 52 mm \times 160 mm

Panel Size (approx.):

188 mm \times 58 mm \times 12 mm

Mass (approx.):

1.9 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

¿Tiene PROBLEMAS con la operación?

Por favor reinicialice su unidad

Consulte la página de Cómo reposicionar su unidad

**Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de
fonctionnement?**

Réinitialisez votre appareil

Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

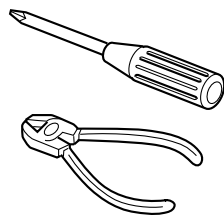
JVC



EN, SP, FR

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0206MNMMDWJEIN



ENGLISH

This receiver is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

ESPAÑOL

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA**. Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

ADVERTENCIAS

- NO instale la unidad en los siguientes sitios:
 - Donde pueda obstruir la maniobra del volante de dirección y del cambio de engranajes, con el consiguiente riesgo de accidentes de tráfico.
 - Donde pueda obstruir el funcionamiento de dispositivos de seguridad tales como bolsas de aire, pues podría resultar en un accidente fatal.
 - Donde pueda obstruir la visibilidad.
- NO OPERE la unidad mientras está maniobrando el volante de dirección, pues podría producirse un accidente de tráfico.
- El conductor no debe mirar el monitor mientras conduce. Si el conductor mira el monitor mientras conduce puede descuidarse y causar un accidente.
- El conductor no deberá ponerse los auriculares mientras conduce. Es muy peligroso no escuchar los ruidos exteriores durante la conducción.
- Si necesita operar el receptor mientras conduce, asegúrese de mirar atentamente hacia adelante para no provocar un accidente de tráfico.
- Si el freno de estacionamiento no está aplicado, parpadeará "Parking Brake" en el monitor, y no se visualizará la imagen reproducida.
 - Esta advertencia aparece únicamente cuando el cable del freno de estacionamiento se encuentra conectado al sistema del freno de estacionamiento incorporado al automóvil.

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.

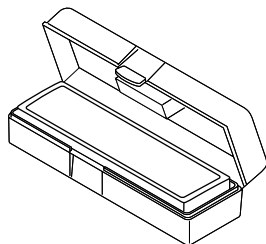
AVERTISSEMENTS

- N'INSTALLEZ aucun appareil dans les endroits suivants;
 - où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
 - où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les airbags car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.
 - où il peut gêner la visibilité.
- NE COMMANDEZ pas l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit. Regarder le moniteur lorsqu'on est au volant réduit considérablement la vigilance du conducteur et multiplie les risques d'accident.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas utiliser un casque d'écoute quand il est au volant. C'est dangereux de se couper des sons extérieurs en conduisant.
- Si vous avez besoin de commander l'autoradio pendant que vous conduisez, continuez de regarder droit devant vous ou vous risquez de causer un accident de la circulation.
- Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas engagé, "Parking Brake" clignote sur le moniteur et aucune image de lecture n'apparaît.
 - Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

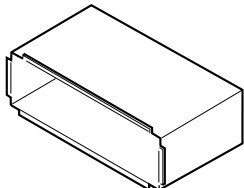
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this receiver. After checking them, please set them correctly.

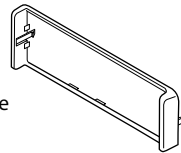
A / B
Hard case/Control panel
Estuche duro/Panel de control
Etui de transport/
Panneau de commande



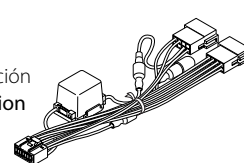
C
Sleeve
Cubierta
Manchon



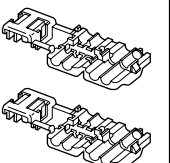
D
Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage



E
Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation



F
Crimp connectors
Conectores de sujeción
Raccord à sertir



G
Washer (ø5)
Arandela (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)



I
Mounting bolt
(M5 × 20 mm)
Perno de montaje
(M5 × 20 mm)
Boulon de montage
(M5 × 20 mm)



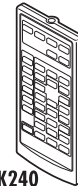
J
Rubber cushion
Cojín de goma
Amortisseur en caoutchouc



K
Handles
Manijas
Poignées



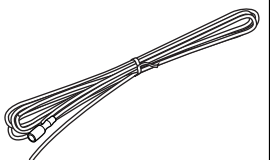
L
Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommande



M
Battery
Pila
Pile



N
Reverse gear signal
extension cord
Cable prolongador para
señal del engranaje de
marcha atrás
Cordon prolongateur de
signal de marche arrière

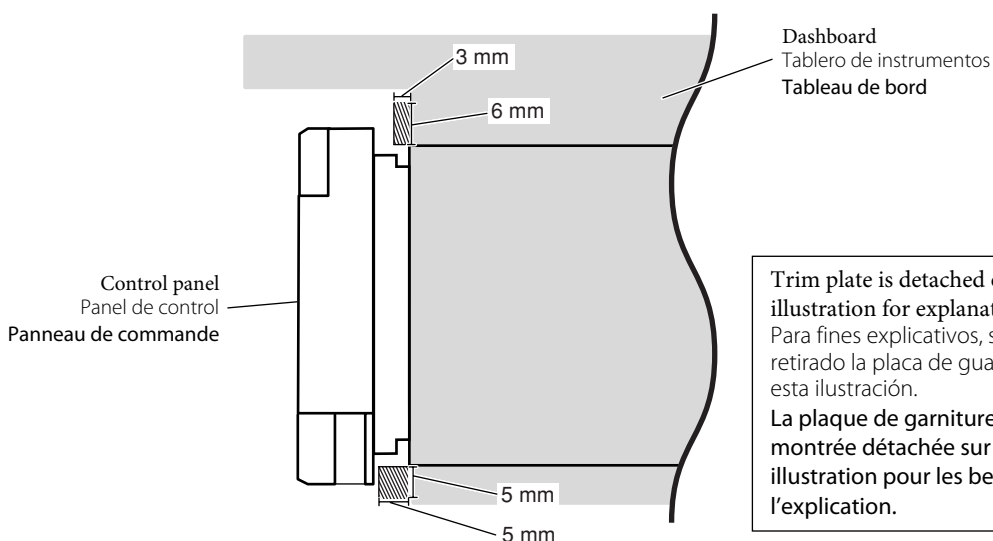


INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this receiver correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear panel to maintain proper ventilation when installed.
- You cannot install the receiver on the car which has any obstacles in the space shown in "Required space for installation" below.

Required space for installation / Espacio requerido para la instalación / Espace nécessaire pour l'installation



Trim plate is detached on this illustration for explanation. Para fines explicativos, se ha retirado la placa de guarnición en esta ilustración. La plaque de garniture est montrée détachée sur cette illustration pour les besoins de l'explication.

INSTALACIÓN (MONTAJE EN EL TABLERO DE INSTRUMENTOS)

La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

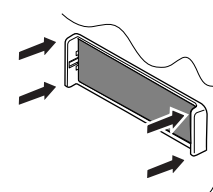
- Si usted no está seguro de cómo instalar correctamente la unidad, hágala instalar por un técnico cualificado.
- Asegúrese de no bloquear las rendijas de ventilación del panel trasero, para poder mantener una buena ventilación una vez instalado.
- No deberá instalar el receptor en un automóvil donde exista algún tipo de obstáculos en el espacio mostrado en "Espacio requerido para la instalación" más abajo.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

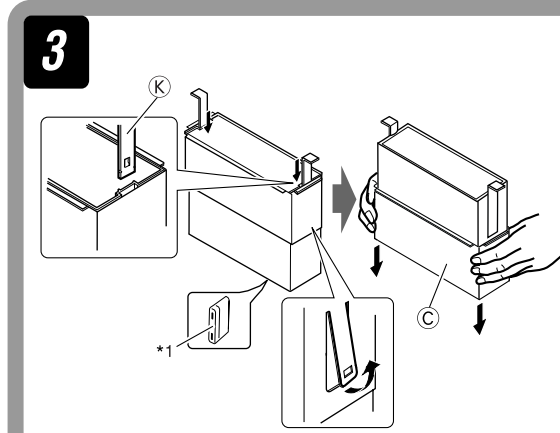
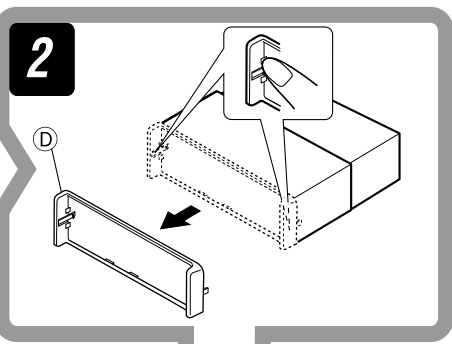
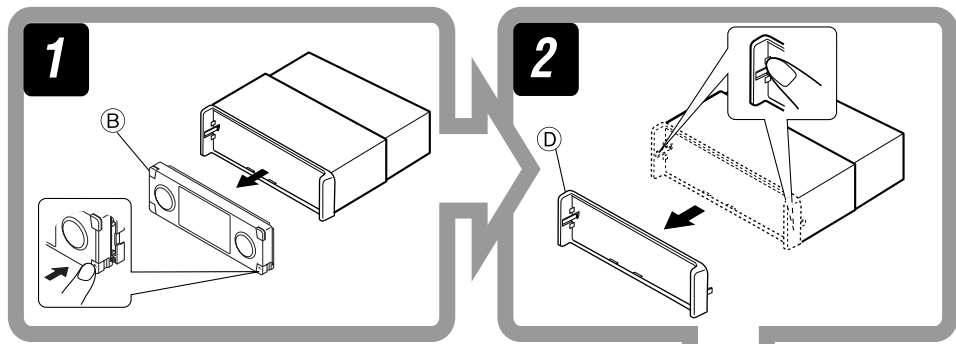
L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.
- Assurez-vous de ne pas bloquer le ventilateur sur le panneau arrière afin d'assurer une ventilation correcte une fois l'appareil installé.
- Vous ne pouvez pas installer l'autoradio dans une voiture avec des obstacles situés dans la zone marquée en gris dans l'illustration "Espace nécessaire pour l'installation" ci-dessous.

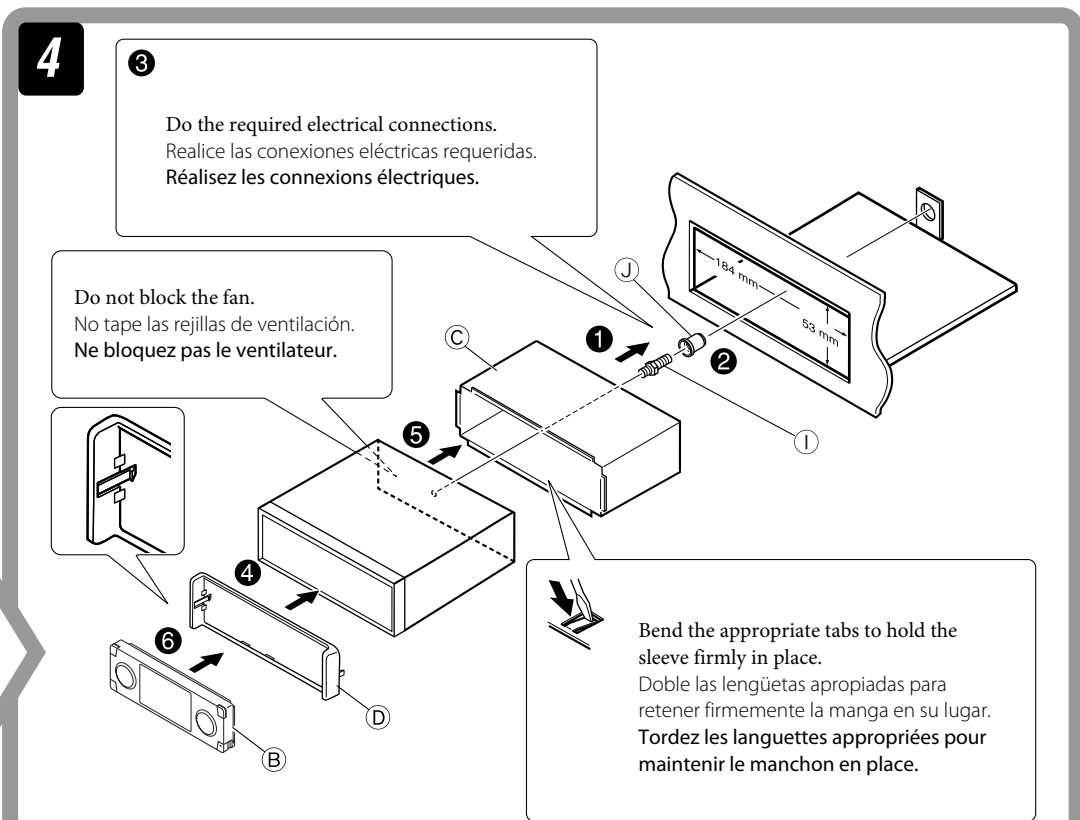
Caution when installing / Precaución en la instalación / Précautions lors de l'installation



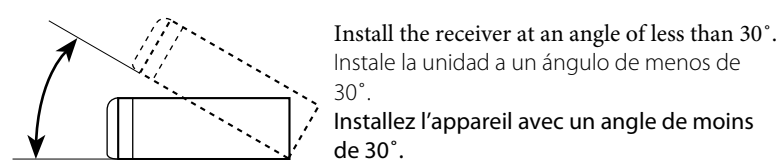
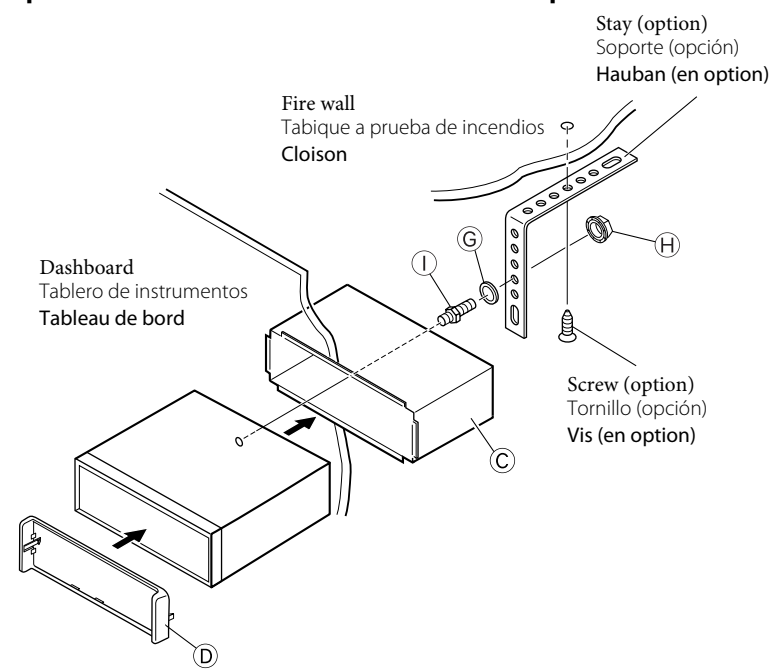
- Fit the receiver into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.
- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration).
- Introduzca el receptor en la manga de montaje utilizando las cuatro esquinas de la placa decorativa.
- NO presione el panel (sombreado en la ilustración).
- Fixez l'autoradio sur le manchon de montage en utilisant les quatre coins de la plaque de garniture.
- NE PUSSEZ PAS sur le panneau (en gris sur l'illustration).



- *1 When you stand the receiver, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
- *1 Al poner la unidad vertical, tenga cuidado de no dañar el fusible provisto en la parte posterior.
- *1 Lorsque vous mettez l'appareil à la verticale, faire attention de ne pas endommager le fusible situé sur l'arrière.

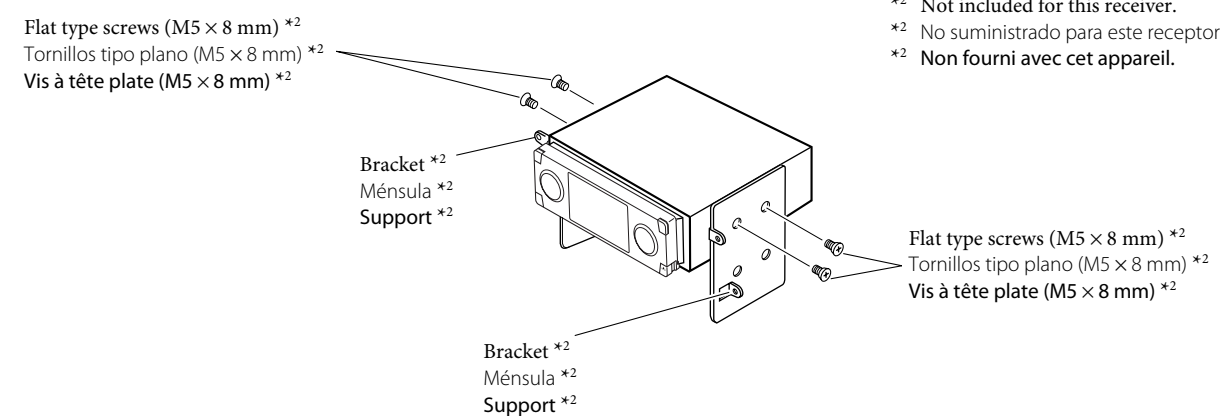


When using the optional stay / Cuando emplea un soporte opcional / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option



When installing the receiver without using the sleeve / Instalación de la unidad sin utilizar la cubierta / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sans utiliser de manchon

In a car having the "Required space for installation" (see page 1), first remove the car radio and install the receiver in its place.
En un automóvil que dispone del "Espacio requerido para la instalación" (véase página 1), primero desmonte el autorradio e instale el receptor en su lugar.
Dans une voiture possédant l' "Espace nécessaire pour l'installation" (voir page 1), retirez d'abord l'autoradio d'origine et installez cet appareil à sa place.



- Note:** When installing the receiver on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the receiver.
- Nota:** Cuando instala la unidad en la ménsula de montaje, asegúrese de utilizar los tornillos de 8 mm de longitud. Si se utilizan tornillos más largos, éstos pueden dañar la unidad.
- Remarque:** Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm. Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.

Removing the receiver

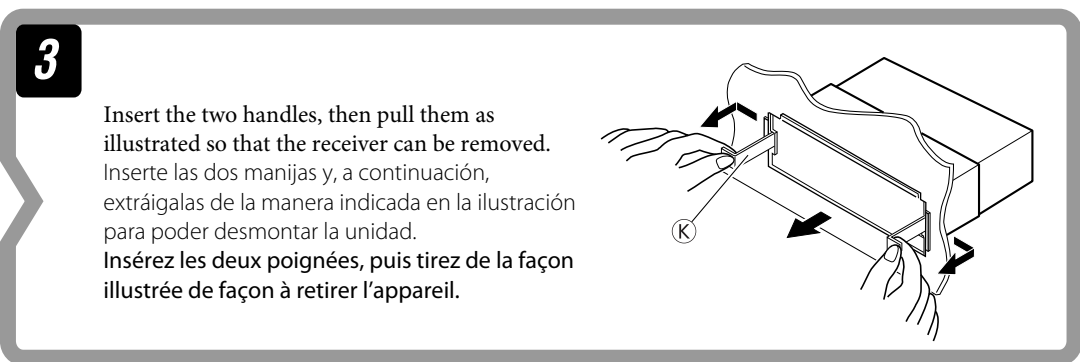
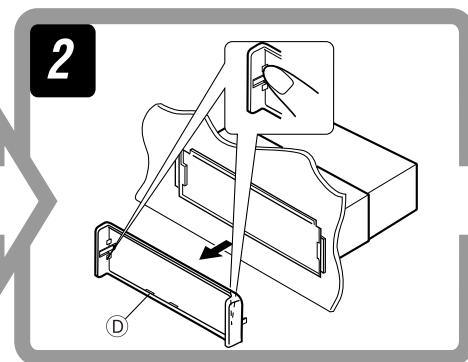
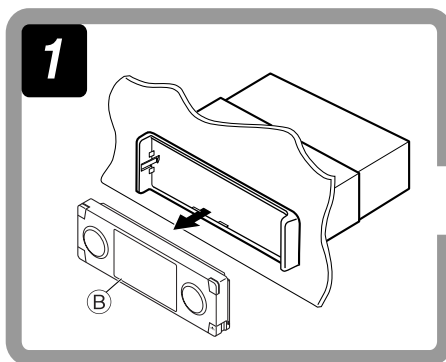
Before removing the receiver, release the rear section.

Extracción de la unidad

Antes de extraer la unidad, libere la sección trasera.

Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.



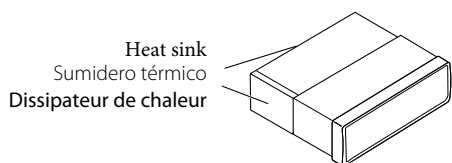
ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the receiver.

- Be sure to ground this receiver to the car's chassis again after installation.

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 43 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this receiver.



CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS

Para evitar cortocircuitos, recomendamos que desconecte el terminal negativo de la batería y que efectúe todas las conexiones eléctricas antes de instalar la unidad.

- Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.

Notas:

- Reemplace el fusible por uno con la corriente especificada. Si el fusible se quemase frecuentemente consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.
- Se recomienda conectar los altavoces con una potencia máxima de más de 50 W (tanto atrás como adelante, con una impedancia de **4 Ω a 8 Ω**). Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 50 W, cambie "Amplifier Gain" para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 43 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
- Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los cables NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.
- El sumidero térmico estará muy caliente después del uso. Asegúrese de no tocarlo al desmontar esta unidad.

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

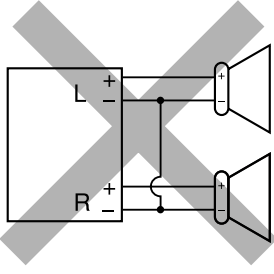
- Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.

Remarques:

- Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
- Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre **4 Ω et 8 Ω**). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amplifier Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 43 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
- Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.
- Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.

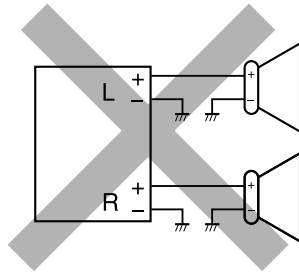
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the receiver will be seriously damaged.**
- **BEFORE** connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



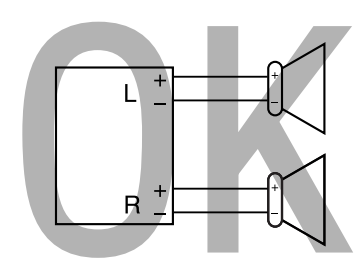
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en la unidad.**
- **ANTES** de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.



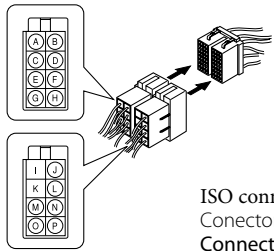
PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS** les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.
- **AVANT** de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.



A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Si su automóvil está equipado con el conector ISO / Si votre voiture est équipée d'un connecteur ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Conecte los conectores ISO tal como se indica en la ilustración.
- Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.



From the car body
Desde la carrocería del vehículo
De la carrosserie de la voiture

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
Conector ISO del cable de alimentación suministrado
Connecteur ISO pour le cordon d'alimentation fourni

View from the lead side
Vista desde el lado del conductor
Vue à partir du côté des fils

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Para algunos automóviles VW/Audi u Opel (Vauxhall) / Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this receiver.

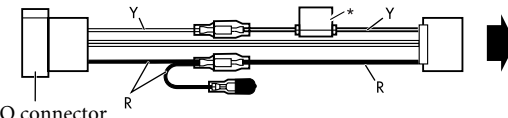
Podría ser necesario modificar el conexionado del cable de alimentación suministrado, tal como se indica en la ilustración.

- Antes de instalar esta unidad, consulte a su concesionario de automóviles autorizado.

Vous aurez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.

- Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.

Original wiring / Conexionado original / Câblage original



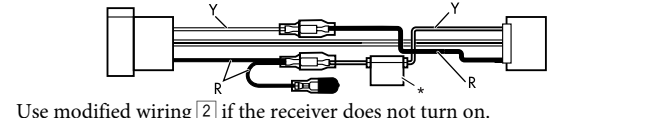
ISO connector
Conector ISO
Connecteur ISO

* Choking coil
Bobina de reactancia
Bobine d'arrêt

Y: Yellow
Amarillo
Jaune

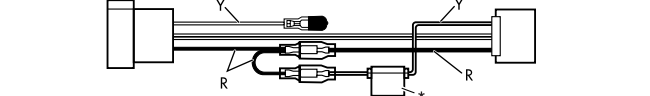
R: Red
Rojo
Rouge

Modified wiring [1] / Conexionado modificado [1] / Câblage modifié [1]



Use modified wiring [2] if the receiver does not turn on.
Si la unidad no se enciende, utilice el conexionado modificado [2].
Utilisez le câblage modifié [2] si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension.

Modified wiring [2] / Conexionado modificado [2] / Câblage modifié [2]



B Connections without using the ISO connectors / Conexiones sin usar los conectores ISO / Connexions sans l'utilisation des connecteurs ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this receiver. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- 1 Cut the ISO connector.
- 2 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 3 Connect the aerial cord.
- 4 Finally connect the wiring harness to the receiver.

Antes de la conexión: Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves en la unidad.

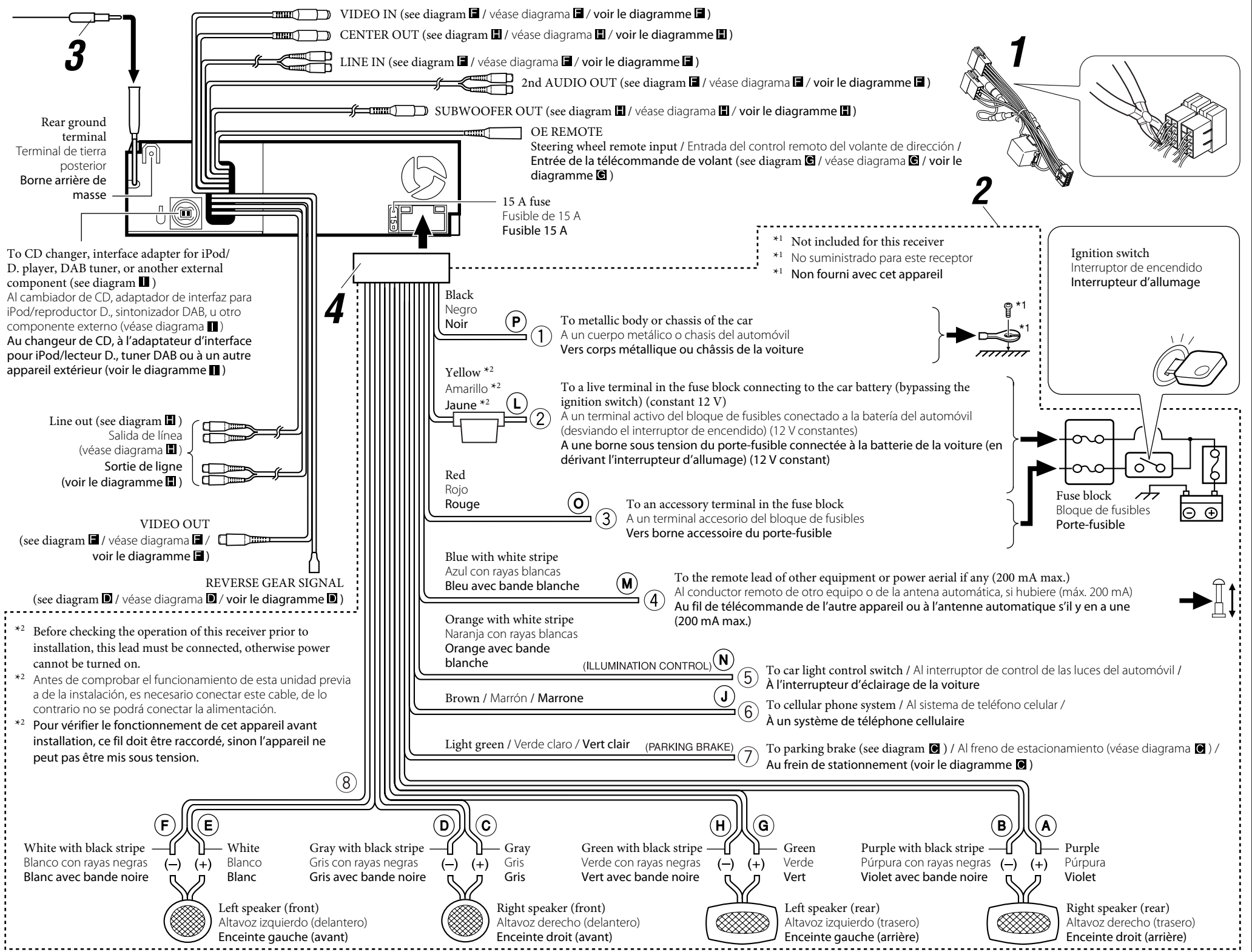
Los cordones del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil podrían ser de diferentes en color.

- 1 Corte el conector ISO.
- 2 Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.
- 3 Conecte el cable de antena.
- 4 Por último, conecte el cable de alimentación a la unidad.

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.

Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

- 1 Coupez le connecteur ISO.
- 2 Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
- 3 Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
- 4 Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.

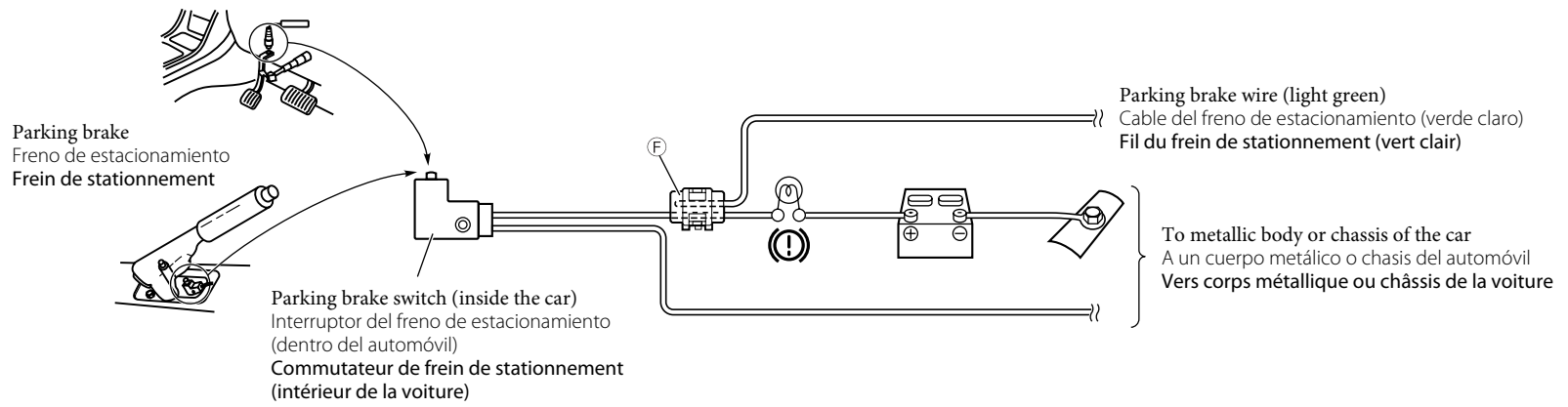


C Connecting the parking brake wire / Conexión del cable del freno de estacionamiento / Connexion du cordon de frein de stationnement

Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.

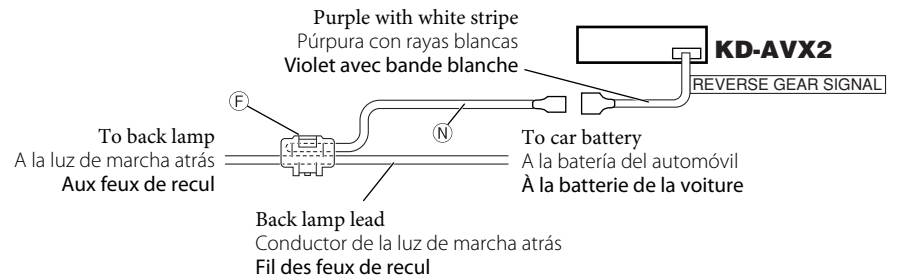
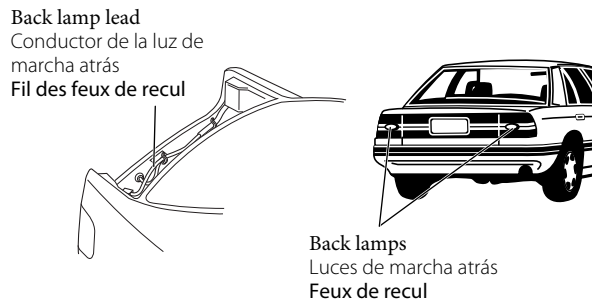
Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento al sistema de freno de estacionamiento del automóvil.

Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement.



D Connecting the back camera lead / Conexión del conductor de la cámara de retrovisión / Connexion du fil de la caméra de recul (REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL)

Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk. Localice el conductor de la luz de marcha atrás en el portaequipajes. Localisez le fil des feux de recul dans le coffre.



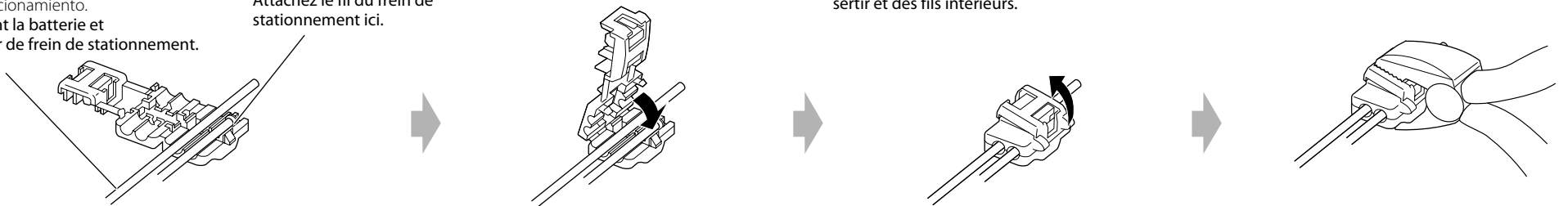
E Connecting the crimp connector*3 / Conexión del conector de presión*3 / Connexion de la cosse sertie*3

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch. Conecte la batería y el interruptor del freno de estacionamiento. Fil connectant la batterie et l'interrupteur de frein de stationnement.

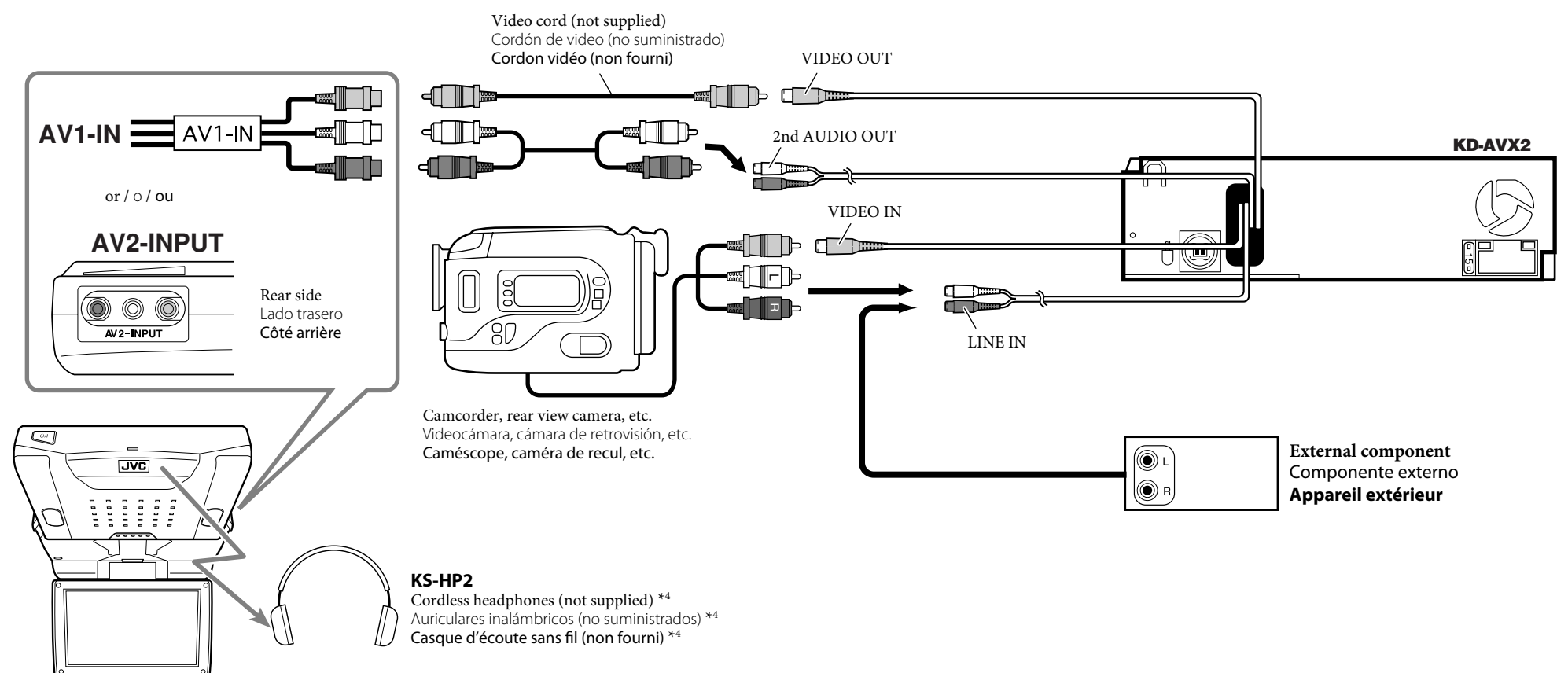
Attach the parking brake wire to this point. Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento a este punto. Attachez le fil du frein de stationnement ici.

Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside. Conecte la parte metálica de la sujeción a los cables de dentro. Mettez en contact la partie métallique de la cosse à sertir et des fils intérieurs.

Pinch the crimp firmly. Apriete la sujeción con firmeza. Pincez la cosse à sertir fermement.



F Connections for external component playback / Conexiones para la reproducción del componente externo / Connexions pour un appareil de lecture extérieur



KV-MR9010
9-INCH WIDESCREEN MONITOR (not supplied)
MONITOR DE PANTALLA ANCHA DE 9 PULGADAS (no suministrado)
MONITEUR À ÉCRAN LARGE DE 9 POUÇES (non fourni)

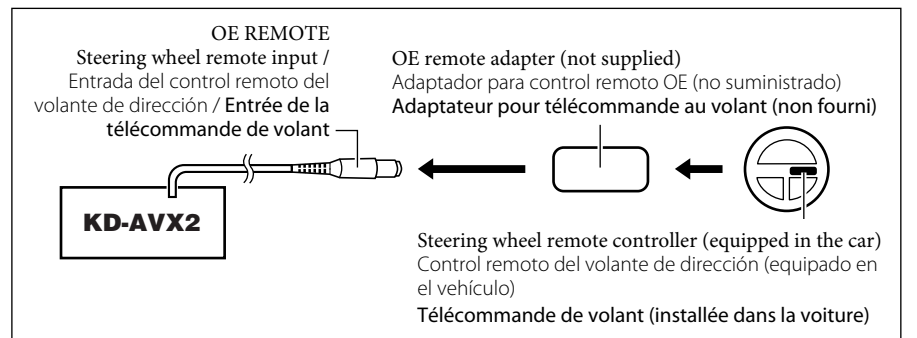
*4 To listen to disc playback sound while in Dual Zone operations (see page 33 of INSTRUCTIONS).
*4 Para escuchar el sonido de reproducción de disco mientras se está en operaciones de Zona Dual (consulte la página 33 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
*4 Pour écouter le son de lecture des disque lors de l'utilisation du mode Deux Zones (voir page 33 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

G Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Conexión al control remoto del volante de dirección / Connexion de la télécommande de volant

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this receiver using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Si su vehículo está equipado con control remoto en el volante de dirección, podrá hacer funcionar este receptor utilizando dicho control. Para ello, se requiere un adaptador para control remoto OE de JVC (no suministrado) que corresponda con su vehículo. Para mayor información, consulte con su concesionario car audio de JVC.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d'autoradio JVC pour les détails.



H Connecting the external amplifiers / Conexión a los amplificadores externos / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

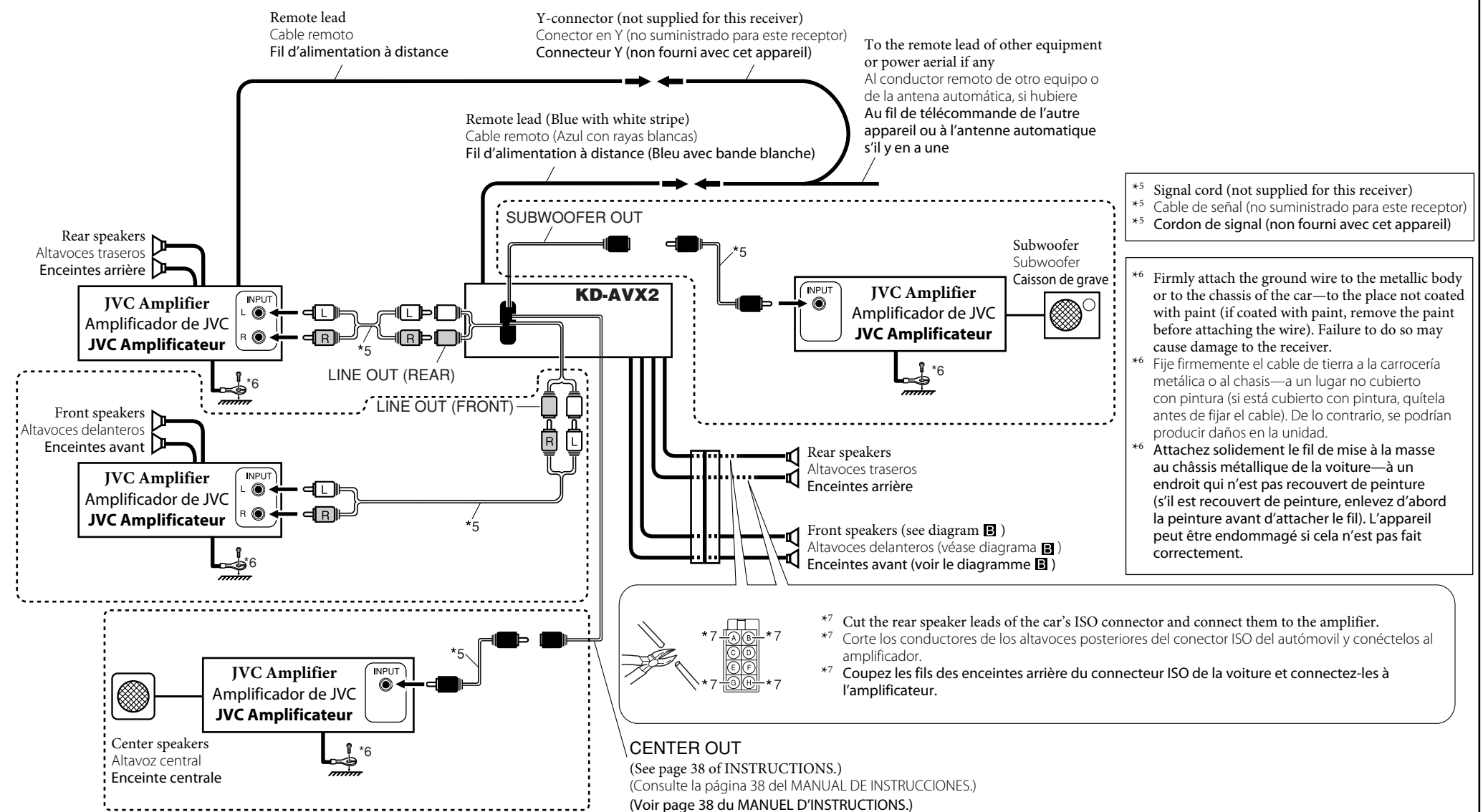
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this receiver.
- **For amplifier only:**
 - **Disconnect the speakers from this receiver, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this receiver unused.**
 - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the receiver. See page 43 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

Usted podrá conectar amplificadores para mejorar el sistema estereo de su automóvil.

- Conecte el conductor remoto (azul con rayas blancas) al conductor remoto del otro equipo para poderlo controlar a través de esta unidad.
- **Sólo para el amplificador:**
 - **Desconecte los altavoces de esta unidad y conéctelos al amplificador. Los cables de los altavoces de esta unidad quedan sin usar.**
 - Podrá desconectar el amplificador incorporado y enviar las señales de audio solamente al(los) amplificador(es) externo(s) para obtener sonidos nítidos y evitar que se caliente el interior de la unidad. Consulte la página 43 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES (volumen separado).

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour améliorer votre système autoradio.

- Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.
- **Pour l'amplificateur seulement:**
 - **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**
 - Vous pouvez désactiver l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement à un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs afin d'obtenir un son clair et pour éviter un échauffement interne de l'appareil. Référez-vous à la page 43 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS (volume séparé).



Connecting external components / Conexión a los componentes externos / Connexion des appareils extérieurs

CAUTION:

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the receiver is turned off.

PRECAUCIÓN:

Antes de conectar los componentes externos, asegúrese de que la unidad esté apagada.

PRECAUTION:

Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

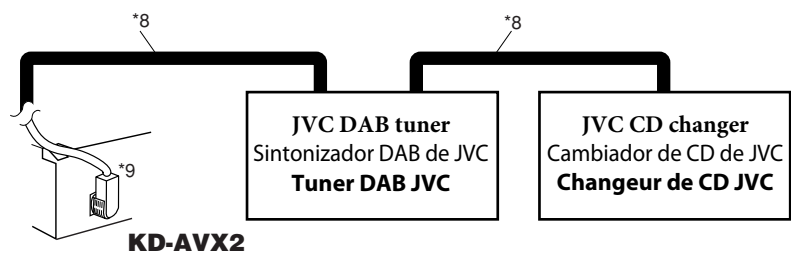
CD changer and DAB tuner / Cambiador de CD y sintonizador DAB / Changeur de CD et tuner DAB

- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 41 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Ajuste "External Input" a "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (consulte la página 41 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES). / Réglez "External Input" sur "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (voir page 41 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

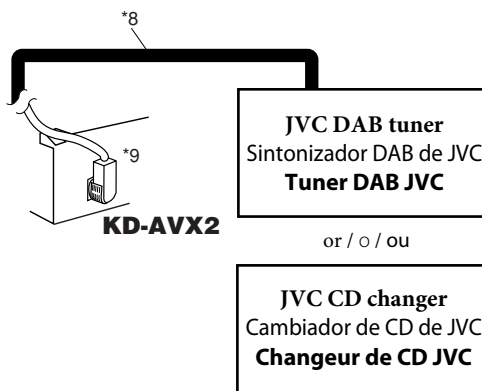
You can connect both components in series as illustrated below.

Puede conectar ambos componentes en serie, tal como se observa en la ilustración de abajo.

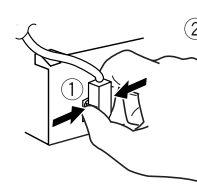
Vous pouvez connecter les deux appareils en série comme montré sur l'illustration.



- *8 Signal cord supplied with your JVC CD changer or DAB tuner
- *8 Conexión del cable suministrado para su cambiador de CD o sintonizador DAB
- *8 Cordon de signal fourni avec votre changeur de CD ou tuner DAB JVC



- *9 To disconnect the CD/DAB connector
- *9 Para desconectar el cable CD/DAB
- *9 Pour déconnecter le connecteur CD/DAB



- Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
- Sujete firmemente la parte superior del conector (①) y seguidamente, extráigalo (②).
- Tenez fermement le connecteur par-dessus (①) et tirez vers l'extérieur (②).

Apple iPod®/JVC D. player and DAB tuner / Apple iPod®/reproductor D. JVC y sintonizador DAB / iPod® Apple/lecteur D. JVC et tuner DAB

- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 41 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Ajuste "External Input" a "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (consulte la página 41 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES). / Réglez "External Input" sur "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (voir page 41 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

The iPod[®] or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

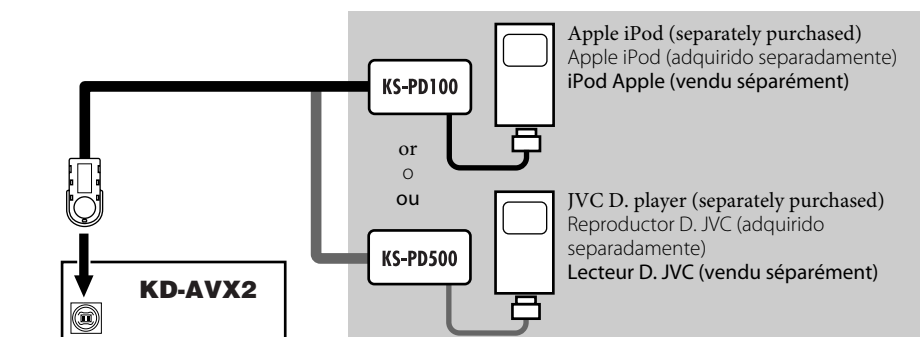
Puede conectar el iPod[®] o el reproductor D. usando un adaptador de interfaz (no suministrado)—KS-PD100 (para iPod) o KS-PD500 (para el reproductor D.).

Le iPod[®] ou le lecteur D. peut être connecté en utilisant un adaptateur d'interface (non fourni)—KS-PD100 (pour iPod) ou KS-PD500 (pour le lecteur D.).

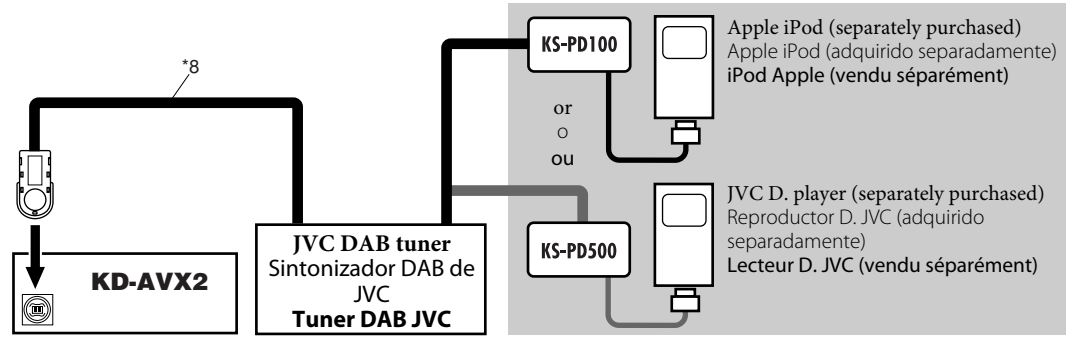
You can also connect both DAB tuner and interface adapter in series as illustrated below.

También podrá conectar tanto un sintonizador DAB como un adaptador de interfaz en serie, tal como se muestra en la ilustración de abajo.

Vous pouvez aussi connecter à la fois le tuner DAB et l'adaptateur d'interface en série comme montré sur l'illustration ci-dessous.



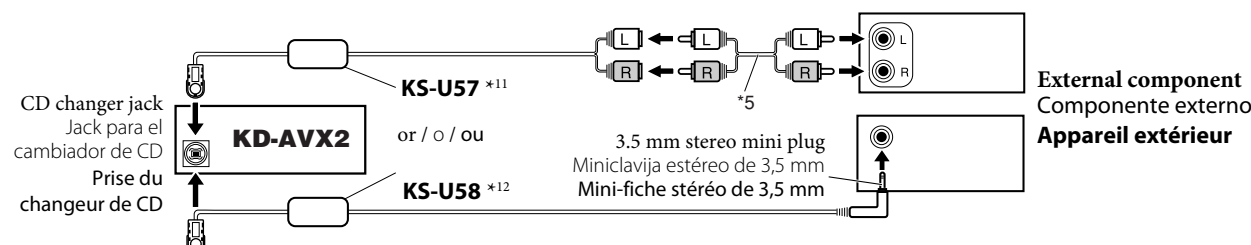
- *10 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- *10 iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Computer, Inc., registrada en los EE.UU. y otros países.
- *10 iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Computer, Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.



CD changer jack
Jack para el cambiador de CD
Prise du changeur de CD

Other external component / Otro componente externo / Autre appareil extérieur

- Set "External Input" to "External Input" (see page 41 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Ajuste "External Input" a "External Input" (consulte la página 41 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES). / Réglez "External Input" sur "External Input" (voir page 41 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).



- *11 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this receiver)
- *11 Adaptador de entrada de línea KS-U57 (no suministrado para este receptor)
- *11 Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne KS-U57 (non fourni avec cet appareil)

- *12 Aux Input Adapter KS-U58 (optionally purchased)
- *12 Adaptador de entrada auxiliar KS-U58 (adquirido opcionalmente)
- *12 Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire KS-U58 (vendu séparément)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- The fuse blows.**
 - * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- Power cannot be turned on.**
 - * Is the yellow lead connected?
- No sound from the speakers.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- Sound is distorted.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- Noise interferes with sounds.**
 - * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- Receiver becomes hot.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- This receiver does not work at all.**
 - * Have you reset your receiver?

LOCALIZACIÓN DE AVERIAS

- El fusible se quema.**
 - * ¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?
- No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
 - * ¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?
- No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
 - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?
- El sonido presenta distorsión.**
 - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
 - * ¿Están los terminales "-" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- Perturbación de ruido.**
 - * ¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?
- La unidad se calienta.**
 - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
 - * ¿Están los terminales "-" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- Este receptor no funciona en absoluto.**
 - * ¿Reinició el receptor?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- Le fusible saute.**
 - * Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils raccordés correctement?
- L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
 - * Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?
- Pas de son des enceintes.**
 - * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?
- Le son est déformé.**
 - * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
 - * Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- Interférence avec les sons.**
 - * La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?
- L'appareil devient chaud.**
 - * Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
 - * Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
 - * Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

JVC



ENGLISH

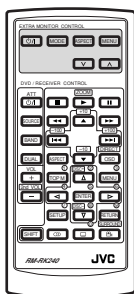
РУССКИЙ

DVD/CD RECEIVER

ПРИЕМНИК ДЛЯ ВОСПРОИЗВЕДЕНИЯ ДИСКОВ DVD И КОМПАКТ-ДИСКОВ

KD-AVX2

EXAD



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 10.

Информацию об отмене демонстрации функций дисплея см. на стр. 10.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual. Указания по установке и выполнению соединений приводятся в отдельной инструкции.

В соответствии с Законом Российской Федерации "О защите прав потребителей" срок службы (годности) данного товара "по истечении которого он может представлять опасность для жизни, здоровья потребителя, причинять вред его имуществу или окружающей среде" составляет семь (7) лет со дня производства. Этот срок является временем, в течение которого потребитель данного товара может безопасно им пользоваться при условии соблюдения инструкции по эксплуатации данного товара, проводя необходимое обслуживание, включающее замену расходных материалов и/или соответствующее ремонтное обеспечение в специализированном сервисном центре.

Дополнительные косметические материалы к данному товару, поставляемые вместе с ним, могут храниться в течение двух (2) лет со дня его производства.

Срок службы (годности), кроме срока хранения дополнительных косметических материалов, упомянутых в предыдущих двух пунктах, не затрагивает никаких других прав потребителя, в частности, гарантийного свидетельства JVC, которое он может получить в соответствии с законом о правах потребителя или других законов, связанных с ним.

INSTRUCTIONS

ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ



LVT1455-005A

[EE]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.	ADVARSEL : Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til strålingen.	WARNING : Synlig och osynlig laserstråling när den öppnas och spårren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen.	VARO : Avlåtessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet allina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)
--	---	---	--

For safety....

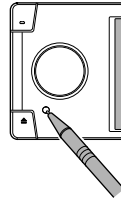
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

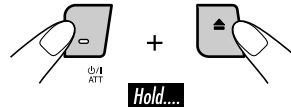
How to reset your unit



This will reset the microcomputer. Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

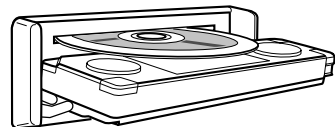
How to forcibly eject a disc

If a disc cannot be recognized by the receiver or cannot be ejected, ejects the disc as follows.



“NO EJECT?” (or “EJECT OK?”) and “EMERGENCY EJECT?” appear on the monitor.

Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select “EMERGENCY EJECT?”, then press ENT.



- If this does not work, reset your receiver.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

WARNINGS:

- **DO NOT** install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.

Characters shown on the monitor

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), the following characters will be used to show the various information on the monitor.

- You can also use the following characters to assign titles (see page 45).

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

Upper case (Cyrillic alphabet)

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Lower case (Cyrillic alphabet)

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	\$
%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	ı	ı	£	€	α	space		

Numbers and symbols

Introduction—Playable discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs—12 cm and 8 cm—on this receiver:

- **DVD Video:** Recorded in PAL color system with Region Code “5” (see below).
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played.
- **DVD Audio**
- **Video CD (VCD)/audio CD**
- **MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG1,2/DivX:** Recorded either in CD-R/CD-RW or DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM.
 - CD-R/CD-RW: Compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM: Compliant with UDF-Bridge Format*¹.
- *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (DVD Video format only) discs. However the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.*
- *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

Discs cannot be played back

DVD-ROM (data), DVD-RAM, DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

*¹ A hybrid file system used to provide compatibility with ISO 9660 for accessing any type of files on the disc. (UDF stands for Universal Disk Format.)

“DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This receiver can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “5”.

Examples:



If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code



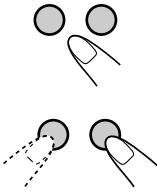

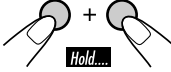
“Region Error” appears on the monitor on the unit and the disc ejects.

“REGION CODE ERROR” also appears on the external monitor.

How to read this manual

The following methods are used to make the explanations simple and easy-to-understand:

- Some related tips and notes are explained in “More about this receiver” (see pages 58 – 62).
- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations as follows:

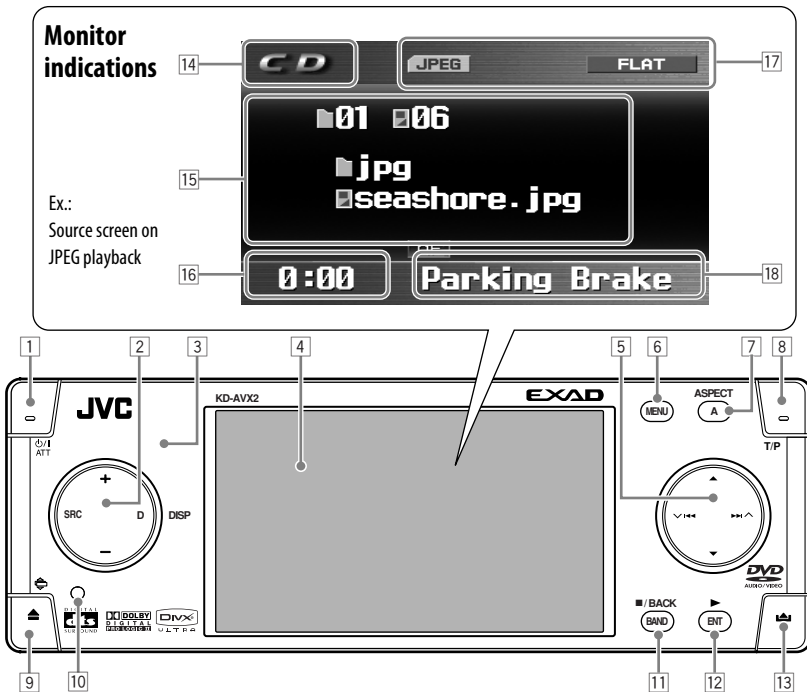
	<p>Press briefly.</p>
	<p>Press repeatedly.</p>
	<p>Press either one.</p>
	<p>Press and hold until your desired response begins.</p>
	<p>Press and hold both buttons at the same time.</p>

Contents

Control panel	6
Remote controller — RM-RK240	7
Getting started.....	10
Radio operations	12
FM RDS operations.....	15
Disc operations.....	18
Unique disc functions.....	23
Disc surround playback	25
On-Screen disc operations	27
Other disc operations	31
Dual Zone operations	33
AV Menu settings.....	34
Other main functions	45
CD changer operations	46
DAB tuner operations.....	48
External component operations	53
iPod®/D. player operations	54
Maintenance	56
Language codes.....	57
More about this receiver	58
Troubleshooting	63
Specifications	67

Control panel

Parts identification



- 1 ϕ /I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
- 2 • +/- (volume +/-) button
 - SRC (source) button
 - DISP (D: display) button
- 3 Remote Sensor
- 4 Monitor
- 5 • \blacktriangle (up) / \blacktriangledown (down) buttons
 - \blacktriangledown \blacktriangleleft / \blacktriangleright \blacktriangle buttons
- 6 MENU button
- 7 ASPECT (A) button
- 8 T/P button
- 9 • \blacktriangle (eject) button
 - \blacktriangle (angle) button
- 10 Reset button
- 11 • BAND button
 - BACK button
 - \blacksquare (stop) button

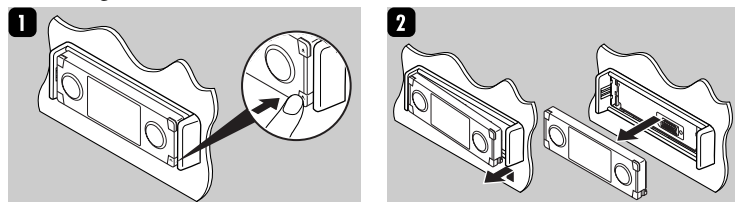
- 12 • ENT (enter) button
 - \blacktriangleright (play) button
- 13 \blacktriangle (control panel release) button

Monitor indications

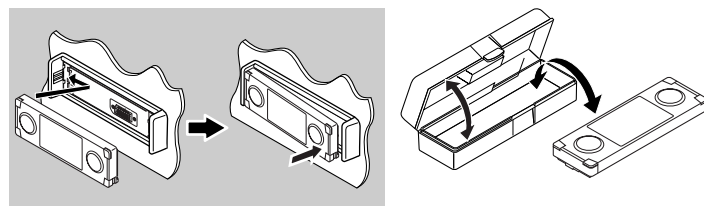
- 14 Source indicator
- 15 Main display
- 16 Clock display
 - Also indicates volume level when adjusting volume.
- 17 Status indicators
- 18 Alert information area
 - Also indicates volume level bar when adjusting volume.

How to detach/attach the control panel

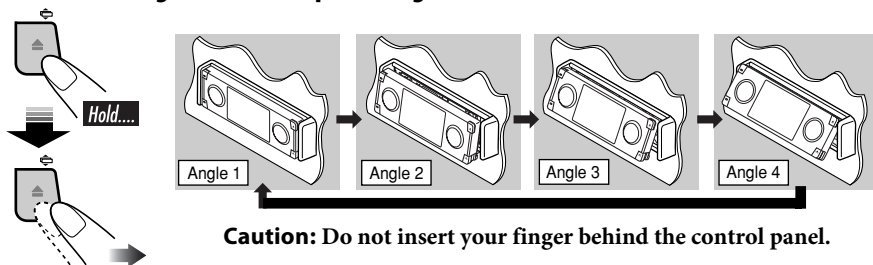
Detaching...



Attaching...

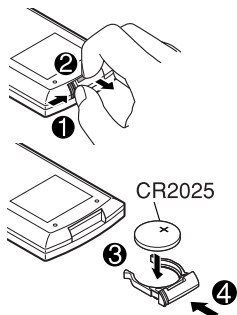


How to change the control panel angle



Remote controller — RM-RK240

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the receiver. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.



- Do not expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

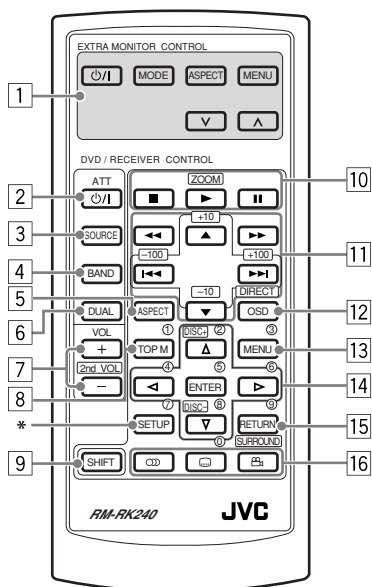
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accidents.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
 - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire.
 - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
 - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
 - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

The receiver is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features



* Not used as the SETUP button for this model.

IMPORTANT:

If Dual Zone is activated (see page 33), the remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.

MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons*1
 - ⏻/I (standby/on), MODE, ASPECT, MENU, ∇ and ▲.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 ⏻/I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
 - Turns on and off the power and also attenuates the sound.
- 3 SOURCE button
 - Selects the source.
- 4 BAND button
 - Selects the FM/AM/DAB bands.
- 5 ASPECT button
 - Change the aspect of the monitor on the unit when playing back DVD, VCD, etc.
- 6 DUAL button
 - Activate and deactivate Dual Zone.
- 7 VOL + / - buttons
 - Adjusts the volume level.
 - Also function as 2nd VOL +/- buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 8 TOP M (menu) button*2
 - Display the DVD, DVD Audio, DivX, and VCD*3 disc menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10 Basic disc operation buttons*4:
 - (stop), ▶ (play), || (pause)
 - ▶ (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 11 Advanced disc operation/tuner operation buttons*5

For advanced disc operations:

 - ▲ / ▼
 - Select the titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio), or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG/DivX).
 - ◀◀ / ▶▶ (reverse skip/forward skip)
 - ◀◀ / ▶▶ (reverse search/forward search)*6

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
– Changes the preset stations.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
– Functions to search for stations.
Press briefly: auto search
Press and hold: manual search

For DAB tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
– Changes the preset channels.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
– Changes the services if pressed briefly.
– Changes the channels if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
▲: Enters the main menu of iPod/D. player. (Now ▲ / ▼/|◀◀ / ▶▶| work as the menu selection buttons)*7
- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (in menu selecting mode)
– Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

12 OSD button

- Display the on-screen bar.
- Also function as the DIRECT button when pressed with SHIFT button.
– You can directly select titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio) or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/MPEG/DivX) using the number buttons (see the right column and page 22).

13 MENU button*2

- Display the DVD, DivX, and VCD*2 disc menu. (Not functions for the DVD Audio disc.)

14 Menu operation buttons*2

- Cursor (▲, ▼, ◀, ▶) and ENTER
- ▲ / ▼ : Also function as DISC+/- buttons when the source is “CD-CH”.

15 RETURN button*2

16 Special function buttons

- DVD/VCD/DivX: ○○○ (audio)
- DVD/DivX: □□□ (subtitle)
- DVD: ◻◻ (angle)
- ◻◻ Also function as the SURROUND button when pressed with SHIFT button.
– You can change the surround mode (see page 26).

*1 Controllable only if your monitor is one of the JVC monitors — KV-MR9010 or KV-MH6510.

*2 These buttons function as the number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 Only when PBC is not in use.

*4 Not used for CD changer operations.

*5 These buttons function as the +10/-10 and +100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

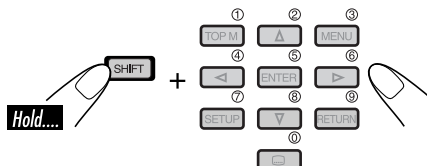
*6 Not used for JPEG operations. No sound can be heard (DVD/VCD/MPEG/DivX).

*7 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.

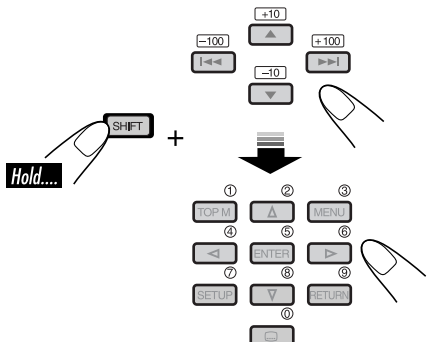
▼: Confirms the selection.

How to select a number

To select a number from 0 – 9:



To select a number greater than 9:



- +100/-100 buttons used for searching track number greater than 99 (not available for CD/VCD/DVD/DVD audio).

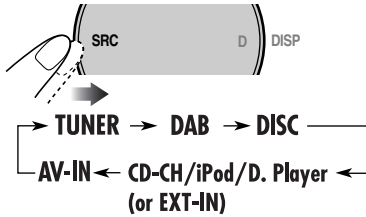
Getting started

Basic operations

1 Turn on the power.

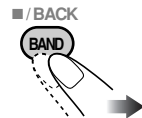


2



You cannot select some sources if they are not ready.

3



For FM/AM tuner

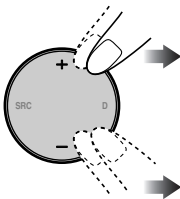


For DAB tuner



4

Adjust the volume.



Volume level indicator

5

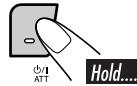
Adjust the equalizer as you want.
(See pages 42.)

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT)



To restore the sound, press it again.

To turn off the power



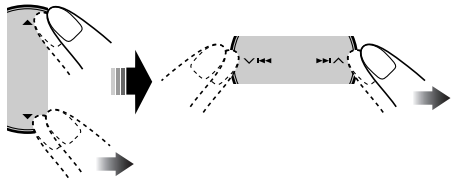
Canceling demonstration and setting the clock

1



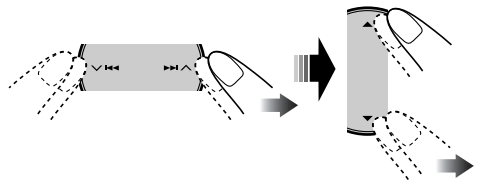
2 Select "Setup", then,

- 1 Select "Display", "Demonstration", then "Off" to cancel demonstration.
- 2 Select "Clock", "Time Set", and go to the next step to set the clock.

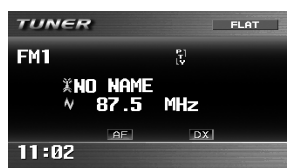
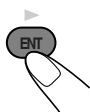


3 Set the hour and minute.

- 1 Select "Hour", then adjust the hour.
- 2 Select "Minute", then adjust the minute.



4 Finish the procedure.

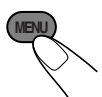


- See the example on “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” below to change the clock from 24 hours to 12 hours.

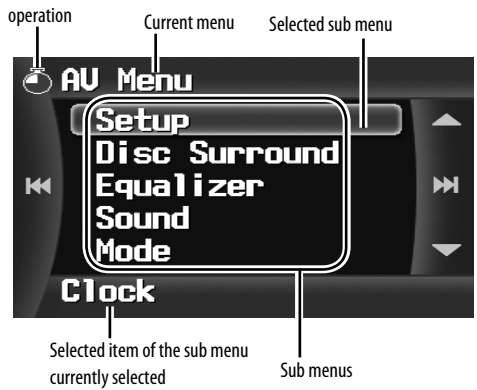
Basic procedure of AV Menu operation

You can adjust various settings of the unit from AV Menu.

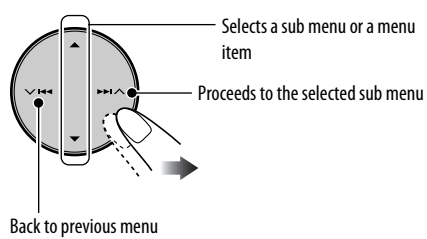
- To call up AV Menu...



Displays remaining time to continue the menu operation



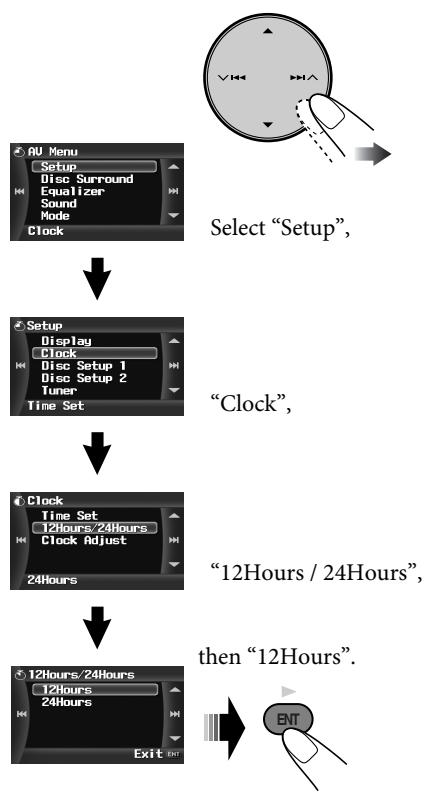
- To select an menu item and proceed to the sub menu...



- To go back to the previous screen and adjust other items...

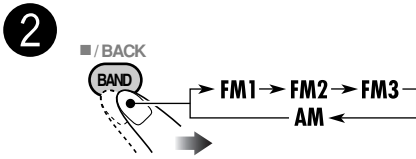
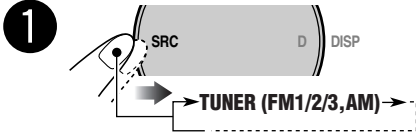


Ex.: To change the clock from 24 hours to 12 hours, after pressing MENU...

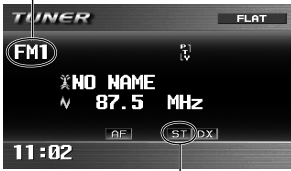


- To cancel menu operations and return to the source screen, press DISP (D).
- See pages 34 – 44 for information of the sub menu and menu items.

Radio operations



Selected band appears.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

3 **Start searching for a station.**



When a station is received, searching stops.

To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

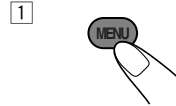
In step 3 above...



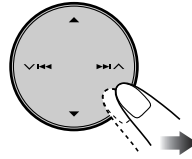
2 Select the desired station frequencies.



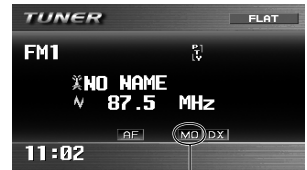
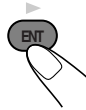
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive



2 Select "Mode", "Mono", then "On".



3 Finish the procedure.




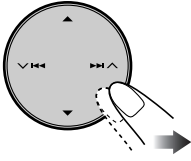
Lights up when monaural mode is activated.

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

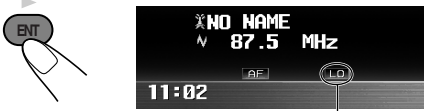
To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to set "Mono" to "Off". The MO indicator goes off.

To tune in strong-signal FM station only

- 1  MENU
- 2 Select “Mode”, “DX / Local”, then “Local”.



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Lights up when “Local” mode is activated.

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.


To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure to set “DX / Local” to “DX”. The LO indicator goes off and the DX indicator lights up.

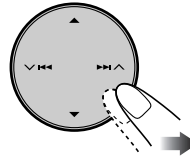
Storing stations in memory

You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

After selecting the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want...

- 1  MENU
- 2 Select “Mode”, then “SSM”.



- 3  ENT




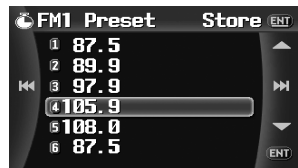
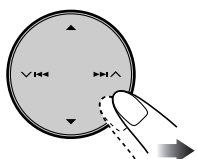
“SSM” is shown until automatic presetting is over.

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

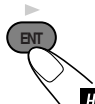
After tuning in the station you want to preset...

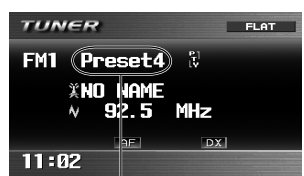
- 1 
- 2 Select "List", then a preset number (1-6) you want store the station into.



EX.: Storing 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of FM1

- You can also display the list by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons.

- 3  Hold...





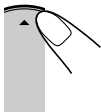
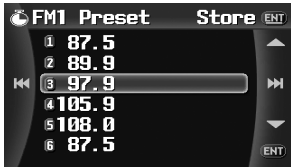
Stored preset number flashes for a while.

How to exit from menus or lists

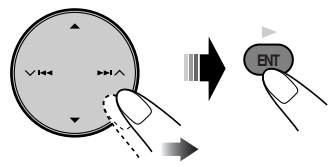


Menu or list operations are canceled and the screen returns to the source screen.

Listening to a preset station

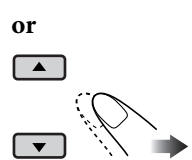
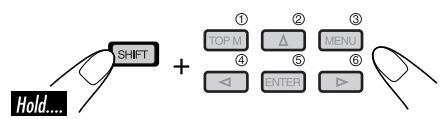
- 1  → TUNER (FM1/2/3,AM) →
- 2  BAND → FM1 → FM2 → FM3
AM ←
- 3  Hold... 

- 4 Select a preset number (1-6) you want.



- You can change the preset list between FM1/2/3 by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons (or by pressing ▲/▼ buttons repeatedly) when selecting any of the FM bands.

When using the remote controller...

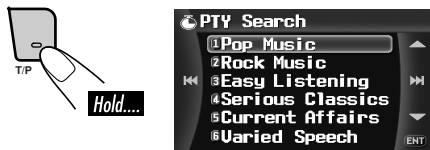


FM RDS operations

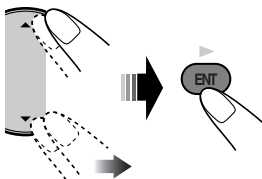
Searching for your favorite FM RDS programme

You can tune in to a station broadcasting your favorite programme by searching for a PTY code.

1



2 Select one of the twenty-nine PTY codes.



The preset programmes appears at first. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select other programmes.

If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

- Press and hold ▲ / ▼ to move the list rapidly.
- To store your favorite programme, see page 16.

PTY codes

News (News), Affairs (Current Affairs), Info (Information), Sport (Sport), Educate (Education), Drama (Drama), Culture (Cultures), Science (Science), Varied (Varied Speech), Pop M (Pop Music), Rock M (Rock Music), Easy M (Easy Listening), Light M (Light Classics M), Classics (Serious Classics), Other M (Other Music), Weather (Weather & Metr), Finance (Finance), Children (Children's Progs), Social (Social Affairs), Religion (Religion), Phone In (Phone In), Travel (Travel & Touring), Leisure (Leisure & Hobby), Jazz (Jazz Music), Country (Country Music), Nation M (National Music), Oldies (Oldies Music), Folk M (Folk Music), Document (Documentary)

- The code names in the parentheses appear on the list screen.

What you can do with RDS

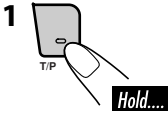
RDS (Radio Data System) allows FM stations to send an additional signal along with their regular programme signals.

By receiving the RDS data, this receiver can do the following:

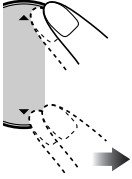
- Programme Type (PTY) Search (See the left column.)
- Temporarily switches to Traffic Announcement—TA Standby Reception. (see page 16)
- Temporarily switches to your favorite programme—PTY Standby Reception. (See pages 17 and 44.)
- Tracing the same programme automatically—Network-Tracking Reception (See page 17.)
- Programme Search (See page 40.)

Storing your favorite programmes

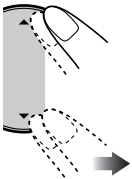
You can store six favorite programme types.



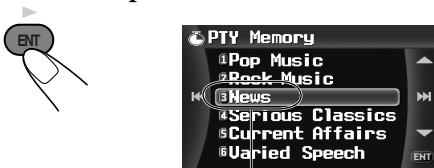
2 Select a PTY code you want to store.



4 Select a preset number (1–6) you want.



5 Finish the procedure.



Stored programme name flashes for a while.

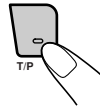
Using the standby receptions

TA Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception allows the receiver to switch temporarily to Traffic Announcement (TA) from any source other than AM.

- The volume changes to the preset TA volume level (see page 40).
- If the DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service.

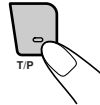
To activate TA Standby Reception



T/P either lights up or flashes.

- If **T/P** lights up, TA Standby Reception is activated.
- If **T/P** flashes, TA Standby Reception is not yet activated. (This occurs when you are listening to an FM station without the RDS signals required for TA Standby Reception.) To activate TA Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or DAB service) providing these signals. **T/P** will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the TA Standby Reception




T/P goes off.

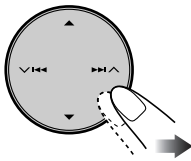
PTY Standby Reception

PTY Standby Reception allows the receiver to switch temporarily to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.

- If the DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service.

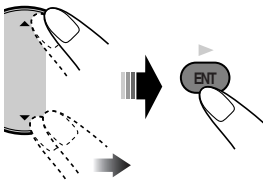
To activate and select your favorite PTY code for PTY Standby Reception,

- 1 
- 2 Select “Mode”, “PTY Standby”, then the PTY code below “Off”.



PTY code list appears.

- 3 Select a PTY code you want.



PTY either lights up or flashes.

- If **PTY** lights up, PTY Standby Reception is activated.
- If **PTY** flashes, PTY Standby Reception is not yet activated.

To activate PTY Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or DAB service) providing these signals. The PTY indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

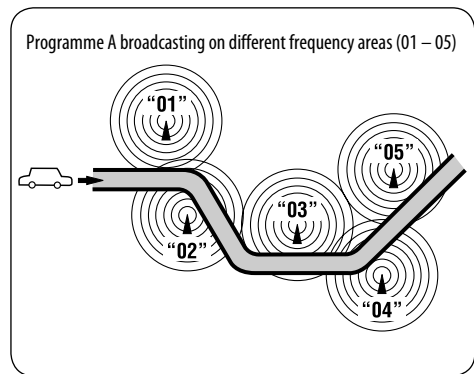
To deactivate the PTY Standby Reception, select “Off” on “PTY Standby” in the “Mode” menu.

PTY goes off.

Tracking the same programme— Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this receiver automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated (**AF** lights up when the power is turned on for the first time).
To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see “AF-Regional” on page 40.



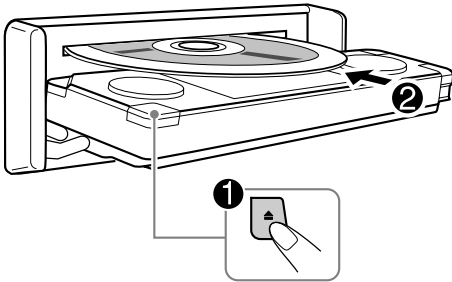
Disc operations

Playing a disc in the receiver

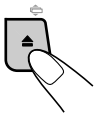
The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD Video/Audio: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc is an audio CD, CD Text, MP3/WMA/WAV, JPEG, MPEG, DivX, or VCD without PBC, all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

- If a title list or disc menu appears while playing a DVD Video/Audio or VCD with PBC, see “Disc menu operations” on page 24.



To eject a disc



The following marks are used to indicate the playable discs...



DVD Video



DVD Audio



Video CD with/without PBC



Video CD with PBC only



MPEG disc



JPEG disc

Audio CD/
CD TextMP3/WMA/WAV
disc

DivX disc



All discs listed here

Before performing any operations, make sure the following...

- The operations explained on pages 20 – 25 are mainly of the remote controller.
 - shows functions which you can also use on the unit.

If “” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the receiver cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

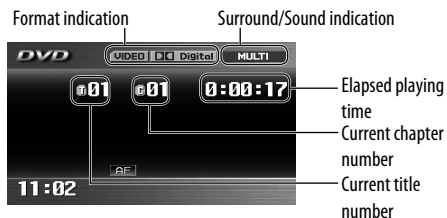
- In some cases, without showing “”, operations will not be accepted.

• **When inserting a DVD video/DVD Audio disc:**

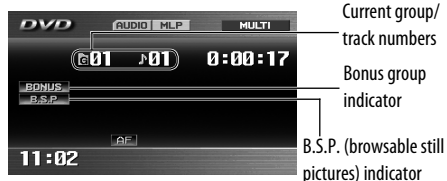
Video/picture playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).

When an DVD is playing back



When a DVD Audio disc is playing back

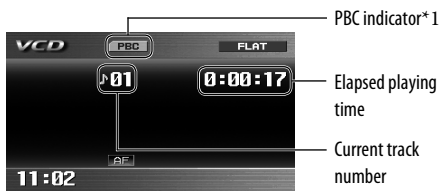


- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting a VCD:**

VCD playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).



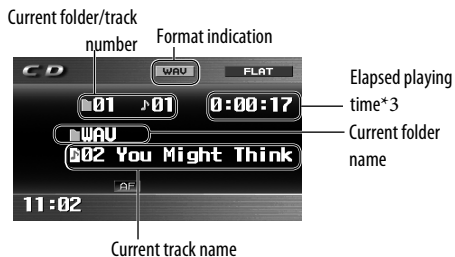
*1 Appears when the PBC function is in use.

- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting an MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG/DivX disc*2:**

After showing the total folder and file number...

Ex.: When an WAV file is detected

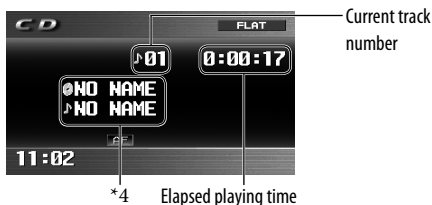


*2 When playing back a JPEG/MPEG/DivX disc, press DISP (D) to display the screen. (Picture/video playback is automatically starts when the parking brake is applied.)

*3 Does not appear for JPEG disc.

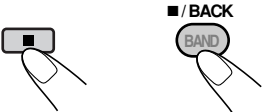
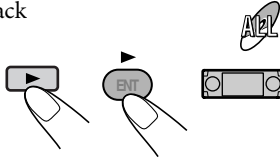





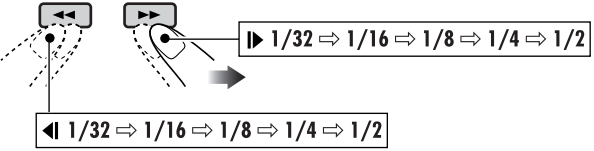




• **When inserting a CD Text/audio CD:**

After showing the total track number and total playing time...



*4 Disc title/performer and track title are displayed when playing a CD Text.

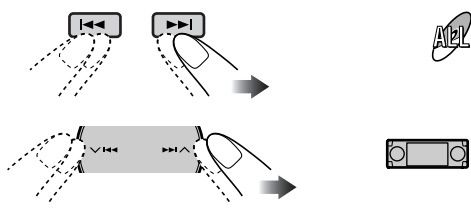
Basic operations

Operations	Monitor indication and/or next operation
<p>To stop playback</p> 	<p>When you start playback again, playback starts from where it has been stopped (Resume play).</p> 
<p>To stop play temporarily</p> 	<p>Playback is paused.</p>  <p>A still picture appears.</p> <p>(A) Frame by frame playback </p>  <p>(B) Slow motion playback </p>  <p>▶ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</p> <p>◀ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sound comes out during Slow Motion Playback. • When playing a VCD, Reverse Slow Motion Playback is prohibited. <p>To resume normal play:</p> 
<p>To replay the previous scenes—One Touch Replay</p> 	<p>The playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This function works only within the same title. • For some DVDs, this function does not work.  

- During play, on-screen guide icons appear on the monitor for a while (see page 62).

To go to the next or previous chapters/tracks

- For DVD: During play or pause

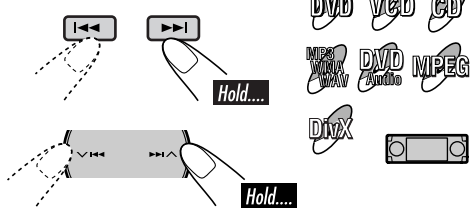


To locate a particular title/chapter/track directly

- For DVD Video/DVD Audio:
During play or pause—select a chapter/track.
During stop—select a title/track.
- For MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG:
Select a track within the same folder.

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter/track

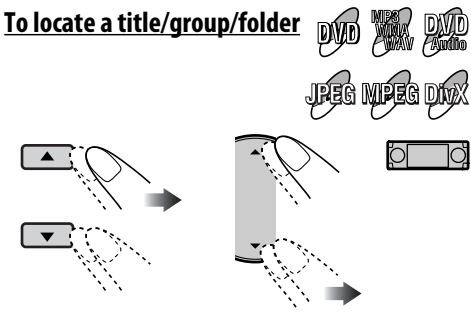
While playing back...



* The search speed changes to x2 ⇔ x10 (▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2 for MPEG/DivX), but the information shown on the monitor is only for DVD/VCD/MPEG/DivX.

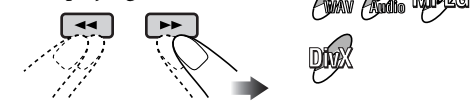
Select the number corresponding to the item you want (see page 9).

To locate a title/group/folder



To forward or reverse search the chapter/track

While playing back...



The information shown is only for DVD/VCD:

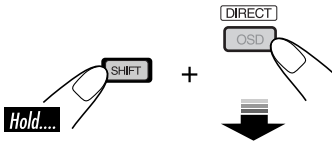
- ▶▶ x2 ⇔ x5 ⇔ x10 ⇔ x20 ⇔ x60
- ◀◀ x2 ⇔ x5 ⇔ x10 ⇔ x20 ⇔ x60

* The search speed of an MPEG/DivX file is 3 steps - ▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2/3.

- To resume normal speed



**To locate a particular title/
group/folder**

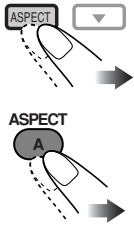


Within 10 seconds,
press the number
buttons (see page 9).

IMPORTANT:

- For MP3/WMA/WAV discs: It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit number at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

To adjust the screen shape on the unit

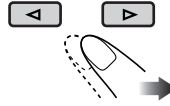


- See “Aspect” on page 36 for the detail.

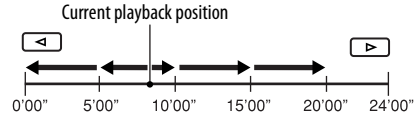
**To skip to the next or previous
scene**



You can skip the scene back and forward by 5 minutes.



Ex.: when you are playing a 24-minute MPEG file and the elapsed playing time is 8'24”...



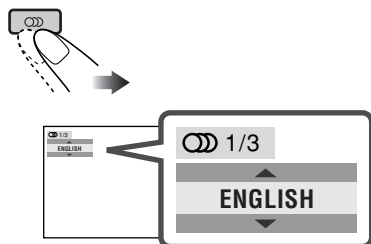
- The first pressing of the buttons skips the scene to the nearest multiple-of-5 playing time (except current playing time).
- This function does not work when remaining time to skip forward or back is under 5 minutes.

Unique disc functions

Selecting audio languages

For DVD and DivX:

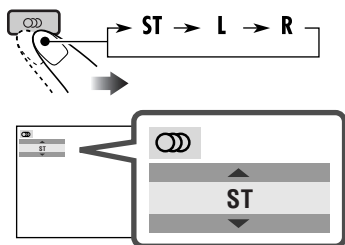
You can select the language to listen to if the disc has multiple audio languages.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

For VCD:

You can select the audio channel to play. (This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.)



ST: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.

L: To listen to the L (left) audio channel.

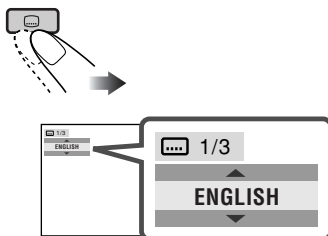
R: To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

Selecting subtitles

You can select the language of the subtitle to be shown on the monitor.



- You can set the initial subtitle language using the AV Menu (see page 37).

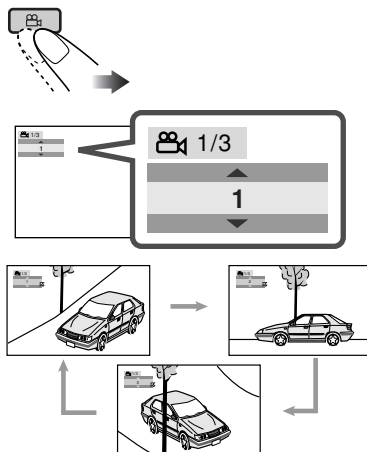


Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the subtitle language, audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting multi-angle views

You can view the same scene at different angles if the disc has multi-angle views.

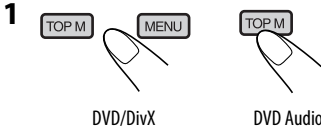


Ex.: When the disc has 3 multi-angle views

Disc menu operations

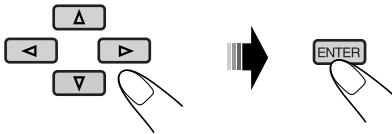
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a disc with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PBC (PlayBack Control).

While playing a DVD/DivX



A title list or disc menu will appear on the monitor.

2 Select the item you want on the menu.



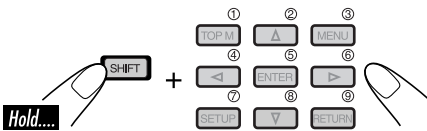
Selected item starts playback.

- On some discs, you can also select items by their numbers.

While playing a VCD



- When a list of items is displayed on the monitor.

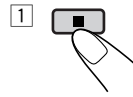


- To select a number greater than 9, see “How to select a number” on page 9.

To return to the previous menus

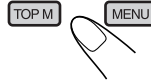


Canceling the PBC playback

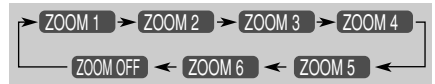
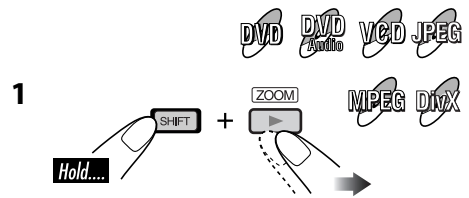


- 2 Select a track to start normal playback using the number buttons (see page 9).

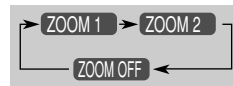
To resume the PBC function



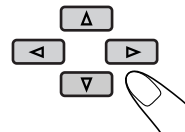
Zoom in



For JPEG disc (effective only when pausing):



2 Move the zoomed-in position.



- For JPEG files:
You cannot move the zoomed-in position when the entire picture is still displayed on the monitor.

To cancel zoom, select “ZOOM OFF” in step 1.

Playing back a bonus group

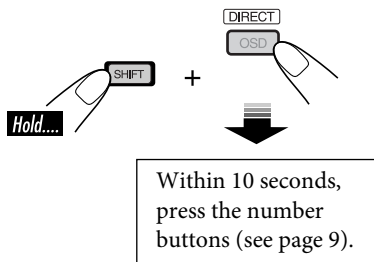
Some DVD Audio discs have a special group called “bonus group” whose contents are not open to the public.



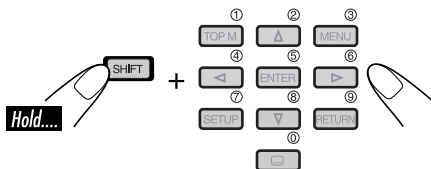
- To play back a bonus group, you have to enter the specific “key number” (a kind of password) for the bonus group. The way of getting the key number depends on the disc.

1 Select the bonus group.

- The bonus group is usually recorded as the last group (for example, if a disc contains four groups including a bonus group, “group 4” is the bonus group).



2 Enter the key number.



3 Follow the interactive instructions shown on the monitor.

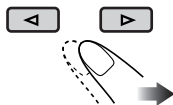
- The entered key number is cleared when the disc is ejected. Repeat steps 1 to 3 above to play back the bonus group again.

Selecting Browsable still pictures

While playing back a track linked to browsable still pictures (B.S.P.), you can select (turn the page) the still picture to be shown on the monitor.



- If a track is linked to B.S.P., they are usually shown in turn automatically during playback.



Disc surround playback

You can enjoy multichannel surround playback of the disc on the unit.

Available surround format

Dolby Digital*1: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with Dolby Digital ().

Dolby Pro Logic II: Dolby Pro Logic II is a multichannel playback format to decode all 2 channel sources—stereo source and Dolby Surround encoded source—into 5.1 channels. Dolby Pro Logic II has two modes—Movie mode and Music mode:

- Pro Logic II Movie**
Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
- Pro Logic II Music**
Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

DTS (Digital Theater Systems)*2: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with DTS Digital Surround ().

Continued on the next page

*1: Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless, and the double-D symbol are the trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2: "DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

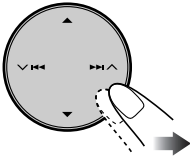
Selecting the surround mode

The unit is set up, by default, to select the optimal surround mode for the digital multichannel disc in the initial setting. You can also choose the surround mode for the 2 channel disc.

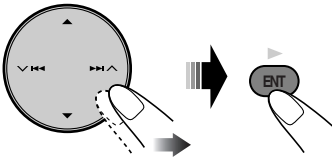
When DISC is selected as the source...



2 Select "Disc Surround".



3 Select the surround setting you want.



Surround Off:

Deactivate the surround function.

Surround On^{*1*2}:

- **Auto**^{*3}: the optimum surround mode is selected automatically when multichannel digital signals are detected.
- **Dolby PLII Movie**^{*4*5}: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Movie.
- **Dolby PLII Music**^{*4*5*6}: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Music.

*1 No sound comes out of the rear speakers and the subwoofer when the FRONT 2CH indicator appears on the monitor.

*2 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the FIX indicator appears on the monitor.

*3 Activates no surround function when the source is a CD (except for DTS CD)/VCD / MP3/WMA/WAV. Select "Dolby PLII Movie" or "Dolby PLII Music" manually to activate the surround function.

*4 Not selectable in the cases below:

- the disc has 2.1 or more channels of sound tracks (except for MPEG-encoded tracks).
- the disc is an MPEG/DivX disc.

*5 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the front speaker size is set to "Large" (see page 38).

*6 When you select "Dolby PLII Music", you can adjust the following items: "Panorama" and "Center Width". Adjusting "Panorama" to "On" adds "wraparound" sound effect; Activating "Center Width" adjusts the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger (normally select "4").

- No sound comes out from the center speaker when the surround function is not activated.
- Equalizer settings (page 42) become ineffective and unadjustable while the surround function is activated.
- No sound may come out from some speakers depending on the Speaker Size settings (page 38) or the type of the disc played back.
- When Dual Zone is activated, the surround settings become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.

On the remote controller:



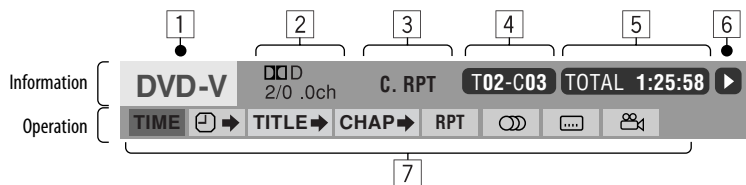
On-Screen disc operations

Operations using the on-screen bar

You can check the disc information and use some functions through the on-screen bar.



On-screen bar

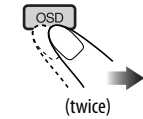


- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 Disc type</p> <p>2 • DVD Video/DVD Audio: Audio signal format type
• VCD: PBC</p> <p>3 Playback mode
DVD: T. RPT: Title repeat
C. RPT: Chapter repeat
DVD Audio:
T. RPT: Track repeat
VCD: T. RPT: Track repeat
D. RND: Disc random
T. INT: Track intro
Plays the beginning 15 seconds of the current track
JPEG: T. RPT: Track repeat
MPEG/DivX:
T. RPT: Track repeat
F. RPT: Folder repeat</p> <p>4 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
G02-T03 Current group/track
TRACK 01 Current track
F001-T001 Current folder/track</p> <p>5 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM Remaining disc time (for VCD)/remaining title time (for DVD)
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track</p> | <p>REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track</p> <p>6 Playback status
 Play
 Forward/reverse search
 Forward/reverse slow-motion
 Pause
 Stop</p> <p>7 Operation icons
TIME Change time indication (see 5)
 Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE Title Search (by its number)
GROUP Group Search (by its number)
CHAP Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK Track Search (by its number)
 Change the audio language or audio channel
 Change the subtitle language
 Change the view angle
RPT Repeat play*
INT Intro play*
RND Random play*</p> |
|---|--|

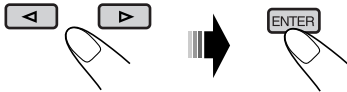
* See also page 31.

Basic on-screen bar operations

1 Display the on-screen bar.



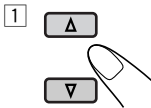
2 Select an item.



3 Make a selection.



- If pop-up menu appears....



or press the number buttons
(see page 9).

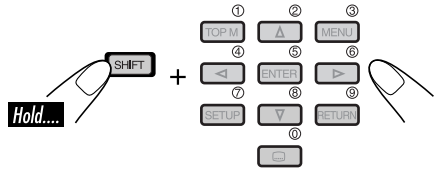


To erase the on-screen bar



To search for a particular point by playing time

- 1 Select .
- 2 Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.



- Ex.:
- To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
 - To enter 54 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 0, 5, 4, 0, then 0.
 - It is always required to enter the hour digit (even "0" hour), but it is not required to enter trailing zeros (the last two digits in the examples above).
 - To correct a misentry, press....



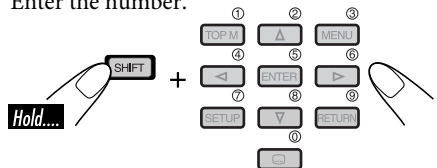
- You can also specify the elapsed playing time by using Δ / ∇ / \triangleleft / \triangleright .

- 3 Finish the procedure.



To search for a particular title/group/chapter/track

- 1 Select **TITLE** \rightarrow (**GROUP** \rightarrow / **CHAP** \rightarrow / **TRACK** \rightarrow).
- 2 Enter the number.



- To correct a misentry, press the number button until the correct number is entered.
- 3 Finish the procedure.

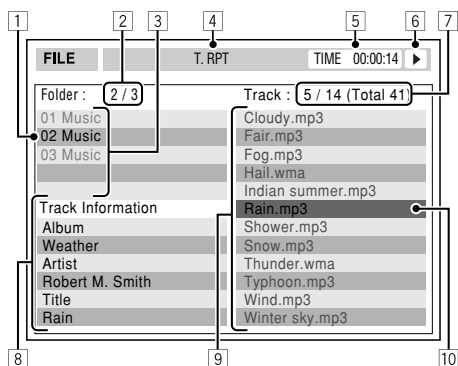


Basic control screen operations

You can search for and play the desired items through the control screen when using the external monitor.

- The control screen automatically appears on the monitor when you insert a disc (external monitor only).
- JPEG/MPEG/DivX control screen appears only when playback stops.

Control screen



Ex.: MP3 playback

- 1 Current folder (Not appears on CD playback)
- 2 Current folder number/total folder number (Not appears on CD playback)
- 3 Folder list (Not appears on CD playback)
- 4 Selected playback mode
- 5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (Not appears on JPEG playback)
- 6 Operation mode icon
▶ (play), ■ (stop), || (pause), ►► (fast-forward), ◀◀ (reverse)
- 7 CD: Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
Others: Current track (file) number/total number of tracks (files) in the current folder (total number of tracks/files on the disc)

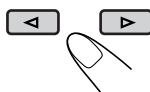
- 8 Track information (Not appears on JPEG/MPEG/DivX playback)
- 9 Track (file) list
- 10 Current track (file) (highlighted bar)

To select a folder or track

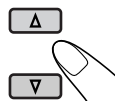


While Dual Zone (see page 33) is on....

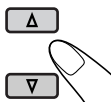
- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track.



To select a track

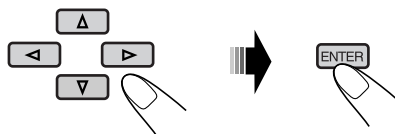


To change the playback mode



While Dual Zone (see page 33) is on....

- 1 Press the OSD button.
- 2 Select a playback mode (see page 31) you want.



List screen operations

You can display the folder list/track list before starting play when using the external monitor and Dual Zone function (see page 33). On this list, you can confirm the contents and start playing a disc.

Folder/track list screens



Folder list

Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
fol130	fol140	fol150	fol160	
fol131	fol141	fol151	fol161	
fol132	fol142	fol152	fol162	
fol133	fol143	fol153	fol163	
fol134	fol144	fol154	fol164	
fol135	fol145	fol155	fol165	
fol136	fol146	fol156	fol166	
fol137	fol147	fol157	fol167	
fol138	fol148	fol158	fol168	
fol139	fol149	fol159	fol169	

Track list

Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
file0131.mp3	file0141.mp3	file0151.wma	file0161.wma	
file0132.mp3	file0142.mp3	file0152.mp3	file0162.mp3	
file0133.wma	file0143.mp3	file0153.wma	file0163.wma	
file0134.mp3	file0144.mp3	file0154.mp3	file0164.mp3	
file0135.mp3	file0145.wma	file0155.mp3	file0165.wma	
file0136.wma	file0146.mp3	file0156.mp3	file0166.wma	
file0137.wma	file0147.wma	file0157.mp3	file0167.wma	
file0138.mp3	file0148.mp3	file0158.wma	file0168.wma	
file0139.mp3	file0149.wma	file0159.wma	file0169.mp3	
file0140.wma	file0150.wma	file0160.wma	file0170.wma	

Ex.: Track list for MP3/WMA

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

While Dual Zone is on and the disc play stops...

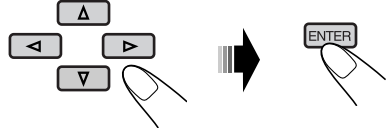
1 Display the folder list.

MENU



Each time you press the button, the list screen comes on and goes off.

2 Select a folder on the list.



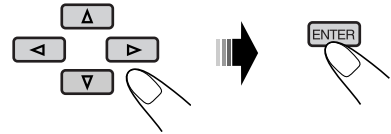
The track list of the selected folder appears.

To go back to the folder list

RETURN




3 Select a track on the list.



Other disc operations

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1  (On the unit)

2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Playback mode indicator appears.

Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
------	-------------------------------

Track: All tracks of the disc.

-  INT lights up.

Folder*¹: First tracks of all folders.

-  INT lights up.

Off: Cancels.

*¹ Only while playing a disc containing folders.

Repeat



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Mode	Plays repeatedly
------	------------------

Chapter*²: The current chapter.

-  CHAP RPT lights up.

Title*²: The current title.

-  TITLE RPT lights up.

Track*³: The current track.

-  RPT lights up.

Folder*¹: All tracks of the current folder.

-  RPT lights up.

Off: For DVD: Cancels Repeat play. For other discs: All tracks of the disc.

*² Only while playing a DVD disc.

*³ Except for DVD and JPEG discs.

Random



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Mode	Plays at random
------	-----------------

Folder*¹: All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on.

-  RND lights up.

Disc: All tracks of the disc.

-  RND lights up.

Off: Cancels.

List screen operations

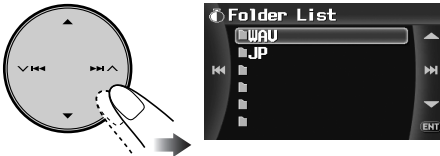
You can display the folder list/file list and select a file directly while playing.

While playing...



- 1 (On the unit)

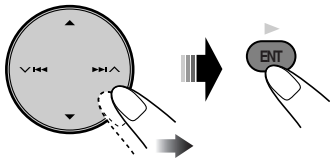
- 2 Select “Mode”, then “List”.



- 3 Select a folder you want.



- 4 Select a file you want to play.

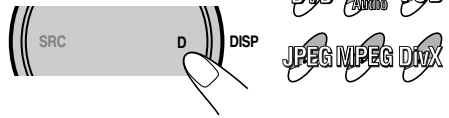


- You can also access the folder list by pressing and holding ▲ / ▼ on the unit.

Other operations

Monitor indication control

To change monitor indication

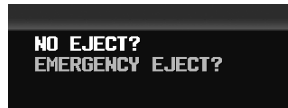


- Each time you press DISP (D), the display changes between the source screen and picture playback.

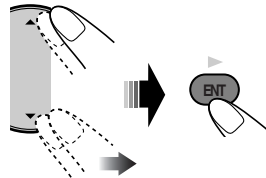
Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

- 1



- 2 Select “NO EJECT?”.



“No Eject” flashes.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select “EJECT OK?”.

Dual Zone operations

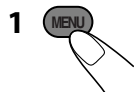
Playing back two sources at a time

You can connect external audio equipment to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug on the rear, and play back a disc separately from the source selected on the unit.

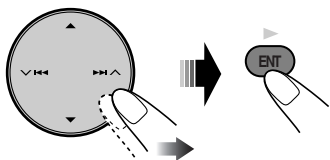


You can activate Dual Zone while listening to any source.

- When Dual Zone is in use, you can only operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.
- When Dual Zone is in use, the surround settings (page 26) become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.



2 Select “Dual Zone”, then “On” or “On-Surround”.



Off: Deactivate Dual Zone.

On: Activate Dual Zone.

On-Surround^{*1*}^{*2}:

Activate Dual Zone and add the headphone Surround^{*3} effect to the disc playback sound. Select this when listening the disc playback sound with headphones.

^{*1} Not effective when playing back an MPEG/DivX disc.

^{*2} The surround effect is also added to the sound from the speakers when you select “DISC” as the source.

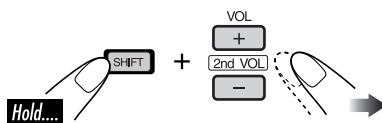
^{*3} JVC original headphone virtual surround system.

The source automatically changes to “DISC” and **DUAL** appears on the monitor.

To select a different source to listen through the speakers, press SRC on the control panel.

- By using the buttons on the control panel, you can operate the newly selected source without affecting Dual Zone operations.

3 Adjust the volume through the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug using the remote controller.

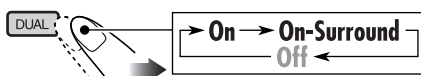


4 Operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller by referring to the monitor screen.

To cancel Dual Zone operations, select “Off” on step 2 on the left column. (**DUAL** / **DUAL-SURR** disappears.)

On the remote controller:

You can also activate and deactivate Dual Zone.



To change the Dual Zone mode between “On” and “On-Surround”, select the Dual Zone mode you want on step 2 on the left column.

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

Through the 2nd AUDIO OUT, 2 channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

AV Menu settings

Basic procedure

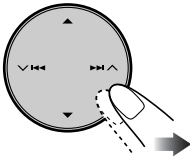
You can adjust various settings of this unit from the AV Menu.

The AV Menu contains the menu items and submenus shown on the figure below.

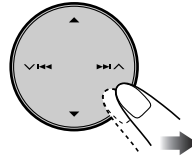
1



2 Select a menu item you want to set.



3 adjust the item selected.



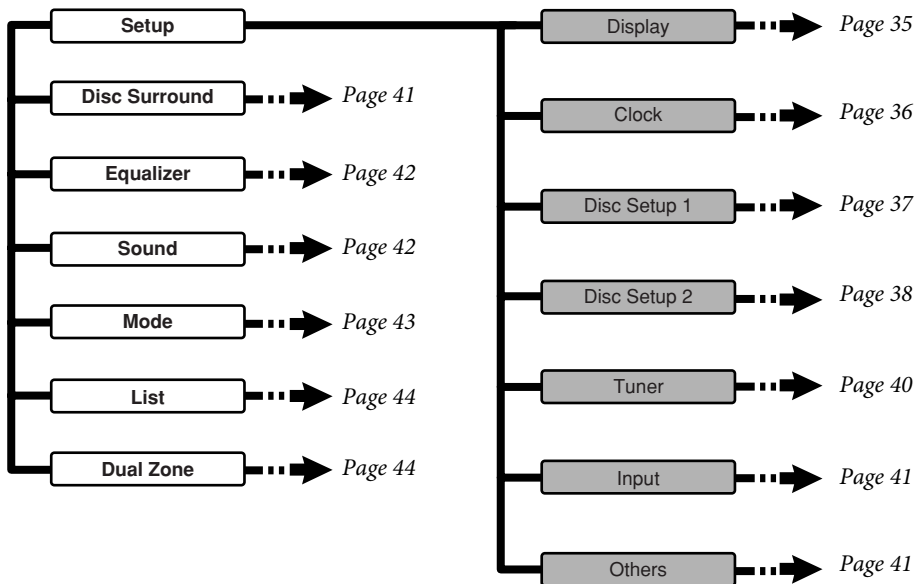
4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



- See also “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” on page 11 for more details of the operation.









Menu items of AV Menu



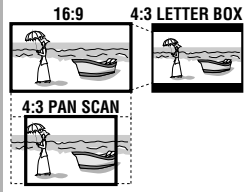
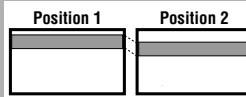
AV Menu items

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Demonstration	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Activates the demonstration movie on the monitor.</p>
Wall Paper	<p>You can select the background picture of the monitor.</p> <p>Standard [Initial], Rose, Gold, Black, Metal, Metallic-Silver, Metallic-Green, Honeycomb-Red, Honeycomb-Green, Effect-Orange, Effect-Purple, Clown fish, Ocean, Sunset, Earth.</p>
Scroll	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>Once: [Initial]; Scrolls the disc information once.</p> <p>Auto: Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Even if “Scroll” is set to “Off”, you can scroll the display by pressing D DISP for more than one second.
Tag Display	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Shows the tag data while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.</p>
Dimmer	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: Activates dimmer.</p> <p>Auto: [Initial]; Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.</p> <p>Time Set: Sets the Dimmer On/Off time.</p>
Bright	<p>You can adjust brightness of the monitor.</p> <p>-15 (darkest) to +15 (brightest)</p> <p>[Initial]; 00</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To adjust the brightness of playback picture, adjust “Bright” on “Screen Control” below.
Screen Control^{*1}	<p>You can adjust color and brightness of playback pictures of “DISC” and “AV-IN”. The setting is stored separately for “DISC” and “AV-IN”.</p> <p>-15 to +15</p> <p>[Initial]; 00</p> <p>Bright: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark.</p> <p>Contrast: Adjust the contrast of the bright and dark portion.</p> <p>Color: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker.</p> <p>Tint: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural.</p>

*1 Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies, or “AV-IN”.

Indications		Selectable settings, [reference page]		
Display	Aspect ^{*1}	You can change the screen shape on the monitor according to the aspect ratio of the source. Choose the optimum one from the followings.		
		Aspect ratio of incoming signal		
		4:3	16:9	
		Normal: For original shape of 4:3		
		Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9		
		Just:		
Zoom:				
Auto:	The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can also adjust the screen shape by pressing ASPECT (A) on the control panel or ASPECT on the remote controller. [22] 		
Clock	Time Set	You can adjust the internal clock on the unit. [10] [Initial]; 0: 00		
	12Hours / 24Hours	12Hours / 24Hours , [11] [Initial]; 24Hours		
	Clock Adjust	Auto: [Initial]; The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock time data in the RDS signal. Off: Cancels.		

*1 Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies.

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Menu Language ^{*1}	Select the initial disc menu language.
Audio Language ^{*1}	Select the initial audio language.
Sub Title ^{*1}	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (OFF).
OSD Language ^{*1}	Select the language for some indications shown on the external monitor.
Monitor Type 	<p>Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16:9: [Initial]; Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9. • 4:3LB [LETTER BOX]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen. • 4:3PS [PAN SCAN]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen. Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.
OSD Position 	<p>Select the position of the on-screen bar [27].</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: [Initial]; Higher position • 2: Lower position
File Type	<p>Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio: [Initial]; Plays back MP3/WMA/WAV files. • Picture: Plays back JPEG files. • Video: Plays back MPEG 1/2 or DivX files.
DivX Regi. Code (DivX Registration Code)	<p>This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a disc in which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.</p>

^{*1} For the language settings, see also the language codes list on page 57.

^{*2} Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

Indications

Selectable settings, [reference page]

D. (Dynamic) Range Compres.
(Compression)*1

You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.

- **AUTO** : Select this to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software).
- **ON** : [Initial]; Select this to always use this function.

Speaker Size*1

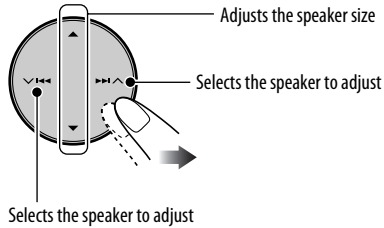


You can adjust the speaker size setting for the front/rear speakers and the center speaker according to the speaker you use when the source is a disc and playback stops.

- **Front SPK**: Small, Large [Initial]
- **Center SPK**: None [Initial], Small, Large<1>
- **Rear SPK** : None<2>, Small, Large [Initial]
- **Subwoofer**: On [Initial], Off<2>
- Speaker size: "Large" for 13-cm diameter or more; "Small" for 13 cm or less.

<1> Not selectable when "Large" is selected neither for the front nor the rear speakers.

<2> Not effective when the surround function is not in effect.



- When selecting "None" or "Off" for all speakers other than the front...

- Disc Surround setting [41] automatically changes to "Surround Off".
- Disc Surround setting [41] becomes unadjustable.

*1 Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

*2 Selectable only when DISC is the source.

Indications

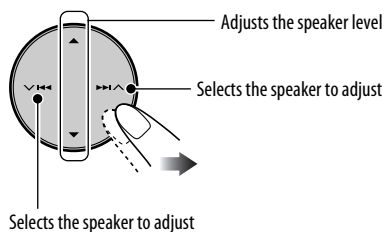
Selectable settings, [reference page]

Speaker Level*¹

You can adjust the output level of each speaker monitoring the test tone.

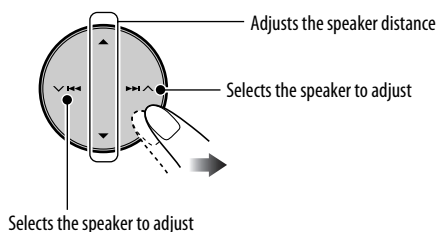
Press and hold ENT to activate (or cancel) the test tone.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Subwoofer*²/Rear Lch:** adjust the output level of each speaker in the range of -10dB +10dB. [Initial]; 00dB

Speaker Distance*⁴

You can adjust the speaker output timing separately for each speaker according to the distance from the speakers to the listening position.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Rear Lch:** adjust the speaker distance in the range of 15 cm to 600 cm in 15-cm step. [Initial]; 120 cm (for center speaker), 150 cm (for the other speakers)



*¹ When activating the test tone, white noise comes out and cycles between the speakers activated on "Speaker Size" [38] for about 2 seconds each. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly while the test tone comes out from the target speaker to adjust the settings (the test tone continues to come out from the target speaker during the adjustment).

*² The setting is effective only when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on "Subwoofer" [43] for other cases.

*³ Selectable only when DISC is the source.

*⁴ Unselectable when all the speakers other than front ones are deactivated on "Speaker Size" [38].

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
AF Regional (Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception)	<p>When the received signals from the current station become weak...</p> <p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>AF Regional: Switches to another station broadcasting the same programme.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REG light up. <p>AF: [Initial]; Switches to another station (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [17].</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AF lights up.
TA Volume	<p>[Initial: VOL 15]; VOL 00 — VOL 30 or 50*1, [16, 51]</p>
Program Search	<p>Off: [Initial]; Cancels</p> <p>On: Using the AF data, the receiver tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset RDS station is if the preset station signals are not sufficient.</p>
IF Band Width	<p>In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard.</p> <p>Auto: [Initial]; Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)</p> <p>Wide: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.</p>
DAB AF*2	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations. [52].</p>

*1 Depends on the amplifier gain control.

*2 Appears only when DAB tuner is connected.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Input	AV Input	<p>You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks.</p> <p>Off: Select when you do not need AV-Input as a source (AV-IN is deleted from the source items).</p> <p>Audio&Video: [Initial]</p> <p>Select this when connecting an AV component such as a VCR.</p> <p>Audio: Select this when connecting an audio component such as a cassette deck.</p> <p>Camera^{*1}: Select when connecting the rear view camera.</p> <p>Camera Reverse^{*1}: The mirror image of the rear view is displayed on the monitor. (The monitor on the receiver only; the normal rear view appears on the external monitor.)</p>
	External Input	<p>Changer/iPod/D. Player^{*2}: [Initial] To use a JVC CD changer, iPod, JVC D. player, etc. [46, 54]</p> <p>External Input: To use any external component other than above. [53]</p>
Others	Beep	<p>You can deactivate the key-touch tone if you do not want it to beep each time you press a button.</p> <p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Activates the key-touch tone.</p>
	Telephone Muting	<p>Off: [Initial]; Cancels.</p> <p>Muting1/Muting2: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.</p>
Disc Surround ^{*3}	Surround Off	Select to deactivate the surround function.
	Surround On	<p>Select to activate the surround function. [26]</p> <p>Auto [Initial], Dolby PLII Movie^{*4}, Dolby PLII Music^{*4}</p>

^{*1} Reverse lamp wire connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume). The rear view through the camera appears on the monitor in "Full" aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position.

^{*2} The source indication changes automatically depending on the type of external component connected.

^{*3} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

^{*4} For the menu items of "Dolby PLII Movie" and "Dolby PLII Music", see page 26.

Indications

Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/
Jazz/Dance/Country/
Reggae/Classic/User
1/User 2/User 3

Equalizer^{*1}

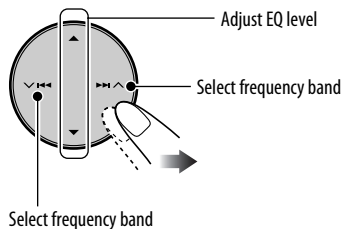
Selectable settings, [reference page]

You can select a preset equalizer settings.

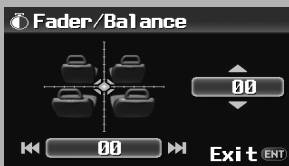
[Initial]; Flat

You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in User 1/2/3.

- 1 Select the frequency band to adjust—
60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1kHz, 2.5kHz, 6.3kHz, 15kHz.
- 2 Adjust the level of the selected band (-05 to +05).
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to adjust other frequency bands.
- 4 Press ENT.
- 5 Select the preset name (User 1, User 2, User 3) you want to store the setting into.
- 6 Press ENT.



Fader/Balance



Sound

Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.

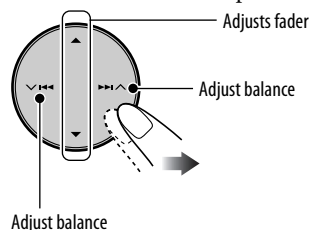
- Upmost—front only
- Downmost—rear only

When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (00).

Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.

- Leftmost—left only
- Rightmost—right only

Press ENT to finish the procedure.



^{*1} Not selectable when DISC is the source and the surround function is activated (see page 26).

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Sound	Volume Adjust	Adjust and store the volume level of each source except FM. Once you have made an adjustment, it is memorized, and the volume level will automatically increase or decrease by adjusted level when you change the source. Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level. • -12 (min.) to +12 (max.) [Initial: 00]
	Subwoofer	Adjust the settings below in the submenu: • Phase: Subwoofer phase. Select either “ Normal ” or “ Reverse ”, which reproduces a better sound. • Level*¹: Subwoofer output level. Level: -06 (dB) to +08 (dB) [Initial: 00 (dB)].
	High Pass Filter	Through: [Initial]; Select when the subwoofer is not connected. On: Select when the subwoofer is connected.
	Crossover	Adjust the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer. 80Hz, 120Hz [Initial], 150Hz
	Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this receiver. Amplifier Off: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. Low Power: VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) High Power: [Initial]; VOL 00 – VOL 50
	Rear Speaker*²	You can activate/deactivate the rear speakers. Off, On [Initial]
Mode	Mono*³	Activate when the FM broadcasting is hard to receive. [12] Off [Initial], On
	DX / Local*³	Select FM reception sensitivity. [12] DX [Initial], Local

*¹ The setting is ineffective when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on “Speaker Level” [39] for the cases.

*² Functions only when Dual Zone is activated. (See page 33.)

*³ Appears only when Tuner is the source.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Mode	SSM* ¹	Search for FM stations and store them as preset stations automatically. [13]
	Title Entry* ²	You can enter names for specific source name for AV Input and External Input, etc. [45]
	Off/Intro/Repeat/ Random* ³	You can select the playback mode of the disc in the unit and the discs in the CD changer [31, 47]
	D. Range Control* ⁴ (Dynamic Range Control)	Reinforce the low level sound of DAB services. [49] Off [Initial], 1, 2, 3 .
	PTY Standby* ⁵	Activates PTY Standby Reception with one of the 29 PTY codes. [15, 51] Off [Initial], News , and 28 PTY codes [15].
	Announce Standby* ⁴ (Announcement Standby Reception)	You can activate/deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception function and select one of the 9 announcement types for the function. [51] Off [Initial], Transport News ⇄ Warning ⇄ News ⇄ Weather ⇄ Event ⇄ Special event ⇄ Radio Info (Radio Information) ⇄ Sports news ⇄ Financial news ⇄ (back to the beginning)
List		Select radio stations, folders, files and discs from the list on the screen. [14, 32, 46, 50] • The accessible lists differ depending on the sources.
Dual Zone		Activate/deactivate the Dual Zone function. [33] Off [Initial], On, On-Surround

*¹ Appears only when Tuner is the source.

*² Appears when the source is below: AV-IN, EXT-IN, CD-CH, or conventional CD.

*³ Selectable playback mode differs depending on the disc type. For the available playback mode, see page 31 and 47.

*⁴ Appears only when DAB tuner is the source.

*⁵ Appears only when Tuner or DAB Tuner is the source.

Other main functions

Assigning titles to the sources

You can assign titles to CDs (both in this receiver and in the CD changer), and change the source names of AV-INPUT and EXT-INPUT.

Sources	Maximum number of characters
AV-INPUT/EXT-INPUT	Up to 16 characters
DISC/CD-CH	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)

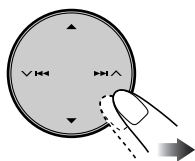
- You can assign a title only to the conventional CD (CD-DA).

1 Select the source.

- For AV-IN/EXT-IN: Select the source.
- For a CD in this receiver: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select a disc number.



3 Select "Mode", then "Title Entry".



Ex.: When you select "AV-IN" as the source

4 Assign a title.

- Select a character set.



- Select a character.



- For available characters, see page 3.

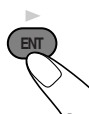
- Move to the next (or previous) character position.



- Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.



5 Finish the procedure.



To erase the entire title

In step 3 on the left column...



CD changer operations

About the CD changer

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

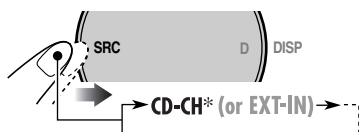
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.

Before operating your CD changer:

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- You cannot control and play any DVD Video/Audio, VCD, WMA, WAV, MPEG, or JPEG disc in the CD changer.

All tracks of the inserted discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the magazine from the CD changer.

1

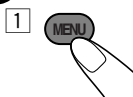


* If you have changed "External Input" setting to "External Input" (see page 41), you cannot select the CD changer.

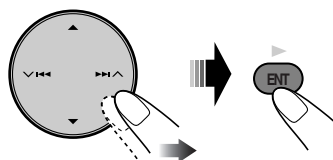


Selected disc number

2 Select a disc.

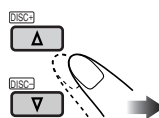


2 Select "List", then the disc you want to play back.



- When the current disc is an MP3 disc, you can move to FOLDER LIST by pressing **▶▶** **▲**.

When using the remote controller....



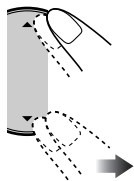
To fast-forward or reverse the track



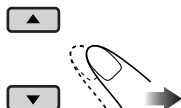
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3 discs)

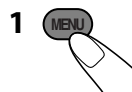


When using the remote controller...

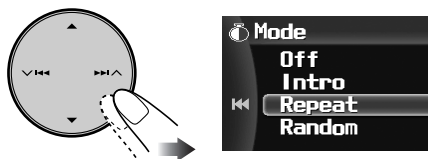


Selecting the playback modes

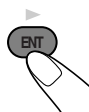
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.



2 Select "Mode", then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
------	-------------------------------

Track:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INT lights up.
Folder*:	First tracks of all folders in the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INT lights up.
Disc:	First tracks of all the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
------	------------------

Track:	The current track. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

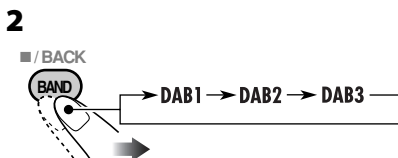
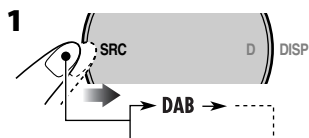
Mode	Plays at random
------	-----------------

Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
All:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

* Only while playing an MP3 disc

DAB tuner operations

Listening to the DAB tuner



Current band



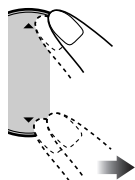
3 Start searching for an ensemble.



When an ensemble is received, searching stops.

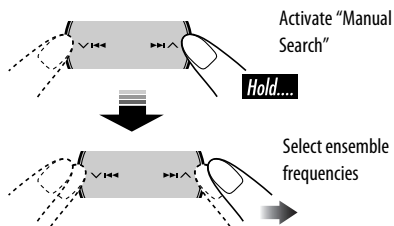
To stop searching, press the same button again.

4 Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.



To tune in to an ensemble manually

In step 3...



What is DAB system?

DAB can deliver digital quality sound without any annoying interference and signal distortion. Furthermore, it can carry text, pictures, and data. When transmitting, DAB combines several programmes (called “services”) to form one “ensemble”. In addition, each “service”—called “primary service”—can also be divided into its components (called “secondary service”). A typical ensemble has six or more programmes (services) broadcast at the same time.

By connecting the DAB tuner, this receiver can do the following:

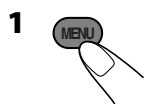
- Tracing the same programme automatically —Alternative Frequency Reception (see page 52).

It is recommended to use DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) tuner KT-DB1000 with your receiver. If you have another DAB tuner, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.

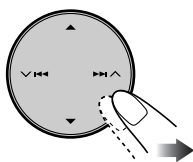
- Refer also to the Instructions supplied for your DAB tuner.

■ When surrounding sounds are noisy

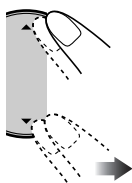
Some service provides Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve for your listening.



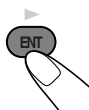
2 Select “MODE”, then “D. Range Control”.



3 Select one of the DRC signal level (DRC 1/2/3).



4 Finish the procedure.



DRC indicator appears.

To search for your favorite service

You can search for either Dynamic or Static PTY codes.

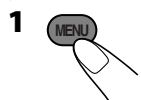
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 15 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and the FM tuner.
- Search will be performed on the DAB tuner only.

- The DRC indicator will be highlighted only when receiving DRC signals from the tuned service.

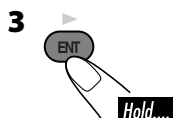
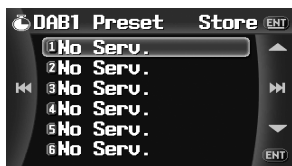
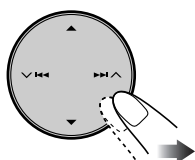
Storing DAB services in memory

You can preset six DAB services (primary) for each band.

After tuning in the ensemble (primary service) you want to preset...



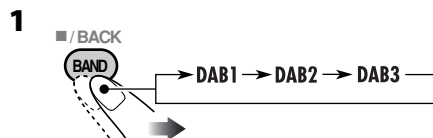
2 Select "List", then a preset number (1-6) you want to store the ensemble into.



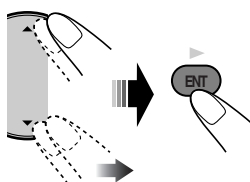
Preset number flashes.

Tuning in to a preset DAB service

When the source is DAB...

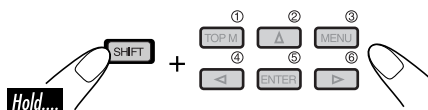


3 Select a preset number you want.



- You can also access the preset list by pressing "MENU" on the unit and selecting "List".

When using the remote controller...



Using the standby receptions

TA (Road Traffic News) Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 16 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot activate TA Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for FM tuner.
- The volume changes to the preset TA volume level (see page 40).

PTY Standby Reception

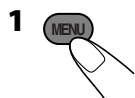
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 17 for FM RDS stations.
- PTY Standby Reception for DAB tuner works only using a dynamic PTY code.
- You can neither store your favorite PTY nor activate PTY Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.
- You can activate and deactivate PTY Standby Reception when the source is either “FM” or “DAB”.

Announcement Standby Reception

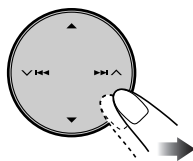
Announcement Standby Reception allows the receiver to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

To select your favorite announcement type, see page 44.

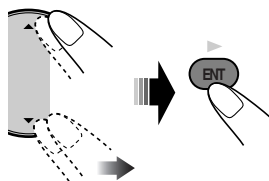
To activate the Announcement Standby Reception



- 2 Select “Mode”, then “Announce Standby”.



- 3 Select an announcement type you want to preset.



ANN indicator appears.

- If the ANN indicator lights up, Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If the ANN indicator flashes, Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
To activate, tune in to another service providing these signals. The ANN indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception

Select “Off” in step 3 above.
The ANN indicator goes off.

Tracing the same programme— Alternative Frequency Reception

You can keep listening to the same programme by activating the Alternative Frequency Reception.

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
When driving in an area where a DAB service cannot be received, this receiver automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this receiver automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 40.

To show the Dynamic Label Segment (DLS) information



Service frequency is displayed.



While listening to an ensemble that supports DLS....



Dynamic Label Segment (DLS—DAB radio text information) is displayed.

- * Lights up when receiving a service providing Dynamic Label Segment (DLS)—DAB radio text information.

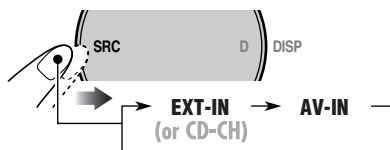
External component operations

Playing an external component

You can connect an external component to LINE IN plug and VIDEO IN plug on the rear, or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the KS-U57 Line Input Adapter (not supplied) or KS-U58 AUX Input Adapter (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

1



AV-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN and/or VIDEO IN.

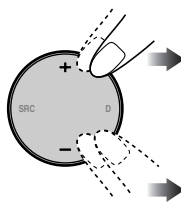
- To change the setting of AV INPUT, see page 41.

EXT-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- If “EXT-IN” does not appear, see page 41 and select the external input (EXT-IN).

2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 42.)

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

- You can also use the equivalent buttons on the remote controller in the operations below.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:

Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

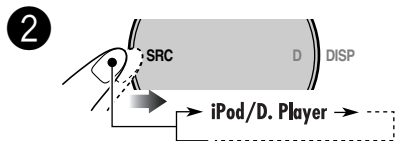
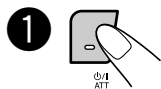
- Interface adapter for iPod**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Cautions:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

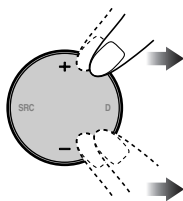
Preparations:

Make sure "Changer/iPod/D. player" is selected for the external input setting, see page 41.



Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused (iPod) or stopped (D. player) previously.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 42.)

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause (iPod) or stop (D. player) playback



To resume playback, press it again.

To fast-forward or reverse the track



To go to the next or previous tracks



Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu of the iPod or D. player.



Now the ▲/▼/◀/▶/⏪/⏩/⏮/⏭ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*1.

- 2 Select the desired menu.



For iPod:

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔
Composers ↔ Genres ↔ Songs ↔

For D. player:

Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔
Track ↔ Genre ↔

- 3 Confirm the selection.




To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

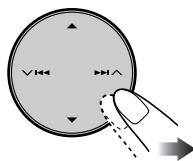
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until the desired track is confirmed.
- Holding ▼ |◀◀/▶▶| ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

- *1 The menu selecting mode will be canceled:
- If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.
 - When you confirm the selection of a track.

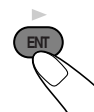
Selecting the playback modes

- 1 

- 2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Repeat/Random playback.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
One:	Functions the same as “Repeat One” of the iPod or “Repeat Mode One” for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RPT lights up.
All:	Functions the same as “Repeat All” of the iPod or “Repeat Mode All” for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

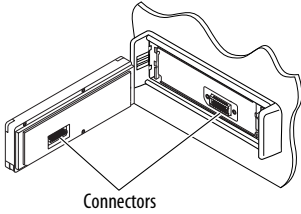
Mode	Plays at random
Album:	Functions the same as “Shuffle Album” of the iPod <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RND lights up.
Song:	Functions the same as “Shuffle Songs” of the iPod. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RND lights up.
On:	Functions the same as “Random Play On” of the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the receiver turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.



Center holder

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this receiver may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.



Do not use the following discs:



Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	IK	Inupiak	RN	Kirundi
AB	Abkhazian	IN	Indonesian	RO	Rumanian
AF	Afrikaans	IS	Icelandic	RW	Kinyarwanda
AM	Ameharic	IW	Hebrew	SA	Sanskrit
AR	Arabic	JI	Yiddish	SD	Sindhi
AS	Assamese	JW	Javanese	SG	Sangho
AY	Aymara	KA	Georgian	SH	Serbo-Croatian
AZ	Azerbaijani	KK	Kazakh	SI	Singhalese
BA	Bashkir	KL	Greenlandic	SK	Slovak
BE	Byelorussian	KM	Cambodian	SL	Slovenian
BG	Bulgarian	KN	Kannada	SM	Samoaan
BH	Bihari	KO	Korean (KOR)	SN	Shona
BI	Bislama	KS	Kashmiri	SO	Somali
BN	Bengali, Bangla	KU	Kurdish	SQ	Albanian
BO	Tibetan	KY	Kirghiz	SR	Serbian
BR	Breton	LA	Latin	SS	Siswati
CA	Catalan	LN	Lingala	ST	Sesotho
CO	Corsican	LO	Laothian	SU	Sundanese
CS	Czech	LT	Lithuanian	SW	Swahili
CY	Welsh	LV	Latvian, Lettish	TA	Tamil
DZ	Bhutani	MG	Malagasy	TE	Telugu
EL	Greek	MI	Maori	TG	Tajik
EO	Esperanto	MK	Macedonian	TH	Thai
ET	Estonian	ML	Malayalam	TI	Tigrinya
EU	Basque	MN	Mongolian	TK	Turkmen
FA	Persian	MO	Moldavian	TL	Tagalog
FI	Finnish	MR	Marathi	TN	Setswana
FJ	Fiji	MS	Malay (MAY)	TO	Tonga
FO	Faroese	MT	Maltese	TR	Turkish
FY	Frisian	MY	Burmese	TS	Tsonga
GA	Irish	NA	Nauru	TT	Tatar
GD	Scots Gaelic	NE	Nepali	TW	Twi
GL	Galician	NO	Norwegian	UK	Ukrainian
GN	Guarani	OC	Occitan	UR	Urdu
GU	Gujarati	OM	(Afan) Oromo	UZ	Uzbek
HA	Hausa	OR	Oriya	VI	Vietnamese
HI	Hindi	PA	Panjabi	VO	Volapuk
HR	Croatian	PL	Polish	WO	Wolof
HU	Hungarian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	XH	Xhosa
HY	Armenian	PT	Portuguese	YO	Yoruba
IA	Interlingua	QU	Quechua	ZU	Zulu
IE	Interlingue	RM	Rhaeto-Romance		

More about this receiver

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the receiver, you can also turn on the power.

Selecting the sources

- When no disc is loaded in the receiver and Dual Zone is off, “DISC” cannot be selected.
- Without connecting to the CD changer or the DAB tuner, “CD-CH” or “DAB” cannot be selected.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate.

- If a DAB tuner is connected and Alternative Frequency Reception for DAB services (DAB AF) is activated, Network-Tracking Reception (AF Regional) is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See pages 17, 40, 44, 52.)
- TA Standby Reception and PTY Standby Reception will be temporarily canceled while listening to an AM station.

Disc operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to the music/picture/movie files and their file names.
- This receiver can also play back 8 cm discs.
- This receiver can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.
 - The first track will be skipped if a different type of file is detected first.
- When a disc has been loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc). Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source (without activating Dual Zone), disc play starts automatically.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This receiver can play back either MP3/WMA/WAV files, JPEG files, or MPEG/DivX files if a disc includes any of the files. Set the playback file type on AV Menu (page 37) before playing back a disc containing files of different kinds.
- Only for CD-R/CD-RW: This receiver can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some Recordable/Rewritable discs may not play back on this receiver because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
 - Discs are dirty or scratched.
 - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the receiver.
 - The pickup lens inside the receiver is dirty.
 - Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
 - Discs which are not written in UDF-Bridge Format (eg. UDF format or ISO format).
 - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.).
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.
- Do not use the following discs:
 - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
 - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.
 Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damages to discs.

Playing an MP3/WMA/WAV disc

- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This receiver can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA/WAV files.
- This receiver can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
 - Bit rate: MP3: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
 - Sampling frequency:
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for WMA)
44.1 kHz (for WAV)
 - Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav>).
 - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
 - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
 - Romeo: up to 128 characters
 - Joliet: up to 64 characters
 - Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This receiver can recognize the total of 3500 files, 250 folders (maximum of 999 files per folder).

- This receiver can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This receiver cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded in an unappropriated format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - WMA files recorded with MBR (Multiple Bit Rate) format.
 - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATAC3, etc.

Playing a JPEG disc

- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution. (If a file has been recorded at a resolution of more than 640 x 480, it will take a long time to be shown.)
- This System can play only baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.
Baseline JPEG format: Used for digital cameras, web, etc.
Progressive JPEG format: Used for web.
Lossless JPEG format: An old type and rarely used now.
- If progressive or lossless JPEG files are played back, a black screen appears. In this case, stop playback and select a baseline JPEG file. Note that it may take a long time to select another file.

Playing an MPEG disc

- This receiver can play back MPEG 1/2 files with the extension code <.mpg>.
- Audio stream should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer 2.

Playing an DivX disc

- This receiver can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper or lower).
- When making a disc, use the UDF bridge format.
- This unit supports DivX 6.x, 5.x, 4.x, and 3.11.
- This unit supports the DivX files whose resolution is 720x480 pixels or less (30 fps) and 720x576 pixels or less (25 fps).
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- This unit does not support GMC (Global Motion Compression).
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- This receiver can recognize a total 25 characters for file/folder names.

AV Menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
After you change any of these language settings, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.

- Even if “4:3PS [PAN SCAN]” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]” with some DVDs. This depends on how they are recorded.
- If you change the “Amplifier Gain” setting from “High Power” to “Low Power” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30”, the receiver automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30”.

Other main functions

- If you try to assign a title to a 31st station or 31st disc, “Name Full” flashes on the monitor. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc on the receiver.

DAB tuner operations

- PTY Standby Reception works for the DAB tuner only using a Dynamic PTY, but not a Static PTY.
- TA Standby Reception for FM RDS station and Road Traffic News Standby Reception for DAB cannot be set separately. The T/P button always work for the both Standby Reception modes when the DAB tuner is connected.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
 - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
 - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 18 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 35). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:










When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

On-screen guide icons

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages.
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages.
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views.
-  : Playback
-  : Pause
-  : Forward Slow Motion Playback
-  : Reverse Slow Motion Playback
-  : Forward search
-  : Reverse search

Sound modes (preset frequency level settings)

The list below shows the preset frequency level settings for each sound mode (see page 42).

Sound mode	Preset equalizing values						
	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	-02	-01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound cannot be heard from the speakers. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
		Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The receiver does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote controller does not work. 	Dual Zone is activated (see page 33). While Dual Zone is activated, remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Signal” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the source. • Starts playback on the external component connected to the VIDEO IN plug. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
FM/AM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSM automatic presetting does not work. 	Store stations manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static noise while listening to the radio. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable disc cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the disc with the component which you used for recording.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be recognized. 	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Not Support” appears on the monitor. 	Use a file format the unit supports (see page 4).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Disc Error” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert the disc correctly. • Insert a disc recorded and finalized.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Files” appears on the monitor. 	The disc does not have playable files. Insert a disc containing playable files.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No playback picture appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parking brake wire is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No picture appears on the external monitor at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The edges of the picture are missing on the screen. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select an aspect other than “Zoom”. (See page 36) • Select “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]”. (See page 37.)
MP3/WMA/WAV playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a disc with tracks recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) • Add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to their file names.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noise is generated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to files of different types.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A longer readout time is required. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tracks cannot be played back as you have intended them to play. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Elapsed playing time is not correct. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This receiver can only display alphabets (A – Z, a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols. 	
JPEG/MPEG/DivX playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a disc with JPEG/MPEG/DivX files recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) • Add the extension code <.jpg>, <.mpg>, <.div> to their file names.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a disc into the magazine. • Insert disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Magazine” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the magazine.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset01” – “Reset07” appears on the monitor. 	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The CD changer does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
DAB tuner	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No DAB signal” appears on the monitor. 	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The DAB tuner does not work at all. 	Reconnect this receiver and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Antenna Power NG” appears on the monitor. 	Check the cords and connections.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. Player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Update the firmware version of the D. player. Charge the battery of the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Disconnect” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops while playing back iPod. 	The headphones are disconnected from iPod during playback. Restart the playback operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. “Error 01” appears on the monitor when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Files” or “No Track” appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 1” – “Reset 7” appears on the monitor. 	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 8” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:

Front: 50 W per channel

Rear: 50 W per channel

Continuous Power Output (RMS):

Front: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Rear: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)

Equalizer Control Range:

Frequencies: 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz

Level: ± 10 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

Line-In Level/Impedance:

1.5 V/20 k Ω load

Line-Out Level/Impedance:

Center-Out Level/Impedance:

Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:

2.5 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)

Color System: PAL

Video Input (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω

Video Output (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω

Other Terminals:

2nd AUDIO OUT, CD changer, Steering wheel remote input (OE REMOTE)

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:

FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz

AM: (MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz

(LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)

50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:

16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)

Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB

Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz

Stereo Separation: 35 dB

Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[MW Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 μ V

Selectivity: 35 dB

[LW Tuner]

Sensitivity: 50 μ V

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)

Number of Channels: 2 channels (stereo)

Frequency Response:

DVD fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz

fs=192 kHz: 16 Hz to 88 000 Hz

VCD, CD: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz

Dynamic Range: 93 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 95 dB

Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit

MP3 : Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

WMA: Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

MONITOR SECTION

Screen: 3.5-inch wide liquid crystal panel

Number of Pixels: 224 640 pixels

Drive Method:

TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format

Color System: PAL

GENERAL

Power Requirement:

Operating Voltage:

DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)

Grounding System: Negative ground

Allowable Operating Temperature:

0°C to +40°C

Dimensions (W \times H \times D):

Installation Size (approx.):

182 mm \times 52 mm \times 160 mm

Panel Size (approx.):

188 mm \times 58 mm \times 12 mm

Mass (approx.):

1.9 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Затруднения при эксплуатации?

Пожалуйста, перезагрузите Ваше устройство

Для получения информации о перезагрузке Вашего устройства обратитесь на соответствующую страницу

JVC



EN, RU

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0206MNMMDWJEIN

JVC KD-AVX2

Installation/Connection Manual

Руководство по установке/подключению

LVT1455-010A
[EE]

0206MNMMDWJEIN
EN, RU
©2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This receiver is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

РУССКИЙ

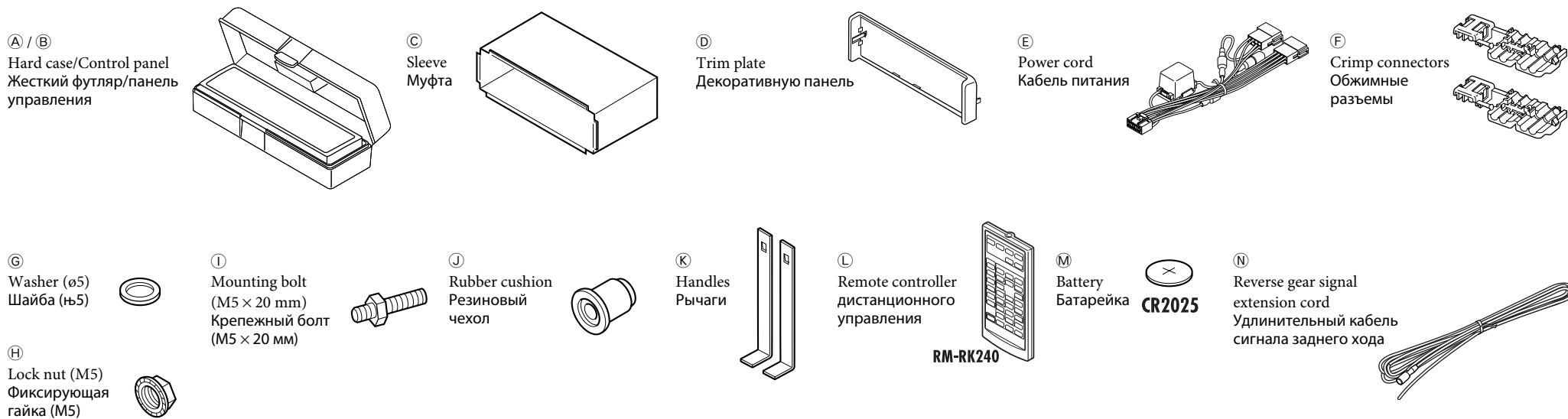
Это устройство разработано для эксплуатации на **12 В постоянного напряжения с минусом на массе**. Если Ваш автомобиль не имеет этой системы, требуется инвертор напряжения, который может быть приобретен у дилера автомобильного специалиста JVC.

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЯ

- НЕ устанавливайте устройство в местах, где:
 - возникает препятствие для функционирования руля и рычага переключения скоростей, так как это может привести к аварии;
 - возникает препятствие срабатыванию устройств безопасности, например, пневмоподушки, что может привести к несчастному случаю со смертельным исходом;
 - может ухудшиться обзор.
- НЕ используйте устройство, когда управляете рулем; это может привести к аварии.
- Водителю не следует смотреть на монитор во время вождения. Это может отвлекать и привести к аварии. Если водитель смотрит на монитор во время вождения, это может привести к потере внимания и стать причиной аварии.
- Водителю не следует надевать наушники во время вождения. Во время вождения опасно изолироваться от внешних шумов.
- Если необходимо использовать устройство во время вождения, внимательно смотрите вперед, иначе может произойти дорожно-транспортное происшествие.
- Если стояночный тормоз не включен, на мониторе мигает сообщение "Parking Brake" и изображение воспроизведения не отображается.
 - Это предупреждение появляется только в том случае, если провод стояночного тормоза подключен к стояночной тормозной системе автомобиля.

Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this receiver. After checking them, please set them correctly.



Список деталей для установки и подключения

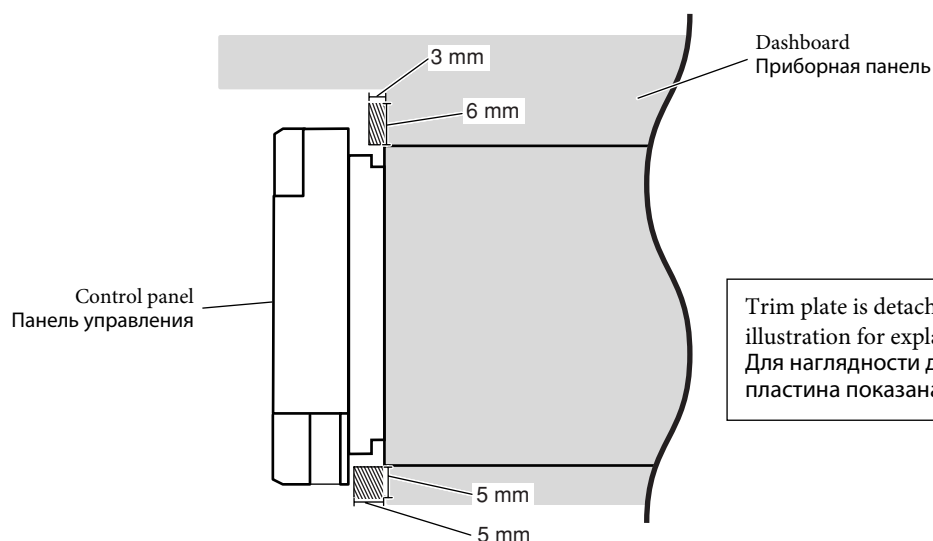
Следующие детали поставлены в комплекте с устройством. После проверки комплектации, пожалуйста, установите их правильно.

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this receiver correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear panel to maintain proper ventilation when installed.
- You cannot install the receiver on the car which has any obstacles in the space shown in "Required space for installation" below.

Required space for installation / Пространство, необходимое для установки

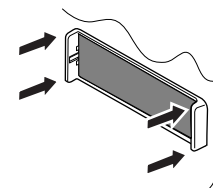


УСТАНОВКА (УСТАНОВКА В ПРИБОРНУЮ ПАНЕЛЬ)

На следующих иллюстрациях показана типовая установка. Если у Вас есть какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся установки, обратитесь к Вашему дилеру автомобильного специалиста JVC или в компанию, поставляющую соответствующие принадлежности.

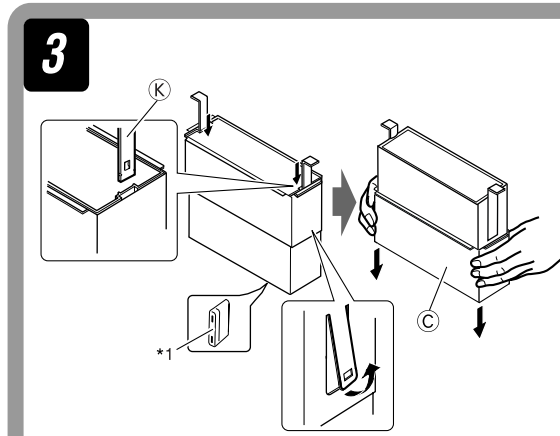
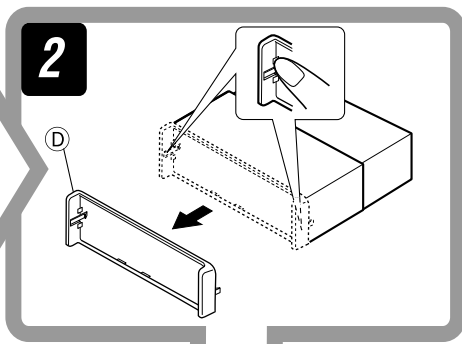
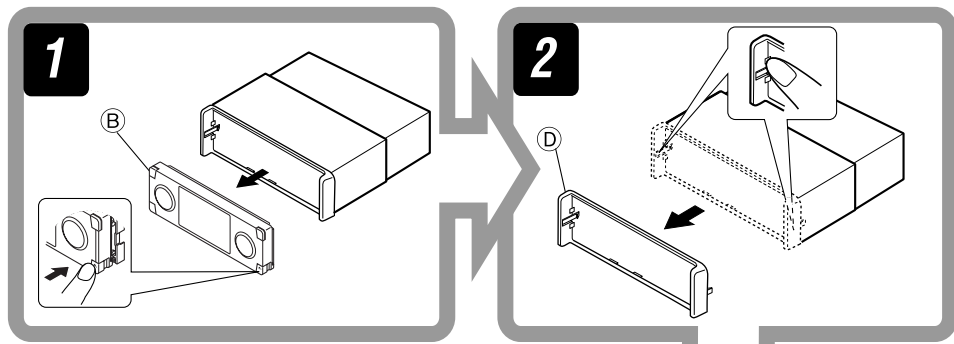
- Если Вы не знаете точно, как следует устанавливать это устройство, обратитесь к квалифицированному специалисту.
- При установке для обеспечения правильной вентиляции не закрывайте вентилятор на задней панели.
- Нельзя установить приемник в автомобиле, где есть препятствия в пространстве, показанном на рисунке "Пространство, необходимое для установки" ниже.

Caution when installing / Предостережение во время установки

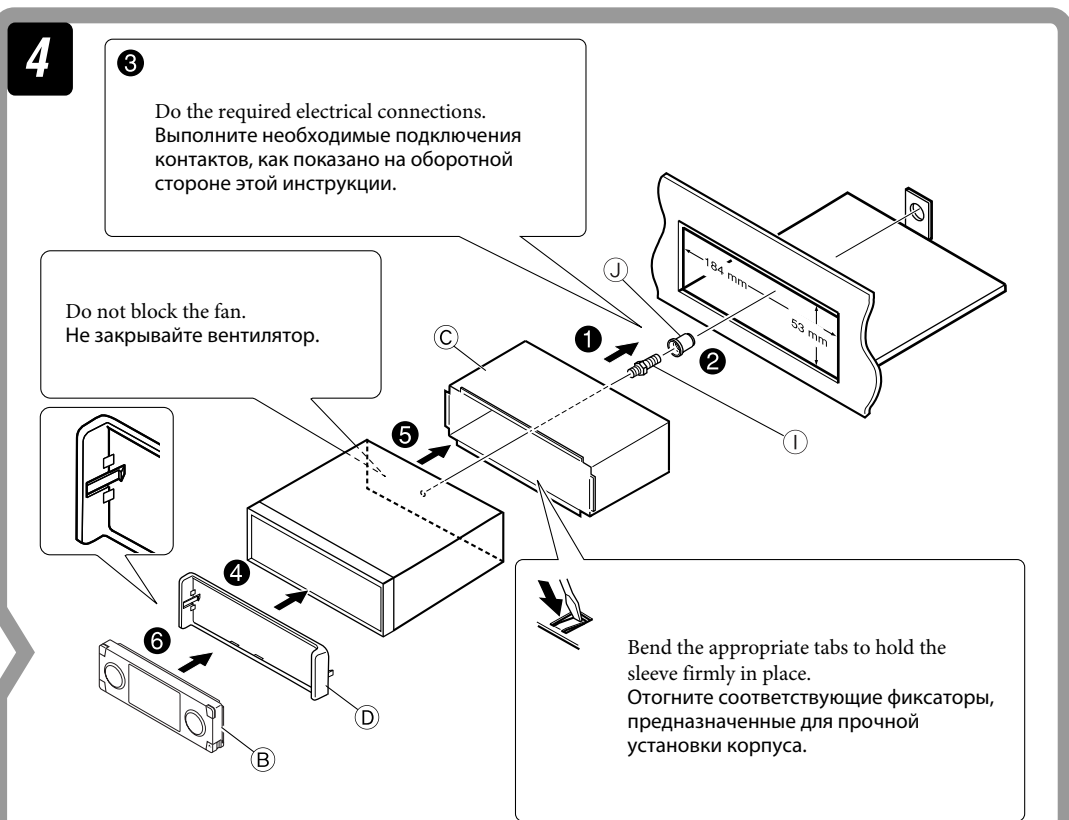


Fit the receiver into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.

- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration). Поместите приемник в монтажную панель, используя четыре угла лицевой панели.
- НЕ нажимайте на панель (затемнена на рисунке).



*1 When you stand the receiver, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
 *1 Устанавливайте устройство таким образом, чтобы не повредить предохранитель, расположенный сзади.

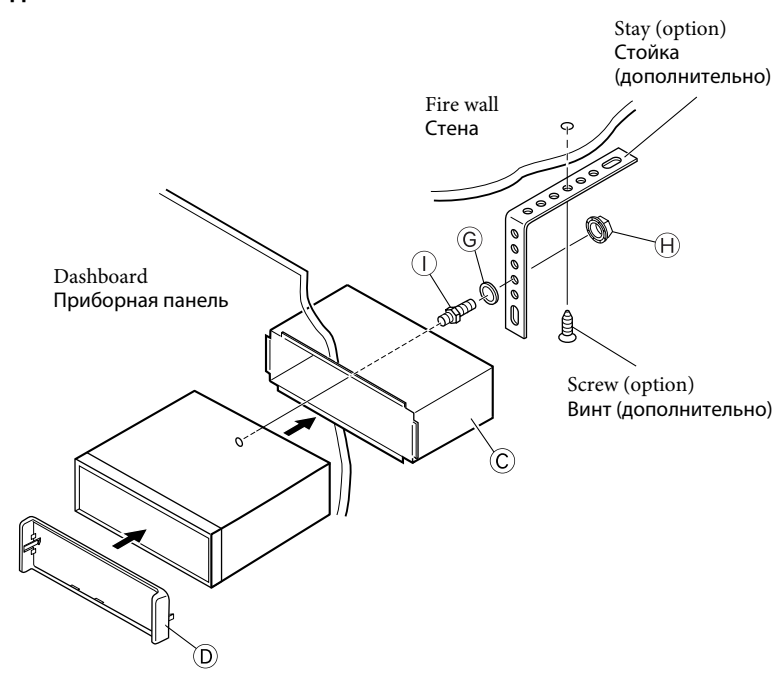


3 Do the required electrical connections. Выполните необходимые подключения контактов, как показано на оборотной стороне этой инструкции.

Do not block the fan. Не закрывайте вентилятор.

Bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place. Отогните соответствующие фиксаторы, предназначенные для прочной установки корпуса.

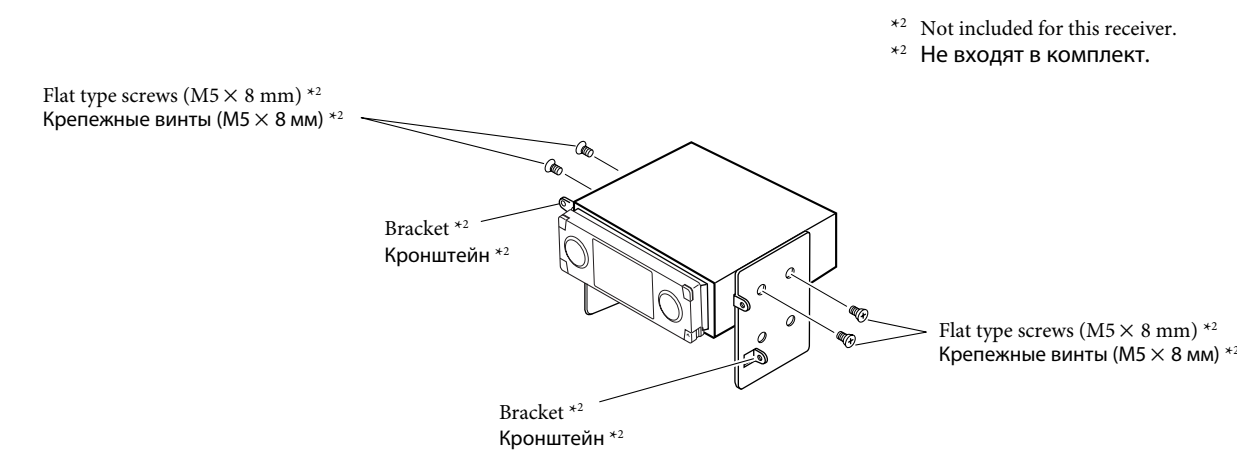
When using the optional stay / При использовании дополнительной стойки



Install the receiver at an angle of less than 30°. Установите устройство под углом менее 30°.

When installing the receiver without using the sleeve / При установке устройства без использования муфты

In a car having the "Required space for installation" (see page 1), first remove the car radio and install the receiver in its place. В автомобиле, в котором есть "Пространство, необходимое для установки" (см. стр. 1), сначала снимите автомобильный радиоприемник и установите приемник на его место.

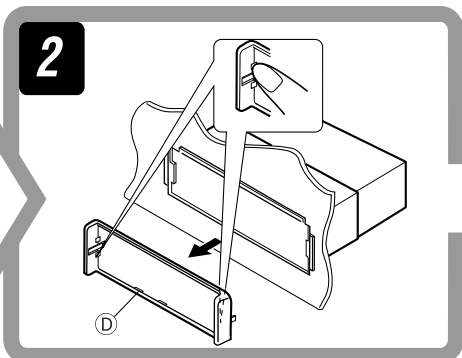
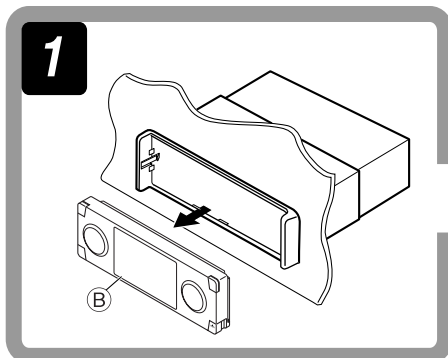


*2 Not included for this receiver. *2 Не входят в комплект.

Note: When installing the receiver on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the receiver.
Примечание: При установке устройства на крепежный кронштейн, используйте только винты длиной 8 мм. При использовании более длинных винтов можно повредить устройство.

Removing the receiver

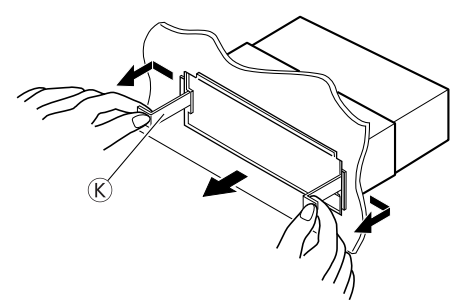
Before removing the receiver, release the rear section.



Удаление устройства

Перед удалением устройства освободите заднюю часть.

3 Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the receiver can be removed. Вставьте два рычажка, затем потяните их, как показано на рисунке, чтобы вынуть устройство.



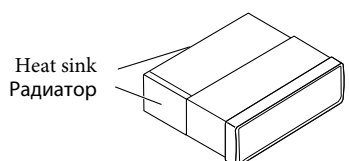
ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the receiver.

• Be sure to ground this receiver to the car's chassis again after installation.

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of 4 Ω to 8 Ω). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 43 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this receiver.



ЭЛЕКТРИЧЕСКИЕ ПОДКЛЮЧЕНИЯ

Для предотвращения коротких замыканий мы рекомендуем Вам отсоединить отрицательный разъем аккумулятора и осуществить все подключения перед установкой устройства.

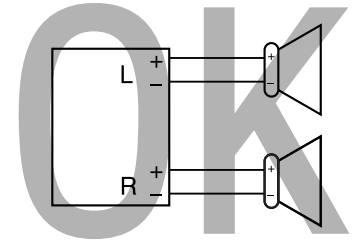
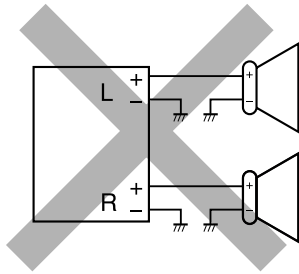
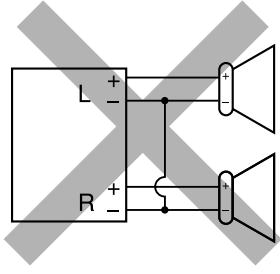
• После установки обязательно заземлите данное устройство на шасси автомобиля.

Примечания:

- Заменяйте предохранитель другим предохранителем указанного класса. Если предохранитель сгорает слишком часто, обратитесь к дилеру автомобильного специалиста JVC.
- Рекомендуется подключать динамики с максимальной мощностью более 50 Вт (к задней и передней панели устройства, с полным сопротивлением от 4 Ω до 8 Ω). Если максимальная мощность менее 50 Вт, измените значение параметра "Amplifier Gain", чтобы предотвратить повреждение динамиков (см. стр. 43 ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ).
- Для предотвращения короткого замыкания заклейте НЕИСПОЛЬЗУЕМЫЕ концы изолирующей лентой.
- Радиатор во время использования сильно нагревается. Старайтесь его не трогать во время удаления устройства.

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the receiver will be seriously damaged.**
- **BEFORE** connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

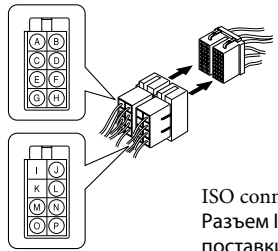


ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЯ по питанию и подключению громкоговорителей:

- **НЕ подключайте провода громкоговорителей к аккумулятору автомобиля, иначе устройство будет повреждено.**
- **ПЕРЕД** подключением проводов громкоговорителей к кабелю питания громкоговорителя проверьте схему соединений громкоговорителей в Вашем автомобиле.

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.



From the car body
От корпуса автомобиля

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
Разъем ISO шнура питания, входящего в комплект поставки

View from the lead side
Вид со стороны выводов

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall)

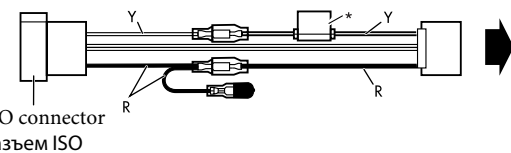
You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this receiver.

Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.

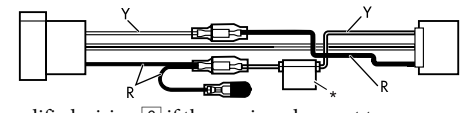
- Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.

Original wiring / Исходная схема соединений



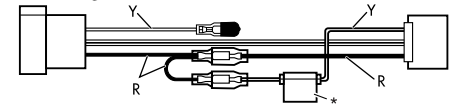
* Choking coil / Удушье катушки
Y: Yellow / Желтый
R: Red / Красный

Modified wiring [1] / Преобразованная схема соединений [1]



Use modified wiring [2] if the receiver does not turn on. Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений [2].

Modified wiring [2] / Преобразованная схема соединений [2]



B Connections without using the ISO connectors / Подключение без использования разъемов ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this receiver.

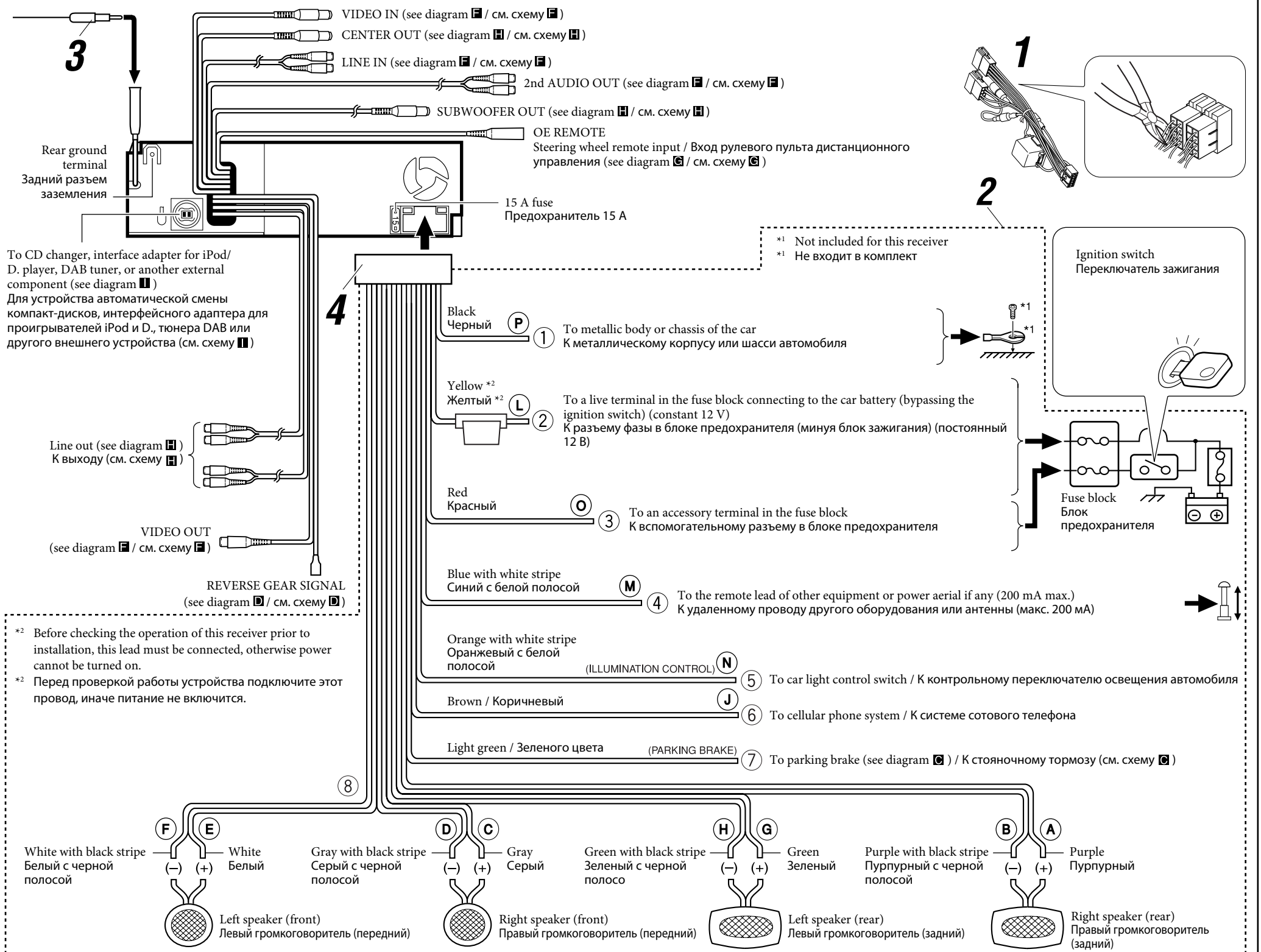
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- 1 Cut the ISO connector.
- 2 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 3 Connect the aerial cord.
- 4 Finally connect the wiring harness to the receiver.

Перед началом подключений: Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле. Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства.

Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

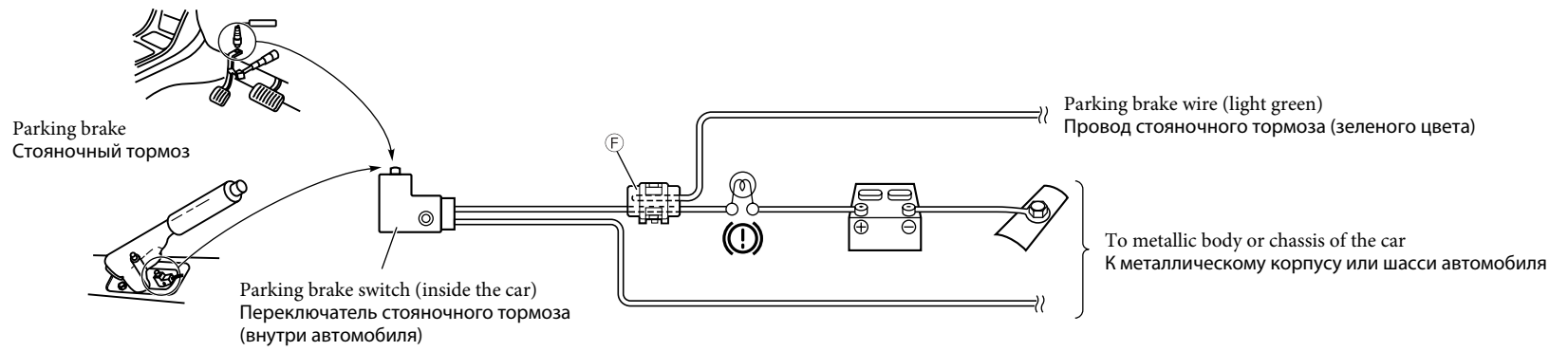
- 1 Обрежьте разъем ISO.
- 2 Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.
- 3 Подключите кабель антенны.
- 4 В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.



C Connecting the parking brake wire / Подключение провода стояночного тормоза

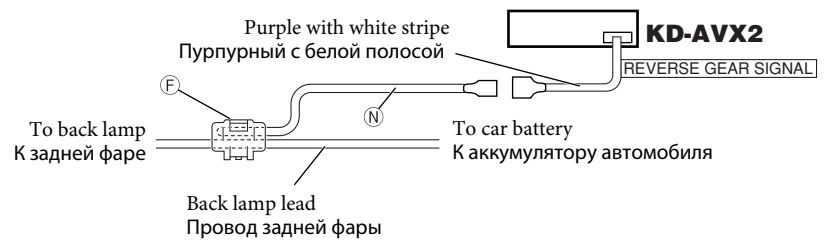
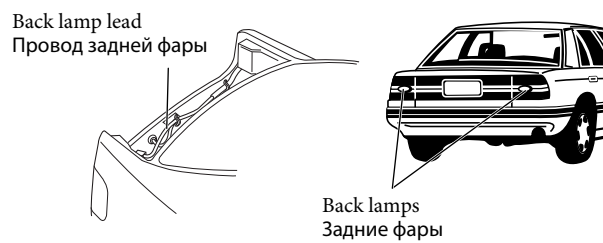
Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.

Подключить провод стояночного тормоза к проводке стояночного тормоза автомобиля.



D Connecting the back camera lead / Подключение провода задней камеры (REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL)

Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk. Найдите в багажнике провод задней фары.



E Connecting the crimp connector *3 / Подключение обжимного разъема *3

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch. Провод, соединяющий аккумулятор и выключатель стояночного тормоза.

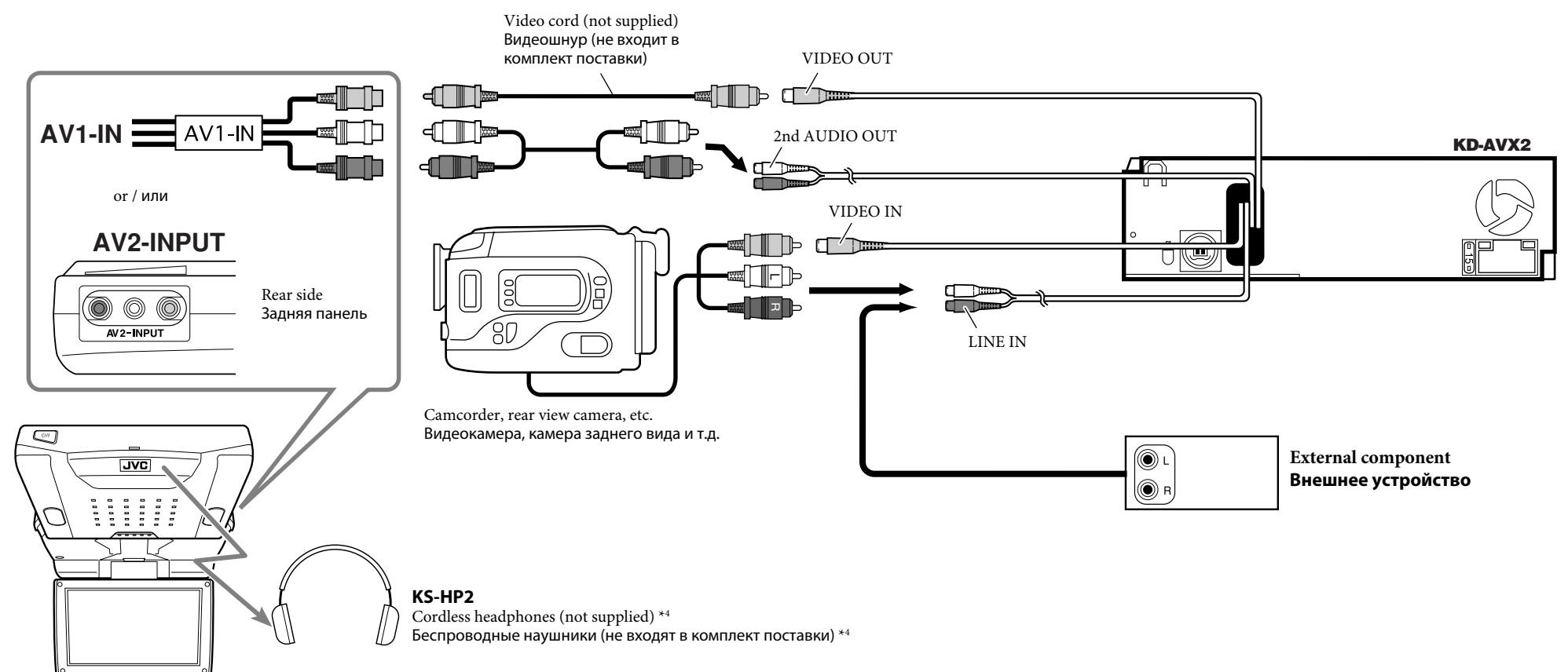
Attach the parking brake wire to this point. Подключить провод стояночного тормоза к этой точке.

Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside. Присоедините металлическую часть обжимного соединителя к находящимся внутри проводам.

Pinch the crimp firmly. Плотно обожмите соединитель.



F Connections for external component playback / Подключения для воспроизведения с внешнего устройства



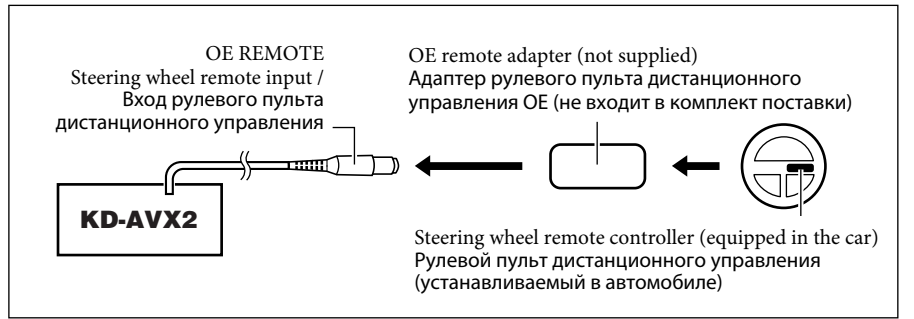
KV-MR9010
9-INCH WIDESCREEN MONITOR (not supplied)
9-ДУЙМОВЫЙ ШИРОКОЭКРАННЫЙ МОНИТОР (не входит в комплект поставки)

*4 To listen to disc playback sound while in Dual Zone operations (see page 33 of INSTRUCTIONS).
*4 Для прослушивания компакт-диска при работе в Двустороннем режиме (см. стр. 33 ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЗУСПЛУАТАЦИИ).

G Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Подключение к рулевому пульту дистанционного управления

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this receiver using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Если автомобиль оборудован рулевым пультом дистанционного управления, его можно использовать для управления данным устройством. Для этого необходим адаптер рулевого пульта дистанционного управления JVC OE (не поставляется), подходящий для Вашего автомобиля. За более подробной информацией обратитесь к поставщику автомобильных аудиосистем компании JVC.



H Connecting the external amplifiers / Подключение внешних усилителей

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

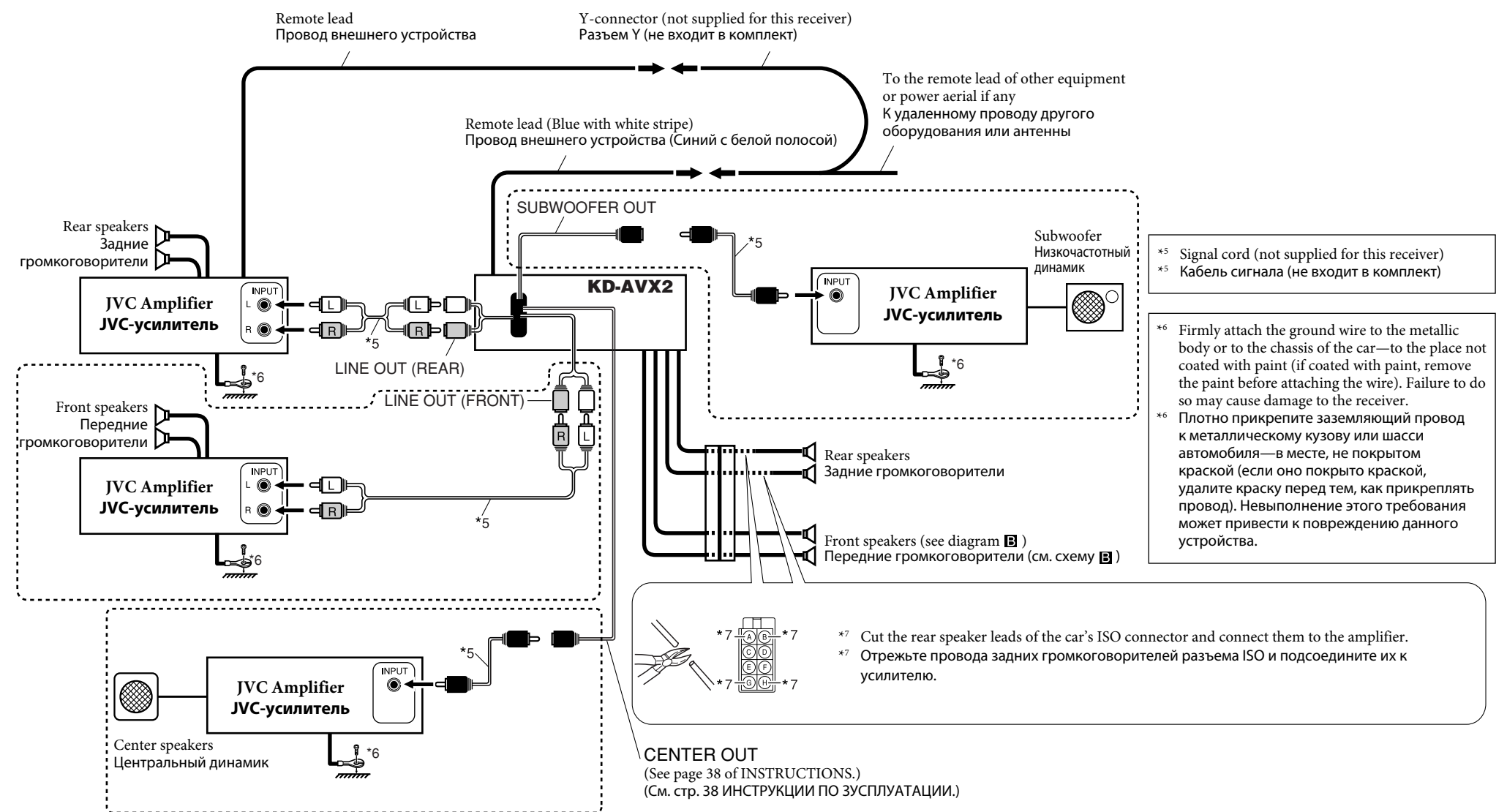
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this receiver.

• For amplifier only:

- **Disconnect the speakers from this receiver, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this receiver unused.**
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the receiver. See page 43 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

Можно подключить усилители для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы.

- Подсоедините провод внешнего устройства (синий с белой полосой) к проводу внешнего устройства другого оборудования так, чтобы им можно было управлять с этого устройства.
- **Только для усилителя:**
 - **Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.**
 - Для получения более чистого звука и предотвращения внутреннего перегрева приемника можно отключить встроенный усилитель и использовать для усиления аудиосигнала только внешние усилители. См. стр. 43 ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЗУСПЛУАТАЦИИ (в отдельном издании).



CAUTION:

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the receiver is turned off.

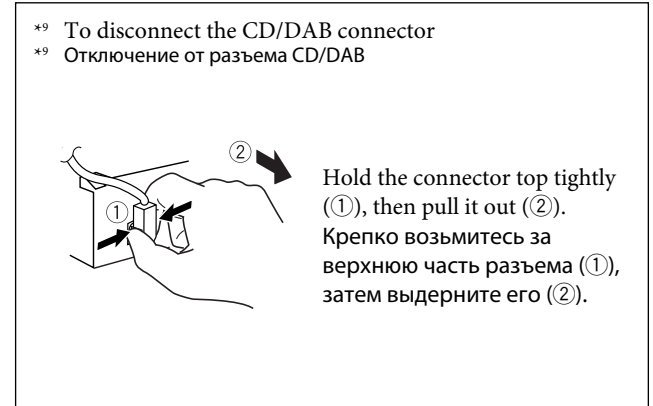
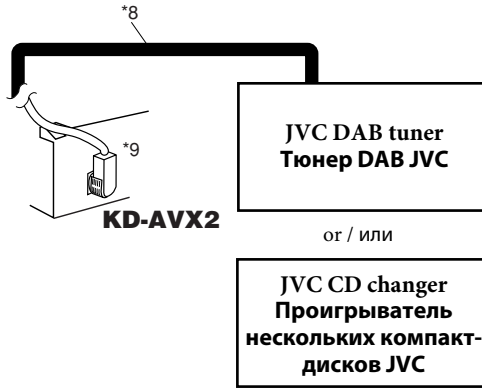
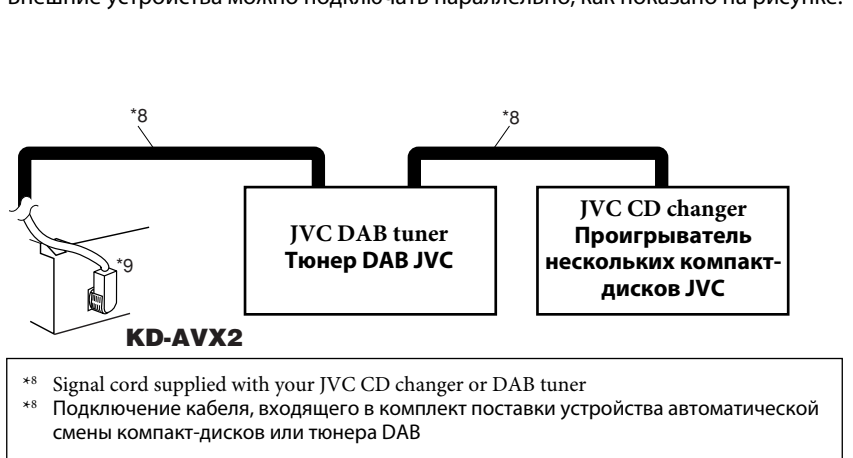
ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЕ:

Перед подключением устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков и/или тюнера DAB убедитесь в том, что приемник отключен.

CD changer and DAB tuner / Проигрыватель нескольких компакт-дисков и тюнер DAB

- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 41 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Установите значение "Changer/iPod/D. Player" для настройки "External Input" (см. стр. 41 ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЗУСПЛУАТАЦИИ).

You can connect both components in series as illustrated below.
Внешние устройства можно подключать параллельно, как показано на рисунке.



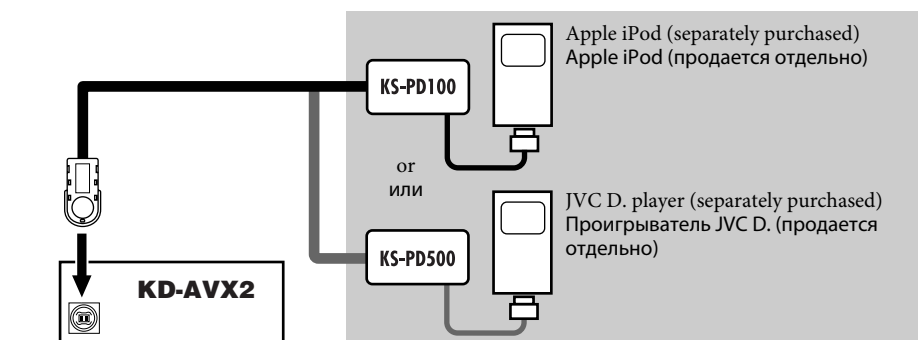
Apple iPod®/JVC D. player and DAB tuner / Apple iPod®/проигрыватель JVC D. и тюнер DAB

- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 41 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Установите значение "Changer/iPod/D. Player" для настройки "External Input" (см. стр. 41 ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЗУСПЛУАТАЦИИ).

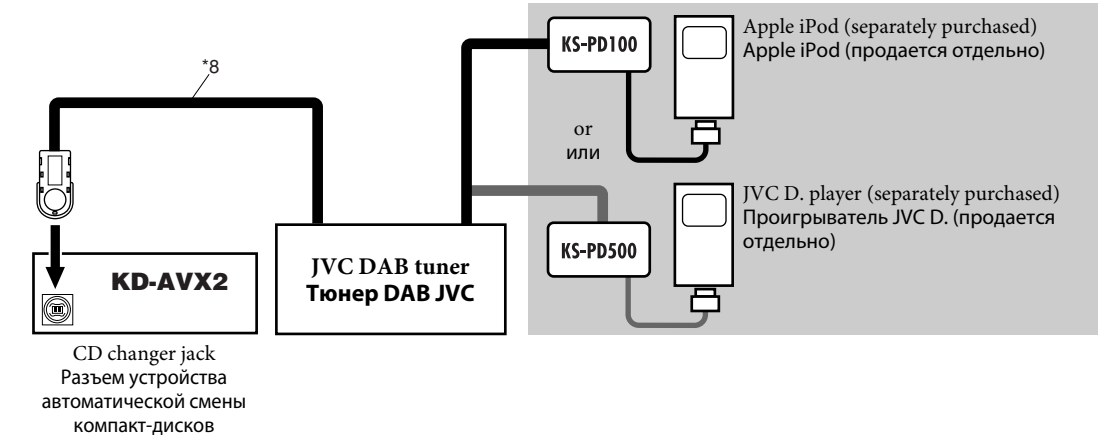
The iPod*10 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

Проигрыватель iPod*10 или D. можно подключить с помощью интерфейсного адаптера (не входит в комплект поставки)—KS-PD100 (для iPod) или KS-PD500 (для проигрывателя D.).

You can also connect both DAB tuner and interface adapter in series as illustrated below.
Можно также подключать и тюнер DAB, и интерфейсный адаптер последовательно, как показано ниже.

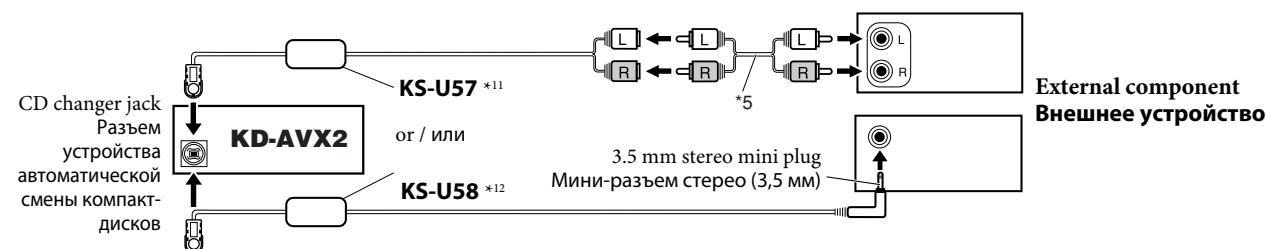


*10 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*10 iPod является торговой маркой Apple Computer, Inc., зарегистрированной в США и других странах.



Other external component / Другое внешнее устройство

- Set "External Input" to "External Input" (see page 41 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Установите значение "External Input" для настройки "External Input" (см. стр. 41 ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЗУСПЛУАТАЦИИ).



*11 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this receiver)
*11 Коммуникационный адаптер KS-U57 (не входит в комплект)
*12 Aux Input Adapter KS-U58 (optionally purchased)
*12 Адаптер дополнительного входа KS-U58 (продается отдельно)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
 - * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
 - * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
 - * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Receiver becomes hot.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This receiver does not work at all.**
 - * Have you reset your receiver?

ВЫЯВЛЕНИЕ НЕИСПРАВНОСТЕЙ

- **Сработал предохранитель.**
 - * Правильно ли подключены черный и красный провода?
- **Питание не включается.**
 - * Подключен ли желтый провод?
- **Звук не выводится через громкоговорители.**
 - * Нет ли короткого замыкания на кабеле выхода громкоговорителей?
- **Звук искажен.**
 - * Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
 - * Заземлены ли разъемы "-" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Шум мешает звучанию.**
 - * Соединен ли находящийся сзади зажим заземления с шасси автомобиля с помощью более короткого и тонкого шнура?
- **Устройство нагревается.**
 - * Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
 - * Заземлены ли разъемы "-" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Приемник не работает.**
 - * Выполнена ли перенастройка приемника?

JVC



ENGLISH

DVD/CD RECEIVER

KD-AVX2

DVD/CD 收音組合機

KD-AVX2

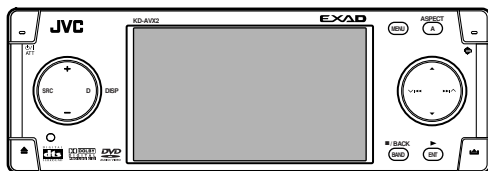
中文

เครื่องเล่น DVD/CD

KD-AVX2

ไทย

EXAD



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 10.

請參閱第10頁有關如何取消示範顯示。

หากต้องการยกเลิกการแสดงผลตัวอย่าง โปรดดูที่หน้า 10

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

有關安裝和連接方法，分別參閱操作手冊。

กรุณาดูคู่มือที่แยกต่างหาก ในการติดตั้งและการเชื่อมต่อ

INSTRUCTIONS

使用說明書

คำแนะนำ

LVT1456-001A

[U]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.	ADVARSEL: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åpen eller interlocken feiler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling.	WARNING: Synlig og osynlig laserstråling når den åpnes og spåren er lukket. Betrakt ikke strålen.	VARO: Avattassa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (1)
--	---	--	---

For safety....

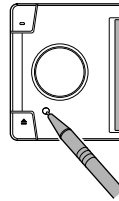
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

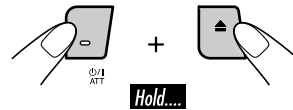
How to reset your unit



This will reset the microcomputer. Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

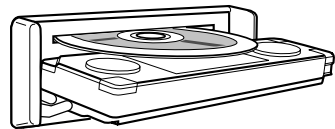
How to forcibly eject a disc

If a disc cannot be recognized by the receiver or cannot be ejected, ejects the disc as follows.



“NO EJECT?” (or “EJECT OK?”) and “EMERGENCY EJECT?” appear on the monitor.

Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select “EMERGENCY EJECT?”, then press ENT.



- If this does not work, reset your receiver.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

WARNINGS:

- **DO NOT** install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.

Characters shown on the monitor

The following characters will be used to show the various information on the monitor.

- You can also use the following characters to assign titles (see page 41).

A	B	C	D	E	a	b	c	d	e
F	G	H	I	J	f	g	h	i	j
K	L	M	N	O	k	l	m	n	o
P	Q	R	S	T	p	q	r	s	t
U	V	W	X	Y	u	v	w	x	y
Z	space				z	space			

Upper and lower cases

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	"	#	\$	%
&	'	()	*
+	,	-	.	/
:	;	<	=	>
?	@	_	`	space

Numbers and symbols

Introduction—Playable discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs—12 cm and 8 cm—on this receiver:

- **DVD Video:** Recorded in NTSC or PAL color system with an appropriate Region Code number (see below).
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played.
- **DVD Audio**
- **Video CD (VCD)/audio CD**
- **MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG1,2:** Recorded either in CD-R/CD-RW or DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM.
 - CD-R/CD-RW: Compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM: Compliant with UDF-Bridge Format*¹.
- *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (DVD Video format only) discs. However the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.*
- *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This receiver can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “3”.

Examples:



If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“Region Error” appears on the monitor on the unit. “REGION CODE ERROR” appears on the external monitor.

Discs cannot be played back

DVD-ROM (data), DVD-RAM, DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.



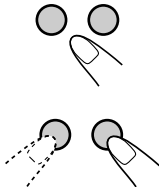

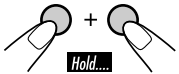
*¹ A hybrid file system used to provide compatibility with ISO 9660 for accessing any type of files on the disc. (UDF stands for Universal Disk Format.)

“DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.

How to read this manual

The following methods are used to make the explanations simple and easy-to-understand:

- Some related tips and notes are explained in “More about this receiver” (see pages 49 – 53).
- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations as follows:

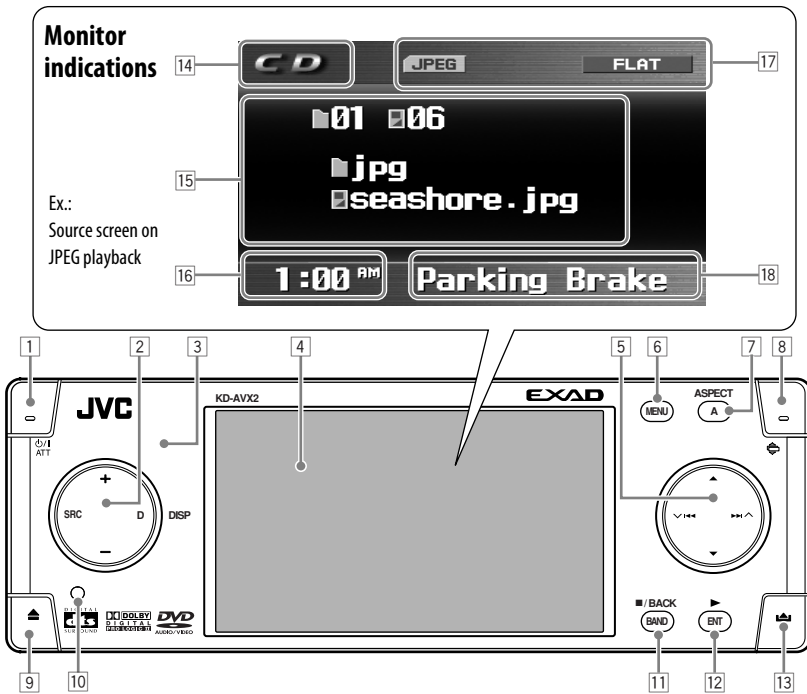
	<p>Press briefly.</p>
	<p>Press repeatedly.</p>
	<p>Press either one.</p>
	<p>Press and hold until your desired response begins.</p>
	<p>Press and hold both buttons at the same time.</p>

Contents

Control panel	6
Remote controller — RM-RK240	7
Getting started.....	10
Radio operations	12
Disc operations	15
Unique disc functions.....	20
Disc surround playback	22
On-Screen disc operations	24
Other disc operations	28
Dual Zone operations	30
AV Menu settings.....	31
Other main functions	41
CD changer operations	42
External component operations	44
iPod®/D. player operations	45
Maintenance	47
Language codes.....	48
More about this receiver	49
Troubleshooting	54
Specifications	57

Control panel

Parts identification



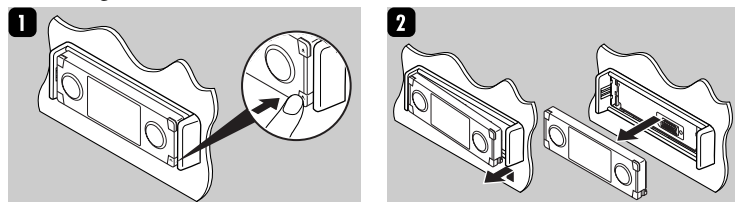
- 1 ϕ /I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
- 2 • +/– (volume +/-) button
• SRC (source) button
• DISP (D: display) button
- 3 Remote Sensor
- 4 Monitor
- 5 • \blacktriangle (up) / \blacktriangledown (down) buttons
• \blacktriangledown \lll / \lll \ggg \blacktriangle buttons
- 6 MENU button
- 7 ASPECT (A) button
- 8 \curvearrowright (angle) button
- 9 \blacktriangle (eject) button
- 10 Reset button
- 11 • BAND button
• BACK button
• \blacksquare (stop) button
- 12 • ENT (enter) button
• \blacktriangleright (play) button
- 13 \blacktriangleleft (control panel release) button

Monitor indications

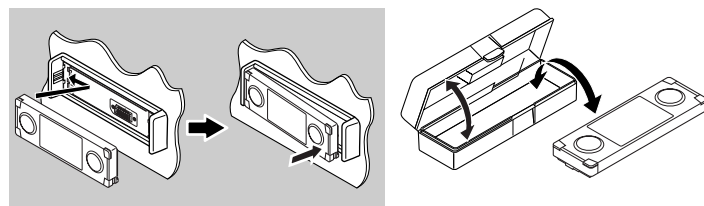
- 14 Source indicator
- 15 Main display
- 16 Clock display
Also indicates volume level when adjusting volume.
- 17 Status indicators
- 18 Alert information area
Also indicates volume level bar when adjusting volume.

How to detach/attach the control panel

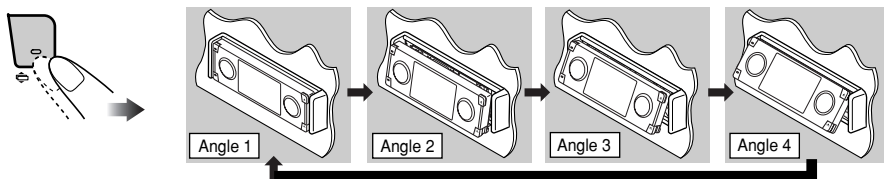
Detaching...



Attaching...



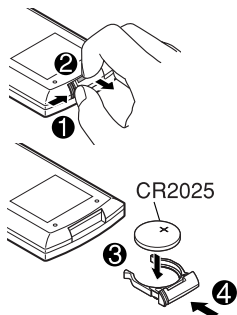
How to change the control panel angle



Caution: Do not insert your finger behind the control panel.

Remote controller — RM-RK240

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the receiver. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.



- Do not expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

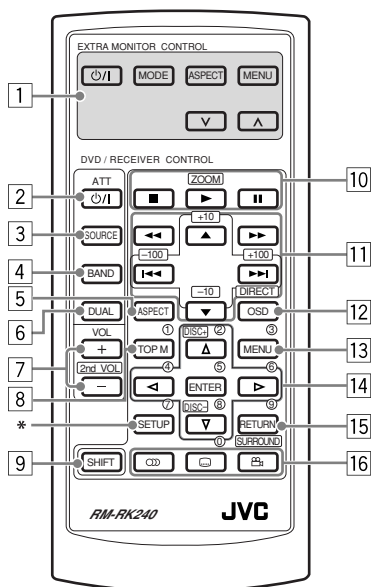
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accidents.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
 - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire.
 - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
 - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
 - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

IMPORTANT:

If Dual Zone is activated (see page 30), the remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.

Main elements and features



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons*1
 - ⏻/⏻ (standby/on), MODE, ASPECT, MENU, ▾ and ▲.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 ⏻/⏻ ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
 - Turns on and off the power and also attenuates the sound.
- 3 SOURCE button
 - Selects the source.
- 4 BAND button
 - Selects the FM/AM bands.
- 5 ASPECT button
 - Change the aspect of the monitor on the unit when playing back DVD, VCD, etc.
- 6 DUAL button
 - Activate and deactivate Dual Zone.
- 7 VOL + / - buttons
 - Adjusts the volume level.
 - Also function as 2nd VOL +/- buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 8 TOP M (menu) button*2
 - Display the DVD, DVD Audio, and VCD*3 disc menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10 Basic disc operation buttons*4:
 - (stop), ▶ (play), ⏸ (pause)
 - ▶ (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 11 Advanced disc operation/tuner operation buttons*5

For advanced disc operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Select the titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio), or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG).
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (reverse skip/forward skip)
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (reverse search/forward search)*6

* Not used as the SETUP button for this model.

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset stations.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
 - Functions to search for stations.
Press briefly: auto search
Press and hold: manual search

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - ▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - ▲: Enters the main menu of iPod/D. player. (Now ▲ / ▼/|◀◀ / ▶▶| work as the menu selection buttons)*7
- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

12 OSD button

- Display the on-screen bar.
- Also function as the DIRECT button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can directly select titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio) or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/MPEG) using the number buttons (see the right column and page 19).

13 MENU button*2

- Display the DVD and VCD*2 disc menu. (Not functions for the DVD Audio disc.)

14 Menu operation buttons*2

- Cursor (△, ▽, ◀, ▶) and ENTER
- △ / ▽: Also function as DISC+/- buttons when the source is “CD-CH”.

15 RETURN button*2

16 Special function buttons

- DVD/VCD: ○○○ (audio)
- DVD: □□□ (subtitle), □□□ (angle)
- □□□ Also function as the SURROUND button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can change the surround mode (see page 23).

*1 Controllable only if your monitor is one of the JVC monitors — KV-MR9010 or KV-MH6510.

*2 These buttons function as the number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 Only when PBC is not in use.

*4 Not used for CD changer operations.

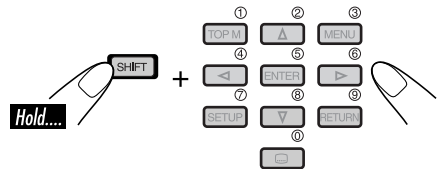
*5 These buttons function as the +10/-10 and +100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*6 Not used for JPEG operations. No sound can be heard (DVD/VCD/MPEG).

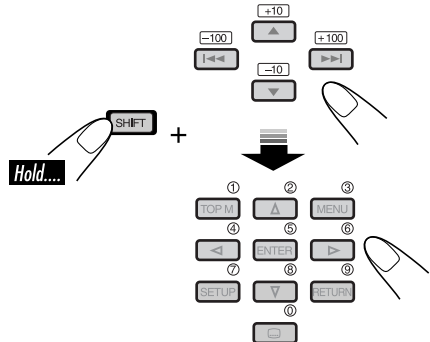
*7 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
▼: Confirms the selection.

How to select a number

To select a number from 0 – 9:



To select a number greater than 9:



- +100/-100 buttons used for searching track number greater than 99 (not available for CD/VCD/DVD/DVD audio).

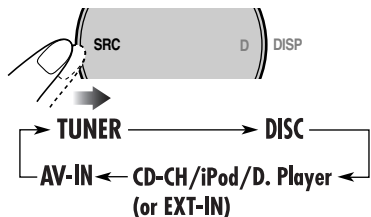
Getting started

Basic operations

1 Turn on the power.

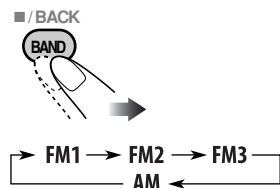


2

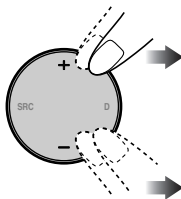


You cannot select some sources if they are not ready.

3 For FM/AM tuner only



4 Adjust the volume.



Volume level indicator

5 Adjust the equalizer as you want.
(See pages 38.)

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT)

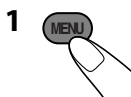


To restore the sound, press it again.

To turn off the power

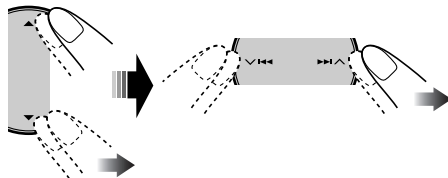


Canceling demonstration and setting the clock



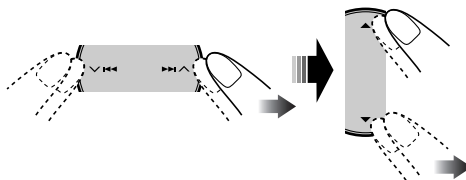
2 Select “Setup”, then,

- ① Select “Display”, “Demonstration”, then “Off” to cancel demonstration.
- ② Select “Clock”, “Time Set”, and go to the next step to set the clock.

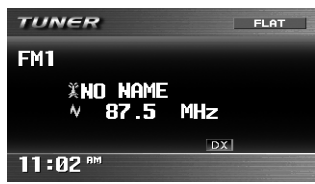
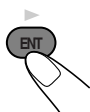


3 Set the hour and minute.

- ① Select “Hour”, then adjust the hour.
- ② Select “Minute”, then adjust the minute.




4 Finish the procedure.



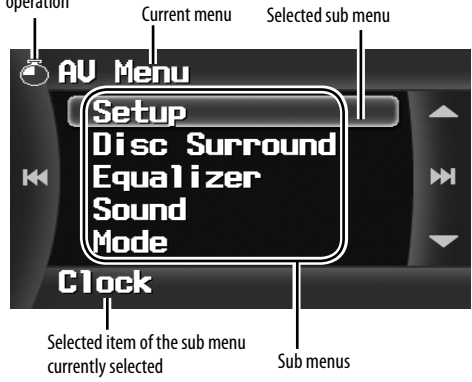
- See the example on “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” below to change the clock from 12 hours to 24 hours.

Basic procedure of AV Menu operation

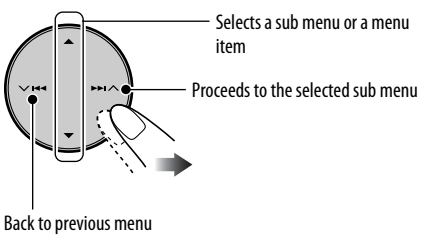
You can adjust various settings of the unit from AV Menu.

- To call up AV Menu... 

Displays remaining time to continue the menu operation



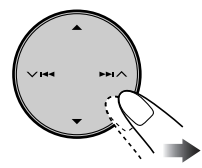
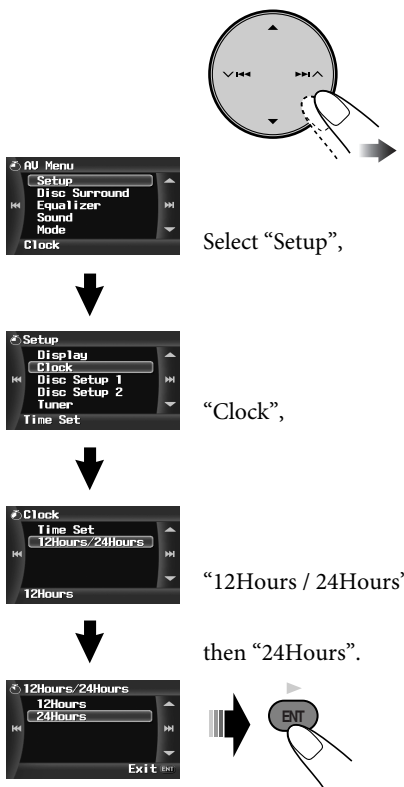
- To select a menu item and proceed to the sub menu...



- To go back to the previous screen and adjust other items...



Ex.: To change the clock from 12 hours to 24 hours, after pressing MENU...



Select “Setup”,

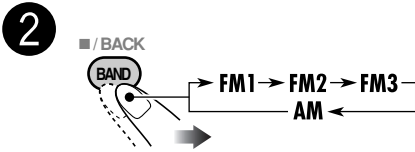
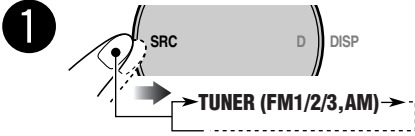
“Clock”,

“12Hours / 24Hours”,

then “24Hours”.

- To cancel menu operations and return to the source screen, press DISP (D).
- See pages 31 – 40 for information of the sub menus and menu items.

Radio operations



Selected band appears.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

3 **Start searching for a station.**



When a station is received, searching stops.

To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

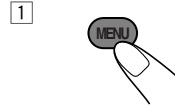
In step 3 above...



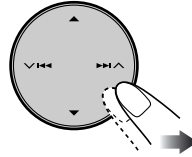
2 Select the desired station frequencies.



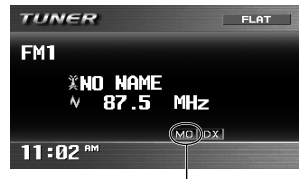
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive



2 Select "Mode", "Mono", then "On".



3 Finish the procedure.

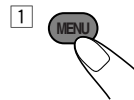


Lights up when monaural mode is activated.

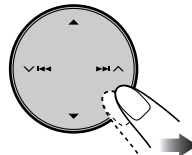
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to set "Mono" to "Off". The MO indicator goes off.

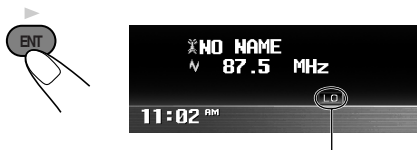
To tune in strong-signal FM station only



2 Select "Mode", "DX / Local", then "Local".



3 Finish the procedure.



Lights up when "Local" mode is activated.

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

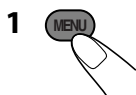
To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure to set "DX / Local" to "DX". The LO indicator goes off and the DX indicator lights up.

Storing stations in memory

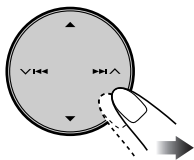
You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

After selecting the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want...



2 Select "Mode", then "SSM".

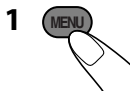


"SSM" is shown until automatic presetting is over.

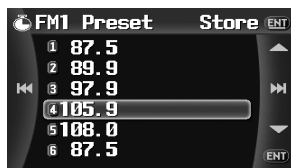
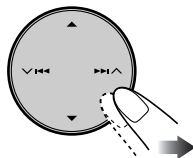
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

After tuning in the station you want to preset...

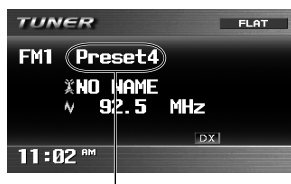
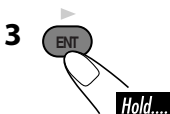


2 Select "List", then a preset number (1–6) you want to store the station into.



EX.: Storing 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of FM1

You can also display the list by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons.



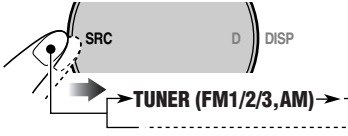
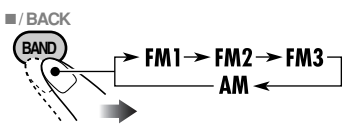
Stored preset number flashes for a while.

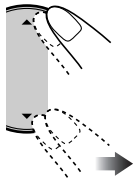
How to exit from menus or lists



Menu or list operations are canceled and the screen returns to the source screen.


Listening to a preset station

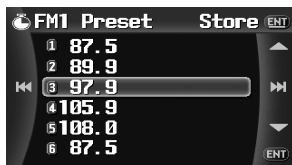
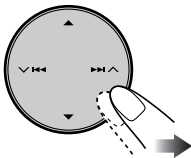
- 
- 
- Select a preset station (1 - 6) you want.



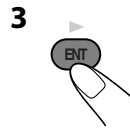
When using the list screen...

After step 2 above...

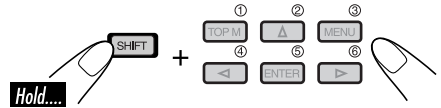
- 
- Select "List", then a preset number (1-6) you want.



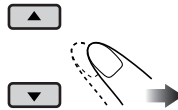
- You can change the preset list between FM1/2/3 by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons (or by pressing ▲/▼ buttons repeatedly) when selecting any of the FM bands.



When using the remote controller...



or



Disc operations

Playing a disc in the receiver

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD Video/Audio: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc is an audio CD, CD Text, MP3/WMA/WAV, JPEG, MPEG, or VCD without PBC, all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

- If a title list or disc menu appears while playing a DVD Video/Audio or VCD with PBC, see “Disc menu operations” on page 21.

The following marks are used to indicate the playable discs...



DVD Video



DVD Audio



Video CD with/without PBC



Video CD with PBC only



MPEG disc



JPEG disc



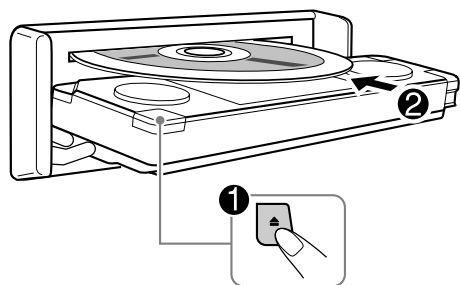
Audio CD/ CD Text



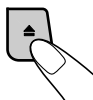
MP3/WMA/WAV disc




All discs listed here



To eject a disc



Before performing any operations, make sure the following...

- The operations explained on pages 17 – 22 are mainly of the remote controller.
 -  shows functions which you can also use on the unit.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the receiver cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

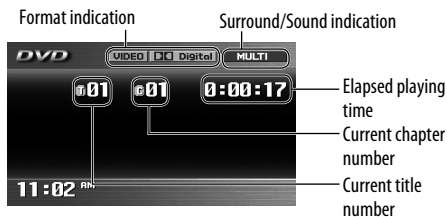
- In some cases, without showing “⊘”, operations will not be accepted.

• **When inserting a DVD video/DVD Audio disc:**

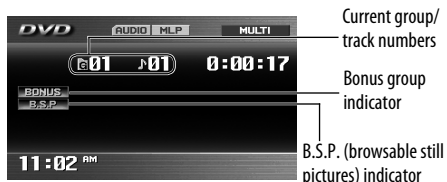
Video/picture playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).

When an DVD is playing back



When a DVD Audio disc is playing back

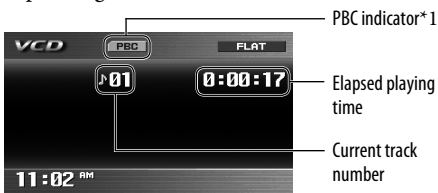


- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting a VCD:**

VCD playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).



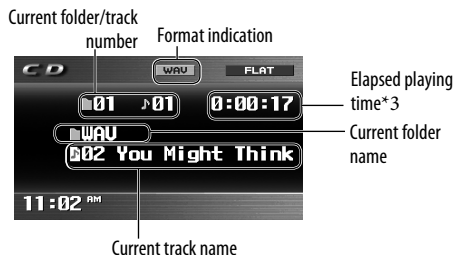
*1 Appears when the PBC function is in use.

- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting an MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG disc*2:**

After showing the total folder and file number...

Ex.: When an WAV file is detected

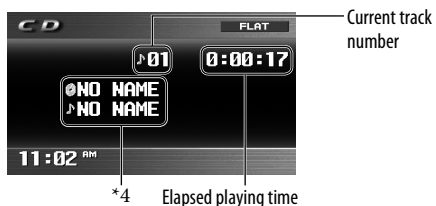


*2 When playing back a JPEG/MPEG disc, press DISP (D) to display the screen. (Picture/video playback is automatically starts when the parking brake is applied.)

*3 Does not appear for JPEG disc.

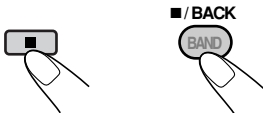
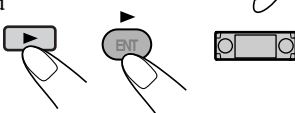



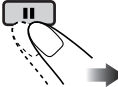

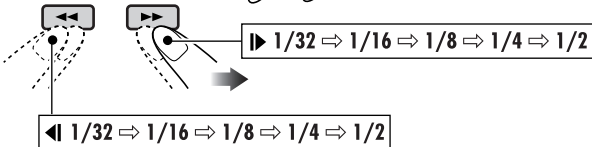

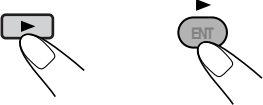

• **When inserting a CD Text/audio CD:**

After showing the total track number and total playing time...



*4 Disc title/performer and track title are displayed when playing a CD Text.

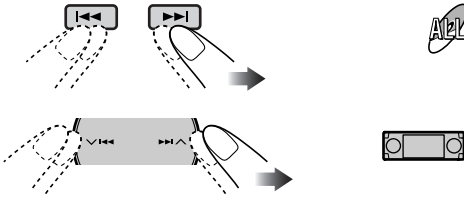
Basic operations

Operations	Monitor indication and/or next operation
<p>To stop playback</p> 	<p>When you start playback again, playback starts from where it has been stopped (Resume play).</p> 
<p>To stop play temporarily</p> 	<p>Playback is paused.</p>  <p>A still picture appears.</p> <p>Ⓐ Frame by frame playback </p>  <p>Ⓑ Slow motion playback </p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sound comes out during Slow Motion Playback. • When playing a VCD, Reverse Slow Motion Playback is prohibited. <p>To resume normal play:</p> 
<p>To replay the previous scenes—One Touch Replay</p> 	<p>The playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This function works only within the same title. • For some DVDs, this function does not work. 

- During play, on-screen guide icons appear on the monitor for a while (see page 53).

To go to the next or previous chapters/tracks

- For DVD: During play or pause



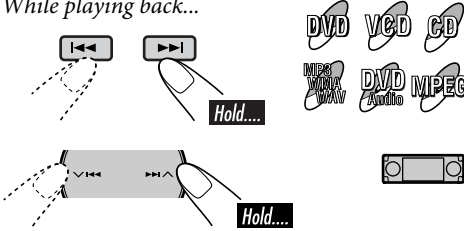
To locate a particular title/chapter/track directly

- For DVD Video/DVD Audio:
During play or pause—select a chapter/track.
During stop—select a title/track.
- For MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG:
Select a track within the same folder.

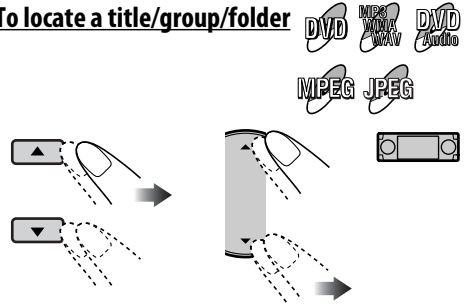
Select the number corresponding to the item you want (see page 9).

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter/track

While playing back...



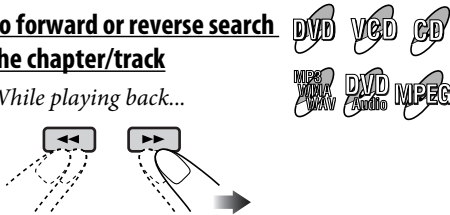
To locate a title/group/folder



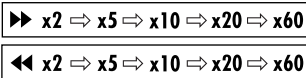
* The search speed changes to x2 ⇔ x10 (▶▶) (◀◀) 1/2 for MPEG), but the information shown on the monitor is only for DVD/VCD/MPEG.

To forward or reverse search the chapter/track

While playing back...



The information shown is only for DVD/VCD:

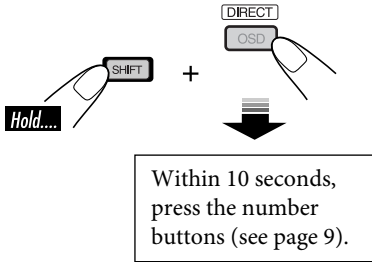


* The search speed of an MPEG file is 3 steps - ▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2/3.

- To resume normal speed



**To locate a particular title/
group/folder**



IMPORTANT:

- For MP3/WMA/WAV discs: It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit number at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

To adjust the screen shape on the unit

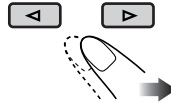


- See “Aspect” on page 33 for the detail.

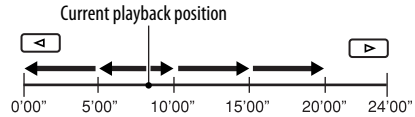
To skip to the next or previous scene



You can skip the scene back and forward by 5 minutes.



Ex.: when you are playing a 24-minute MPEG file and the elapsed playing time is 8'24"...



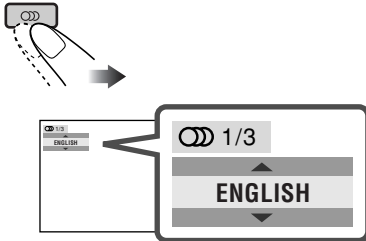
- The first pressing of the buttons skips the scene to the nearest multiple-of-5 playing time (except current playing time).
- This function does not work when remaining time to skip forward or back is under 5 minutes.

Unique disc functions

Selecting audio languages

For DVD:

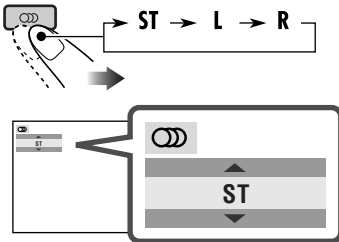
You can select the language to listen to if the disc has multiple audio languages.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

For VCD:

You can select the audio channel to play. (This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.)



ST: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.

L: To listen to the L (left) audio channel.

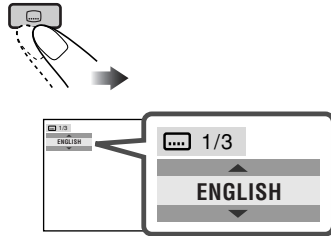
R: To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

Selecting subtitles

You can select the language of the subtitle to be shown on the monitor.



- You can set the initial subtitle language using the AV Menu (see page 34).

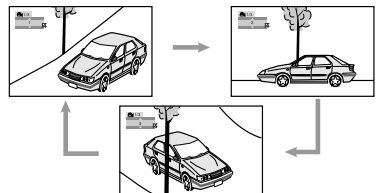
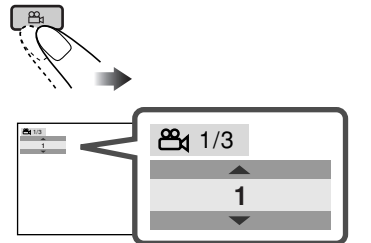


Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the subtitle language, audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting multi-angle views

You can view the same scene at different angles if the disc has multi-angle views.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 multi-angle views

Disc menu operations

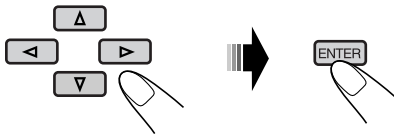
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PBC (PlayBack Control).

While playing a DVD



A title list or disc menu will appear on the monitor.

2 Select the item you want on the menu.

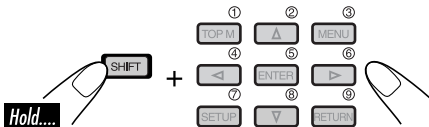


Selected item starts playback.

- On some discs, you can also select items by their numbers.

While playing a VCD

- When a list of items is displayed on the monitor.



- To select a number greater than 9, see “How to select a number” on page 9.

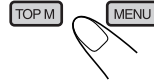
To return to the previous menus



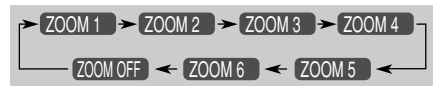
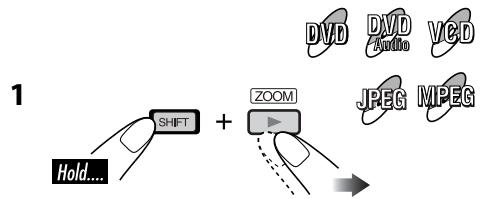
Canceling the PBC playback

- Press the PBC button (represented by a small square icon).
- Select a track to start normal playback using the number buttons (see page 9).

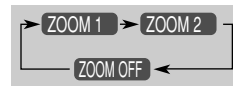
To resume the PBC function



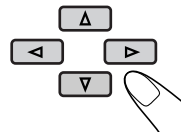
Zoom in



For JPEG disc (effective only when pausing):



2 Move the zoomed-in position.



- For JPEG files:
You cannot move the zoomed-in position when the entire picture is still displayed on the monitor.

To cancel zoom, select “ZOOM OFF” in step 1.

Playing back a bonus group

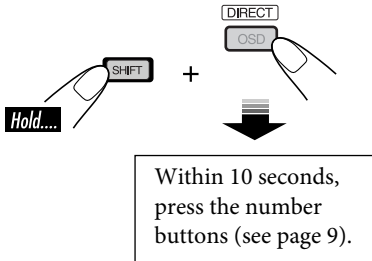
Some DVD Audio discs have a special group called “bonus group” whose contents are not open to the public.



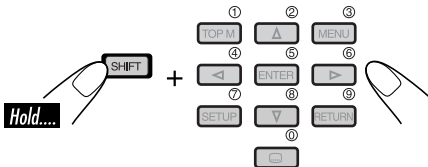
- To play back a bonus group, you have to enter the specific “key number” (a kind of password) for the bonus group. The way of getting the key number depends on the disc.

1 Select the bonus group.

- The bonus group is usually recorded as the last group (for example, if a disc contains four groups including a bonus group, “group 4” is the bonus group).



2 Enter the key number.



3 Follow the interactive instructions shown on the monitor.

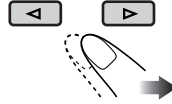
- The entered key number is cleared when the disc is ejected. Repeat steps 1 to 3 above to play back the bonus group again.

Selecting Browsable still pictures

While playing back a track linked to browsable still pictures (B.S.P.), you can select (turn the page) the still picture to be shown on the monitor.



- If a track is linked to B.S.P., they are usually shown in turn automatically during playback.



Disc surround playback

You can enjoy multichannel surround playback of the disc on the unit.

Available surround format

Dolby Digital*1: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with Dolby Digital (DOLBY DIGITAL).

Dolby Pro Logic II: Dolby Pro Logic II is a multichannel playback format to decode all 2 channel sources—stereo source and Dolby Surround encoded source—into 5.1 channels. Dolby Pro Logic II has two modes—Movie mode and Music mode:

- Pro Logic II Movie**
Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
- Pro Logic II Music**
Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

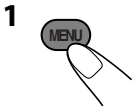
DTS (Digital Theater Systems)*2: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with DTS Digital Surround (DTS SURROUND).

- *1: Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless, and the double-D symbol are the trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- *2: "DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

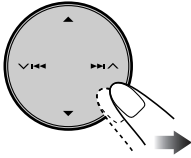
Selecting the surround mode

The unit is set up, by default, to select the optimal surround mode for the digital multichannel disc in the initial setting. You can also choose the surround mode for the 2 channel disc.

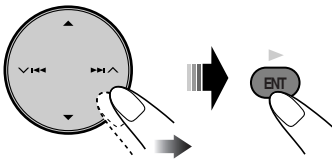
When DISC is selected as the source...



2 Select "Disc Surround".



3 Select the surround setting you want.



Surround Off:

Deactivate the surround function.

Surround On*1*2:

- **Auto***3: the optimum surround mode is selected automatically when multichannel digital signals are detected.
- **Dolby PLII Movie***4*5: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Movie.
- **Dolby PLII Music***4*5*6: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Music.

- *1 No sound comes out of the rear speakers and the subwoofer when the FRONT 2CH indicator appears on the monitor.
- *2 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the FIX indicator appears on the monitor.
- *3 Activates no surround function when the source is a CD (except for DTS CD)/VCD / MP3/WMA/WAV. Select "Dolby PLII Movie" or "Dolby PLII Music" manually to activate the surround function.
- *4 Not selectable in the cases below:
 - the disc has 2.1 or more channels of sound tracks (except for MPEG-encoded tracks).
 - the disc is an MPEG disc.
- *5 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the front speaker size is set to "Large" (see page 35).
- *6 When you select "Dolby PLII Music", you can adjust the following items: "Panorama" and "Center Width". Adjusting "Panorama" to "On" adds "wraparound" sound effect; Activating "Center Width" adjusts the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger (normally select "4").

- No sound comes out of the center speaker when the surround function is not activated.
- Equalizer settings (page 38) become ineffective and unadjustable while the surround function is activated.
- No sound may come out of some speakers depending on the Speaker Size settings (page 35) or the type of the disc played back.
- When Dual Zone is activated, the surround settings become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.

On the remote controller:



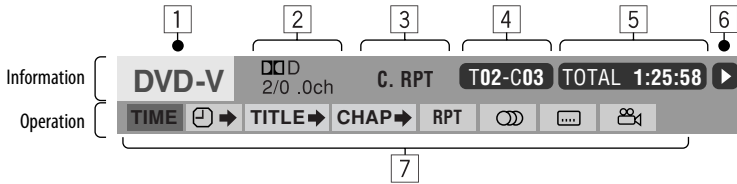
On-Screen disc operations

Operations using the on-screen bar

You can check the disc information and use some functions through the on-screen bar.



On-screen bar

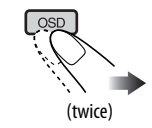


- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 Disc type</p> <p>2 • DVD Video/DVD Audio: Audio signal format type
• VCD: PBC</p> <p>3 Playback mode
DVD: T. RPT: Title repeat
C. RPT: Chapter repeat
DVD Audio:
T. RPT: Track repeat
VCD: T. RPT: Track repeat
D. RND: Disc random
T. INT: Track intro
Plays the beginning 15 seconds of the current track
JPEG: T. RPT: Track repeat
MPEG:
T. RPT: Track repeat
F. RPT: Folder repeat</p> <p>4 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
G02-T03 Current group/track
TRACK 01 Current track
F001-T001 Current folder/track</p> <p>5 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM Remaining disc time (for VCD)/remaining title time (for DVD)
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track</p> | <p>REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track</p> <p>6 Playback status
▶ Play
▶/◀ Forward/reverse search
▶/◀ Forward/reverse slow-motion
⏸ Pause
⏹ Stop</p> <p>7 Operation icons
TIME Change time indication (see 5)
⏸▶ Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE▶ Title Search (by its number)
GROUP▶ Group Search (by its number)
CHAP▶ Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK▶ Track Search (by its number)
⏸ Change the audio language or audio channel
⏸ Change the subtitle language
📺 Change the view angle
RPT Repeat play*
INT Intro play*
RND Random play*</p> |
|--|--|

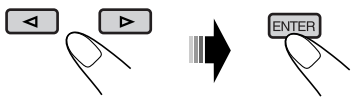
* See also page 28.

Basic on-screen bar operations

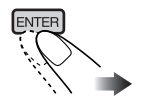
1 Display the on-screen bar.



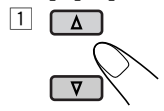
2 Select an item.



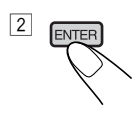
3 Make a selection.



• If pop-up menu appears....



or press the number buttons
(see page 9).

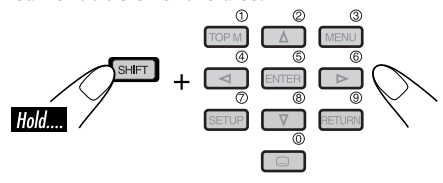


To erase the on-screen bar

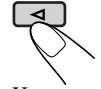


To search for a particular point by playing time

- 1 Select .
- 2 Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.



- Ex.:
- To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
 - To enter 54 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 0, 5, 4, 0, then 0.
 - It is always required to enter the hour digit (even "0" hour), but it is not required to enter trailing zeros (the last two digits in the examples above).
 - To correct a misentry, press....



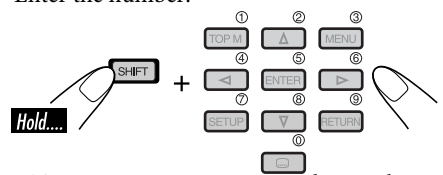
- You can also specify the elapsed playing time by using $\Delta / \nabla / \leftarrow / \rightarrow$.

- 3 Finish the procedure.



To search for a particular title/group/chapter/track

- 1 Select **TITLE** \Rightarrow (**GROUP** \Rightarrow / **CHAP** \Rightarrow / **TRACK** \Rightarrow).
- 2 Enter the number.



- To correct a misentry, press the number button until the correct number is entered.

- 3 Finish the procedure.

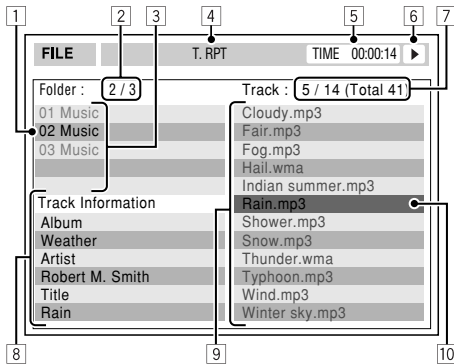


Basic control screen operations

You can search for and play the desired items through the control screen when using the external monitor.

- The control screen automatically appears on the monitor when you insert a disc (external monitor only).
- JPEG/MPEG control screen appears only when playback stops.

Control screen



Ex.: MP3 playback

- 1 Current folder (Not appears on CD playback)
- 2 Current folder number/total folder number (Not appears on CD playback)
- 3 Folder list (Not appears on CD playback)
- 4 Selected playback mode
- 5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (Not appears on JPEG playback)
- 6 Operation mode icon
▶ (play), ■ (stop), || (pause), ►► (fast-forward), ◀◀ (reverse)
- 7 CD: Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
Others: Current track (file) number/total number of tracks (files) in the current folder (total number of tracks/files on the disc)

- 8 Track information (Not appears on JPEG/MPEG playback)
- 9 Track (file) list
- 10 Current track (file) (highlighted bar)

To select a folder or track



While Dual Zone (see page 30) is on...

- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track.



To select a track



To change the playback mode



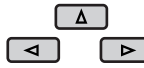
While Dual Zone (see page 30) is on...



- 1



- 2 Select a playback mode (see page 28) you want.

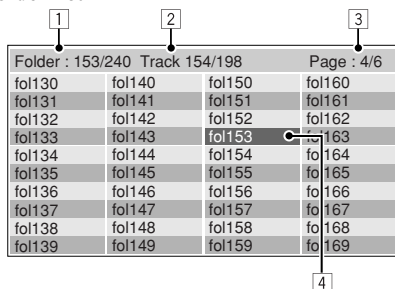


List screen operations

You can display the folder list/track list before starting play when using the external monitor and Dual Zone function (see page 30). On this list, you can confirm the contents and start playing a disc.

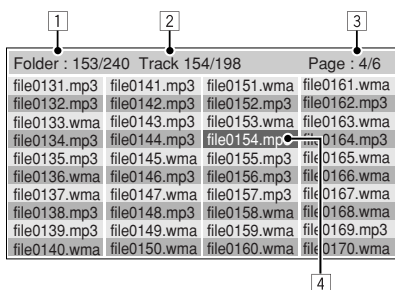
Folder/track list screens

Folder list



Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
fol130	fol140	fol150	fol160	
fol131	fol141	fol151	fol161	
fol132	fol142	fol152	fol162	
fol133	fol143	fol153	fol163	
fol134	fol144	fol154	fo 164	
fol135	fol145	fol155	fo 165	
fol136	fol146	fol156	fo 166	
fol137	fol147	fol157	fo 167	
fol138	fol148	fol158	fo 168	
fol139	fol149	fol159	fo 169	

Track list




Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
file0131.mp3	file0141.mp3	file0151.wma	file0161.wma	
file0132.mp3	file0142.mp3	file0152.mp3	file0162.mp3	
file0133.wma	file0143.mp3	file0153.wma	file0163.wma	
file0134.mp3	file0144.mp3	file0154.mp3	file0164.mp3	
file0135.mp3	file0145.wma	file0155.mp3	file0165.wma	
file0136.wma	file0146.mp3	file0156.mp3	file0166.wma	
file0137.wma	file0147.wma	file0157.mp3	file0167.wma	
file0138.mp3	file0148.mp3	file0158.wma	file0168.wma	
file0139.mp3	file0149.wma	file0159.wma	file0169.mp3	
file0140.wma	file0150.wma	file0160.wma	file0170.wma	

Ex.: Track list for MP3/WMA

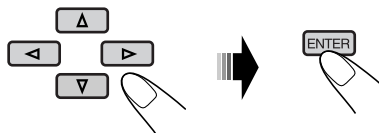
- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder.
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

While Dual Zone is on and the disc play stops...

1 Display the folder list.

 Each time you press the button, the list screen comes on and goes off.

2 Select a folder on the list.

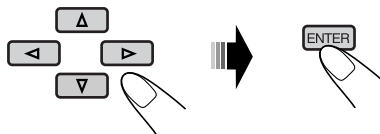


The track list of the selected folder appears.

To go back to the folder list



3 Select a track on the list.



Other disc operations

Selecting the playback modes

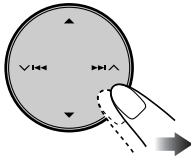
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1 

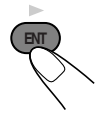


(On the unit)

2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Playback mode indicator appears.



Selectable modes

Off



Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.

Mode Plays the first 15 seconds of

- Track:** All tracks of the disc.
-  INT lights up.
- Folder*¹:** First tracks of all folders.
-  INT lights up.
- Off:** Cancels.





*¹ Only while playing a disc containing folders.

Repeat



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.

Mode Plays repeatedly

- Chapter*²:** The current chapter.
-  CHAP RPT lights up.
- Title*²:** The current title.
-  TITLE RPT lights up.
- Track*³:** The current track.
-  RPT lights up.
- Folder*¹:** All tracks of the current folder.
-  RPT lights up.
- Off:** For DVD: Cancels Repeat play.
For other discs: All tracks of the disc.

*² Only while playing a DVD disc.



*³ Except for DVD and JPEG discs.

Random



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.

Mode Plays at random

- Folder*¹:** All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on.
-  RND lights up.
- Disc:** All tracks of the disc.
-  RND lights up.
- Off:** Cancels.

List screen operations

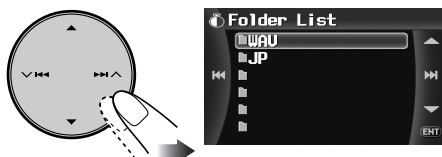
You can display the folder list/file list and select a file directly while playing.

While playing....



1 (On the unit)

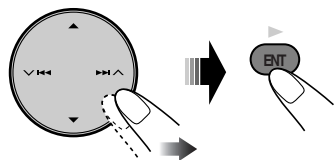
2 Select “Mode”, then “List”.



3 Select a folder you want.



4 Select a file you want to play.

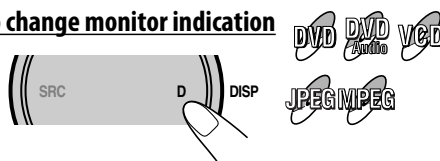


- You can also access the folder list by pressing and holding ▲ / ▼ on the unit.

Other operations

Monitor indication control

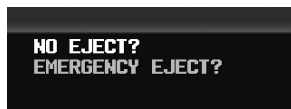
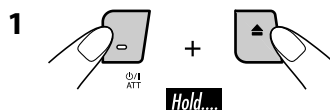
To change monitor indication



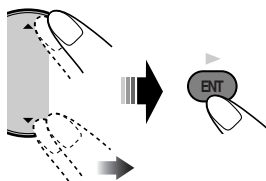
- Each time you press DISP (D), the display changes between the source screen and picture playback.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.



2 Select “NO EJECT?”.



“No Eject” flashes.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select “EJECT OK?”.

Dual Zone operations

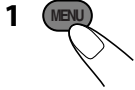
Playing back two sources at a time

You can connect external audio equipment to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug on the rear, and play back a disc separately from the source selected on the unit.

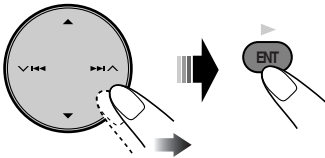


You can activate Dual Zone while listening to any source.

- When Dual Zone is in use, you can only operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.
- When Dual Zone is in use, the surround settings (page 23) become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.



2 Select “Dual Zone”, then “On” or “On-Surround”.



Off: Deactivate Dual Zone.

On: Activate Dual Zone.

On-Surround^{*1*2}:

Activate Dual Zone and add the headphone Surround^{*3} effect to the disc playback sound. Select this when listening the disc playback sound with headphones.

^{*1} Not effective when playing back an MPEG disc.

^{*2} The surround effect is also added to the sound from the speakers when you select “DISC” as the source.

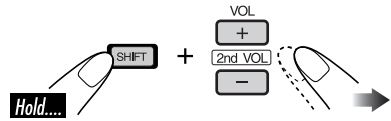
^{*3} JVC original headphone virtual surround system.

The source automatically changes to “DISC” and **DUAL** appears on the monitor.

To select a different source to listen through the speakers, press SRC on the control panel.

- By using the buttons on the control panel, you can operate the newly selected source without affecting Dual Zone operations.

3 Adjust the volume through the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug using the remote controller.

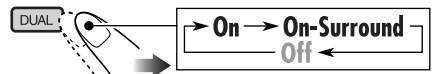


4 Operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller by referring to the monitor screen.

To cancel Dual Zone operations, select “Off” on step 2 on the left column. (**DUAL** / **DUAL-SURR** disappears.)

On the remote controller:

You can also activate and deactivate Dual Zone.



To change the Dual Zone mode between “On” and “On-Surround”, select the Dual Zone mode you want on step 2 on the left column.

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

Through the 2nd AUDIO OUT, 2 channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

Basic procedure

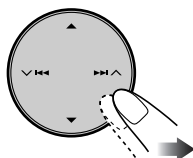
You can adjust various settings of this unit from the AV Menu.

The AV Menu contains the menu items and submenus shown on the figure below.

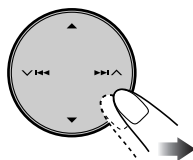
1



2 Select a menu item you want to set.

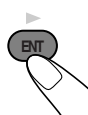


3 adjust the item selected.



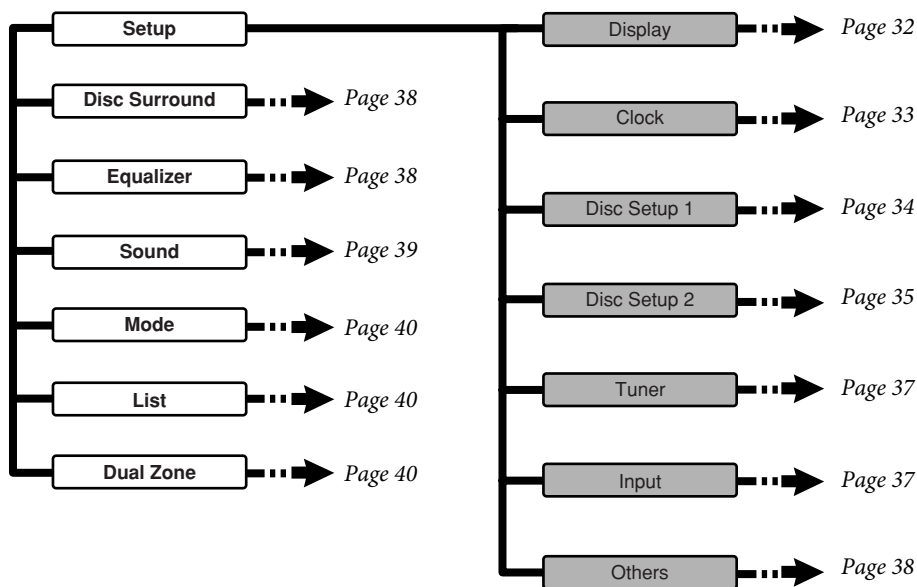
4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



- See also “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” on page 11 for more details of the operation.

























Menu items of AV Menu



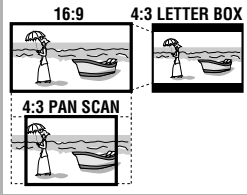
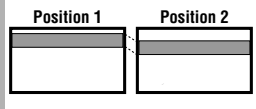
AV Menu items

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Demonstration	Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Activates the demonstration movie on the monitor.
Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the monitor. Standard [Initial], Rose, Gold, Black, Metal, Metallic-Silver, Metallic-Green, Honeycomb-Red, Honeycomb-Green, Effect-Orange, Effect-Purple, Clown fish, Ocean, Sunset, Earth.
Scroll	Off: Cancels. Once: [Initial]; Scrolls the disc information once. Auto: Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Even if “Scroll” is set to “Off”, you can scroll the display by pressing D DISP for more than one second.
Tag Display	Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Shows the tag data while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
Dimmer	Off: Cancels. On: Activates dimmer. Auto: [Initial]; Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights. Time Set: Sets the Dimmer On/Off time.
Bright	You can adjust brightness of the monitor. -15 (darkest) to +15 (brightest) [Initial]; 00 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To adjust the brightness of playback picture, adjust “Bright” on “Screen Control” below.
Screen Control^{*1}	You can adjust color and brightness of playback pictures of “DISC” and “AV-IN”. The setting is stored separately for “DISC” and “AV-IN”. -15 to +15 [Initial]; 00 Bright: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. Contrast: Adjust the contrast of the bright and dark portion. Color: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. Tint: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural.

*1 Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies, or “AV-IN”.

Indications		Selectable settings, [reference page]														
Display	Aspect* ¹	<p>You can change the screen shape on the monitor according to the aspect ratio of the source. Choose the optimum one from the followings.</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</th> </tr> <tr> <th>4:3</th> <th>16:9</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> <p>Normal: For original shape of 4:3</p>  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9</p>  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>Just:</p>  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>Zoom:</p>  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>Auto:</p> <p>The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.</p> </td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Aspect ratio of incoming signal		4:3	16:9	<p>Normal: For original shape of 4:3</p> 		<p>Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9</p> 		<p>Just:</p> 		<p>Zoom:</p> 		<p>Auto:</p> <p>The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.</p>	
		Aspect ratio of incoming signal														
		4:3	16:9													
		<p>Normal: For original shape of 4:3</p> 														
		<p>Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9</p> 														
<p>Just:</p> 																
<p>Zoom:</p> 																
<p>Auto:</p> <p>The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.</p>																
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can also adjust the screen shape by pressing ASPECT (A) on the control panel or ASPECT on the remote controller. [19] 														
	NTSC/PAL	<p>Select the color system (NTSC or PAL) of your playback disc. [Initial]; PAL</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn off the power and turn on it again to make the new setting effective. 														
Clock	Time Set	<p>You can adjust the internal clock on the unit. [10] [Initial]; 1: 00 AM</p>														
	12Hours / 24Hours	<p>12Hours / 24Hours, [11] [Initial]; 12Hours</p>														

*1 Adjustable only when the source is DVD, VCD, JPEG, or MPEG disc.

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Menu Language ^{*1}	Select the initial disc menu language.
Audio Language ^{*1}	Select the initial audio language.
Sub Title ^{*1}	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (OFF).
OSD Language ^{*1}	Select the language for some indications shown on the external monitor.
Monitor Type 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16:9: [Initial]; Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9. • 4:3LB [LETTER BOX]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen. • 4:3PS [PAN SCAN]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen. Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.
OSD Position 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. [24] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: [Initial]; Higher position • 2: Lower position
File Type	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio: [Initial]; Plays back MP3/WMA/WAV files. • Picture: Plays back JPEG files. • Video: Plays back MPEG 1/2 files.

^{*1} For the language settings, see also the language codes list on page 48.

^{*2} Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

Indications

Selectable settings, [reference page]

D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)^{*1}

You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.

- **AUTO** : Select this to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software).
- **ON**: [Initial]; Select this to always use this function.

Speaker Size^{*1}

Speaker Size

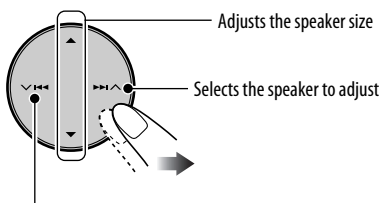


You can adjust the speaker size setting for the front/rear speakers and the center speaker according to the speaker you use when the source is a disc and playback stops.

- **Front SPK**: Small, Large [Initial]
- **Center SPK**: None [Initial], Small, Large^{<1>}
- **Rear SPK** : None^{<2>}, Small, Large [Initial]
- **Subwoofer**: On [Initial], Off^{<2>}
- Speaker size: “Large” for 13-cm diameter or more; “Small” for 13 cm or less.

^{<1>} Not selectable when “Large” is selected neither for the front nor the rear speakers.

^{<2>} Not effective when the surround function is not in effect.



Selects the speaker to adjust

- When selecting “None” or “Off” for all speakers other than the front...
 - Disc Surround setting [38] automatically changes to “Surround Off”.
 - Disc Surround setting [38] becomes unadjustable.

^{*1} Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

^{*2} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

Indications

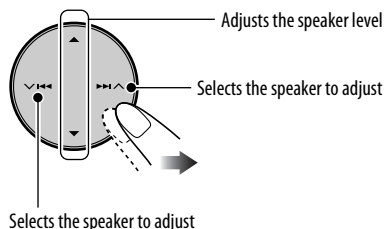
Selectable settings, [reference page]

Speaker Level^{*1}

You can adjust the output level of each speaker monitoring the test tone.

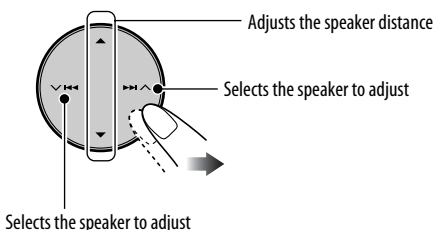
Press and hold ENT to activate (or cancel) the test tone.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Subwoofer^{*2}/Rear Lch:** adjust the output level of each speaker in the range of -10dB +10dB. [Initial]; 00dB

Speaker Distance^{*4}

You can adjust the speaker output timing separately for each speaker according to the distance from the speakers to the listening position.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Rear Lch:** adjust the speaker distance in the range of 15 cm to 600 cm in 15-cm step. [Initial]; 120 cm (for center speaker), 150 cm (for the other speakers)


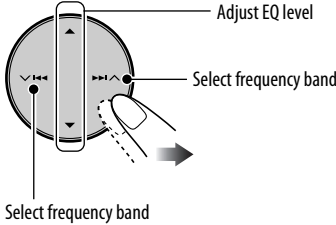


- ^{*1} When activating the test tone, white noise comes out and cycles between the speakers activated on "Speaker Size" [35] for about 2 seconds each. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly while the test tone comes out from the target speaker to adjust the settings (the test tone continues to come out from the target speaker during the adjustment).
- ^{*2} The setting is effective only when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on "Subwoofer" [39] for other cases.
- ^{*3} Selectable only when DISC is the source.
- ^{*4} Unselectable when all the speakers other than front ones are deactivated on "Speaker Size" [35].

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Tuner	IF Band Width	In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard. Auto: [Initial]; Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) Wide: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
		AV Input You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks. Off: Select when you do not need AV-Input as a source (AV-IN is deleted from the source items). Audio&Video: [Initial]; Select this when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. Audio: Select this when connecting an audio component such as a cassette deck. Camera^{*1}: Select when connecting the rear view camera. Camera Reverse^{*1}: The mirror image of the rear view is displayed on the monitor. (The monitor on the receiver only; the normal rear view appears on the external monitor.)
Input	External Input	Changer/iPod/D. Player^{*2}: [Initial]; To use a JVC CD changer, iPod, JVC D. player, etc. [42, 45] External Input: To use any external component other than above. [44]

^{*1} Reverse lamp wire connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume). The rear view through the camera appears on the monitor in "Full" aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position.


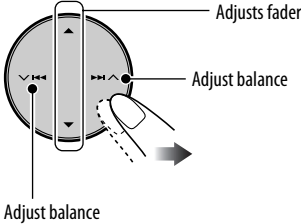
^{*2} The source indication changes automatically depending on the type of external component connected.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Others	Beep	You can deactivate the key-touch tone if you do not want it to beep each time you press a button. Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting	Off: [Initial]; Cancels. Muting1/Muting2: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
Disc Surround ^{*1}	Surround Off	Select to deactivate the surround function.
	Surround On	Select to activate the surround function. [23] Auto [Initial], Dolby PLII Movie ^{*2} , Dolby PLII Music ^{*2}
Equalizer ^{*3}	<p>Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User 1/User 2/User 3</p> 	<p>You can select a preset equalizer settings. [Initial]; Flat</p> <p>You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in User 1/2/3.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select the frequency band to adjust— 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1kHz, 2.5kHz, 6.3kHz, 15kHz. Adjust the level of the selected band (-05 to +05). Repeat steps 1 and 2 to adjust other frequency bands. Press ENT. Select the preset name (User 1, User 2, User 3) you want to store the setting into. Press ENT. 

^{*1} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

^{*2} For the menu items of “Dolby PLII Movie” and “Dolby PLII Music”, see page 23.

^{*3} Not selectable when DISC is the source and the surround function is activated (see page 23).

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
<p>Fader/Balance</p> 	<p>Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Upmost—front only • Downmost—rear only <p>When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (00).</p> <p>Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leftmost—left only • Rightmost—right only <p>Press ENT to finish the procedure.</p> 
<p>Volume Adjust</p>	<p>Adjust and store the volume level of each source except FM. Once you have made an adjustment, it is memorized, and the volume level will automatically increase or decrease by adjusted level when you change the source.</p> <p>Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -12 (min.) to +12 (max.) [Initial: 00]
<p>Subwoofer</p>	<p>Adjust the settings below in the submenu:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phase: Subwoofer phase. Select either “Normal” or “Reverse”, which reproduces a better sound. • Level*¹: Subwoofer output level. Level: -06 (dB) to +08 (dB) [Initial: 00 (dB)].
<p>High Pass Filter</p>	<p>Through: [Initial]; Select when the subwoofer is not connected.</p> <p>On: Select when the subwoofer is connected.</p>
<p>Crossover</p>	<p>Adjust the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer.</p> <p>80Hz, 120Hz [Initial], 150Hz</p>

*¹ The setting is ineffective when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on “Speaker Level” [36] for the cases.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Sound	Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this receiver. Amplifier Off: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. Low Power: VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) High Power: [Initial]; VOL 00 – VOL 50
	Rear Speaker*1	You can activate/deactivate the rear speakers. Off, On [Initial]
Mode	Mono*2	Activate when the FM broadcasting is hard to receive. [12] Off [Initial], On
	DX / Local*2	Select FM reception sensitivity. [12] DX [Initial], Local
	SSM*2	Search for FM stations and store them as preset stations automatically. [13]
	Title Entry*3	You can enter names for preset stations, specific source name for AV Input and External Input, etc. [41]
	Off/Intro/Repeat/Random*4	You can select the playback mode of the disc in the unit and the discs in the CD changer [28, 43]
List		Select radio stations, folders, files and discs from the list on the screen. [14, 29, 42] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The accessible lists differ depending on the sources.
Dual Zone		Activate/deactivate the Dual Zone function. [30] Off [Initial], On, On-Surround

*1 Functions only when Dual Zone is activated. (See page 30)

*2 Appears only when Tuner is the source.

*3 Appears when the source is below: Tuner, AV-IN, EXT-IN, CD-CH, or conventional CD.

*4 Selectable playback mode differs depending on the disc type. For the available playback mode, see page 28 and 43.

Other main functions

Assigning titles to the sources

You can assign titles to station frequencies and CDs (both in this receiver and in the CD changer), and change the source names of AV-INPUT and EXT-INPUT.

Sources	Maximum number of characters
FM/AM tuner	Up to 16 characters (up to 30 station frequencies)
AV-INPUT/EXT-INPUT	Up to 16 characters
DISC/CD-CH	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)

- You can assign a title only to the conventional CD (CD-DA).

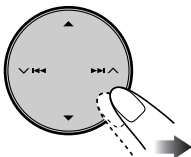
1 Select the source.

- For FM/AM tuner: Tune in to a station.
- For AV-IN/EXT-IN: Select the source.
- For a CD in this receiver: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select a disc number.

2



3 Select "Mode", then "Title Entry".



Ex.: When you select "AV-IN" as the source

4 Assign a title.

- Select a character set.



- Select a character.



- For available characters, see page 3.

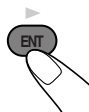
- Move to the next (or previous) character position.



- Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.



5 Finish the procedure.



To erase the entire title

In step 3 on the left column...



CD changer operations

About the CD changer

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

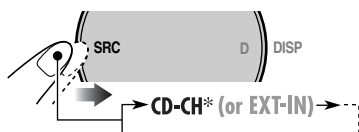
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.

Before operating your CD changer:

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- You cannot control and play any DVD Video/Audio, VCD, WMA, WAV, MPEG, or JPEG disc in the CD changer.

All tracks of the inserted discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the magazine from the CD changer.

1



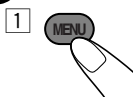
* If you have changed "External Input" setting to "External Input" (see page 37), you cannot select the CD changer.



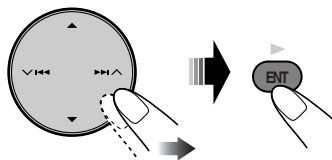
Selected disc number

2

Select a disc.

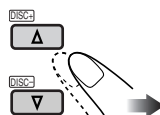


- 2 Select "List", then the disc you want to play back.

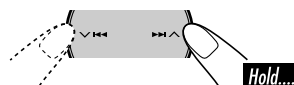


- When the current disc is an MP3 disc, you can move to FOLDER LIST by pressing **▶▶** / **◀**.

When using the remote controller....



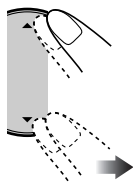
To fast-forward or reverse the track



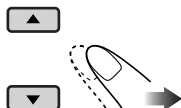
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3 discs)

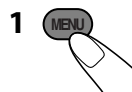


When using the remote controller...

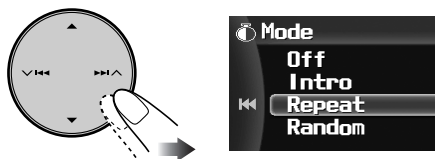


Selecting the playback modes

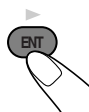
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.



2 Select "Mode", then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
------	-------------------------------

Track:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Folder*:	First tracks of all folders in the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Disc:	First tracks of all the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
------	------------------

Track:	The current track. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

Mode	Plays at random
------	-----------------

Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
All:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

* Only while playing an MP3 disc

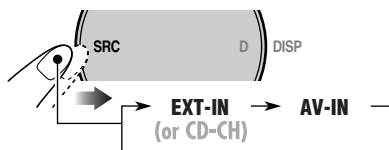
External component operations

Playing an external component

You can connect an external component to LINE IN plug and VIDEO IN plug on the rear, or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the KS-U57 Line Input Adapter (not supplied) or KS-U58 AUX Input Adapter (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

1



AV-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN and/or VIDEO IN.

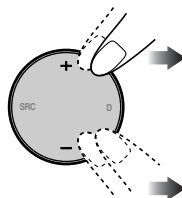
- To change the setting of AV INPUT, see page 37.

EXT-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- If “EXT-IN” does not appear, see page 37 and select the external input (EXT-IN).

2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 38.)

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

- You can also use the equivalent buttons on the remote controller in the operations below.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:

Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **Interface adapter for iPod**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- **D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.

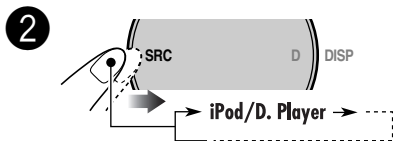
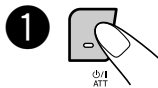
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Cautions:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

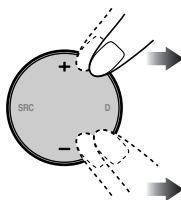
Preparations:

Make sure "Changer/iPod/D. Player" is selected for the external input setting, see page 37.



Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused (iPod) or stopped (D. player) previously.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 38.)

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause (iPod) or stop (D. player) playback



To resume playback, press it again.

To fast-forward or reverse the track

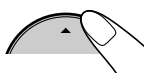


To go to the next or previous tracks



Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu of the iPod or D. player.



Now the ▲/▼/◀/▶/⏪/⏩/⏮/⏭ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*1.

- 2 Select the desired menu.



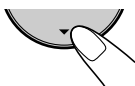
For iPod:

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔
Composers ↔ Genres ↔ Songs ↔

For D. player:

Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔
Track ↔ Genre ↔

- 3 Confirm the selection.



To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

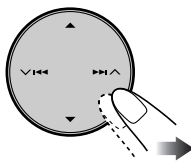
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until the desired track is confirmed.
- Holding ▼ |◀◀|▶▶| ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

- *1 The menu selecting mode will be canceled:
- If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.
 - When you confirm the selection of a track.

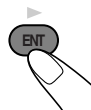
Selecting the playback modes

- 1 MENU

- 2 Select "Mode", then your desired playback mode.



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Repeat/Random playback.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
One:	Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode One" for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • lights up.
All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode All" for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

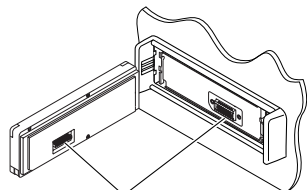
Mode	Plays at random
Album:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Album" of the iPod <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • lights up.
Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • lights up.
On:	Functions the same as "Random Play On" of the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the receiver turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this receiver may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Warped disc



Sticker



Sticker residue



Stick-on label

Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	IK	Inupiak	RN	Kirundi
AB	Abkhazian	IN	Indonesian	RO	Rumanian
AF	Afrikaans	IS	Icelandic	RW	Kinyarwanda
AM	Ameharic	IW	Hebrew	SA	Sanskrit
AR	Arabic	JI	Yiddish	SD	Sindhi
AS	Assamese	JW	Javanese	SG	Sangho
AY	Aymara	KA	Georgian	SH	Serbo-Croatian
AZ	Azerbaijani	KK	Kazakh	SI	Singhalese
BA	Bashkir	KL	Greenlandic	SK	Slovak
BE	Byelorussian	KM	Cambodian	SL	Slovenian
BG	Bulgarian	KN	Kannada	SM	Samoaan
BH	Bihari	KO	Korean (KOR)	SN	Shona
BI	Bislama	KS	Kashmiri	SO	Somali
BN	Bengali, Bangla	KU	Kurdish	SQ	Albanian
BO	Tibetan	KY	Kirghiz	SR	Serbian
BR	Breton	LA	Latin	SS	Siswati
CA	Catalan	LN	Lingala	ST	Sesotho
CO	Corsican	LO	Laothian	SU	Sundanese
CS	Czech	LT	Lithuanian	SW	Swahili
CY	Welsh	LV	Latvian, Lettish	TA	Tamil
DZ	Bhutani	MG	Malagasy	TE	Telugu
EL	Greek	MI	Maori	TG	Tajik
EO	Esperanto	MK	Macedonian	TH	Thai
ET	Estonian	ML	Malayalam	TI	Tigrinya
EU	Basque	MN	Mongolian	TK	Turkmen
FA	Persian	MO	Moldavian	TL	Tagalog
FI	Finnish	MR	Marathi	TN	Setswana
FJ	Fiji	MS	Malay (MAY)	TO	Tonga
FO	Faroese	MT	Maltese	TR	Turkish
FY	Frisian	MY	Burmese	TS	Tsonga
GA	Irish	NA	Nauru	TT	Tatar
GD	Scots Gaelic	NE	Nepali	TW	Twi
GL	Galician	NO	Norwegian	UK	Ukrainian
GN	Guarani	OC	Occitan	UR	Urdu
GU	Gujarati	OM	(Afan) Oromo	UZ	Uzbek
HA	Hausa	OR	Oriya	VI	Vietnamese
HI	Hindi	PA	Panjabi	VO	Volapuk
HR	Croatian	PL	Polish	WO	Wolof
HU	Hungarian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	XH	Xhosa
HY	Armenian	PT	Portuguese	YO	Yoruba
IA	Interlingua	QU	Quechua	ZU	Zulu
IE	Interlingue	RM	Rhaeto-Romance		

More about this receiver

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the receiver, you can also turn on the power.

Selecting the sources

- When no disc is loaded in the receiver and Dual Zone is off, “DISC” cannot be selected.
- Without connecting to the CD changer, “CD-CH” cannot be selected.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to the music/picture/movie files and their file names.
- This receiver can also play back 8 cm discs.
- This receiver can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.
 - The first track will be skipped if a different type of file is detected first.
- When a disc has been loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source (without activating Dual Zone), disc play starts automatically.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This receiver can play back either MP3/WMA/WAV files, JPEG files, or MPEG files if a disc includes any of the files. Set the playback file type on AV Menu (page 34) before playing back a disc containing files of different kinds.
- Only for CD-R/CD-RW: This receiver can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some Recordable/Rewritable discs may not play back on this receiver because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
 - Discs are dirty or scratched.
 - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the receiver.
 - The pickup lens inside the receiver is dirty.
 - Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
 - Discs which are not written in UDF-Bridge Format (eg. UDF format or ISO format).
 - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.).
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.
- Do not use the following discs:
 - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
 - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.
 Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damages to discs.

Playing an MP3/WMA/WAV disc

- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This receiver can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA/WAV files.
- This receiver can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
 - Bit rate: MP3: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
 - Sampling frequency:
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for WMA)
44.1 kHz (for WAV)
 - Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav>).
 - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
 - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
 - Romeo: up to 128 characters
 - Joliet: up to 64 characters
 - Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This receiver can recognize the total of 3500 files, 250 folders (maximum of 999 files per folder).

- This receiver can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This receiver cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded in an unappropriated format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - WMA files recorded with MBR (Multiple Bit Rate) format.
 - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATAC3, etc.

Playing a JPEG disc

- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution. (If a file has been recorded at a resolution of more than 640 x 480, it will take a long time to be shown.)
- This System can play only baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.
 - Baseline JPEG format: Used for digital cameras, web, etc.
 - Progressive JPEG format: Used for web.
 - Lossless JPEG format: An old type and rarely used now.
- If progressive or lossless JPEG files are played back, a black screen appears. In this case, stop playback and select a baseline JPEG file. Note that it may take a long time to select another file.

Playing an MPEG disc

- This receiver can play back MPEG 1/2 files with the extension code <.mpg>.
- Audio stream should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer 2.

AV Menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
After you change any of these language settings, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3PS [PAN SCAN]” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]” with some DVDs.
This depends on how they are recorded.
- If you change the “Amplifier Gain” setting from “High Power” to “Low Power” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30”, the receiver automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30”.

Other main functions

- If you try to assign a title to a 31st station or 31st disc, “Name Full” flashes on the monitor. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc on the receiver.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
 - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
 - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 18 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 32). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:










When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

On-screen guide icons

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (for DVD only).
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (for DVD only).
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (for DVD only).
-  : Playback
-  : Pause
-  : Forward Slow Motion Playback (for DVD and VCD only)
-  : Reverse Slow Motion Playback (for DVD only)
-  : Forward search
-  : Reverse search

Sound modes (preset frequency level settings)

The list below shows the preset frequency level settings for each sound mode (see page 38).

Sound mode	Preset equalizing values						
	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	-02	-01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound cannot be heard from the speakers. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
		Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The receiver does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote controller does not work. 	Dual Zone is activated (see page 30). While Dual Zone is activated, remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Signal” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the source. • Starts playback on the external component connected to the VIDEO IN plug. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
FM/AM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSM automatic presetting does not work. 	Store stations manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static noise while listening to the radio. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable disc cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the disc with the component which you used for recording.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be recognized. 	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Not Support” appears on the monitor. 	Use a file format the unit supports (see page 4).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Disc Error” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert the disc correctly. • Insert a disc recorded and finalized.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Files” appears on the monitor. 	The disc does not have playable files. Insert a disc containing playable files.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No playback picture appears on the monitor. 	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No picture appears on the external monitor at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connect the video cord correctly. Select a correct input on the monitor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The edges of the picture are missing on the screen. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select an aspect other than “Zoom”. (See page 33) Select “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]”. (See page 34.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The playback pictures cannot be shown correctly. 	The color system (NTSC/PAL) is not correct. Set it correctly (see page 33).
MP3/WMA/WAV playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use a disc with tracks recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) Add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to their file names.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Noise is generated. 	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to files of different types.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A longer readout time is required. 	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tracks cannot be played back as you have intended them to play. 	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Elapsed playing time is not correct. 	This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name). 	This receiver can only display alphabets (A – Z, a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
JPEG/MPEG playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use a disc with JPEG/MPEG files recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) Add the extension code <.jpg> or <.mpg> to their file names.
CD changer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insert a disc into the magazine. Insert disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Magazine” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the magazine.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset01” – “Reset07” appears on the monitor. 	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The CD changer does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Update the firmware version of the D. player. Charge the battery of the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Disconnect” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops while playing back iPod. 	The headphones are disconnected from iPod during playback. Restart the playback operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. “Error 01” appears on the monitor when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Files” or “No Track” appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 1” – “Reset 7” appears on the monitor. 	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 8” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:

Front: 50 W per channel

Rear: 50 W per channel

Continuous Power Output (RMS):

Front: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Rear: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)

Equalizer Control Range:

Frequencies: 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz

Level: ± 10 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

Line-In Level/Impedance:

1.5 V/20 k Ω load

Line-Out Level/Impedance:

Center-Out Level/Impedance:

Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:

2.5 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)

Color System: NTSC/PAL

Video Input (composite): 1 V_{p-p}/75 Ω

Video Output (composite): 1 V_{p-p}/75 Ω

Other Terminals:

2nd AUDIO OUT, CD changer

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:

FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz

AM: 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)

50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:

16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)

Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB

Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz

Stereo Separation: 35 dB

Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[AM Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 μ V

Selectivity: 35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)

Number of Channels: 2 channels (stereo)

Frequency Response:

DVD fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz

fs=192 kHz: 16 Hz to 88 000 Hz

VCD, CD: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz

Dynamic Range: 93 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 95 dB

Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit

MP3 : Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

WMA: Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

MONITOR SECTION

Screen: 3.5-inch wide liquid crystal panel

Number of Pixels: 224 640 pixels

Drive Method:

TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format

Color System: NTSC/PAL

GENERAL

Power Requirement:

Operating Voltage:

DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)

Grounding System: Negative ground

Allowable Operating Temperature:

0°C to +40°C

Dimensions (W \times H \times D):

Installation Size (approx.):

182 mm \times 52 mm \times 160 mm

Panel Size (approx.):

188 mm \times 58 mm \times 12 mm

Mass (approx.):

1.9 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

在操作時遇到麻煩了？

請重設本機

參閱如何重設本機之頁

หากมีปัญหในการใช้งาน

กรุณาดูปุ่มตั้งค่าเริ่มต้นใหม่

กรุณาดูหน้าวิธีตั้งค่าเครื่องใหม่

JVC



EN, CT, TH

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0206MNMMDWJEIN

JVC KD-AVX2

Installation/Connection Manual

安裝/連接手冊

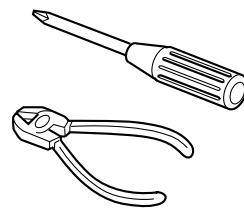
การติดตั้ง/คู่มือการติดตั้ง

LVT1456-006A
[U/UT]

0206MNMMDWJEIN

EN, CT, TH

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited



ENGLISH

This receiver is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

中文

本機僅可使用**直流12 V、負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

警告

- 切勿將本機安裝在下述位置：
 - 可能會妨礙操作方向盤和變速排檔桿的位置，否則可能引發交通事故。
 - 可能會妨礙操作安全裝置，如安全氣袋等的位置，否則可能引發致命的交通事故。
 - 可能會妨礙視野的位置。
- 切勿在操作方向盤的過程中操作本機，否則可能引發交通事故。
- 駕駛員在駕駛過程中切勿觀看顯示器。若駕駛員在駕駛過程中觀看顯示器，可能因為注意力不集中而導致意外事故的發生。
- 駕駛員在駕駛過程中切勿佩戴耳機。因為在駕駛過程中隔絕外界聲音非常危險。
- 在駕駛過程中若需要操作本機，切記要密切注意前方，否則可能招致交通事故。
- 若手剎車未啮合，"Parking Brake" 字樣在顯示器上出現，且無法播放圖像。
 - 僅當手剎車導線與汽車內置的手剎車系統相連接時此警告信息才會出現。

ไทย

ชุดขงประกอบนี้ได้รับการออกแบบมาเพื่อใช้กับระบบ กระแสไฟฟ้าดินขั้วลบกระแตรง 12 โวลท์ หากรถยนต์ของคุณไม่ใช้ระบบนี้ ต้องใช้เครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟช่วย ซึ่งสามารถหาซื้อได้จากกรณขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC

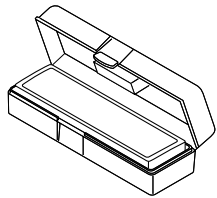
คำเตือน

- อย่าติดตั้งเครื่องในตำแหน่งที่
 - อาจกีดขวางการทำงานของพวงมาลัยและคันเกียร์ เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุ
 - อาจกีดขวางการทำงานของอุปกรณ์ป้องกันความปลอดภัย เช่น แอร์เบค เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอันตรายร้ายแรงถึงชีวิตขึ้นได้
 - อาจกีดขวางสายตา
- อย่าใช้งานขณะขับขี่ เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุขึ้นได้
- ผู้ขับขี่ต้องไม่มองที่จอขณะที่ขับขี่ ถ้าผู้ขับขี่มองที่จอขณะที่ขับขี่ อาจนำไปสู่ความประมาท และเป็นสาเหตุให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุขึ้นได้
- ผู้ขับขี่ต้องไม่ใส่หูฟังขณะขับขี่ เพราะการปิดหูไม่รับฟังเสียง จากภายนอกอาจก่อให้เกิดอันตรายขึ้นได้
- ถ้าจำเป็นต้องใช้เครื่องขณะขับขี่ ขอให้ดูทางข้างหน้าให้ดีๆนั้น อาจเกิดอุบัติเหตุขึ้นได้
- ถ้าไม่เข้าเบรกมือไว้ จอมอนิเตอร์จะแสดงข้อความ "Parking Brake" จะปรากฏขึ้นบน หน้าจอ และเครื่องจะไม่เล่น
 - คำเตือนนี้จะปรากฏขึ้นเฉพาะเมื่อต่อสายเบรกกับระบบเบรกในรถยนต์ไว้เท่านั้น

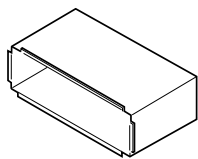
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this receiver. After checking them, please set them correctly.

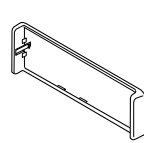
(A) / (B)
Hard case/Control panel
硬盒/控制面板
ลิ้นบรรจุ/หน้าปิด



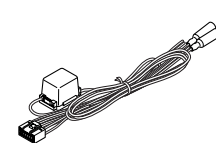
(C)
Sleeve
外套機殼
ปลอกหุ้ม



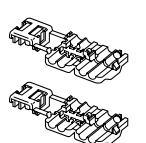
(D)
Trim plate
裝飾框
แผ่นโลหะขอบแต่ง



(E)
Power cord
電路連接用的配線束
ขดเบิ้ลกำลัง



(F)
Crimp connectors
夾子接頭
ขั้วต่อสำหรับหนีบ



(G)
Washer (ø5)
墊圈 (ø5)
ประเก็นวงแหวน (ø5)



(I)
Mounting bolt—
M5 × 20 mm
緊固螺栓—
M5 × 20 mm
สลักยึด—
M5 × 20 mm มิลลิเมตร



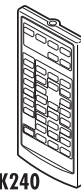
(J)
Rubber cushion
橡膠防震墊
ยางกันกระแทก



(K)
Handles
板條型把手
กันบังค้ำ



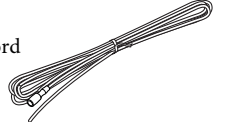
(L)
Remote controller
遙控器
รีโมตคอนโทรล
RM-RK240



(M)
Battery
電池
แบตเตอรี่



(N)
Reverse gear signal extension cord
回動齒輪信號延長電線
สายต่อกับสัญญาณเกียร์ย้อนหลัง



用於安裝和連接的零件裏

下列零件是隨本機提供的。清點以後，正確地將其裝配。

รายการส่วนประกอบสำหรับติดตั้งและเชื่อมต่อกัน

ส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ให้มาพร้อมกับชุดประกอบนี้ หลังจากตรวจสอบแล้ว ปรับตั้งเครื่องให้ถูกต้อง

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this receiver correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear panel to maintain proper ventilation when installed.
- You cannot install the receiver on the car which has any obstacles in the space shown in "Required space for installation" below.

安裝（裝設、固定在儀表板內）

下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。如果您有問題，或需要有關配套元件的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應公司詢問。

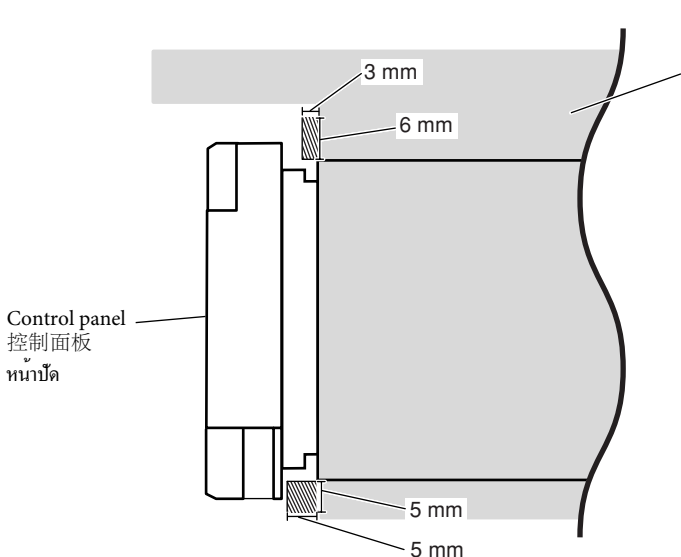
- 如果您不能確定如何正確地安裝本機，應請合格的技術人員來安裝。
- 確保不會阻礙後面板的風扇以便在安裝後能保持適當的透氣度。
- 您不能將接收器安裝在“安裝所需要空間”下有任何障礙物的汽車內。

การติดตั้ง (การประกอบแผงหน้าปัดเข็ม)

ภาพตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้แสดงถึงการติดตั้งแบบทั่วไป หากคุณมีปัญหาหรือต้องการข้อมูลเพิ่มเติมเกี่ยวกับชุดติดตั้ง กรุณาปรึกษา บัญชากรเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC ของท่านหรือบริษัท

- ชุดประกอบ ถ้าคุณไม่แน่ใจว่าติดตั้งชุดประกอบนี้ถูกต้องหรือไม่ ให้หาช่างผู้เชี่ยวชาญเป็นผู้ติดตั้ง
- ดูให้ตัวไม่วางทางพัดลมที่แผงด้านหลัง เพื่อให้เครื่องสามารถระบายความร้อนได้อย่างเหมาะสม เมื่อติดตั้ง เร็งแล้ว
- คุณไม่สามารถติดตั้งชุดประกอบนี้ในรถยนต์ ที่มีสิ่งกีดขวางพื้นที่วางตามรูปในเรื่อง "พื้นที่วางที่ต้องใช้ในการติดตั้ง" ด้านล่างได้

Required space for installation / 安裝所需要空間 / พื้นที่วางที่ต้องใช้ในการติดตั้ง



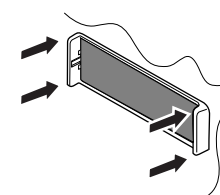
Dashboard
儀表板
แผงหน้าปัด

Trim plate is detached on this illustration for explanation.

此插圖內的調整片已被拆除以方便解釋。

ในรูปแบบนี้เป็นการถอดแผ่นโลหะขอบแต่งออก เพื่อใช้ในการอธิบาย

Caution when installing / 安裝注意事項 / ข้อควรระวังเมื่อทำการติดตั้ง



Fit the receiver into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.

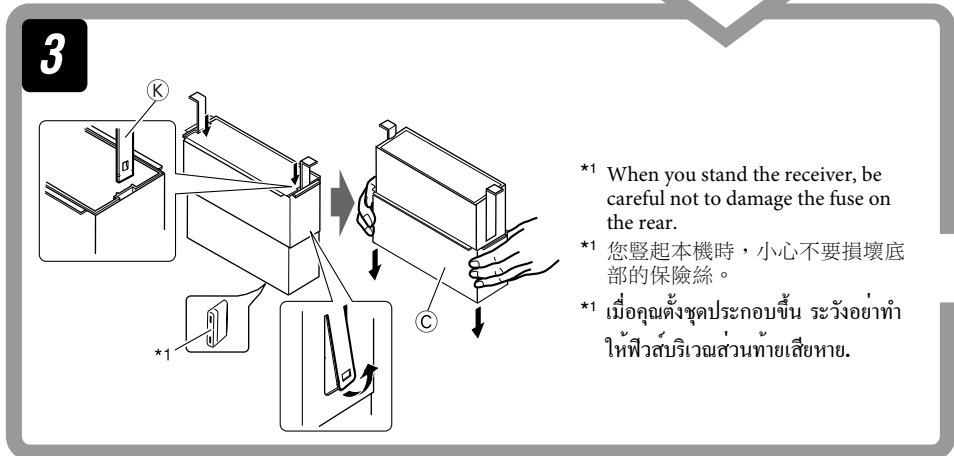
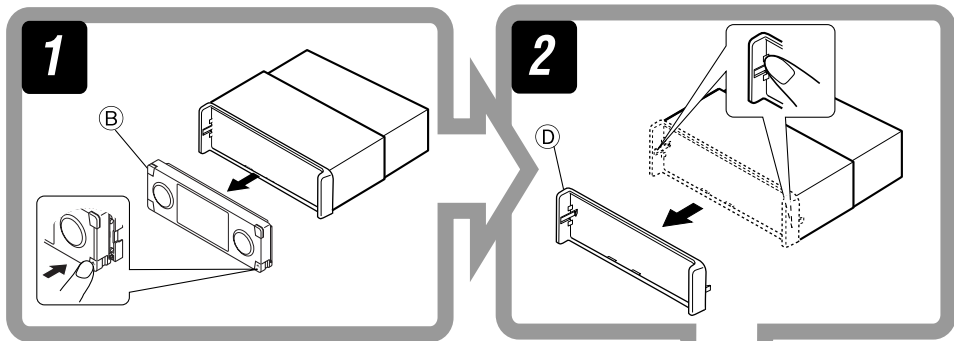
- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration).

將本機用四個角的裝飾框固定到安裝套內。

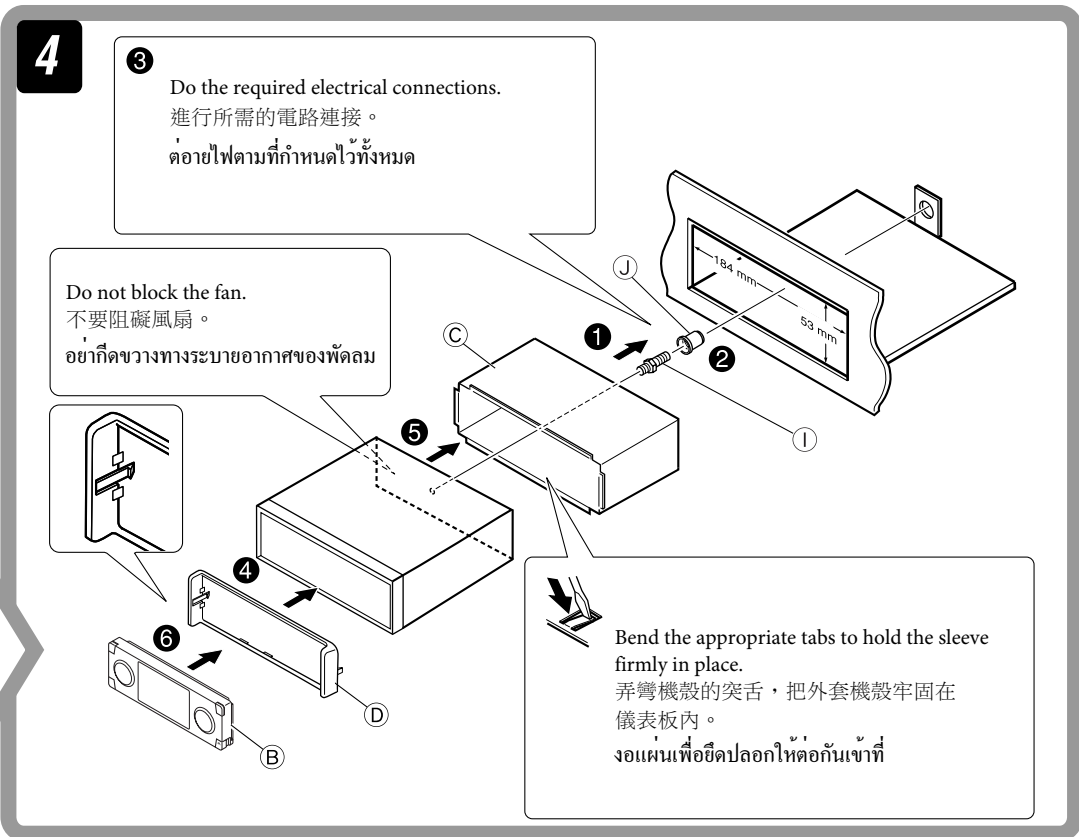
- 不要擠壓面板（圖中的陰影部分）。

ติดตั้งเครื่องเข้าไปปลอกหุ้ม ให้ตรงกับขอบของแผ่นที่ตัดแต่งทั้งสี่

- ห้ามดันที่แผงควบคุม (ส่วนที่ระบายสีในรูป)



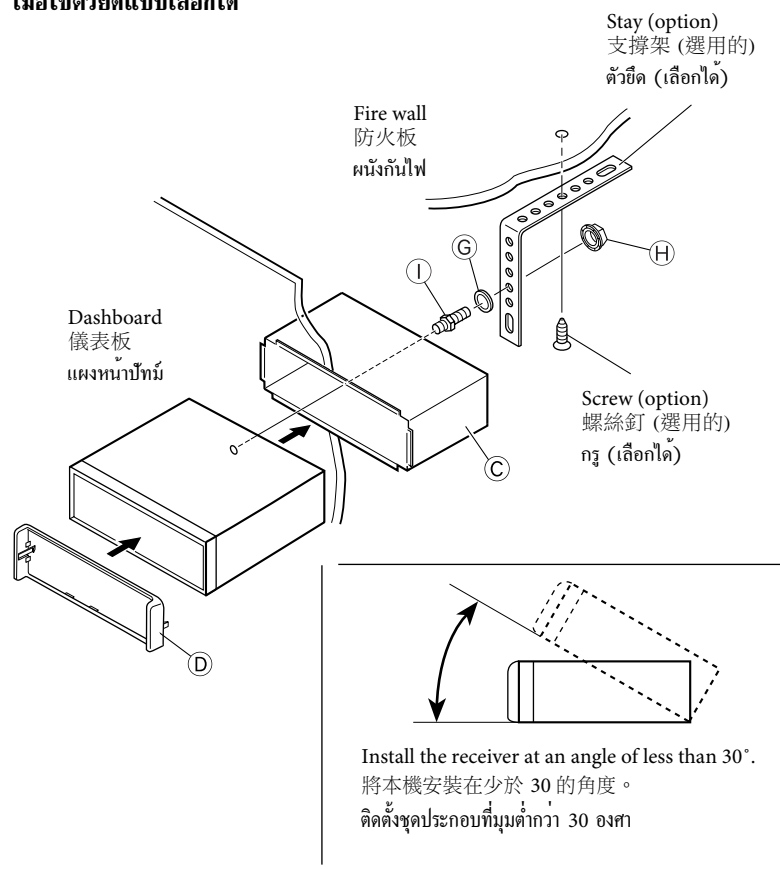
*1 When you stand the receiver, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
 *1 您豎起本機時，小心不要損壞底部的保險絲。
 *1 เมื่อคุณตั้งชุดประกอบขึ้น ระวังอย่าทำให้พิวส่วนบริเวณส่วนท้ายเสียหาย.



Do not block the fan.
 不要阻礙風扇。
 อย่ากีดขวางทางระบายอากาศของพัดลม

Bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place.
 弄彎機殼的突舌，把外套機殼牢固在儀表板內。
 งอแผ่นเพื่อยึดปลอกให้ตอกันแน่นที่

When using the optional stay / 若選用支撐架 / เมื่อใช้ตัวยึดแบบเลือกได้

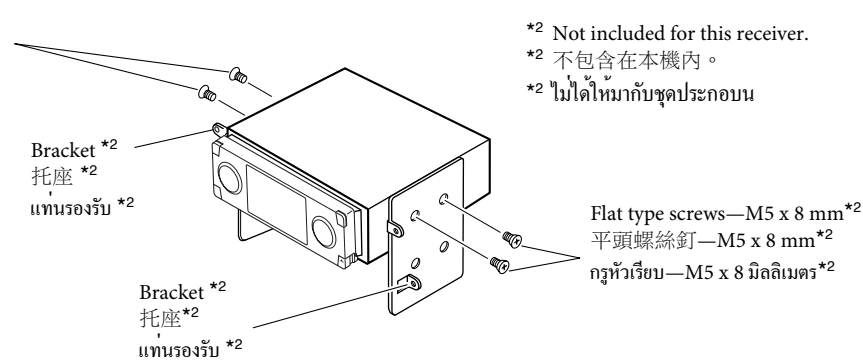


Install the receiver at an angle of less than 30°.
 將本機安裝在少於 30 的角度。
 ติดตั้งชุดประกอบที่มุมต่ำกว่า 30 องศา

When installing the receiver without using the sleeve / 若不使用外套機殼安裝本機 / เมื่อติดตั้งชุดประกอบโดยไม่ใช้ปลอกหุ้ม

In a car having the "Required space for installation" on page 1, first remove the car radio and install the receiver in its place. In a car having the "Required space for installation" on page 1, first remove the car radio and install the receiver in its place.

Flat type screws—M5 x 8 mm*2
 平頭螺絲釘—M5 x 8 mm*2
 กรูหัวเรียบ—M5 x 8 มิลลิเมตร*2



*2 Not included for this receiver.
 *2 不包含在本機內。
 *2 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบ

Note

注意
หมายเหตุ

: When installing the receiver on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the receiver.
 : 把本機安裝在托座上時，務必使用 8 mm 長的螺絲釘。如果用過長的螺絲釘，會損壞本機。
 : เมื่อติดตั้งชุดประกอบลงในแท่นรองรับไว้ ให้ใช้กรูยาวขนาด 8 มิลลิเมตร ถ้าใช้กรูยาวกว่านี้อาจทำให้ชุดประกอบเสียหายได้

Removing the receiver

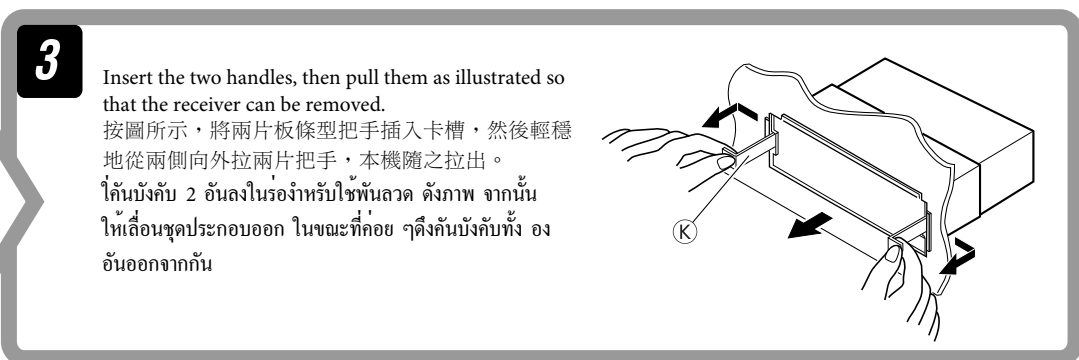
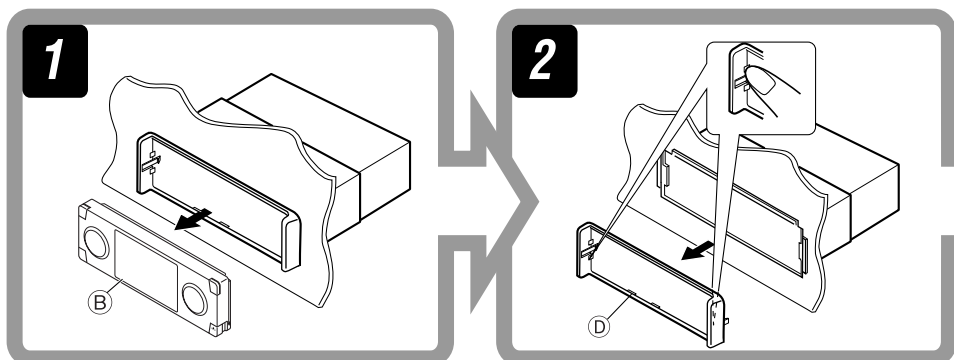
Before removing the receiver, release the rear section.

拆卸本機

在拆卸本機前，應將本機後部的固定和連接部分鬆開。

การถอดชุดประกอบ

ก่อนจะถอดชุดประกอบ ให้ปลดหน้าตัดส่วนท้ายก่อน



Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the receiver can be removed.
 按圖所示，將兩片板條型把手插入卡槽，然後輕輕地從兩側向外拉兩片把手，本機隨之拉出。
 ใ้กับกับ 2 อันลงในร่องสำหรับไขพื้นลวด ดังภาพ จากนั้นให้เลื่อนชุดประกอบออก ในขณะที่ข้อๆ ค้างกับกับทั้ง 2 อันออกจากกัน

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the receiver.

• Be sure to ground this receiver to the car's chassis again after installation.

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of 4 Ω to 8 Ω). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 40 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this receiver.

電路連接

為防止短路，建議在安裝本機之前，斷開電池的負極，並把所有電路都連接好。

• 安裝完畢後務必將本機的地線重新接至車身。

注意：

- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W，其阻抗為 4 Ω - 8 Ω。如果最大功率小於 50 W，請調校 "Amplifier Gain" 設定值，以防止揚聲器損壞。(參閱使用說明書的第 40 頁)。
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣帶包住未使用電線的端子。
- 本機使用後，散熱片會很熱。因此，在移出本機時，小心不要觸摸散熱片。

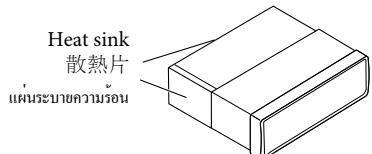
การเชื่อมโดยใช้ไฟฟ้า

เพื่อป้องกันการเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร ขอแนะนำให้ปลดขั้วแบตเตอรี่ลบออก แล้วจึงต่อสายไฟก่อนติดตั้งเครื่อง

• ตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าได้เดินสายดินต่อระหว่างเครื่องกับตัวถังรถยนต์ใหม่แล้วหลังจากติดตั้ง

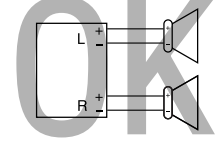
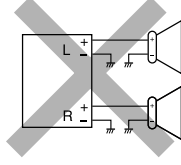
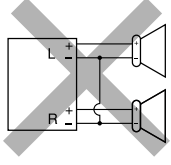
หมายเหตุ:

- ไขพิกัดจำเพาะแทนที่ หากพิวขาดบ่อ ให้ปรึกษาตัวแทนเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC
- ขอแนะนำให้ต่อลำโพง ที่มีกำลังขั้วสูงสุดเกินกว่า 50 W (ทั้งด้านหน้าและด้านหลัง) มีความต้านทาน 4 Ω ถึง 8 Ω) ถ้ากำลังขั้วต่ำกว่า 50 W ให้เปลี่ยนค่า "Amplifier Gain" เพื่อป้องกันไม่ให้ลำโพงชำรุด (ดูหน้า 40 กำหนด)
- การป้องกันการลัดวงจร จะต้องพันขั้วสายตะกั่ว ที่ไม่ใช้แล้วด้วยเทปพันสายไฟ
- แผ่นระบายความร้อนจะร้อนมากหลังจากใช้ ระวังอย่าไปสัมผัสเมื่อถอดชุดประกอบ



PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the receiver will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



電源和揚聲器接線注意事項:

- 切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機會嚴重損壞。
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。

ข้อควรระวังสำหรับการต่อแหล่งจ่ายกำลังและลำโพง:

- อย่าต่อสายตะกั่วแบตเตอรี่ของลำโพงเข้ากับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ มิฉะนั้น ชุดประกอบจะได้รับความเสียหายมาก
- ก่อนที่จะต่อสายตะกั่วแบตเตอรี่ของลำโพงเข้ากับลำโพง ให้ตรวจสอบการเดินขั้วไฟโพงในรถของคุณให้เรียบร้อยก่อน

A Typical Connections / 典型的接線方法 / การเชื่อมต่อแบบปกติ

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this receiver. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

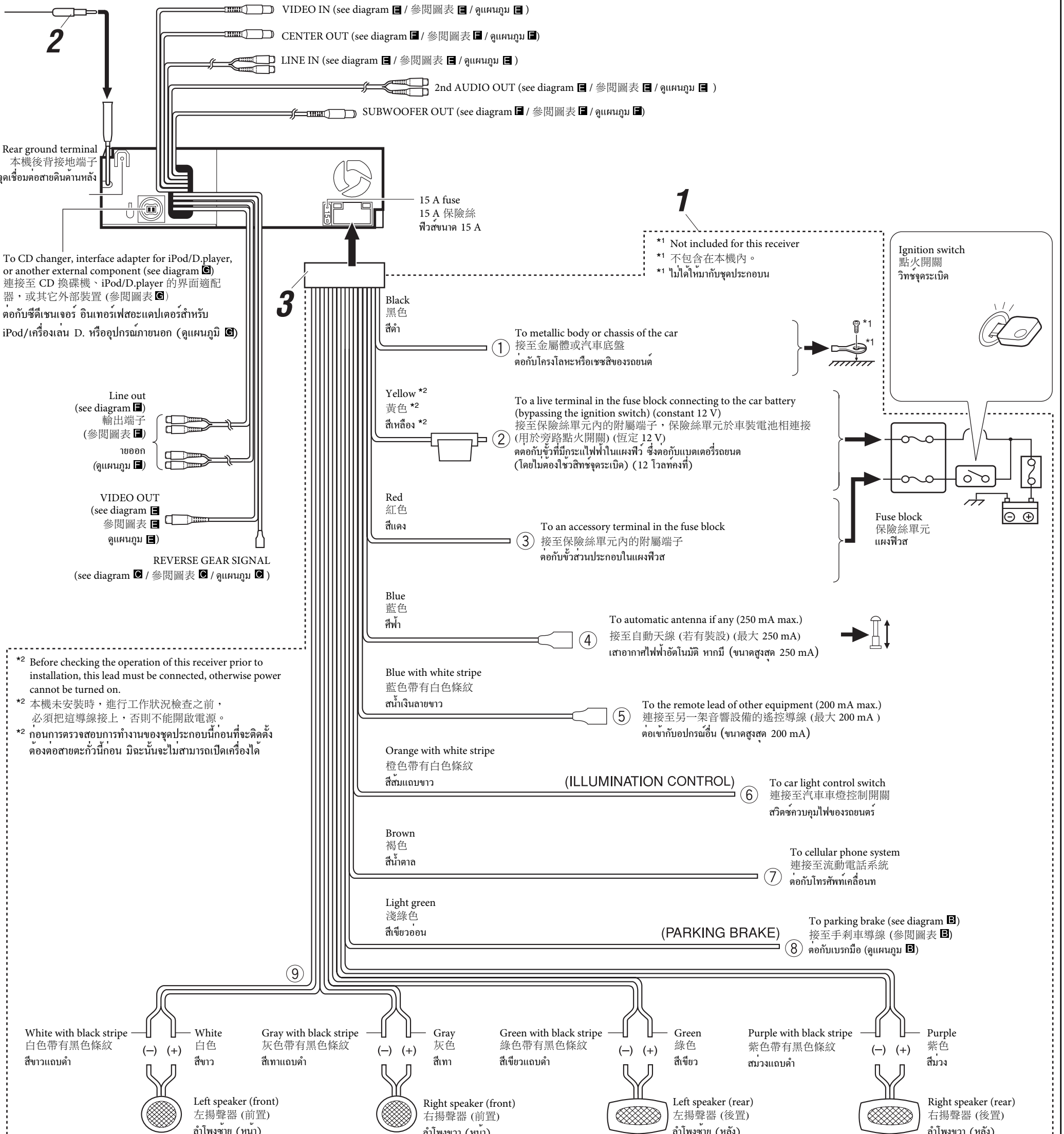
- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the receiver.

接線前: 仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線會導致本機嚴重損壞。電力線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

- 1 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。
- 2 將天線的電線連接起來。
- 3 最後，把配線束的插頭插在本機上。

ก่อนทำการเชื่อมต่อ: ตรวจสอบการเดินขั้วไฟโพงอย่างระมัดระวังอย่างให้ผิดพลาดใด ๆ การเชื่อมต่อที่ผิดพลาดอาจทำให้เกิดความเสียหายร้ายแรงแก่ชุดประกอบของคุณได้ สายของขั้วไฟโพง และของอุปกรณ์ต่อเชื่อมจากตัวรถ อาจจะไม่เหมือนกัน

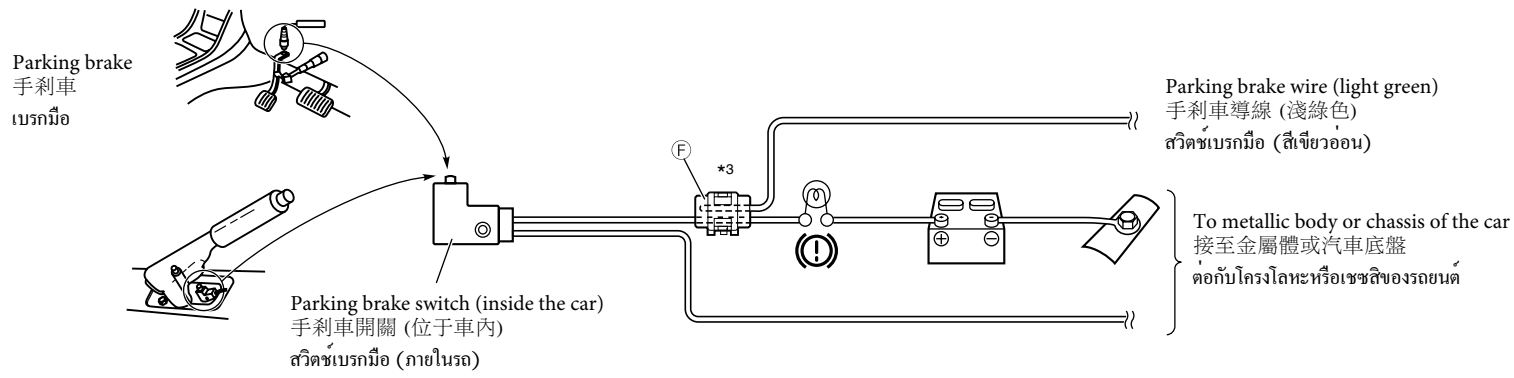
- 1 ต่อสายไฟตามลำดับที่ระบุในรูปด้านล่าง
- 2 เชื่อมต่อกับขั้วไฟโพง
- 3 สุดท้าย ต่อส่วนควบคุมการเดินสายไฟเข้ากับชุดประกอบชุดนี้



B Connecting the parking brake wire / 連接至手剎車導線 / ต่อสายเบรกมือ

Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car. 將手剎車導線連接至車內的手剎車系統。

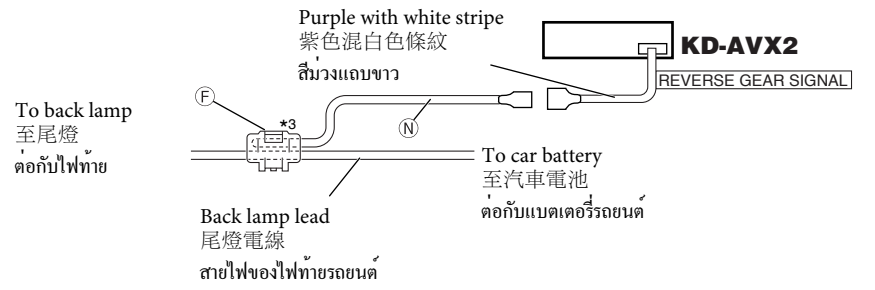
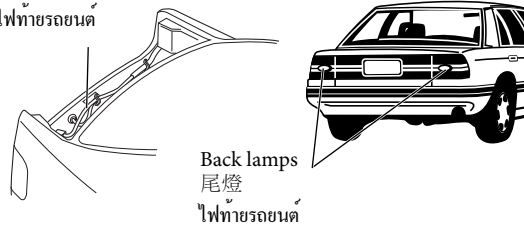
ต่อสายเบรกมือกับระบบเบรกมือของรถยนต์



C Connecting the back camera lead / 連接尾照相機電線 / การต่อสายไฟสำหรับกล้องด้านหลัง

Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk. 在行李箱找出尾燈電線。
หาตำแหน่งสายไฟของไฟท้ายรถยนต์ในฝากระโปรงหลัง

Back lamp lead 尾燈電線
สายไฟของไฟท้ายรถยนต์



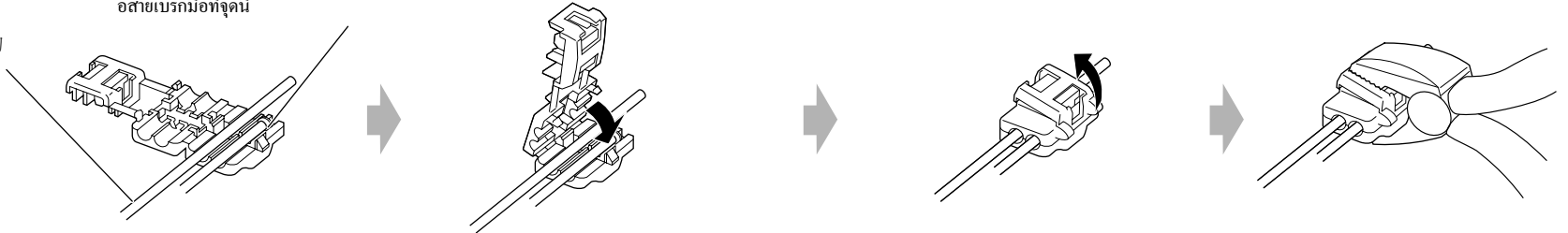
D Connecting the crimp connector*3 / 連接至夾子接頭*3 / วิธีต่อหัวต่อสำหรับหนีบ*3

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch. 連接電池和手剎車開關的電線。
สายที่ต่อกับแบตเตอรี่และสวิตช์เบรกมือ

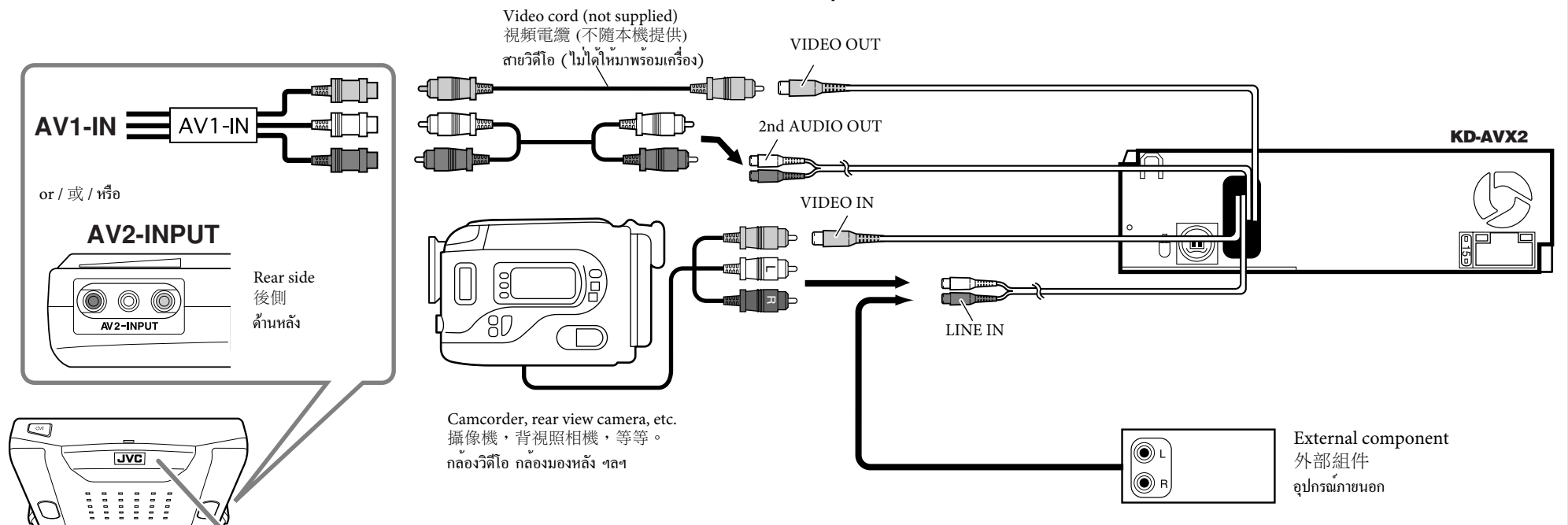
Attach the parking brake wire to this point. 連接手剎車導線至此處。
อสายเบรกมือที่จุดนี้

Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside. 使夾子接頭金屬部分和內部電線接觸。
ให้ส่วนที่เป็นโลหะของตัวหนีบสัมผัสกับสายภายใน

Pinch the crimp firmly. 夾緊夾子接頭。
หนีบให้แน่น



E Connections for external component playback / 外部組件播放連接 / การต่อเพื่อเล่นอุปกรณ์ภายนอก



*4 To listen to disc playback sound while in Dual Zone operations (see page 30 of INSTRUCTIONS).
*4 若要在雙重區域操作時聽光碟播放的音響 (參閱使用說明書的第 30 頁)。
*4 การฟังเสียงจากแผ่นดิสก์ ขณะทำงานในคู่อัลโซน (Dual Zone) (ดูหน้า 30 ของคำแนะนำ)

F Connecting the external amplifiers / 連接至外部功率放大器 / การต่อเพิ่มเติมเข้ากับอุปกรณ์อื่น

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

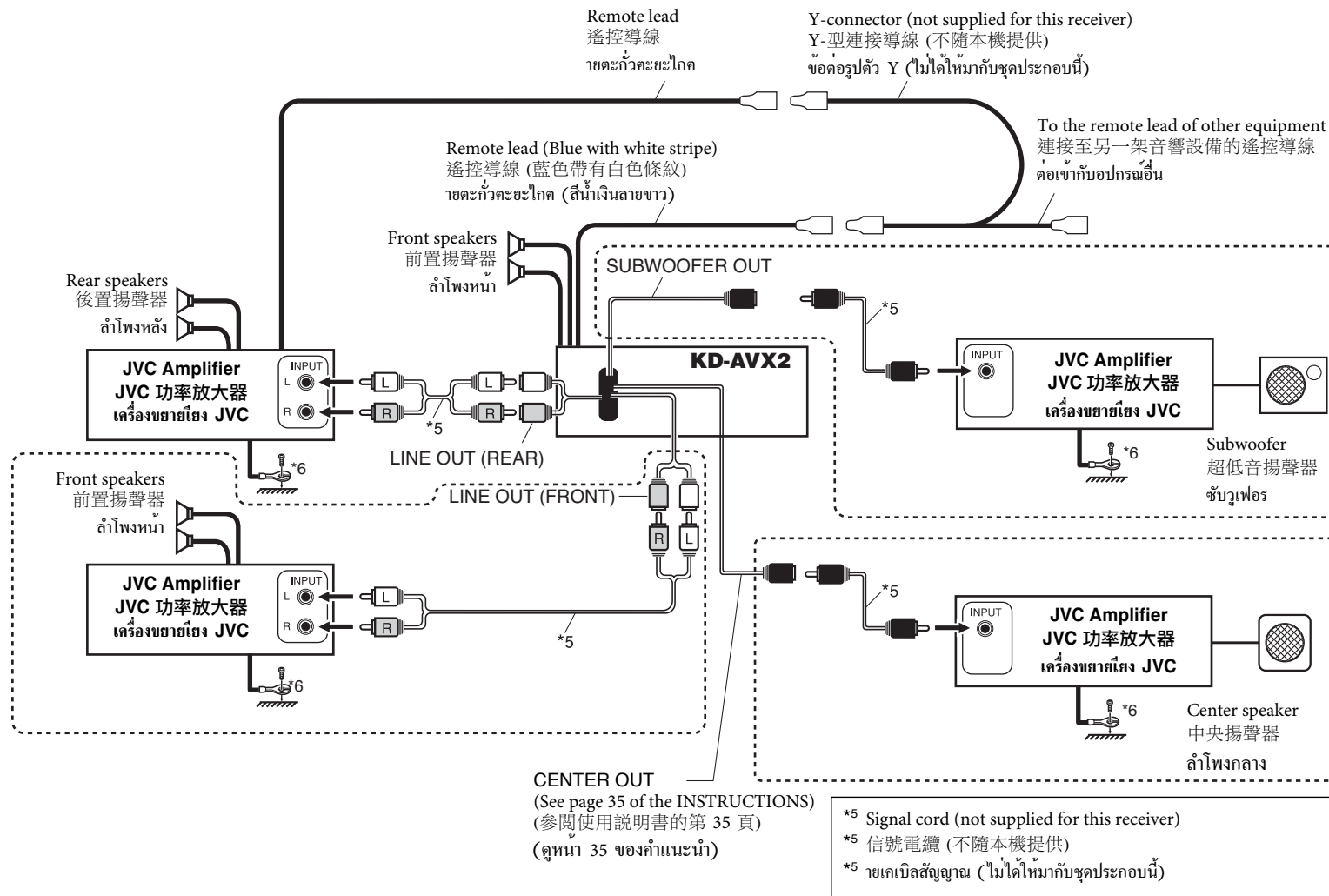
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this receiver.
- **For amplifier only:**
 - **Disconnect the speakers from this receiver, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this receiver unused.**
 - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the receiver. See page 40 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

您可以連接功率放大器以提昇專車的音響系統。

- 將遙控導線 (藍色帶有白色條紋) 和其他裝置上的遙控導線連接起來，以便可以通過本機進行遙控。
- **僅供功率放大器而已：**
 - **將揚聲器和本機斷開，再接上功率放大器。將本機的揚聲器接線放置不用。**
 - 您可以關上內置功率放大器，將音頻信號輸送至外部功率放大器以獲得清晰的聲音和防止接收器內部變熱。參閱使用說明書的第 40 頁 (另一本說明書)。

คุณอาจต่อกับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ และอุปกรณ์อื่นๆ ได้ เพื่อเพิ่มคุณภาพเสียงให้กับระบบสเตอริโอของรถยนต์

- ต่อสายตะกั่วระยะไกล (สีน้ำเงินลายขาว) เข้ากับสายตะกั่วระยะไกลของอุปกรณ์อื่น ๆ เพื่อจะสามารถควบคุมโดยชุดประกอบนี้ได้
- **สำหรับแอมพลิฟายเออร์เท่านั้น:**
 - **ถอดลำโพงออกจากชุดประกอบนี้ แล้วต่อเข้ากับเครื่องขยาย ที่จ่ายตะกั่วลำโพงของชุดประกอบนี้ไว้**
 - คุณสามารถยกเลิกการใช้งานแอมพลิฟายเออร์ที่ติดตั้งมาพร้อมเครื่อง แล้วส่งสัญญาณเสียงให้ออกที่แอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอกเพียงอย่างเดียวได้ เพื่อให้เสียงที่รับฟังชัดเจนและป้องกันไม่ให้ความร้อนสะสมในเครื่อง ดูหน้า 40 ของคำแนะนำ (แยกเล่ม)



G Connecting other external components / 連接其它外部 / การต่อเพิ่มเติมเข้ากับอุปกรณ์อื่นๆ

CAUTION:

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the receiver is turned off.

小心:

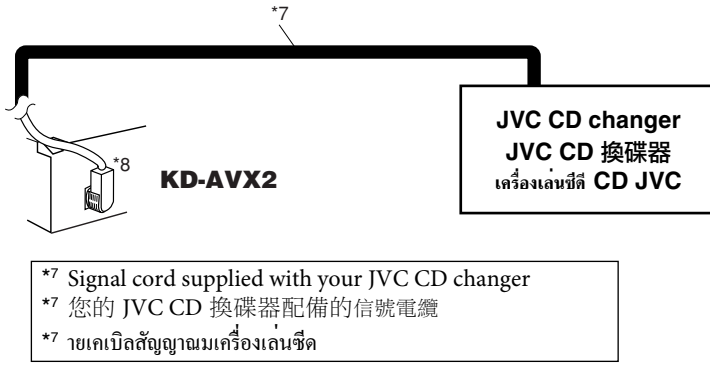
連接外部組件之前，先確定本機已經關閉。

ข้อควรระวัง:

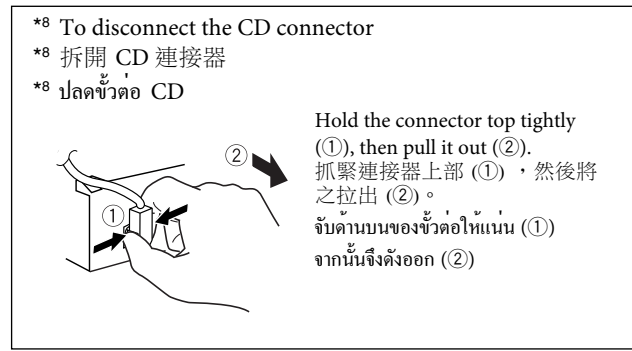
ก่อนต่ออุปกรณ์ภายนอก ควรตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าได้ปิดเครื่องแล้ว

JVC CD changer / JVC CD 換碟器 / เครื่องเล่นซีดี CD JVC

- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 37 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / 將 "External Input" (外部輸入) 設定為 "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (換碟器/iPod/D. Player) (參閱使用說明書的第 37 頁) 。 / ตั้ง "External Input" ไปที่ "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (ดูหน้า 37 ของคำแนะนำ)



*7 Signal cord supplied with your JVC CD changer
*7 您的 JVC CD 換碟器配備的信號電纜
*7 ขดเคเบิลสัญญาณเครื่องเล่นซีดี



*8 To disconnect the CD connector
*8 拆開 CD 連接器
*8 ปลดขั้วต่อ CD
Hold the connector top tightly (1), then pull it out (2).
抓緊連接器上部 (1) · 然後將之拉出 (2)。
จับด้านบนของขั้วต่อให้แน่น (1) จากนั้นจึงดึงออก (2)

Apple iPod®/JVC D. player /Apple iPod®/JVC D. player /Apple iPod®/หรือเครื่องเล่น JVC D

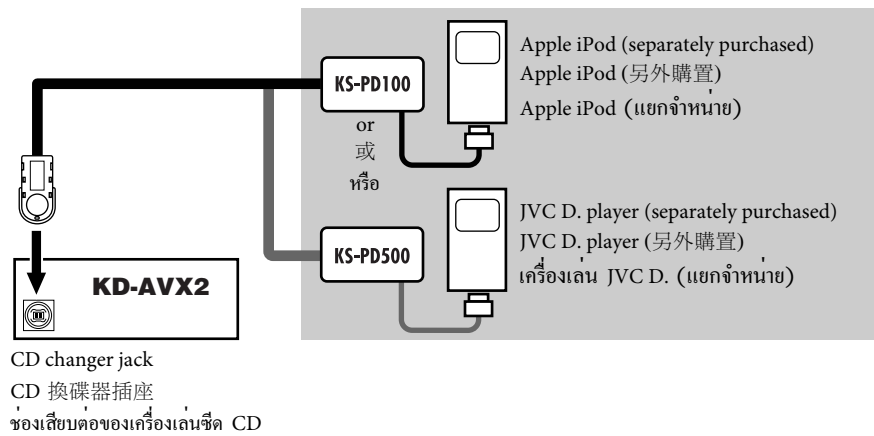
- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 37 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / 將 "External Input" (外部輸入) 設定為 "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (換碟器/iPod/D. Player) (參閱使用說明書的第 37 頁) 。 / ตั้ง "External Input" ไปที่ "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (ดูหน้า 37 ของคำแนะนำ)

The iPod®9 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

iPod®9 or D. player 可以用界面適配器 (不包含) — KS-PD100 (用於 iPod) 或 KS-PD500 (用於 D. player) 進行連接。

ท่านสามารถต่อ iPod®9 หรือเครื่องเล่น D. โดยใช้อินเทอร์เฟซอะแดปเตอร์ (ไม่ได้ใหม่กับชุดประกอบนี้) รุ่น KS-PD100 (สำหรับ iPod) หรือ KS-PD500 (สำหรับเครื่องเล่น D.)

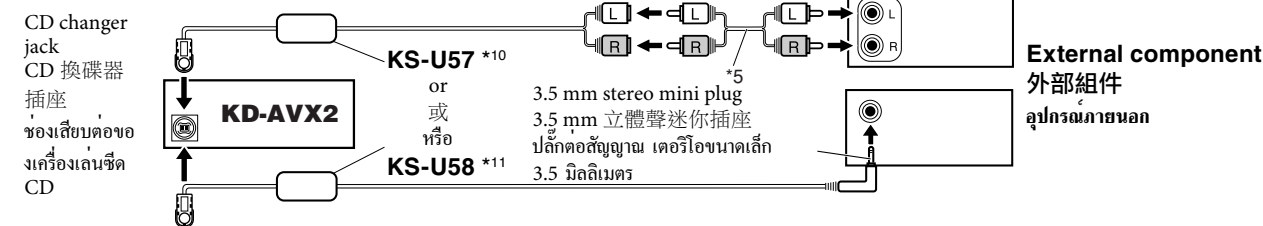
*9 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*9 iPod is Apple Computer, Inc. (蘋果電腦公司) 在美國以及其它國家註冊的商標。
*9 iPod เป็นเครื่องหมายการค้าของ Apple Computer, Inc. ซึ่งจดทะเบียนการค้าในประเทศสหรัฐอเมริกาและประเทศอื่นๆ



CD changer jack
CD 換碟器插座
ช่องเสียบคอร์ดของเครื่องเล่นซีดี CD

Other external component / 其他外部裝置 / อุปกรณ์ภายนอกอื่นๆ

- Set "External Input" to "External Input" (see page 37 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / 將 "External Input" (外部輸入) 設定為 "External Input" (外部輸入) (參閱使用說明書的第 37 頁) 。 / ตั้ง "External Input" ไปที่ "External Input" (ดูหน้า 37 ของคำแนะนำ)



CD changer jack
CD 換碟器
插座
ช่องเสียบคอร์ดของ
เครื่องเล่นซีดี
CD

External component
外部組件
อุปกรณ์ภายนอก

*10 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this receiver)
*10 電路輸入適配器 KS-U57 (不隨本機提供)
*10 อะแดปเตอร์ ายสัญญาณเข้า KS-U57 (ไม่ได้ใหม่กับชุดประกอบนี้)
*11 Aux Input Adapter KS-U58 (optionally purchased)
*11 Aux 輸入適配器 KS-U58 (可選擇性選購)
*11 อะแดปเตอร์แปลงสัญญาณเข้าจากอุปกรณ์ภายนอก KS-U58 (ซื้อเป็นอุปกรณ์เสริม)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- Receiver becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- This receiver does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your receiver?

故障排除

- 保險絲燒斷。
* 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確？
- 電源不能接通。
* 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上？
- 揚聲器沒有聲音。
* 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路？
- 聲音失真。
* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L)、右 (R) 端子的負極 "-" 是否共同接地？
- 噪音干擾音響。
* 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較厚的電線連接？
- 本機發熱。
* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L)、右 (R) 端子的負極 "-" 是否共同接地？
- 本機完全不能操作。
* 您是否已經重置您的機組？

การตรวจอบปัญหาขัดข้อง

- ฟิวส์ขาด**
* มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีดำและสีแดงอย่างถูกต้องหรือไม่
- ไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได้**
* มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีเหลืองหรือไม่
- ไม่มีเสียงออกจากลำโพง**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือไม่
- เสียงเพี้ยน**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบของลำโพงด้านซ้าย (L) และขวา (R) ต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่
- ชุดประกอบร้อนขึ้น**
* มีการใช้สายสั้นๆ หรือหนาๆ ต่อจากเครื่องส่วนที่ติดตั้งไว้บนพื้นด้านหลังกับตัวถังรถยนต์หรือไม่
- ชุดประกอบร้อนขึ้น**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบของลำโพงด้านซ้าย (L) และขวา (R) ต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่
- เครื่องรับไม่ทำงาน**
* ท่านได้ตั้งเครื่องใหม่หรือยัง

JVC



DVD/CD RECEIVER

KD-AVX2

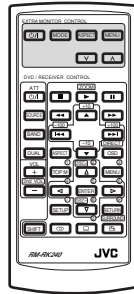
ENGLISH

ALAT PENERIMA DVD/CD

KD-AVX2

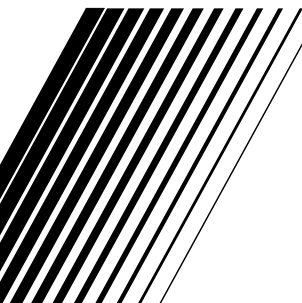
INDONESIA

EXAD



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 10.
Untuk membatalkan peragaan tampilan, lihat halaman 10.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Untuk instalasi dan penyambungan, lihat buku pedoman terpisah.



INSTRUCTIONS

BUKU PETUNJUK

LVT1456-004A
[UN]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.	ADVARSEL: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åpen eller interlocken feiler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling.	VARNING: Synlig og osynlig laserstråling når den åpnes og spåren er lukket. Betrakt ikke strålen.	VARO: Avattassa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (I)
--	---	--	---

For safety....

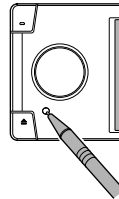
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

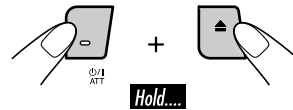
How to reset your unit



This will reset the microcomputer. Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

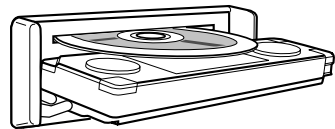
How to forcibly eject a disc

If a disc cannot be recognized by the receiver or cannot be ejected, ejects the disc as follows.



“NO EJECT?” (or “EJECT OK?”) and “EMERGENCY EJECT?” appear on the monitor.

Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select “EMERGENCY EJECT?”, then press ENT.



- If this does not work, reset your receiver.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

WARNINGS:

- **DO NOT** install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.

Characters shown on the monitor

The following characters will be used to show the various information on the monitor.

- You can also use the following characters to assign titles (see page 41).

A	B	C	D	E	a	b	c	d	e
F	G	H	I	J	f	g	h	i	j
K	L	M	N	O	k	l	m	n	o
P	Q	R	S	T	p	q	r	s	t
U	V	W	X	Y	u	v	w	x	y
Z	space				z	space			

Upper and lower cases

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	"	#	\$	%
&	'	()	*
+	,	-	.	/
:	;	<	=	>
?	@	_	`	space

Numbers and symbols

Introduction—Playable discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs—12 cm and 8 cm—on this receiver:

- **DVD Video:** Recorded in NTSC or PAL color system with an appropriate Region Code number (see below).
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played.
- **DVD Audio**
- **Video CD (VCD)/audio CD**
- **MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG1,2:** Recorded either in CD-R/CD-RW or DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM.
 - CD-R/CD-RW: Compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM: Compliant with UDF-Bridge Format*¹.
- *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (DVD Video format only) discs. However the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.*
- *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This receiver can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “3”.

Examples:



If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“Region Error” appears on the monitor on the unit. “REGION CODE ERROR” appears on the external monitor.

Discs cannot be played back

DVD-ROM (data), DVD-RAM, DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.



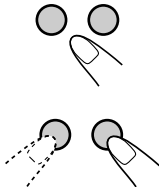

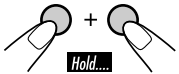
*¹ A hybrid file system used to provide compatibility with ISO 9660 for accessing any type of files on the disc. (UDF stands for Universal Disk Format.)

“DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.

How to read this manual

The following methods are used to make the explanations simple and easy-to-understand:

- Some related tips and notes are explained in “More about this receiver” (see pages 49 – 53).
- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations as follows:

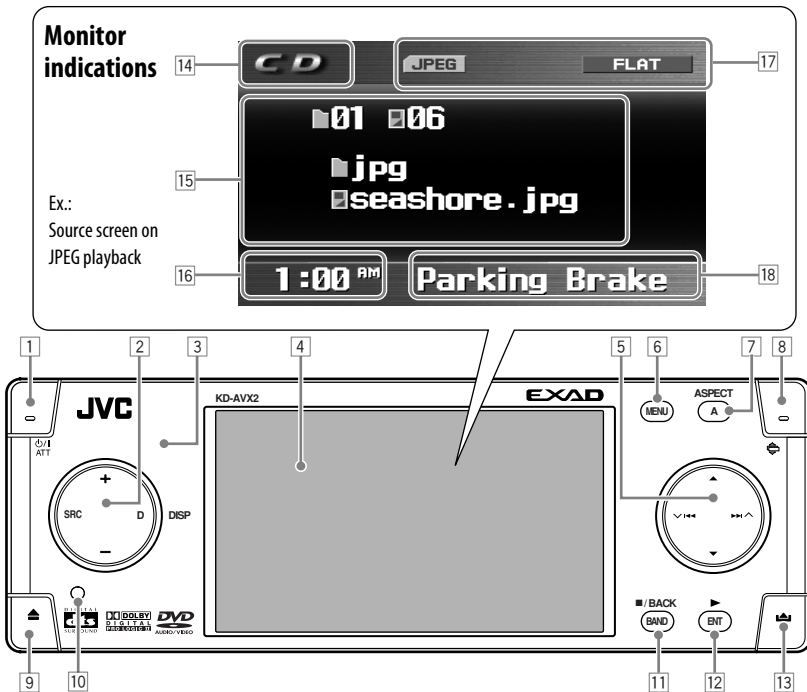
	<p>Press briefly.</p>
	<p>Press repeatedly.</p>
	<p>Press either one.</p>
	<p>Press and hold until your desired response begins.</p>
	<p>Press and hold both buttons at the same time.</p>

Contents

Control panel	6
Remote controller — RM-RK240	7
Getting started.....	10
Radio operations	12
Disc operations	15
Unique disc functions.....	20
Disc surround playback	22
On-Screen disc operations	24
Other disc operations	28
Dual Zone operations	30
AV Menu settings.....	31
Other main functions	41
CD changer operations	42
External component operations	44
iPod®/D. player operations	45
Maintenance	47
Language codes.....	48
More about this receiver	49
Troubleshooting	54
Specifications	57

Control panel

Parts identification



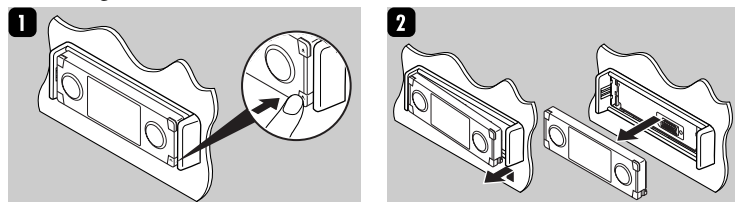
- 1 ϕ /I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
- 2
- +/– (volume +/-) button
 - SRC (source) button
 - DISP (D: display) button
- 3 Remote Sensor
- 4 Monitor
- 5
- \blacktriangle (up) / \blacktriangledown (down) buttons
 - \blacktriangledown \lll / \ggg \blacktriangle buttons
- 6 MENU button
- 7 ASPECT (A) button
- 8 \curvearrowright (angle) button
- 9 \blacktriangle (eject) button
- 10 Reset button
- 11
- BAND button
 - BACK button
 - \blacksquare (stop) button
- 12
- ENT (enter) button
 - \blacktriangleright (play) button
- 13 \blacktriangleleft (control panel release) button

Monitor indications

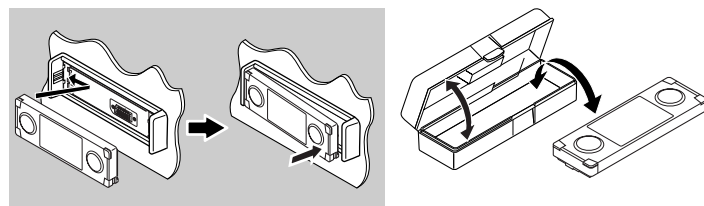
- 14 Source indicator
- 15 Main display
- 16 Clock display
- Also indicates volume level when adjusting volume.
- 17 Status indicators
- 18 Alert information area
- Also indicates volume level bar when adjusting volume.

How to detach/attach the control panel

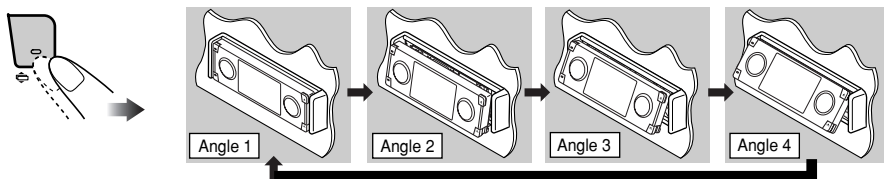
Detaching...



Attaching...



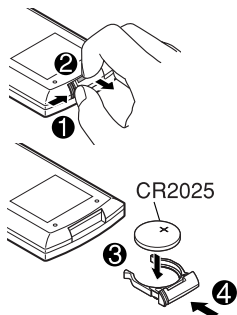
How to change the control panel angle



Caution: Do not insert your finger behind the control panel.

Remote controller — RM-RK240

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the receiver. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.



- Do not expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

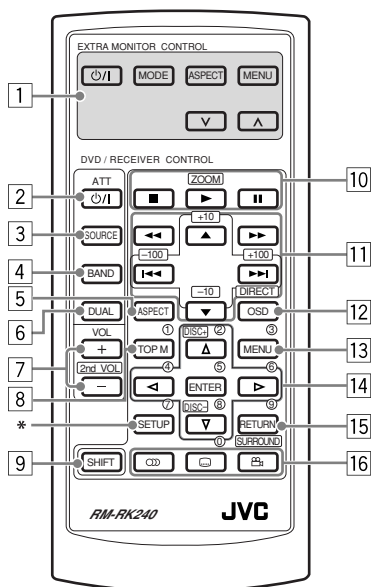
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accidents.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
 - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire.
 - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
 - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
 - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

IMPORTANT:

If Dual Zone is activated (see page 30), the remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.

Main elements and features



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons*1
 - ⏻/⏻ (standby/on), MODE, ASPECT, MENU, ▾ and ▲.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 ⏻/⏻ ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
 - Turns on and off the power and also attenuates the sound.
- 3 SOURCE button
 - Selects the source.
- 4 BAND button
 - Selects the FM/AM bands.
- 5 ASPECT button
 - Change the aspect of the monitor on the unit when playing back DVD, VCD, etc.
- 6 DUAL button
 - Activate and deactivate Dual Zone.
- 7 VOL + / - buttons
 - Adjusts the volume level.
 - Also function as 2nd VOL +/- buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 8 TOP M (menu) button*2
 - Display the DVD, DVD Audio, and VCD*3 disc menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10 Basic disc operation buttons*4:
 - (stop), ▶ (play), ⏸ (pause)
 - ▶ (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button.
- 11 Advanced disc operation/tuner operation buttons*5

For advanced disc operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Select the titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio), or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG).
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (reverse skip/forward skip)
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (reverse search/forward search)*6

* Not used as the SETUP button for this model.

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset stations.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
 - Functions to search for stations.
Press briefly: auto search
Press and hold: manual search

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - ▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - ▲: Enters the main menu of iPod/D. player. (Now ▲ / ▼/|◀◀ / ▶▶| work as the menu selection buttons)*7
- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

- 12 OSD button
- Display the on-screen bar.
 - Also function as the DIRECT button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can directly select titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio) or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/MPEG) using the number buttons (see the right column and page 19).

- 13 MENU button*2
- Display the DVD and VCD*2 disc menu. (Not functions for the DVD Audio disc.)

- 14 Menu operation buttons*2
- Cursor (△, ▽, ◀, ▶) and ENTER
 - △ / ▽: Also function as DISC+/- buttons when the source is “CD-CH”.

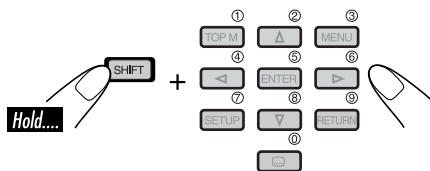
- 15 RETURN button*2

- 16 Special function buttons
- DVD/VCD: ○○○ (audio)
 - DVD: □□□ (subtitle), □□□ (angle)
 - □□□ Also function as the SURROUND button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can change the surround mode (see page 23).

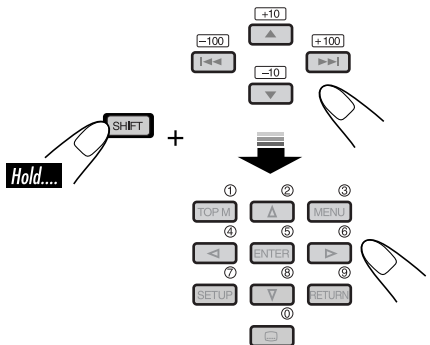
- *1 Controllable only if your monitor is one of the JVC monitors — KV-MR9010 or KV-MH6510.
- *2 These buttons function as the number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.
- *3 Only when PBC is not in use.
- *4 Not used for CD changer operations.
- *5 These buttons function as the +10/-10 and +100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.
- *6 Not used for JPEG operations. No sound can be heard (DVD/VCD/MPEG).
- *7 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
▼: Confirms the selection.

How to select a number

To select a number from 0 – 9:



To select a number greater than 9:



- +100/-100 buttons used for searching track number greater than 99 (not available for CD/VCD/DVD/DVD audio).

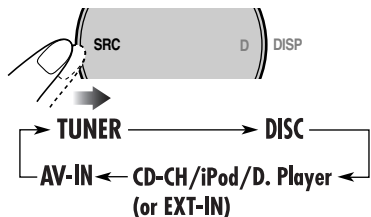
Getting started

Basic operations

1 Turn on the power.

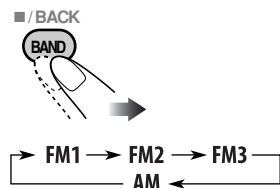


2

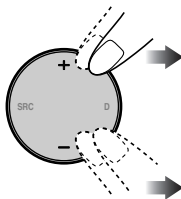


You cannot select some sources if they are not ready.

3 For FM/AM tuner only



4 Adjust the volume.



Volume level indicator

5 Adjust the equalizer as you want.
(See pages 38.)

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT)

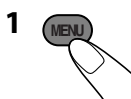


To restore the sound, press it again.

To turn off the power

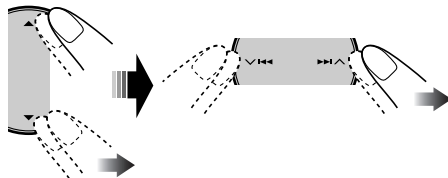


Canceling demonstration and setting the clock



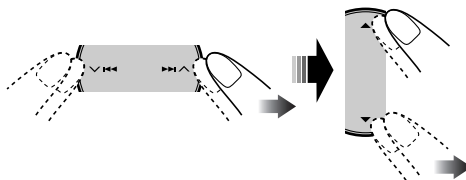
2 Select “Setup”, then,

- 1 Select “Display”, “Demonstration”, then “Off” to cancel demonstration.
- 2 Select “Clock”, “Time Set”, and go to the next step to set the clock.

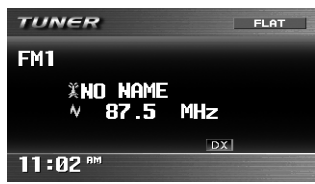
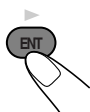


3 Set the hour and minute.

- 1 Select “Hour”, then adjust the hour.
- 2 Select “Minute”, then adjust the minute.



4 Finish the procedure.

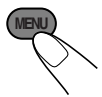


- See the example on “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” below to change the clock from 12 hours to 24 hours.

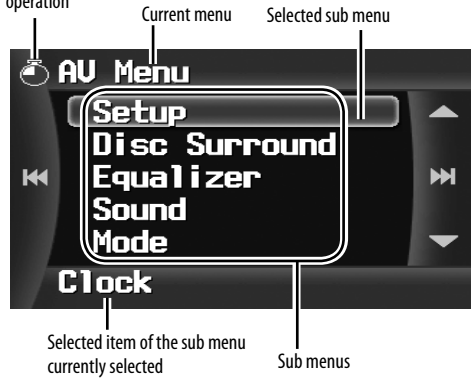
Basic procedure of AV Menu operation

You can adjust various settings of the unit from AV Menu.

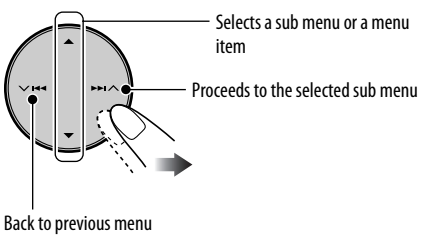
- To call up AV Menu...



Displays remaining time to continue the menu operation

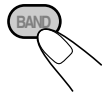


- To select a menu item and proceed to the sub menu...

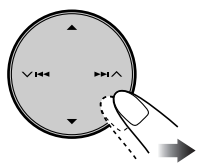


- To go back to the previous screen and adjust other items...

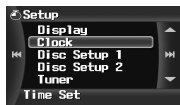
■ / BACK



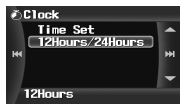
Ex.: To change the clock from 12 hours to 24 hours, after pressing MENU...



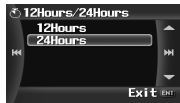
Select “Setup”,



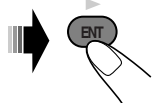
“Clock”,



“12Hours / 24Hours”,

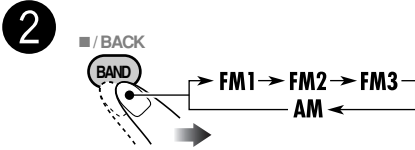
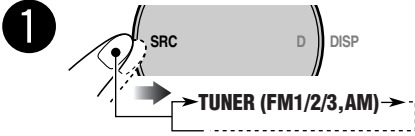


then “24Hours”.



- To cancel menu operations and return to the source screen, press DISP (D).
- See pages 31 – 40 for information of the sub menus and menu items.

Radio operations



Selected band appears.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

3 **Start searching for a station.**



When a station is received, searching stops.

To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

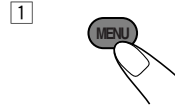
In step 3 above...



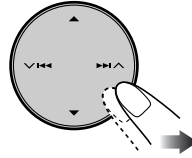
2 Select the desired station frequencies.



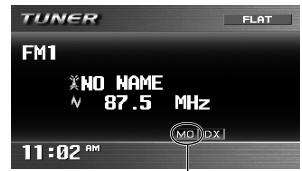
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive



2 Select "Mode", "Mono", then "On".



3 Finish the procedure.

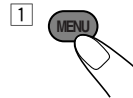


Lights up when monaural mode is activated.

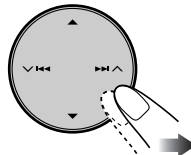
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to set "Mono" to "Off". The MO indicator goes off.

To tune in strong-signal FM station only



2 Select "Mode", "DX / Local", then "Local".



3 Finish the procedure.



Lights up when "Local" mode is activated.

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

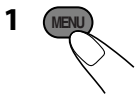
To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure to set "DX / Local" to "DX". The LO indicator goes off and the DX indicator lights up.

Storing stations in memory

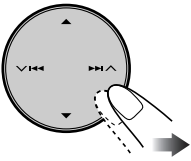
You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

After selecting the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want...



2 Select "Mode", then "SSM".

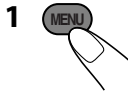


"SSM" is shown until automatic presetting is over.

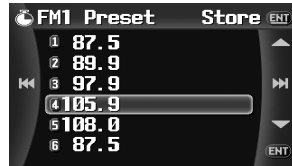
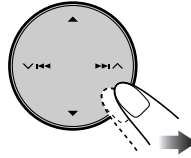
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

After tuning in the station you want to preset...

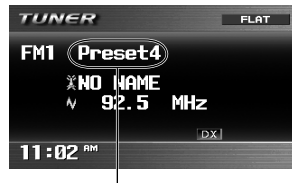
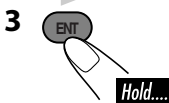


2 Select "List", then a preset number (1–6) you want to store the station into.



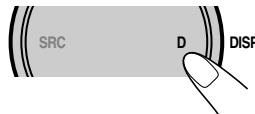
EX.: Storing 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of FM1

You can also display the list by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons.



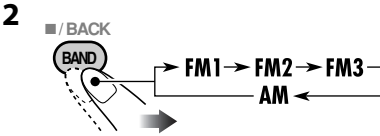
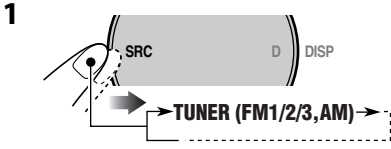
Stored preset number flashes for a while.

How to exit from menus or lists

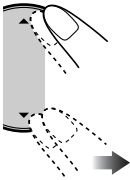


Menu or list operations are canceled and the screen returns to the source screen.

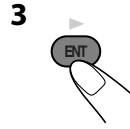
Listening to a preset station



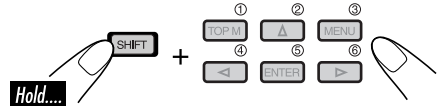
3 Select a preset station (1 - 6) you want.



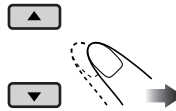
- You can change the preset list between FM1/2/3 by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons (or by pressing ▲/▼ buttons repeatedly) when selecting any of the FM bands.



When using the remote controller...

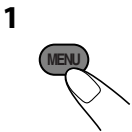


or

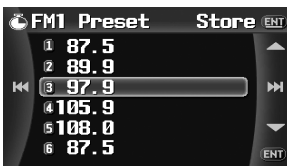
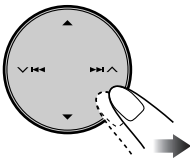


When using the list screen...

After step 2 above...



2 Select "List", then a preset number (1-6) you want.



Disc operations

Playing a disc in the receiver

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD Video/Audio: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc is an audio CD, CD Text, MP3/WMA/WAV, JPEG, MPEG, or VCD without PBC, all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

- If a title list or disc menu appears while playing a DVD Video/Audio or VCD with PBC, see “Disc menu operations” on page 21.

The following marks are used to indicate the playable discs...



DVD Video



DVD Audio



Video CD with/without PBC



Video CD with PBC only



MPEG disc



JPEG disc



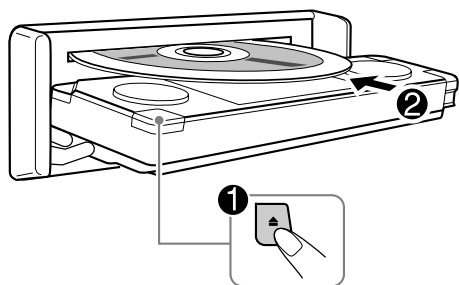
Audio CD/
CD Text



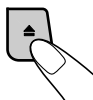
MP3/WMA/WAV
disc




All discs listed here



To eject a disc



Before performing any operations, make sure the following...

- The operations explained on pages 17 – 22 are mainly of the remote controller.
 -  shows functions which you can also use on the unit.

If “⊗” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the receiver cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

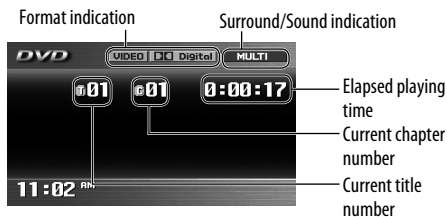
- In some cases, without showing “⊗”, operations will not be accepted.

• **When inserting a DVD video/DVD Audio disc:**

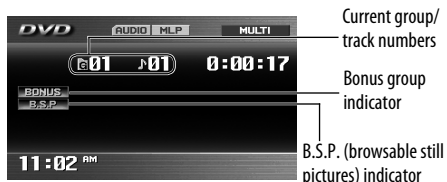
Video/picture playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).

When an DVD is playing back



When a DVD Audio disc is playing back

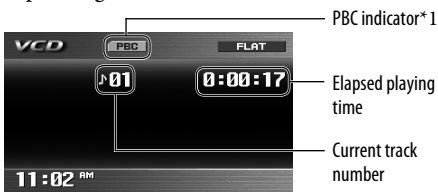


- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting a VCD:**

VCD playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).



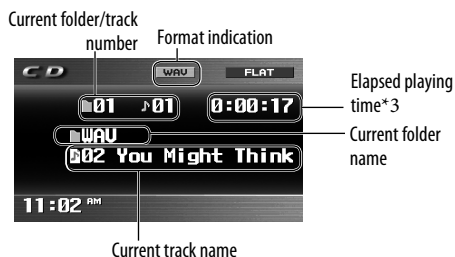
*1 Appears when the PBC function is in use.

- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

• **When inserting an MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG disc*2:**

After showing the total folder and file number...

Ex.: When an WAV file is detected

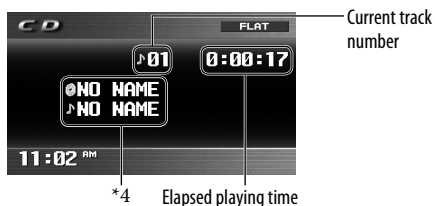


*2 When playing back a JPEG/MPEG disc, press DISP (D) to display the screen. (Picture/video playback is automatically starts when the parking brake is applied.)

*3 Does not appear for JPEG disc.

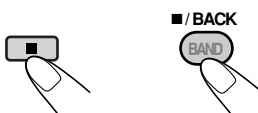
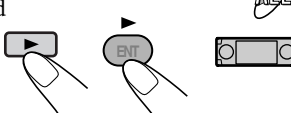




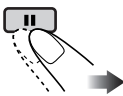

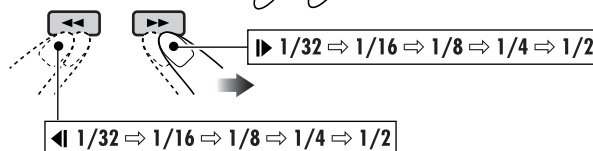

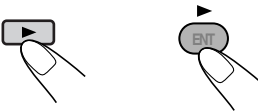


• **When inserting a CD Text/audio CD:**

After showing the total track number and total playing time...



*4 Disc title/performer and track title are displayed when playing a CD Text.

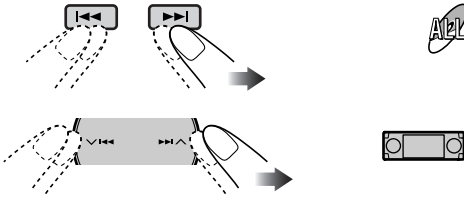
Basic operations

Operations	Monitor indication and/or next operation
<p>To stop playback</p> 	<p>When you start playback again, playback starts from where it has been stopped (Resume play).</p>  
<p>To stop play temporarily</p> 	<p>Playback is paused.</p>  <p>A still picture appears.</p> <p>Ⓐ Frame by frame playback </p>  <p>Ⓑ Slow motion playback </p>  <p style="text-align: center;">▶ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</p> <p style="text-align: center;">◀ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sound comes out during Slow Motion Playback. • When playing a VCD, Reverse Slow Motion Playback is prohibited. <p>To resume normal play:</p> 
<p>To replay the previous scenes—One Touch Replay</p> 	<p>The playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This function works only within the same title. • For some DVDs, this function does not work.  

- During play, on-screen guide icons appear on the monitor for a while (see page 53).

To go to the next or previous chapters/tracks

- For DVD: During play or pause



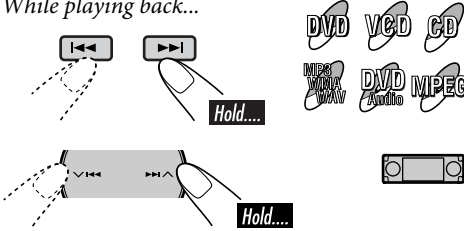
To locate a particular title/chapter/track directly

- For DVD Video/DVD Audio:
During play or pause—select a chapter/track.
During stop—select a title/track.
- For MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG:
Select a track within the same folder.

Select the number corresponding to the item you want (see page 9).

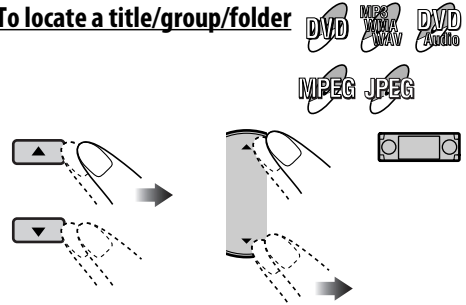
To fast-forward or reverse the chapter/track

While playing back...



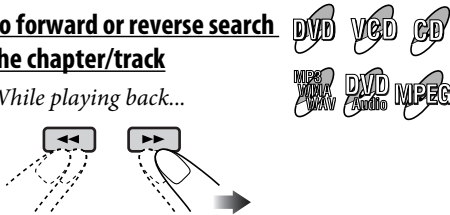
* The search speed changes to x2 ⇔ x10 (▶▶) (◀◀) 1/2 for MPEG), but the information shown on the monitor is only for DVD/VCD/MPEG.

To locate a title/group/folder

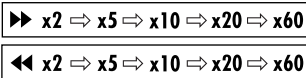


To forward or reverse search the chapter/track

While playing back...



The information shown is only for DVD/VCD:

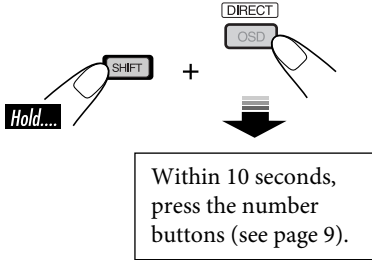


* The search speed of an MPEG file is 3 steps - ▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2/3.

- To resume normal speed



**To locate a particular title/
group/folder**



IMPORTANT:

- For MP3/WMA/WAV discs: It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit number at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

To adjust the screen shape on the unit

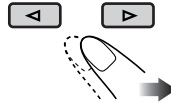


- See “Aspect” on page 33 for the detail.

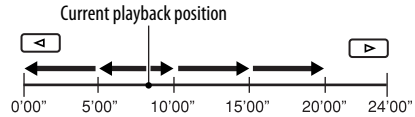
To skip to the next or previous scene



You can skip the scene back and forward by 5 minutes.



Ex.: when you are playing a 24-minute MPEG file and the elapsed playing time is 8'24"...



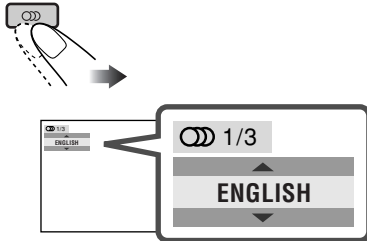
- The first pressing of the buttons skips the scene to the nearest multiple-of-5 playing time (except current playing time).
- This function does not work when remaining time to skip forward or back is under 5 minutes.

Unique disc functions

Selecting audio languages

For DVD:

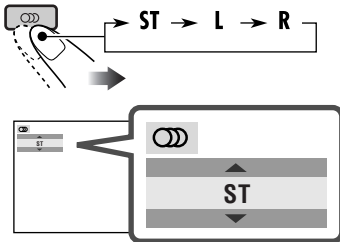
You can select the language to listen to if the disc has multiple audio languages.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

For VCD:

You can select the audio channel to play. (This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.)



ST: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.

L: To listen to the L (left) audio channel.

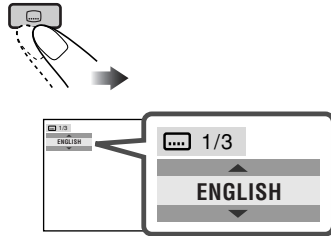
R: To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

Selecting subtitles

You can select the language of the subtitle to be shown on the monitor.



- You can set the initial subtitle language using the AV Menu (see page 34).

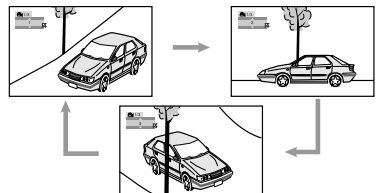
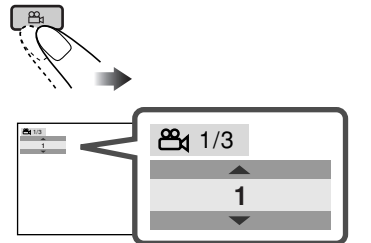


Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the subtitle language, audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting multi-angle views

You can view the same scene at different angles if the disc has multi-angle views.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 multi-angle views

Disc menu operations

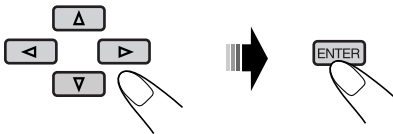
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PBC (PlayBack Control).

While playing a DVD



A title list or disc menu will appear on the monitor.

2 Select the item you want on the menu.

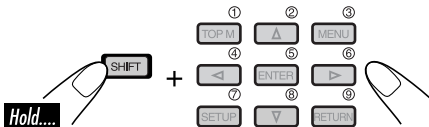


Selected item starts playback.

- On some discs, you can also select items by their numbers.

While playing a VCD

- When a list of items is displayed on the monitor.



- To select a number greater than 9, see “How to select a number” on page 9.

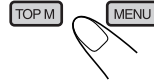
To return to the previous menus



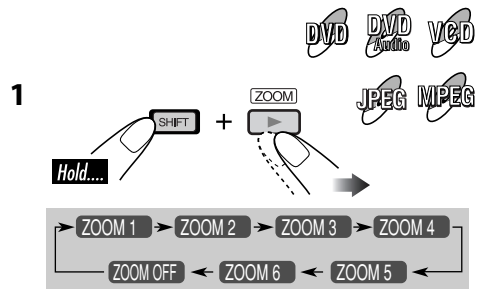
Canceling the PBC playback

- Press the [STOP] button.
- Select a track to start normal playback using the number buttons (see page 9).

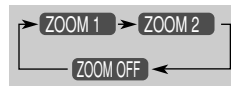
To resume the PBC function



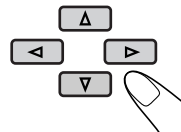
Zoom in



For JPEG disc (effective only when pausing):



2 Move the zoomed-in position.



- For JPEG files: You cannot move the zoomed-in position when the entire picture is still displayed on the monitor.

To cancel zoom, select “ZOOM OFF” in step 1.

Playing back a bonus group

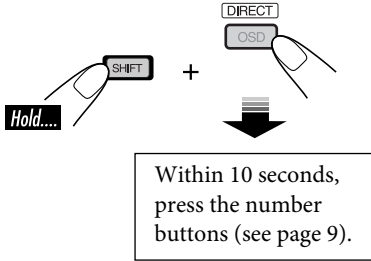
Some DVD Audio discs have a special group called “bonus group” whose contents are not open to the public.



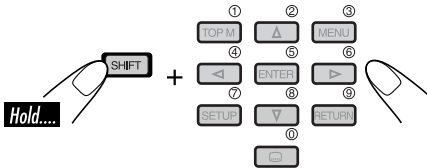
- To play back a bonus group, you have to enter the specific “key number” (a kind of password) for the bonus group. The way of getting the key number depends on the disc.

1 Select the bonus group.

- The bonus group is usually recorded as the last group (for example, if a disc contains four groups including a bonus group, “group 4” is the bonus group).



2 Enter the key number.



3 Follow the interactive instructions shown on the monitor.

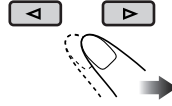
- The entered key number is cleared when the disc is ejected. Repeat steps 1 to 3 above to play back the bonus group again.

Selecting Browsable still pictures

While playing back a track linked to browsable still pictures (B.S.P.), you can select (turn the page) the still picture to be shown on the monitor.



- If a track is linked to B.S.P., they are usually shown in turn automatically during playback.



Disc surround playback

You can enjoy multichannel surround playback of the disc on the unit.

Available surround format

Dolby Digital*1: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with Dolby Digital (DOLBY DIGITAL).

Dolby Pro Logic II: Dolby Pro Logic II is a multichannel playback format to decode all 2 channel sources—stereo source and Dolby Surround encoded source—into 5.1 channels. Dolby Pro Logic II has two modes—Movie mode and Music mode:

- Pro Logic II Movie**
Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
- Pro Logic II Music**
Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

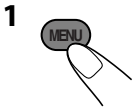
DTS (Digital Theater Systems)*2: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with DTS Digital Surround (DTS SURROUND).

- *1: Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless, and the double-D symbol are the trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- *2: "DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

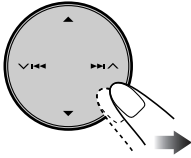
Selecting the surround mode

The unit is set up, by default, to select the optimal surround mode for the digital multichannel disc in the initial setting. You can also choose the surround mode for the 2 channel disc.

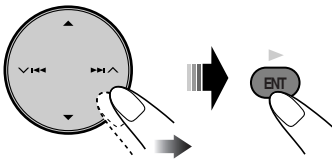
When DISC is selected as the source...



2 Select "Disc Surround".



3 Select the surround setting you want.



Surround Off:

Deactivate the surround function.

Surround On*1*2:

- **Auto***3: the optimum surround mode is selected automatically when multichannel digital signals are detected.
- **Dolby PLII Movie***4*5: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Movie.
- **Dolby PLII Music***4*5*6: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Music.

- *1 No sound comes out of the rear speakers and the subwoofer when the FRONT 2CH indicator appears on the monitor.
- *2 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the FIX indicator appears on the monitor.
- *3 Activates no surround function when the source is a CD (except for DTS CD)/VCD / MP3/WMA/WAV. Select "Dolby PLII Movie" or "Dolby PLII Music" manually to activate the surround function.
- *4 Not selectable in the cases below:
 - the disc has 2.1 or more channels of sound tracks (except for MPEG-encoded tracks).
 - the disc is an MPEG disc.
- *5 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the front speaker size is set to "Large" (see page 35).
- *6 When you select "Dolby PLII Music", you can adjust the following items: "Panorama" and "Center Width". Adjusting "Panorama" to "On" adds "wraparound" sound effect; Activating "Center Width" adjusts the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger (normally select "4").

- No sound comes out of the center speaker when the surround function is not activated.
- Equalizer settings (page 38) become ineffective and unadjustable while the surround function is activated.
- No sound may come out of some speakers depending on the Speaker Size settings (page 35) or the type of the disc played back.
- When Dual Zone is activated, the surround settings become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.

On the remote controller:



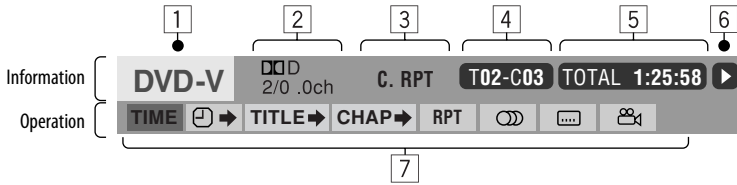
On-Screen disc operations

Operations using the on-screen bar

You can check the disc information and use some functions through the on-screen bar.



On-screen bar

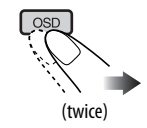


- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 Disc type</p> <p>2 • DVD Video/DVD Audio: Audio signal format type
• VCD: PBC</p> <p>3 Playback mode
DVD: T. RPT: Title repeat
C. RPT: Chapter repeat
DVD Audio:
T. RPT: Track repeat
VCD: T. RPT: Track repeat
D. RND: Disc random
T. INT: Track intro
Plays the beginning 15 seconds of the current track
JPEG:T. RPT: Track repeat
MPEG:
T. RPT: Track repeat
F. RPT: Folder repeat</p> <p>4 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
G02-T03 Current group/track
TRACK 01 Current track
F001-T001 Current folder/track</p> <p>5 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc
T. REM Remaining disc time (for VCD)/remaining title time (for DVD)
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track</p> | <p>REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track</p> <p>6 Playback status
▶ Play
▶/◀ Forward/reverse search
▶/◀ Forward/reverse slow-motion
⏸ Pause
⏹ Stop</p> <p>7 Operation icons
TIME Change time indication (see 5)
⏮▶ Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE▶ Title Search (by its number)
GROUP▶ Group Search (by its number)
CHAP▶ Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK▶ Track Search (by its number)
⏭ Change the audio language or audio channel
⏮ Change the subtitle language
📺 Change the view angle
RPT Repeat play*
INT Intro play*
RND Random play*</p> |
|---|--|

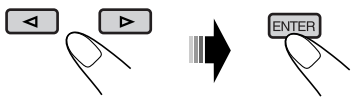
* See also page 28.

Basic on-screen bar operations

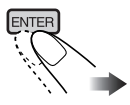
1 Display the on-screen bar.



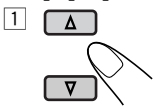
2 Select an item.



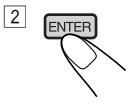
3 Make a selection.



• If pop-up menu appears....



or press the number buttons (see page 9).

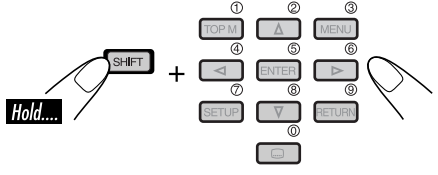


To erase the on-screen bar



To search for a particular point by playing time

- 1 Select .
- 2 Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.



- Ex.:
- To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
 - To enter 54 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 0, 5, 4, 0, then 0.
 - It is always required to enter the hour digit (even “0” hour), but it is not required to enter trailing zeros (the last two digits in the examples above).
 - To correct a misentry, press....



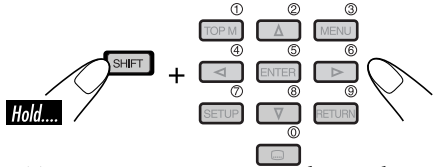
- You can also specify the elapsed playing time by using $\Delta / \nabla / \triangleleft / \triangleright$.

- 3 Finish the procedure.



To search for a particular title/group/chapter/track

- 1 Select **TITLE** \Rightarrow (**GROUP** \Rightarrow / **CHAP** \Rightarrow / **TRACK** \Rightarrow).
- 2 Enter the number.



- To correct a misentry, press the number button until the correct number is entered.

- 3 Finish the procedure.

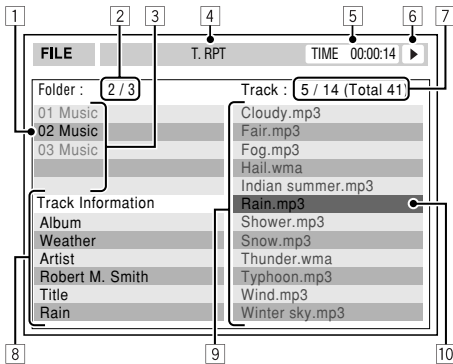


Basic control screen operations

You can search for and play the desired items through the control screen when using the external monitor.

- The control screen automatically appears on the monitor when you insert a disc (external monitor only).
- JPEG/MPEG control screen appears only when playback stops.

Control screen



Ex.: MP3 playback

- 1 Current folder (Not appears on CD playback)
- 2 Current folder number/total folder number (Not appears on CD playback)
- 3 Folder list (Not appears on CD playback)
- 4 Selected playback mode
- 5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (Not appears on JPEG playback)
- 6 Operation mode icon
▶ (play), ■ (stop), || (pause), ►► (fast-forward), ◀◀ (reverse)
- 7 CD: Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
Others: Current track (file) number/total number of tracks (files) in the current folder (total number of tracks/files on the disc)

- 8 Track information (Not appears on JPEG/MPEG playback)
- 9 Track (file) list
- 10 Current track (file) (highlighted bar)

To select a folder or track



While Dual Zone (see page 30) is on...

- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track.



To select a track



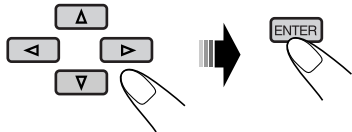
To change the playback mode



While Dual Zone (see page 30) is on...



- 1 OSD
- 2 Select a playback mode (see page 28) you want.



List screen operations

You can display the folder list/track list before starting play when using the external monitor and Dual Zone function (see page 30). On this list, you can confirm the contents and start playing a disc.

Folder/track list screens

Folder list

Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
fol130	fol140	fol150	fol160	
fol131	fol141	fol151	fol161	
fol132	fol142	fol152	fol162	
fol133	fol143	fol153	fol163	
fol134	fol144	fol154	fo 164	
fol135	fol145	fol155	fo 165	
fol136	fol146	fol156	fo 166	
fol137	fol147	fol157	fo 167	
fol138	fol148	fol158	fo 168	
fol139	fol149	fol159	fo 169	

Track list

Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
file0131.mp3	file0141.mp3	file0151.wma	file0161.wma	
file0132.mp3	file0142.mp3	file0152.mp3	file0162.mp3	
file0133.wma	file0143.mp3	file0153.wma	file0163.wma	
file0134.mp3	file0144.mp3	file0154.mp3	file0164.mp3	
file0135.mp3	file0145.wma	file0155.mp3	file0165.wma	
file0136.wma	file0146.mp3	file0156.mp3	file0166.wma	
file0137.wma	file0147.wma	file0157.mp3	file0167.wma	
file0138.mp3	file0148.mp3	file0158.wma	file0168.wma	
file0139.mp3	file0149.wma	file0159.wma	file0169.mp3	
file0140.wma	file0150.wma	file0160.wma	file0170.wma	

Ex.: Track list for MP3/WMA

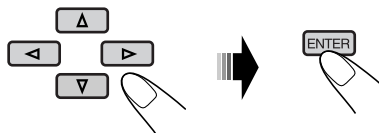
- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder.
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

While Dual Zone is on and the disc play stops...

1 Display the folder list.

Each time you press the button, the list screen comes on and goes off.

2 Select a folder on the list.

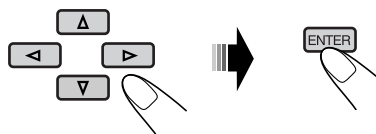


The track list of the selected folder appears.

To go back to the folder list




3 Select a track on the list.

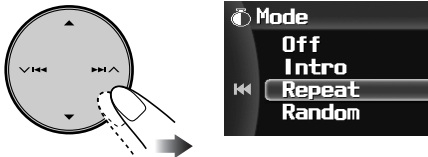


Other disc operations

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

- 1  (On the unit)
- 2 Select "Mode", then your desired playback mode.



- 3 Finish the procedure. Playback mode indicator appears.





Selectable modes

Off
Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro 

- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.





Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
Track:	All tracks of the disc. •  lights up.
Folder*1:	First tracks of all folders. •  lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

*1 Only while playing a disc containing folders.

Repeat



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.



Mode	Plays repeatedly
Chapter*2:	The current chapter. •  lights up.
Title*2:	The current title. •  lights up.
Track*3:	The current track. •  lights up.
Folder*1:	All tracks of the current folder. •  lights up.
Off:	For DVD: Cancels Repeat play. For other discs: All tracks of the disc.

*2 Only while playing a DVD disc.

*3 Except for DVD and JPEG discs.

Random 

- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.

Mode	Plays at random
Folder*1:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. •  lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the disc. •  lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

List screen operations

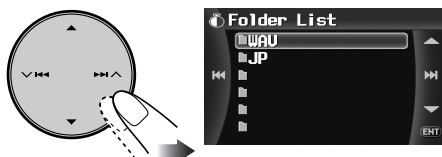
You can display the folder list/file list and select a file directly while playing.

While playing....



1 (On the unit)

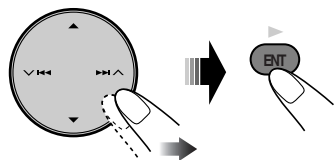
2 Select “Mode”, then “List”.



3 Select a folder you want.



4 Select a file you want to play.

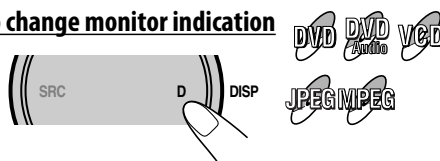


- You can also access the folder list by pressing and holding ▲ / ▼ on the unit.

Other operations

Monitor indication control

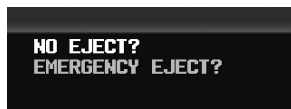
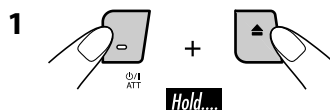
To change monitor indication



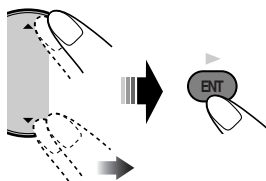
- Each time you press DISP (D), the display changes between the source screen and picture playback.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.



2 Select “NO EJECT?”.



“No Eject” flashes.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select “EJECT OK?”.

Dual Zone operations

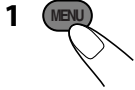
Playing back two sources at a time

You can connect external audio equipment to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug on the rear, and play back a disc separately from the source selected on the unit.

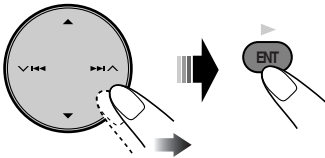


You can activate Dual Zone while listening to any source.

- When Dual Zone is in use, you can only operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.
- When Dual Zone is in use, the surround settings (page 23) become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.



2 Select “Dual Zone”, then “On” or “On-Surround”.



Off: Deactivate Dual Zone.

On: Activate Dual Zone.

On-Surround^{*1*}^{*2}:

Activate Dual Zone and add the headphone Surround^{*3} effect to the disc playback sound. Select this when listening the disc playback sound with headphones.

^{*1} Not effective when playing back an MPEG disc.

^{*2} The surround effect is also added to the sound from the speakers when you select “DISC” as the source.

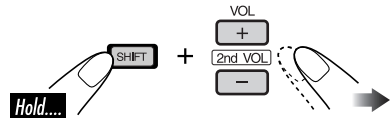
^{*3} JVC original headphone virtual surround system.

The source automatically changes to “DISC” and **DUAL** appears on the monitor.

To select a different source to listen through the speakers, press SRC on the control panel.

- By using the buttons on the control panel, you can operate the newly selected source without affecting Dual Zone operations.

3 Adjust the volume through the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug using the remote controller.

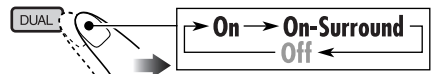


4 Operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller by referring to the monitor screen.

To cancel Dual Zone operations, select “Off” on step 2 on the left column. (**DUAL** / **DUAL-SURR** disappears.)

On the remote controller:

You can also activate and deactivate Dual Zone.



To change the Dual Zone mode between “On” and “On-Surround”, select the Dual Zone mode you want on step 2 on the left column.

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

Through the 2nd AUDIO OUT, 2 channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

Basic procedure

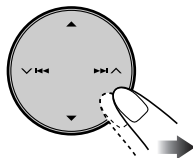
You can adjust various settings of this unit from the AV Menu.

The AV Menu contains the menu items and submenus shown on the figure below.

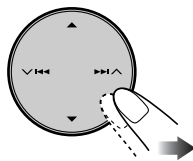
1



2 Select a menu item you want to set.

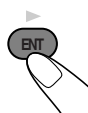


3 adjust the item selected.



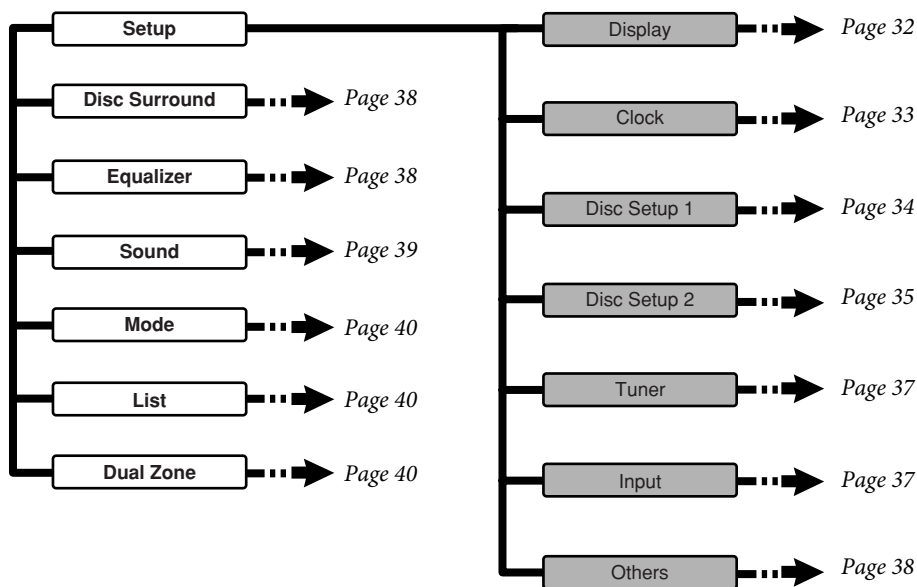
4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



- See also “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” on page 11 for more details of the operation.

























Menu items of AV Menu



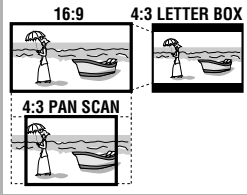
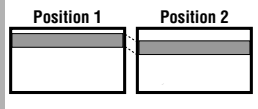
AV Menu items

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Demonstration	Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Activates the demonstration movie on the monitor.
Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the monitor. Standard [Initial], Rose, Gold, Black, Metal, Metallic-Silver, Metallic-Green, Honeycomb-Red, Honeycomb-Green, Effect-Orange, Effect-Purple, Clown fish, Ocean, Sunset, Earth.
Scroll	Off: Cancels. Once: [Initial]; Scrolls the disc information once. Auto: Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Even if “Scroll” is set to “Off”, you can scroll the display by pressing D DISP for more than one second.
Tag Display	Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Shows the tag data while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
Dimmer	Off: Cancels. On: Activates dimmer. Auto: [Initial]; Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights. Time Set: Sets the Dimmer On/Off time.
Bright	You can adjust brightness of the monitor. -15 (darkest) to +15 (brightest) [Initial]; 00 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To adjust the brightness of playback picture, adjust “Bright” on “Screen Control” below.
Screen Control^{*1}	You can adjust color and brightness of playback pictures of “DISC” and “AV-IN”. The setting is stored separately for “DISC” and “AV-IN”. -15 to +15 [Initial]; 00 Bright: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. Contrast: Adjust the contrast of the bright and dark portion. Color: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. Tint: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural.

*1 Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies, or “AV-IN”.

Indications		Selectable settings, [reference page]														
Display	Aspect* ¹	<p>You can change the screen shape on the monitor according to the aspect ratio of the source. Choose the optimum one from the followings.</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Aspect ratio of incoming signal</th> </tr> <tr> <th>4:3</th> <th>16:9</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> <p>Normal: For original shape of 4:3</p>  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9</p>  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>Just:</p>  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>Zoom:</p>  </td> <td>  </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>Auto:</p> <p>The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.</p> </td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can also adjust the screen shape by pressing ASPECT (A) on the control panel or ASPECT on the remote controller. [19] 	Aspect ratio of incoming signal		4:3	16:9	<p>Normal: For original shape of 4:3</p> 		<p>Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9</p> 		<p>Just:</p> 		<p>Zoom:</p> 		<p>Auto:</p> <p>The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.</p>	
		Aspect ratio of incoming signal														
		4:3	16:9													
		<p>Normal: For original shape of 4:3</p> 														
		<p>Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9</p> 														
<p>Just:</p> 																
<p>Zoom:</p> 																
<p>Auto:</p> <p>The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.</p>																
	NTSC/PAL	<p>Select the color system (NTSC or PAL) of your playback disc. [Initial]; PAL</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn off the power and turn on it again to make the new setting effective. 														
Clock	Time Set	<p>You can adjust the internal clock on the unit. [10] [Initial]; 1: 00 AM</p>														
	12Hours / 24Hours	<p>12Hours / 24Hours, [11] [Initial]; 12Hours</p>														

*¹ Adjustable only when the source is DVD, VCD, JPEG, or MPEG disc.

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Menu Language ^{*1}	Select the initial disc menu language.
Audio Language ^{*1}	Select the initial audio language.
Sub Title ^{*1}	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (OFF).
OSD Language ^{*1}	Select the language for some indications shown on the external monitor.
Monitor Type 	<p>Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16:9: [Initial]; Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9. • 4:3LB [LETTER BOX]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen. • 4:3PS [PAN SCAN]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen. Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.
OSD Position 	<p>Select the position of the on-screen bar. [24]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: [Initial]; Higher position • 2: Lower position
File Type	<p>Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio: [Initial]; Plays back MP3/WMA/WAV files. • Picture: Plays back JPEG files. • Video: Plays back MPEG 1/2 files.

^{*1} For the language settings, see also the language codes list on page 48.

^{*2} Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

Indications

Selectable settings, [reference page]

D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)^{*1}

You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.

- **AUTO** : Select this to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software).
- **ON**: [Initial]; Select this to always use this function.

Speaker Size^{*1}

Speaker Size

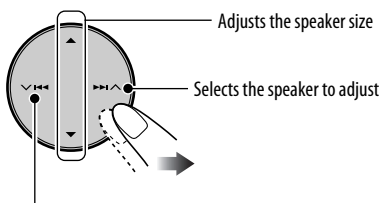


You can adjust the speaker size setting for the front/rear speakers and the center speaker according to the speaker you use when the source is a disc and playback stops.

- **Front SPK**: Small, Large [Initial]
- **Center SPK**: None [Initial], Small, Large^{<1>}
- **Rear SPK** : None^{<2>}, Small, Large [Initial]
- **Subwoofer**: On [Initial], Off^{<2>}
- Speaker size: “Large” for 13-cm diameter or more; “Small” for 13 cm or less.

^{<1>} Not selectable when “Large” is selected neither for the front nor the rear speakers.

^{<2>} Not effective when the surround function is not in effect.



Selects the speaker to adjust

- When selecting “None” or “Off” for all speakers other than the front...
 - Disc Surround setting [38] automatically changes to “Surround Off”.
 - Disc Surround setting [38] becomes unadjustable.

^{*1} Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

^{*2} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

Indications

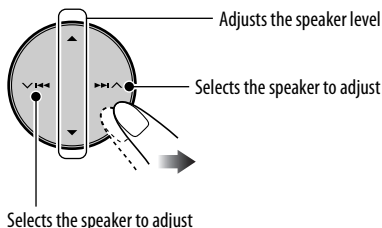
Selectable settings, [reference page]

Speaker Level^{*1}

You can adjust the output level of each speaker monitoring the test tone.

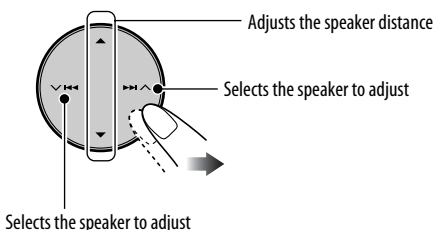
Press and hold ENT to activate (or cancel) the test tone.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Subwoofer^{*2}/Rear Lch:** adjust the output level of each speaker in the range of -10dB +10dB. [Initial]; 00dB

Speaker Distance^{*4}

You can adjust the speaker output timing separately for each speaker according to the distance from the speakers to the listening position.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Rear Lch:** adjust the speaker distance in the range of 15 cm to 600 cm in 15-cm step. [Initial]; 120 cm (for center speaker), 150 cm (for the other speakers)



^{*1} When activating the test tone, white noise comes out and cycles between the speakers activated on "Speaker Size" [35] for about 2 seconds each. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly while the test tone comes out from the target speaker to adjust the settings (the test tone continues to come out from the target speaker during the adjustment).

^{*2} The setting is effective only when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on "Subwoofer" [39] for other cases.


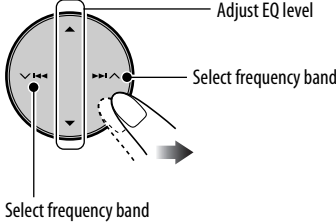
^{*3} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

^{*4} Unselectable when all the speakers other than front ones are deactivated on "Speaker Size" [35].

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Tuner	IF Band Width	<p>In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard.</p> <p>Auto: [Initial]; Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)</p> <p>Wide: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.</p>
	AV Input	<p>You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks.</p> <p>Off: Select when you do not need AV-Input as a source (AV-IN is deleted from the source items).</p> <p>Audio&Video: [Initial]; Select this when connecting an AV component such as a VCR.</p> <p>Audio: Select this when connecting an audio component such as a cassette deck.</p> <p>Camera^{*1}: Select when connecting the rear view camera.</p> <p>Camera Reverse^{*1}: The mirror image of the rear view is displayed on the monitor. (The monitor on the receiver only; the normal rear view appears on the external monitor.)</p>
Input	External Input	<p>Changer/iPod/D. Player^{*2}: [Initial]; To use a JVC CD changer, iPod, JVC D. player, etc. [42, 45]</p> <p>External Input: To use any external component other than above. [44]</p>

^{*1} Reverse lamp wire connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume). The rear view through the camera appears on the monitor in "Full" aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position.


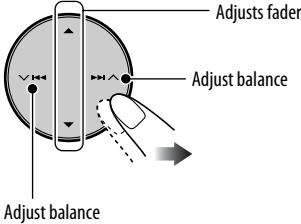
^{*2} The source indication changes automatically depending on the type of external component connected.

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]	
Others	Beep	You can deactivate the key-touch tone if you do not want it to beep each time you press a button. Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting	Off: [Initial]; Cancels. Muting1/Muting2: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
Disc Surround ^{*1}	Surround Off	Select to deactivate the surround function.
	Surround On	Select to activate the surround function. [23] Auto [Initial], Dolby PLII Movie ^{*2} , Dolby PLII Music ^{*2}
Equalizer ^{*3}	Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User 1/User 2/User 3 	You can select a preset equalizer settings. [Initial]; Flat You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in User 1/2/3. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Select the frequency band to adjust— 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1kHz, 2.5kHz, 6.3kHz, 15kHz. 2 Adjust the level of the selected band (-05 to +05). 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to adjust other frequency bands. 4 Press ENT. 5 Select the preset name (User 1, User 2, User 3) you want to store the setting into. 6 Press ENT. 

^{*1} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

^{*2} For the menu items of “Dolby PLII Movie” and “Dolby PLII Music”, see page 23.

^{*3} Not selectable when DISC is the source and the surround function is activated (see page 23).

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
<p>Fader/Balance</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a menu titled 'Fader/Balance' with a speaker icon. Below the title are four speaker icons arranged in a circle. A vertical slider is positioned in the center, with '00' in the middle. To the right of the slider is a horizontal slider, also with '00' in the middle. At the bottom left are navigation arrows and '00'. At the bottom right is 'Exit (ENT)'.</p>	<p>Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Upmost—front only • Downmost—rear only <p>When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (00).</p> <p>Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leftmost—left only • Rightmost—right only <p>Press ENT to finish the procedure.</p>  <p>The diagram shows a circular control knob. A vertical slider is labeled 'Adjusts fader'. A horizontal slider is labeled 'Adjust balance'. A hand is shown adjusting the horizontal slider. An arrow points to the right from the horizontal slider.</p>
<p>Volume Adjust</p>	<p>Adjust and store the volume level of each source except FM. Once you have made an adjustment, it is memorized, and the volume level will automatically increase or decrease by adjusted level when you change the source.</p> <p>Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -12 (min.) to +12 (max.) [Initial: 00]
<p>Subwoofer</p>	<p>Adjust the settings below in the submenu:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phase: Subwoofer phase. Select either “Normal” or “Reverse”, which reproduces a better sound. • Level*¹: Subwoofer output level. Level: -06 (dB) to +08 (dB) [Initial: 00 (dB)].
<p>High Pass Filter</p>	<p>Through: [Initial]; Select when the subwoofer is not connected.</p> <p>On: Select when the subwoofer is connected.</p>
<p>Crossover</p>	<p>Adjust the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer.</p> <p>80Hz, 120Hz [Initial], 150Hz</p>

*¹ The setting is ineffective when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on “Speaker Level” [36] for the cases.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Sound	Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this receiver. Amplifier Off: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. Low Power: VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) High Power: [Initial]; VOL 00 – VOL 50
	Rear Speaker* ¹	You can activate/deactivate the rear speakers. Off, On [Initial]
Mode	Mono* ²	Activate when the FM broadcasting is hard to receive. [12] Off [Initial], On
	DX / Local* ²	Select FM reception sensitivity. [12] DX [Initial], Local
	SSM* ²	Search for FM stations and store them as preset stations automatically. [13]
	Title Entry* ³	You can enter names for preset stations, specific source name for AV Input and External Input, etc. [41]
	Off/Intro/Repeat/Random* ⁴	You can select the playback mode of the disc in the unit and the discs in the CD changer [28, 43]
List		Select radio stations, folders, files and discs from the list on the screen. [14, 29, 42] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The accessible lists differ depending on the sources.
Dual Zone		Activate/deactivate the Dual Zone function. [30] Off [Initial], On, On-Surround

*¹ Functions only when Dual Zone is activated. (See page 30)

*² Appears only when Tuner is the source.

*³ Appears when the source is below: Tuner, AV-IN, EXT-IN, CD-CH, or conventional CD.

*⁴ Selectable playback mode differs depending on the disc type. For the available playback mode, see page 28 and 43.

Other main functions

Assigning titles to the sources

You can assign titles to station frequencies and CDs (both in this receiver and in the CD changer), and change the source names of AV-INPUT and EXT-INPUT.

Sources	Maximum number of characters
FM/AM tuner	Up to 16 characters (up to 30 station frequencies)
AV-INPUT/EXT-INPUT	Up to 16 characters
DISC/CD-CH	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)

- You can assign a title only to the conventional CD (CD-DA).

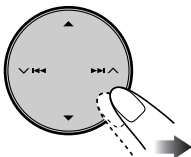
1 Select the source.

- For FM/AM tuner: Tune in to a station.
- For AV-IN/EXT-IN: Select the source.
- For a CD in this receiver: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select a disc number.

2



3 Select "Mode", then "Title Entry".



Ex.: When you select "AV-IN" as the source

4 Assign a title.

- Select a character set.



- Select a character.



- For available characters, see page 3.

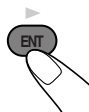
- Move to the next (or previous) character position.



- Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.



5 Finish the procedure.



To erase the entire title

In step 3 on the left column...



CD changer operations

About the CD changer

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

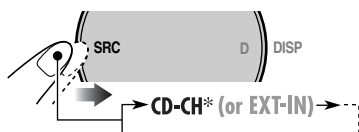
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.

Before operating your CD changer:

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- You cannot control and play any DVD Video/Audio, VCD, WMA, WAV, MPEG, or JPEG disc in the CD changer.

All tracks of the inserted discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the magazine from the CD changer.

1



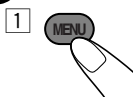
* If you have changed "External Input" setting to "External Input" (see page 37), you cannot select the CD changer.



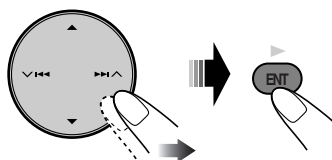
Selected disc number

2

Select a disc.

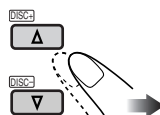


- 2 Select "List", then the disc you want to play back.

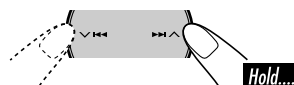


- When the current disc is an MP3 disc, you can move to FOLDER LIST by pressing **▶▶** / **▲**.

When using the remote controller....



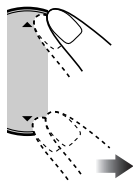
To fast-forward or reverse the track



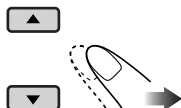
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3 discs)

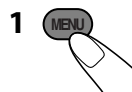


When using the remote controller...

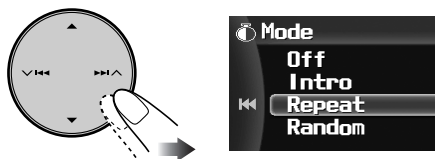


Selecting the playback modes

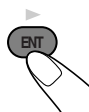
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.



2 Select "Mode", then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
------	-------------------------------

Track:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Folder*:	First tracks of all folders in the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Disc:	First tracks of all the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ INT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
------	------------------

Track:	The current track. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

Mode	Plays at random
------	-----------------

Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
All:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

* Only while playing an MP3 disc

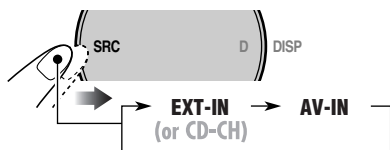
External component operations

Playing an external component

You can connect an external component to LINE IN plug and VIDEO IN plug on the rear, or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the KS-U57 Line Input Adapter (not supplied) or KS-U58 AUX Input Adapter (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

1



AV-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN and/or VIDEO IN.

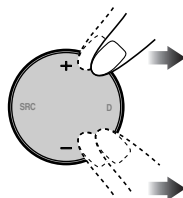
- To change the setting of AV INPUT, see page 37.

EXT-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- If "EXT-IN" does not appear, see page 37 and select the external input (EXT-IN).

2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 38.)

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

- You can also use the equivalent buttons on the remote controller in the operations below.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:

Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **Interface adapter for iPod**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- **D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.

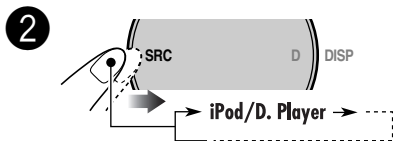
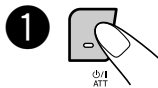
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Cautions:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

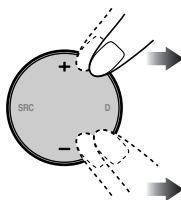
Preparations:

Make sure "Changer/iPod/D. Player" is selected for the external input setting, see page 37.



Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused (iPod) or stopped (D. player) previously.

- 3 Adjust the volume.



- 4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 38.)

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause (iPod) or stop (D. player) playback



To resume playback, press it again.

To fast-forward or reverse the track

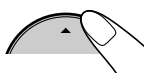


To go to the next or previous tracks



Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu of the iPod or D. player.



Now the ▲/▼/◀/▶/◀◀/▶▶/▲ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*1.

- 2 Select the desired menu.



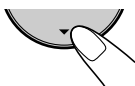
For iPod:

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔
Composers ↔ Genres ↔ Songs ↔

For D. player:

Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔
Track ↔ Genre ↔

- 3 Confirm the selection.




To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

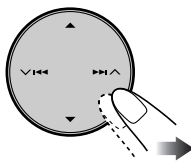
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until the desired track is confirmed.
- Holding ▼ |◀◀/▶▶| ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

- *1 The menu selecting mode will be canceled:
- If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.
 - When you confirm the selection of a track.

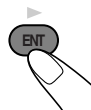
Selecting the playback modes

- 1 

- 2 Select "Mode", then your desired playback mode.



- 3 Finish the procedure.





Selectable modes




Off

Deactivates Repeat/Random playback.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
One:	Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode One" for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  lights up.
All:	Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode All" for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

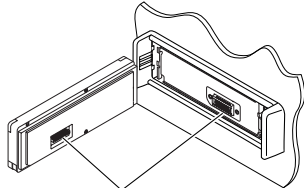
Mode	Plays at random
Album:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Album" of the iPod <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  lights up.
Song:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  lights up.
On:	Functions the same as "Random Play On" of the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the receiver turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this receiver may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Warped disc



Sticker



Sticker residue



Stick-on label

Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	IK	Inupiak	RN	Kirundi
AB	Abkhazian	IN	Indonesian	RO	Rumanian
AF	Afrikaans	IS	Icelandic	RW	Kinyarwanda
AM	Ameharic	IW	Hebrew	SA	Sanskrit
AR	Arabic	JI	Yiddish	SD	Sindhi
AS	Assamese	JW	Javanese	SG	Sangho
AY	Aymara	KA	Georgian	SH	Serbo-Croatian
AZ	Azerbaijani	KK	Kazakh	SI	Singhalese
BA	Bashkir	KL	Greenlandic	SK	Slovak
BE	Byelorussian	KM	Cambodian	SL	Slovenian
BG	Bulgarian	KN	Kannada	SM	Samoaan
BH	Bihari	KO	Korean (KOR)	SN	Shona
BI	Bislama	KS	Kashmiri	SO	Somali
BN	Bengali, Bangla	KU	Kurdish	SQ	Albanian
BO	Tibetan	KY	Kirghiz	SR	Serbian
BR	Breton	LA	Latin	SS	Siswati
CA	Catalan	LN	Lingala	ST	Sesotho
CO	Corsican	LO	Laothian	SU	Sundanese
CS	Czech	LT	Lithuanian	SW	Swahili
CY	Welsh	LV	Latvian, Lettish	TA	Tamil
DZ	Bhutani	MG	Malagasy	TE	Telugu
EL	Greek	MI	Maori	TG	Tajik
EO	Esperanto	MK	Macedonian	TH	Thai
ET	Estonian	ML	Malayalam	TI	Tigrinya
EU	Basque	MN	Mongolian	TK	Turkmen
FA	Persian	MO	Moldavian	TL	Tagalog
FI	Finnish	MR	Marathi	TN	Setswana
FJ	Fiji	MS	Malay (MAY)	TO	Tonga
FO	Faroese	MT	Maltese	TR	Turkish
FY	Frisian	MY	Burmese	TS	Tsonga
GA	Irish	NA	Nauru	TT	Tatar
GD	Scots Gaelic	NE	Nepali	TW	Twi
GL	Galician	NO	Norwegian	UK	Ukrainian
GN	Guarani	OC	Occitan	UR	Urdu
GU	Gujarati	OM	(Afan) Oromo	UZ	Uzbek
HA	Hausa	OR	Oriya	VI	Vietnamese
HI	Hindi	PA	Panjabi	VO	Volapuk
HR	Croatian	PL	Polish	WO	Wolof
HU	Hungarian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	XH	Xhosa
HY	Armenian	PT	Portuguese	YO	Yoruba
IA	Interlingua	QU	Quechua	ZU	Zulu
IE	Interlingue	RM	Rhaeto-Romance		

More about this receiver

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the receiver, you can also turn on the power.

Selecting the sources

- When no disc is loaded in the receiver and Dual Zone is off, “DISC” cannot be selected.
- Without connecting to the CD changer, “CD-CH” cannot be selected.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to the music/picture/movie files and their file names.
- This receiver can also play back 8 cm discs.
- This receiver can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.
 - The first track will be skipped if a different type of file is detected first.
- When a disc has been loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source (without activating Dual Zone), disc play starts automatically.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This receiver can play back either MP3/WMA/WAV files, JPEG files, or MPEG files if a disc includes any of the files. Set the playback file type on AV Menu (page 34) before playing back a disc containing files of different kinds.
- Only for CD-R/CD-RW: This receiver can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some Recordable/Rewritable discs may not play back on this receiver because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
 - Discs are dirty or scratched.
 - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the receiver.
 - The pickup lens inside the receiver is dirty.
 - Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
 - Discs which are not written in UDF-Bridge Format (eg. UDF format or ISO format).
 - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.).
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.
- Do not use the following discs:
 - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
 - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.
 Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damages to discs.

Playing an MP3/WMA/WAV disc

- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This receiver can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA/WAV files.
- This receiver can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
 - Bit rate: MP3: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
 - Sampling frequency:
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for WMA)
44.1 kHz (for WAV)
 - Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav>).
 - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
 - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
 - Romeo: up to 128 characters
 - Joliet: up to 64 characters
 - Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This receiver can recognize the total of 3500 files, 250 folders (maximum of 999 files per folder).

- This receiver can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This receiver cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded in an unappropriated format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - WMA files recorded with MBR (Multiple Bit Rate) format.
 - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATAC3, etc.

Playing a JPEG disc

- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution. (If a file has been recorded at a resolution of more than 640 x 480, it will take a long time to be shown.)
- This System can play only baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.
Baseline JPEG format: Used for digital cameras, web, etc.
Progressive JPEG format: Used for web.
Lossless JPEG format: An old type and rarely used now.
- If progressive or lossless JPEG files are played back, a black screen appears. In this case, stop playback and select a baseline JPEG file. Note that it may take a long time to select another file.

Playing an MPEG disc

- This receiver can play back MPEG 1/2 files with the extension code <.mpg>.
- Audio stream should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer 2.

AV Menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
After you change any of these language settings, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3PS [PAN SCAN]” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]” with some DVDs.
This depends on how they are recorded.
- If you change the “Amplifier Gain” setting from “High Power” to “Low Power” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30”, the receiver automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30”.

Other main functions

- If you try to assign a title to a 31st station or 31st disc, “Name Full” flashes on the monitor. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc on the receiver.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
 - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
 - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 18 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 32). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:










When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

On-screen guide icons

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (for DVD only).
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (for DVD only).
-  : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (for DVD only).
-  : Playback
-  : Pause
-  : Forward Slow Motion Playback (for DVD and VCD only)
-  : Reverse Slow Motion Playback (for DVD only)
-  : Forward search
-  : Reverse search

Sound modes (preset frequency level settings)

The list below shows the preset frequency level settings for each sound mode (see page 38).

Sound mode	Preset equalizing values						
	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	-02	-01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound cannot be heard from the speakers. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
		Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The receiver does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote controller does not work. 	Dual Zone is activated (see page 30). While Dual Zone is activated, remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Signal” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the source. • Starts playback on the external component connected to the VIDEO IN plug. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
FM/AM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSM automatic presetting does not work. 	Store stations manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static noise while listening to the radio. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable disc cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the disc with the component which you used for recording.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be recognized. 	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Not Support” appears on the monitor. 	Use a file format the unit supports (see page 4).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Disc Error” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert the disc correctly. • Insert a disc recorded and finalized.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Files” appears on the monitor. 	The disc does not have playable files. Insert a disc containing playable files.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No playback picture appears on the monitor. 	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No picture appears on the external monitor at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connect the video cord correctly. Select a correct input on the monitor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The edges of the picture are missing on the screen. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select an aspect other than “Zoom”. (See page 33) Select “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]”. (See page 34.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The playback pictures cannot be shown correctly. 	The color system (NTSC/PAL) is not correct. Set it correctly (see page 33).
MP3/WMA/WAV playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use a disc with tracks recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) Add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to their file names.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Noise is generated. 	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to files of different types.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A longer readout time is required. 	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tracks cannot be played back as you have intended them to play. 	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Elapsed playing time is not correct. 	This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name). 	This receiver can only display alphabets (A – Z, a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.	
JPEG/MPEG playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use a disc with JPEG/MPEG files recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) Add the extension code <.jpg> or <.mpg> to their file names.
CD changer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insert a disc into the magazine. Insert disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Magazine” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the magazine.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset01” – “Reset07” appears on the monitor. 	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The CD changer does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Update the firmware version of the D. player. Charge the battery of the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Disconnect” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops while playing back iPod. 	The headphones are disconnected from iPod during playback. Restart the playback operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. “Error 01” appears on the monitor when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Files” or “No Track” appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 1” – “Reset 7” appears on the monitor. 	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 8” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:

Front: 50 W per channel

Rear: 50 W per channel

Continuous Power Output (RMS):

Front: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Rear: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)

Equalizer Control Range:

Frequencies: 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz

Level: ± 10 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

Line-In Level/Impedance:

1.5 V/20 k Ω load

Line-Out Level/Impedance:

Center-Out Level/Impedance:

Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:

2.5 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)

Color System: NTSC/PAL

Video Input (composite): 1 V_{p-p}/75 Ω

Video Output (composite): 1 V_{p-p}/75 Ω

Other Terminals:

2nd AUDIO OUT, CD changer

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:

FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz

AM: 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)

50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:

16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)

Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB

Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz

Stereo Separation: 35 dB

Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[AM Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 μ V

Selectivity: 35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)

Number of Channels: 2 channels (stereo)

Frequency Response:

DVD fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz

fs=192 kHz: 16 Hz to 88 000 Hz

VCD, CD: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz

Dynamic Range: 93 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 95 dB

Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit

MP3 : Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

WMA: Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

MONITOR SECTION

Screen: 3.5-inch wide liquid crystal panel

Number of Pixels: 224 640 pixels

Drive Method:

TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format

Color System: NTSC/PAL

GENERAL

Power Requirement:

Operating Voltage:

DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)

Grounding System: Negative ground

Allowable Operating Temperature:

0°C to +40°C

Dimensions (W \times H \times D):

Installation Size (approx.):

182 mm \times 52 mm \times 160 mm

Panel Size (approx.):

188 mm \times 58 mm \times 12 mm

Mass (approx.):

1.9 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

**Ada MASALAH dengan cara
pengoperasian?**

Setel kembali unit Anda

Lihat halaman mengenai Bagaimana mereset unit anda

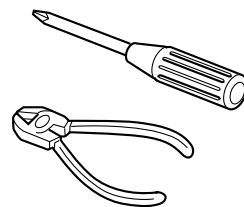
JVC



EN, IN

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0206MNMMDWJEIN



ENGLISH

This receiver is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

INDONESIA

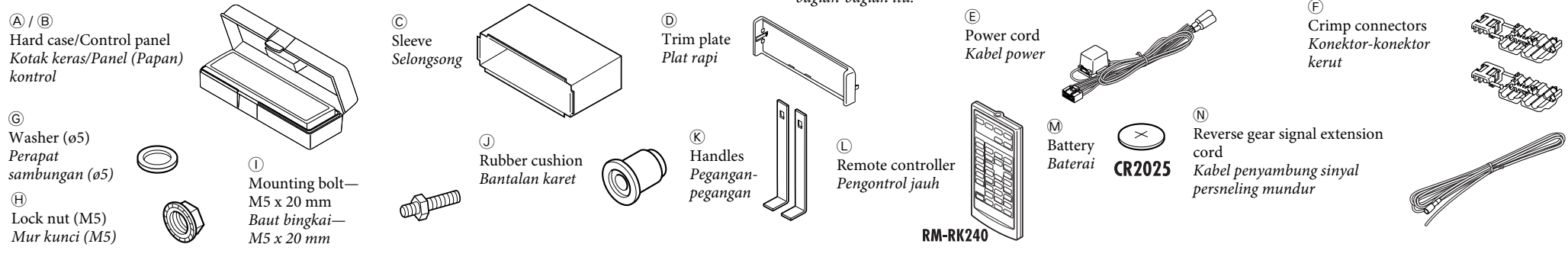
Alat penerima ini didisain untuk beroperasi hanya pada **12 V DC, sistem listrik tanah NEGATIVE**. Jika kendaraan anda tidak memiliki sistem ini, sebuah pembalik tegangan diperlukan, yang mana dapat dibeli di penyalur-penyalur audio mobil JVC.

PERINGATAN

- JANGAN memasang unit pada tempat-tempat dimana;
 - mungkin menghalangi pengoperasian stir dan pengungkit gigi persneling, yang dapat mengakibatkan kecelakaan lalu lintas.
 - mungkin menghalangi pengoperasian dari alat-alat keselamatan seperti kantong-kantong udara, yang dapat mengakibatkan kecelakaan fatal.
 - mungkin menghalangi pandangan.
- JANGAN mengoperasikan unit pada waktu menggerakkan stir, karena dapat mengakibatkan kecelakaan lalu lintas.
- Pengemudi tidak boleh menonton monitor selagi mengemudi. Jika pengemudi menonton monitor selagi mengemudi maka akan menimbulkan kecerobohan dan mengakibatkan kecelakaan.
- Pengemudi tidak boleh menggunakan headphone selagi mengemudi. Berbahaya menutup suara dari luar selagi mengemudi.
- Jika anda perlu mengoperasikan unit selagi mengemudi, pastikan untuk melihat ke depan dengan hati-hati atau anda akan terlibat kecelakaan lalu lintas.
- Jika rem parkir tidak bekerja, "Parking Brake" berkedip-kedip pada monitor dan tidak ada gambar putar ulang yang akan dipertunjukkan.
 - Peringatan ini muncul hanya jika kabel rem parkir telah tersambung ke sistem rem parkir yang terpasang tetap di dalam mobil.

Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this receiver. After checking them, please set them correctly.



TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
 - * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
 - * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
 - * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Receiver becomes hot.**
 - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
 - * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This receiver does not work at all.**
 - * Have you reset your receiver?

PEMECAHAN MASALAH

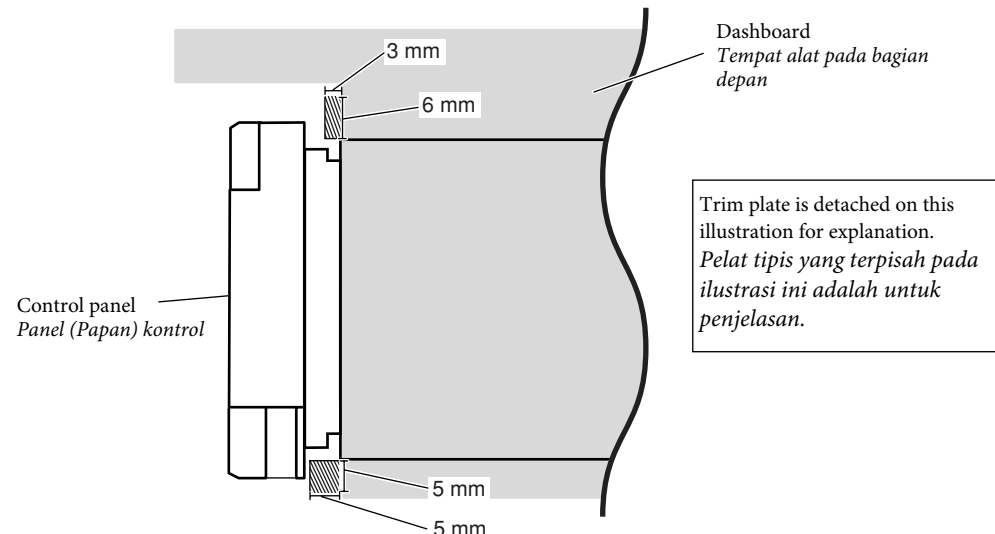
- **Sekring meledak.**
 - * Apakah ujung-ujung merah dan hitam tersambung dengan benar?
- **Power tidak dapat dihidupkan.**
 - * Apakah ujung kuning sudah tersambung?
- **Tidak ada suara dari speaker.**
 - * Apakah ujung keluaran speaker terhubung pendek?
- **Suara terdistorsi.**
 - * Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?
 - * Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?
- **Berisik yang mengganggu suara-suara.**
 - * Apakah terminal tanah belakang tersambung ke casing mobil menggunakan kabel-kabel terpendek dan tertebal?
- **Alat penerima menjadi panas.**
 - * Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?
 - * Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?
- **Alat penerima ini tidak bekerja secara keseluruhan.**
 - * Apakah anda sudah reset (memasang kembali) alat penerima anda?

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this receiver correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear panel to maintain proper ventilation when installed.
- You cannot install the receiver on the car which has any obstacles in the space shown in "Required space for installation" below.

Required space for installation / Ruang yang dibutuhkan untuk pemasangan



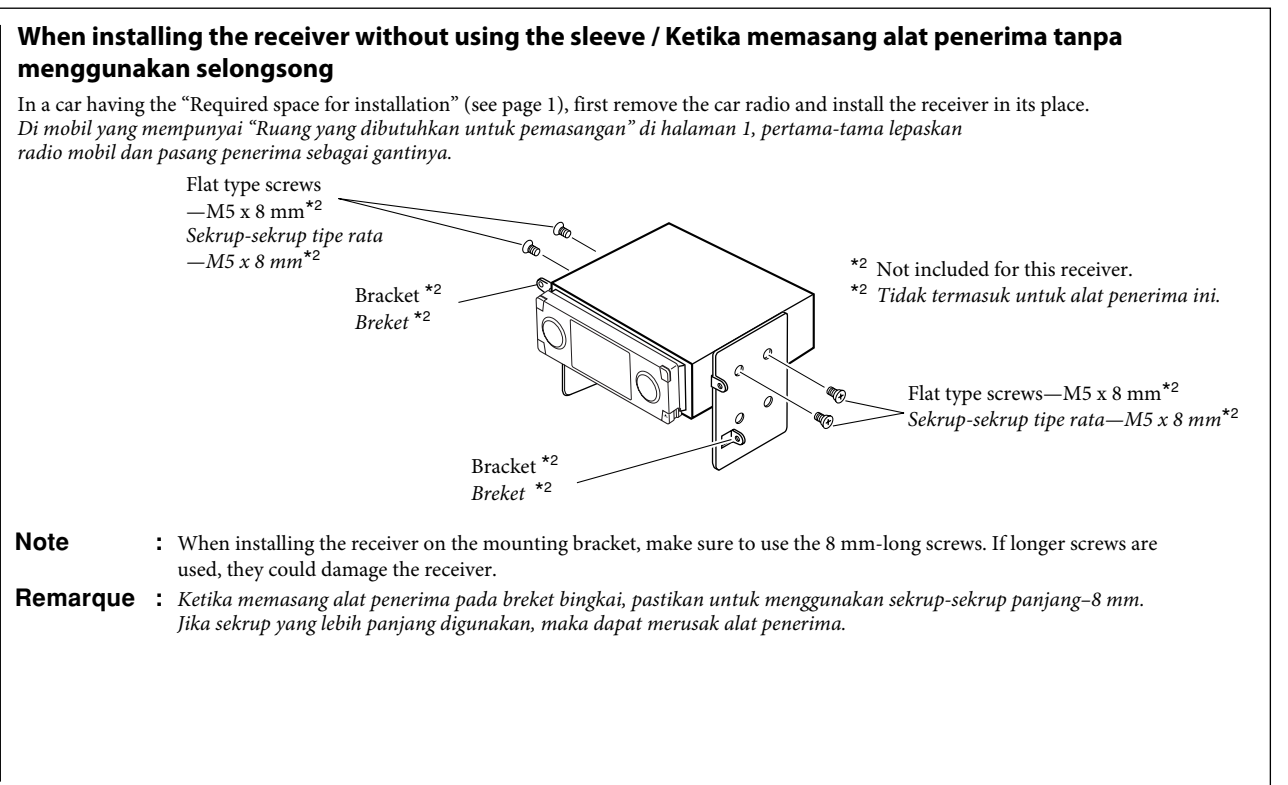
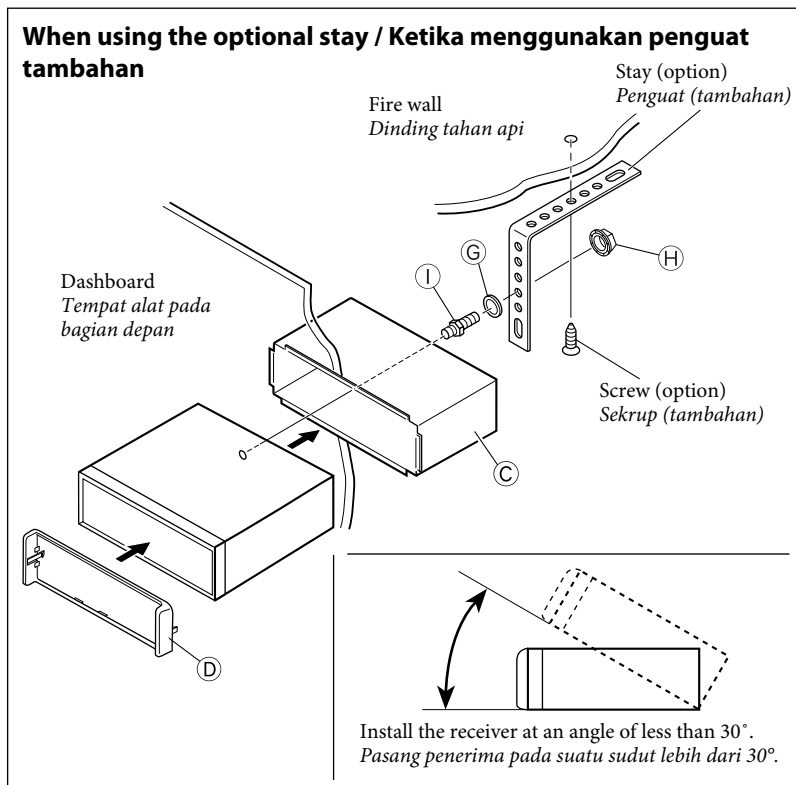
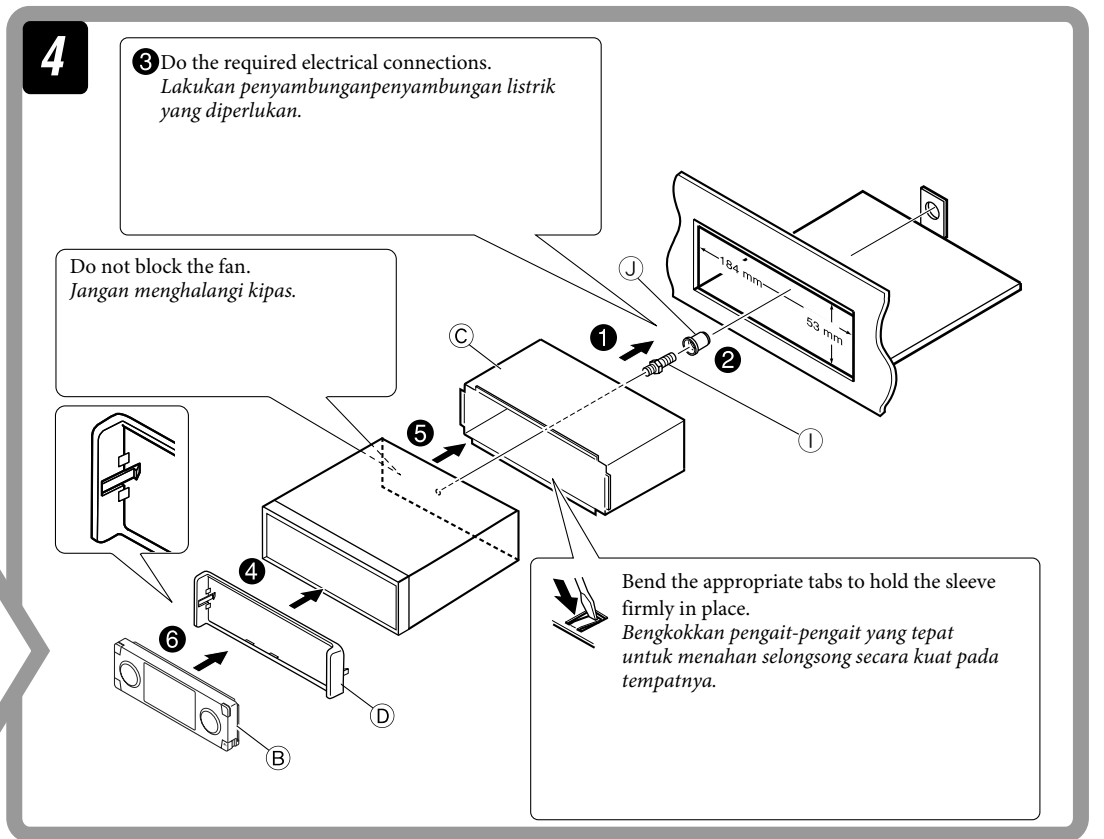
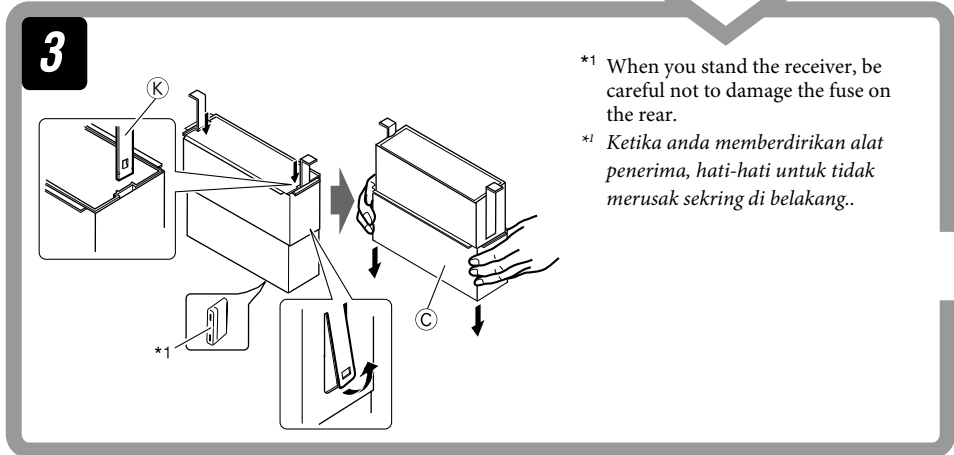
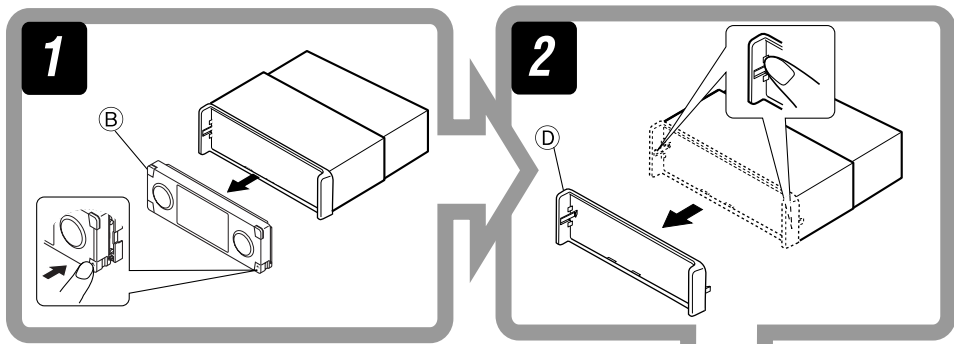
PEMASANGAN (BINGKAI-DALAM DASH)

Ilustrasi berikut menunjukkan sebuah tipe pemasangan. Jika anda mempunyai suatu pertanyaan atau informasi yang diperlukan mengenai alat-alat pemasangan, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC atau sebuah perusahaan yang mensuplai alat-alat.

- Jika anda tidak yakin bagaimana memasang alat penerima ini dengan benar, biarkan dipasang dengan teknisi yang berkualitas.
- Pastikan untuk tidak menghalangi kipas pada bagian belakang panel untuk memelihara ventilasi yang baik pada saat pemasangan.
- Anda tidak dapat memasang radio pada mobil yang memiliki halangan pada ruang yang diperlihatkan pada "Ruang yang dibutuhkan untuk pemasangan" di bawah.

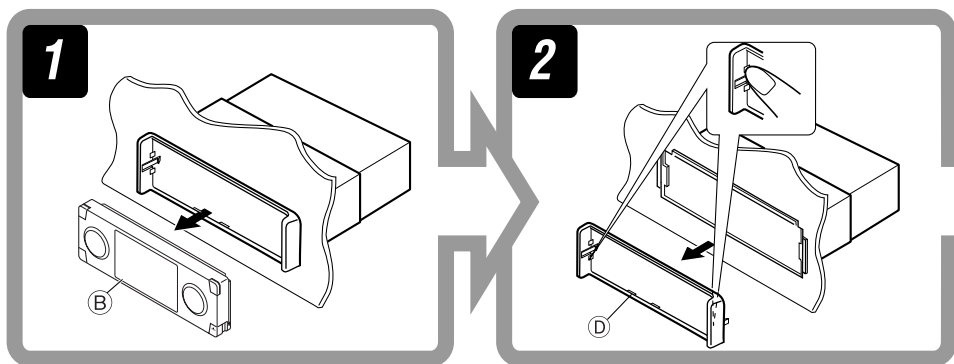
Caution when installing / Hati-hati ketika pemasangan

- Fit the receiver into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.
- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration). Pasangkan radio ke dalam selongsong dengan menggunakan empat sudut dari plat.
- JANGAN menekan panel (yang berbayang di dalam ilustrasi).



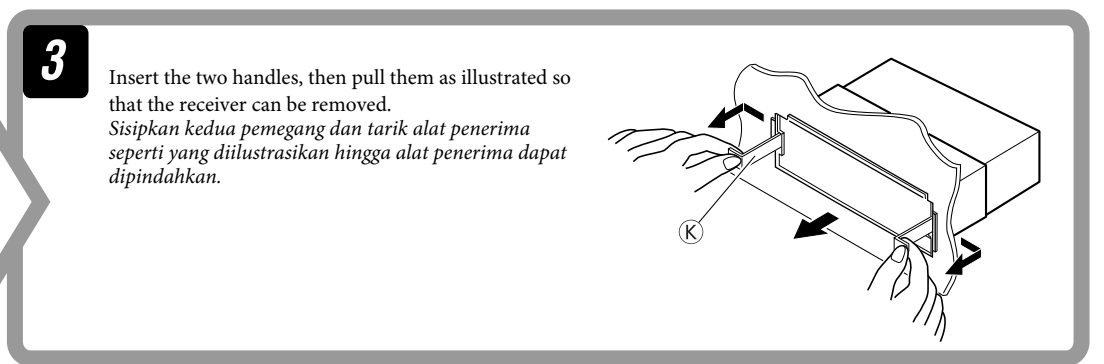
Removing the receiver

Before removing the receiver, release the rear section.



Memindahkan alat penerima

Sebelum memindahkan alat penerima, lepaskan seksi belakang.



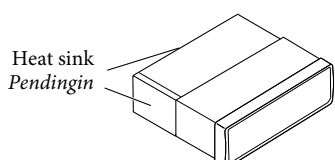
ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the receiver.

• **Be sure to ground this receiver to the car's chassis again after installation.**

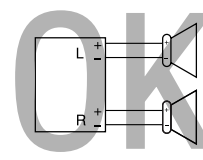
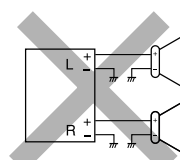
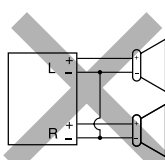
Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amplifier Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 40 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this receiver.



PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the receiver will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



SAMBUNGAN-SAMBUNGAN LISTRIK

Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, kami menyarankan anda memutuskan sambungan terminal negatif baterai dan membuat semua sambungan-sambungan listrik sebelum memasang alat penerima.

• **Pastikan untuk mentanahkan alat penerima ini ke casis mobil kembali setelah pemasangan.**

Catatan:

- Ganti sekering dengan voltase yang sudah ditetapkan. Jika sekering sering meledak, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC anda.
- Disarankan untuk menghubungkan speaker-speker dengan maksimum power lebih dari 50 W (keduanya di belakang dan di depan, dengan sebuah impedansi **4 Ω sampai 8 Ω**). Jika maksimum power kurang dari 50 W, ganti pengaturan "Amplifier Gain" ("PENAMBAH PENGUAT") untuk mencegah speaker-speker dari kerusakan (lihat halaman 40 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).
- Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, tutup ujung-ujung terminal-terminal TIDAK DIGUNAKAN dengan pita isolasi.
- Pendingin menjadi sangat panas setelah digunakan. Hati-hati untuk tidak menyentuhnya ketika memindahkan alat penerima ini.

TINDAKAN-TINDAKAN PENCEGAHAN pada suplai power dan sambungan-sambungan speaker:

- **JANGAN sambungkan ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke baterai mobil; sebaliknya, alat penerima tersebut akan secara serius rusak.**
- **SEBELUM menyambung ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke speaker-speker, cek perkabelan speaker dalam mobil anda.**

A Typical Connections / Ciri khas sambungan-sambungan

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this receiver.

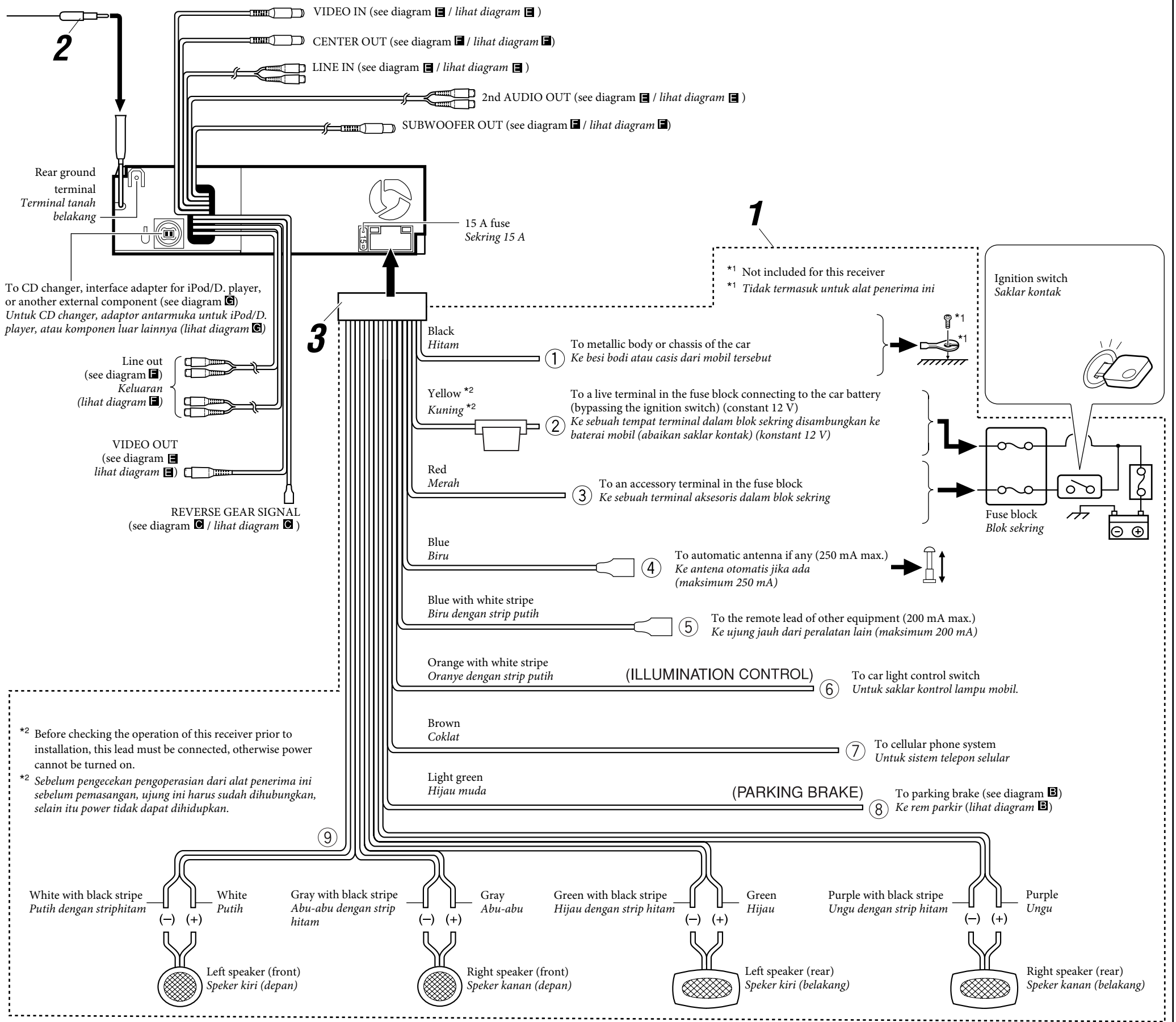
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the receiver.

Sebelum penyambungan: Cek perkabelan dalam mobil dengan hati-hati. Penyambungan yang tidak benar mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan serius pada alat penerima.

Ujung dari kabel power dan beberapa konektor dari bodi mobil mungkin berbeda dalam warna.

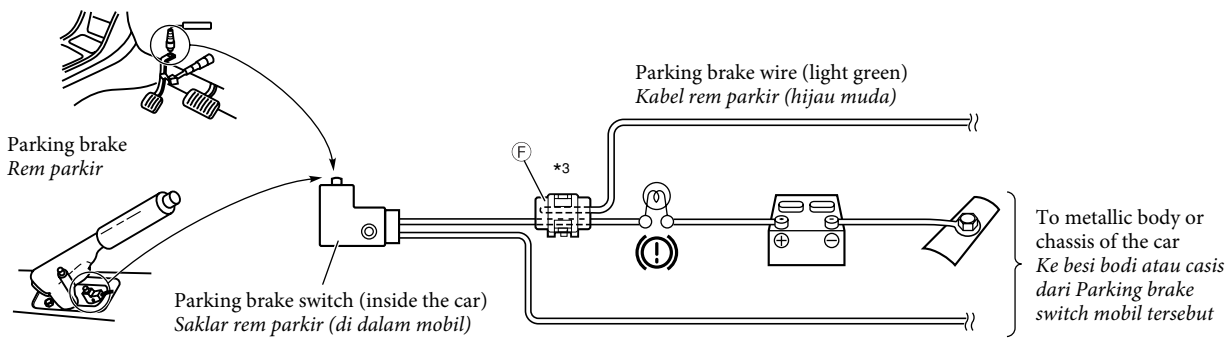
- 1 Sambungkan ujung berwarna dari kabel power dalam urutan spesifikasi pada ilustrasi di bawah.
- 2 Sambungkan kabel antenna.
- 3 Akhirnya sambungkan dudukan kabel ke alat penerima.



*2 Before checking the operation of this receiver prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
*2 Sebelum pengecekan pengoperasian dari alat penerima ini sebelum pemasangan, ujung ini harus sudah dihubungkan, selain itu power tidak dapat dihidupkan.

B Connecting the parking brake wire / Menyambung kabel rem parkir

Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.
Sambungkan kabel rem parkir ke sistem rem parkir yang terpasang tetap dalam mobil.

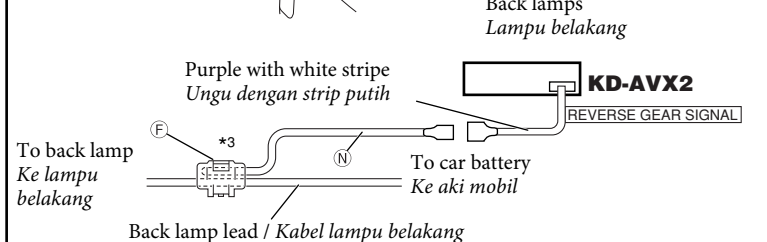


C Connecting the back camera lead / Menghubungkan kabel kamera belakang

Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk.
Tempatkan kabel kamera belakang ke dalam bagasi mobil.

Back lamp lead / Kabel lampu belakang

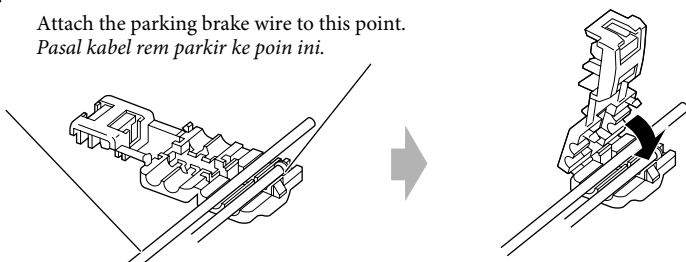
Back lamps / Lampu belakang



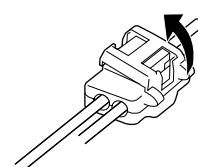
D Connecting the crimp connector*3 / Connexion de la cosse sertie*3

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
Kabel yang menyambungkan baterai dan saklar rem parkir.

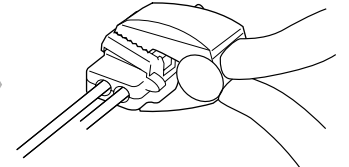
Attach the parking brake wire to this point.
Pasal kabel rem parkir ke poin ini.



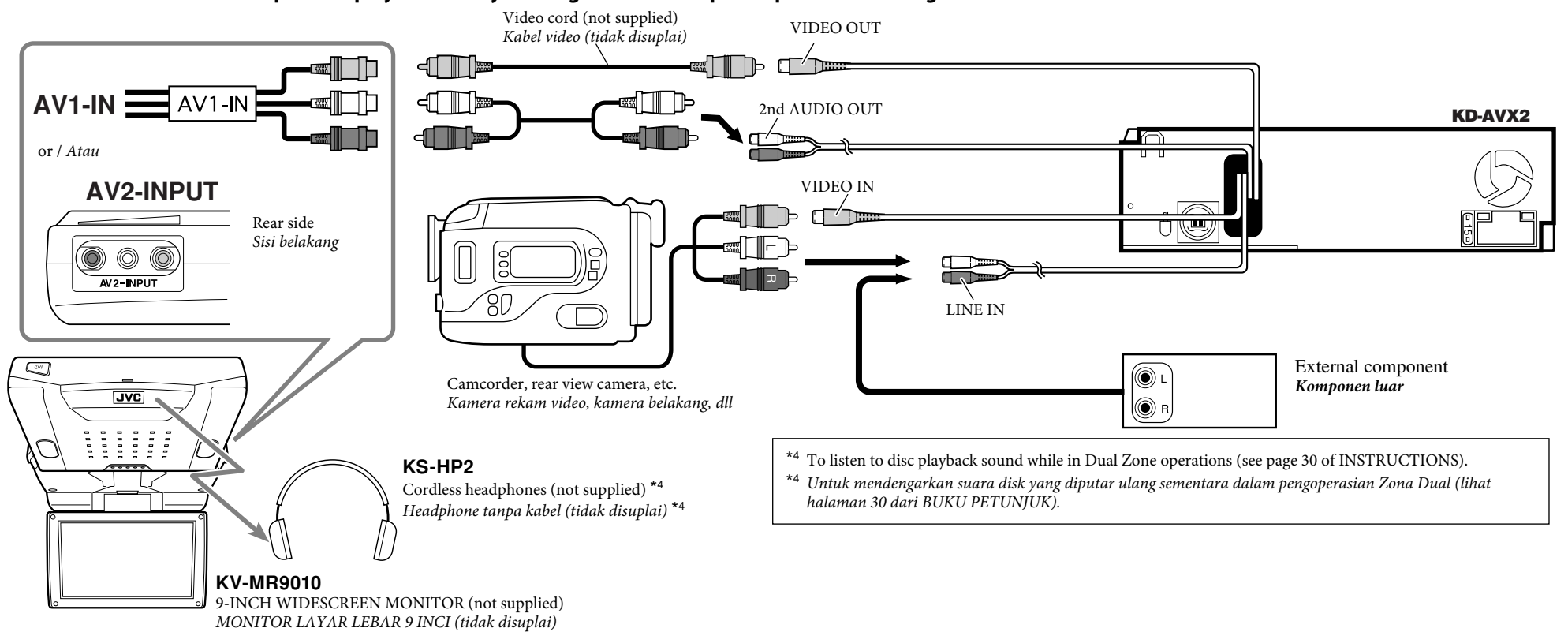
Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
Hubungkan bagian logam dari konektor kerut ke kabel-kabel di dalam.



Pinch the crimp firmly.
Jepit konektor dengan kuat.



E Connections for external component playback / Penyambungan untuk komponen permainan-ulang eksternal



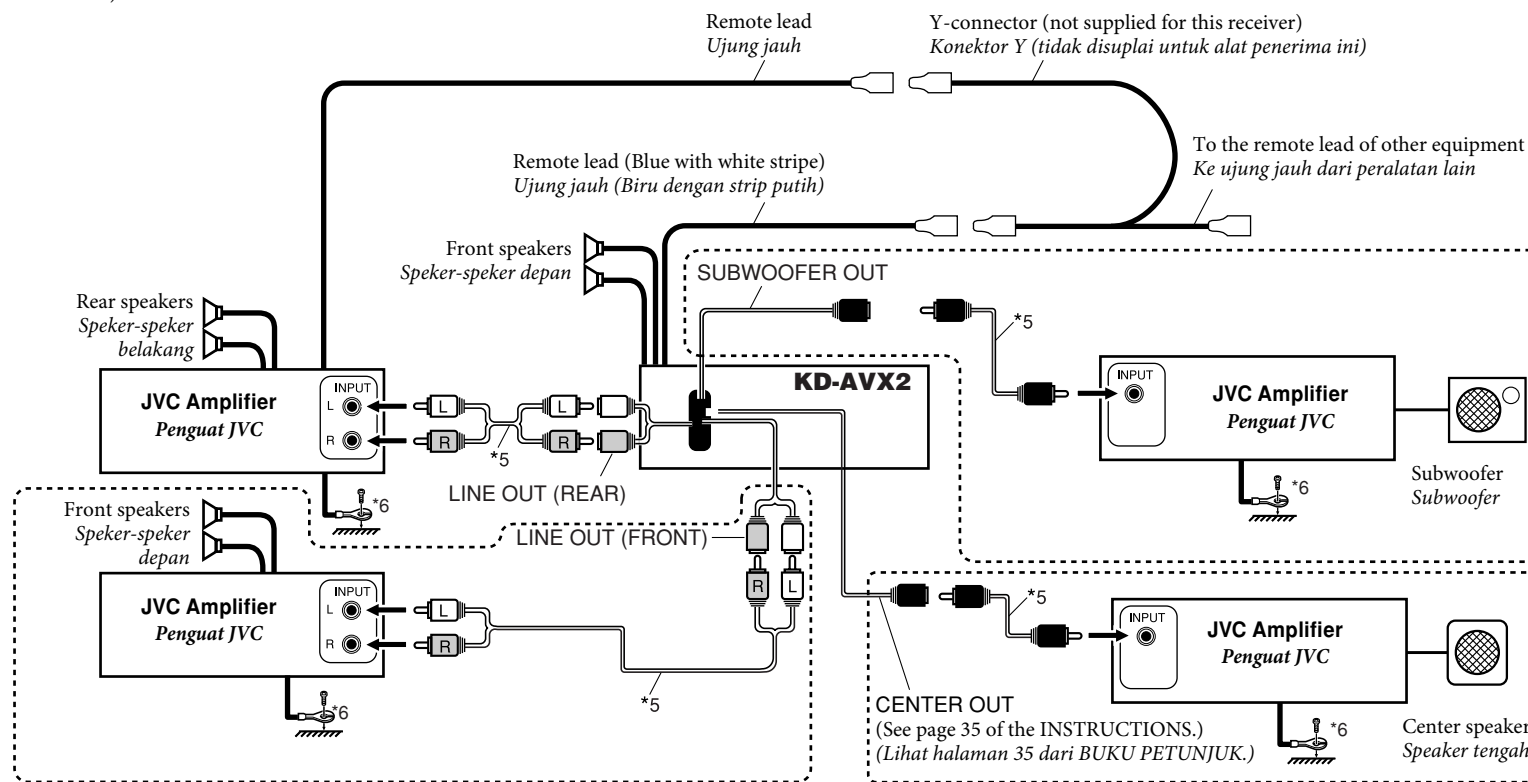
F Connecting the external amplifiers / Penyambungan penguat luar

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this receiver.
- **For amplifier only:**
 - Disconnect the speakers from this receiver, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this receiver unused.
 - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the receiver. See page 40 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

Anda dapat menyambungkan penguat-penguat untuk meningkatkan sistem stereo mobil anda.

- Sambungkan ujung jauh (biru dengan strip putih) ke ujung jauh dari peralatan lain sehingga dapat dikontrol melalui alat penerima ini.
- **Hanya untuk penguat saja:**
 - Putuskan sambungan speaker-speker dari alat penerima ini, sambungkan ini ke penguat. Biarkan ujung speaker dari alat penerima ini tidak digunakan.
 - Anda dapat mematikan penguat (amplifier) yang terpasang tetap dan mengirim sinyal audio hanya ke penguat (amplifier) luar untuk mendapatkan suara yang jelas dan menghindari peningkatan panas di dalam radio. Lihat halaman 40 dari BUKU PETUNJUK (bagian yang terpisah).



G Connecting other external components / Menyambung komponen eksternal yang lain

CAUTION:

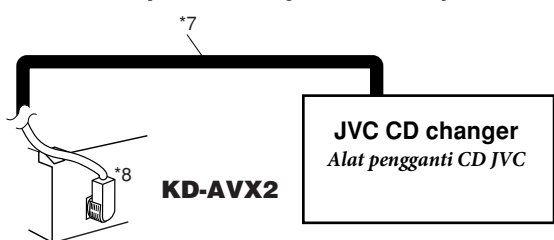
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the receiver is turned off.

PERINGATAN:

Sebelum menghubungkan komponen luar, pastikan penerima sudah dimatikan.

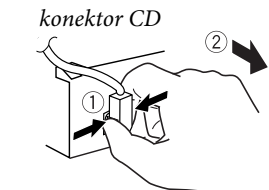
JVC CD changer / Alat pengganti CD JVC

- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 37 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Aturlah "External Input" ke "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (lihat halaman 37 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).



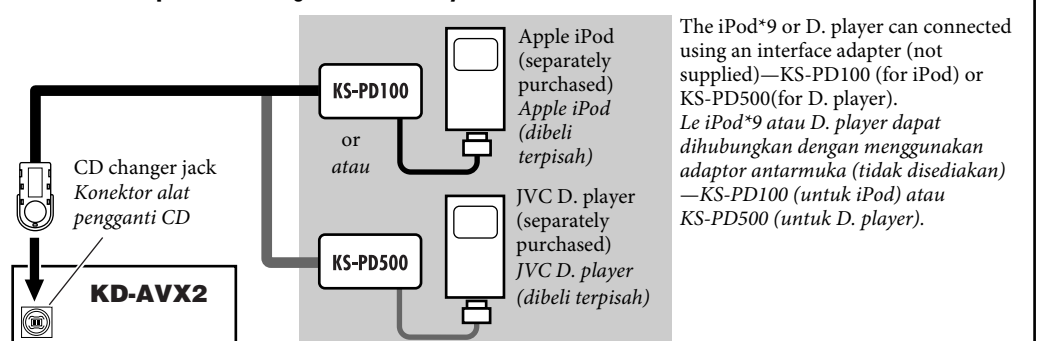
*8 To disconnect the CD connector

*8 Untuk memutuskan hubungan konektor CD



Apple iPod®/JVC D. player / Apple iPod®/JVC D. player

- Set "External Input" to "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (see page 37 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Aturlah "External Input" ke "Changer/iPod/D. Player" (lihat halaman 37 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).

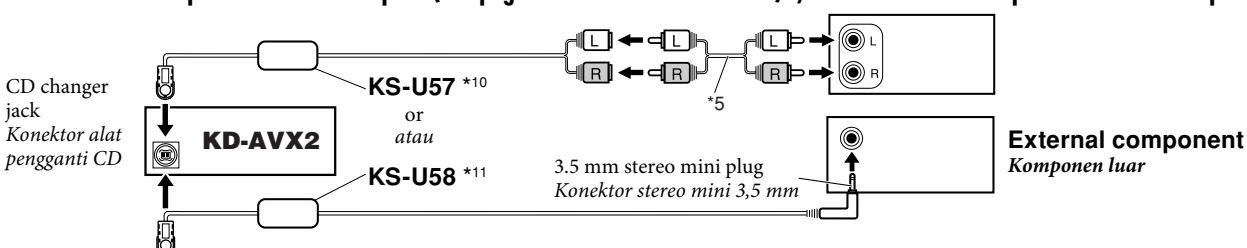


*9 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

*9 iPod adalah merek dagang dari Apple Computer, Inc., yang terdaftar di Amerika Serikat dan negara-negara lain.

Other external component / Komponen luar lainnya

- Set "External Input" to "External Input" (see page 37 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / Aturlah "External Input" ke "External Input" (lihat halaman 37 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).



*10 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this receiver)

*10 Adapter Jalur Masukan KS-U57 (tidak disuplai untuk alat penerima ini)

*11 Aux Input Adapter KS-U58 (optionally purchased)

*11 Adapter Input Aux KS-U58 (dapat dibeli bebas)

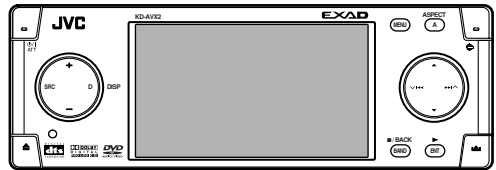
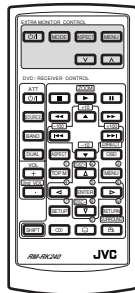
JVC



DVD/CD RECEIVER

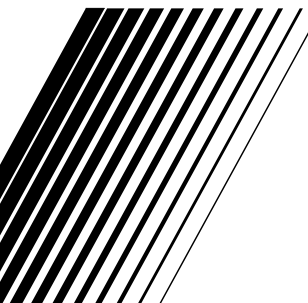
KD-AVX2

EXAD



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 10.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.



INSTRUCTIONS

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.	ADVARSEL: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åpen eller interlocken feiler. Undgå direkte eksponering til strålingen.	VARNING: Synlig og osynlig laserstråling når den åpnes og spåren er lurkopplad. Betrakt ikke strålen.	VARO: Avdattessa ja suojalukitus ohjettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (I)
--	---	--	---

For safety....

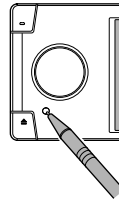
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

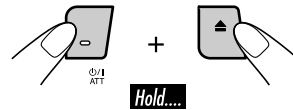
How to reset your unit



This will reset the microcomputer. Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

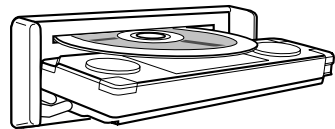
How to forcibly eject a disc

If a disc cannot be recognized by the receiver or cannot be ejected, ejects the disc as follows.



“NO EJECT?” (or “EJECT OK?”) and “EMERGENCY EJECT?” appear on the monitor.

Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly to select “EMERGENCY EJECT?”, then press ENT.



- If this does not work, reset your receiver.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

WARNINGS:

- **DO NOT** install any receiver in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate any receiver while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the receiver while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” flashes on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.

Characters shown on the monitor

The following characters will be used to show the various information on the monitor.

- You can also use the following characters to assign titles (see page 41).

A	B	C	D	E	a	b	c	d	e
F	G	H	I	J	f	g	h	i	j
K	L	M	N	O	k	l	m	n	o
P	Q	R	S	T	p	q	r	s	t
U	V	W	X	Y	u	v	w	x	y
Z	space				z	space			

Upper and lower cases

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	"	#	\$	%
&	'	()	*
+	,	-	.	/
:	;	<	=	>
?	@	_	`	space

Numbers and symbols

Introduction—Playable discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs—12 cm and 8 cm—on this receiver:

- **DVD Video:** Recorded in NTSC or PAL color system with an appropriate Region Code number (see below).
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played.
- **DVD Audio**
- **Video CD (VCD)/audio CD**
- **MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG1,2:** Recorded either in CD-R/CD-RW or DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM.
 - CD-R/CD-RW: Compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.
 - DVD-R/DVD-RW/+R/+RW/DVD-ROM: Compliant with UDF-Bridge Format*¹.
- *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (DVD Video format only) discs. However the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.*
- *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).*

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This receiver can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “4”.

Examples:



If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“Region Error” appears on the monitor on the unit. “REGION CODE ERROR” appears on the external monitor.

Discs cannot be played back

DVD-ROM (data), DVD-RAM, DVD-R/DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.



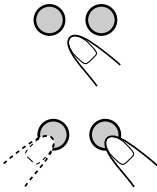

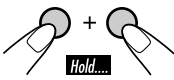
*¹ A hybrid file system used to provide compatibility with ISO 9660 for accessing any type of files on the disc. (UDF stands for Universal Disk Format.)

“DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.

How to read this manual

The following methods are used to make the explanations simple and easy-to-understand:

- Some related tips and notes are explained in “More about this receiver” (see pages 49 – 53).
- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations as follows:

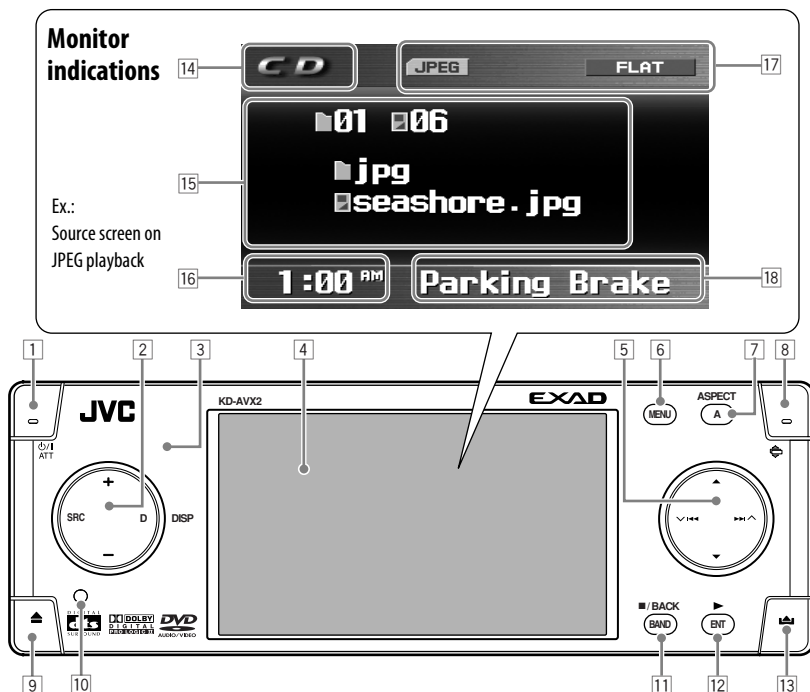
	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.
	Press and hold both buttons at the same time.

Contents

Control panel	6
Remote controller — RM-RK240	7
Getting started.....	10
Radio operations	12
Disc operations	15
Unique disc functions.....	20
Disc surround playback	22
On-Screen disc operations	24
Other disc operations	28
Dual Zone operations	30
AV Menu settings.....	31
Other main functions	41
CD changer operations	42
External component operations	44
iPod®/D. player operations	45
Maintenance	47
Language codes.....	48
More about this receiver	49
Troubleshooting	54
Specifications	57

Control panel

Parts identification



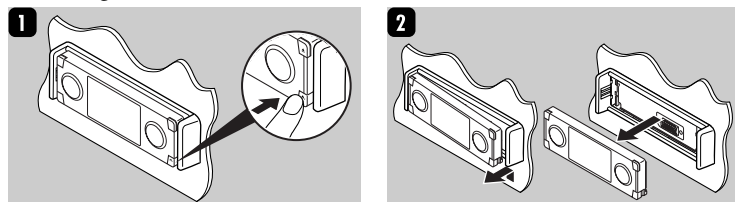
- 1 ϕ /I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
- 2
 - +/– (volume +/–) button
 - SRC (source) button
 - DISP (D: display) button
- 3 Remote Sensor
- 4 Monitor
- 5
 - ▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons
 - ▼ ◀◀/▶▶ ▲ buttons
- 6 MENU button
- 7 ASPECT (A) button
- 8 (angle) button
- 9 ▲ (eject) button
- 10 Reset button
- 11
 - BAND button
 - BACK button
 - ■ (stop) button
- 12
 - ENT (enter) button
 - ► (play) button
- 13 (control panel release) button

Monitor indications

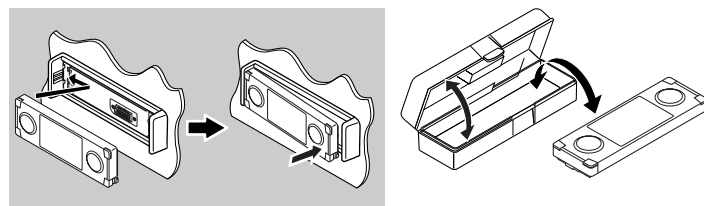
- 14 Source indicator
- 15 Main display
- 16 Clock display
Also indicates volume level when adjusting volume.
- 17 Status indicators
- 18 Alert information area
Also indicates volume level bar when adjusting volume.

How to detach/attach the control panel

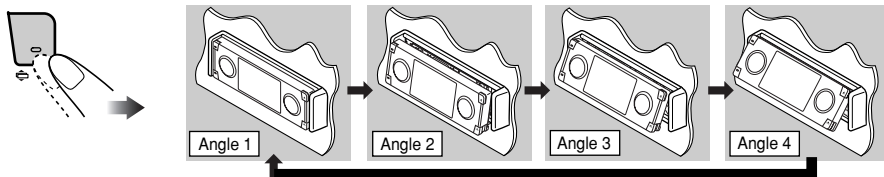
Detaching...



Attaching...



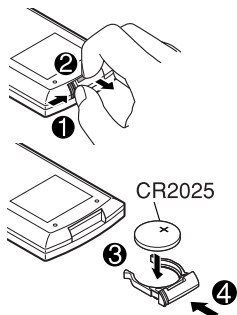
How to change the control panel angle



Caution: Do not insert your finger behind the control panel.

Remote controller — RM-RK240

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the receiver. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.

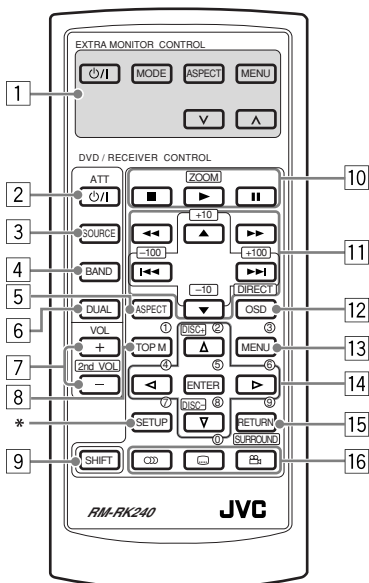


- Do not expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accidents.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
 - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire.
 - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
 - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
 - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Main elements and features



* Not used as the SETUP button for this model.

IMPORTANT:

If Dual Zone is activated (see page 30), the remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.

MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons*
 - ⏻/I (standby/on), MODE, ASPECT, MENU, ▾ and ▲.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 ⏻/I ATT (standby/on attenuator) button
 - Turns on and off the power and also attenuates the sound.
 - 3 SOURCE button
 - Selects the source.
 - 4 BAND button
 - Selects the FM/AM bands.
 - 5 ASPECT button
 - Change the aspect of the monitor on the unit when playing back DVD, VCD, etc.
 - 6 DUAL button
 - Activate and deactivate Dual Zone.
 - 7 VOL + / - buttons
 - Adjusts the volume level.
 - Also function as 2nd VOL +/- buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - 8 TOP M (menu) button*
 - Display the DVD, DVD Audio, and VCD*³ disc menu.
 - 9 SHIFT button
 - 10 Basic disc operation buttons*⁴:
 - (stop), ▶ (play), || (pause)
 - ▶ (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - 11 Advanced disc operation/tuner operation buttons*⁵
- For advanced disc operations:**
- ▲ / ▼
 - Select the titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio), or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG).
 - ◀◀ / ▶▶ (reverse skip/forward skip)
 - ◀◀ / ▶▶ (reverse search/forward search)*⁶

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset stations.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
 - Functions to search for stations.
Press briefly: auto search
Press and hold: manual search

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - ▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - ▲: Enters the main menu of iPod/D. player. (Now ▲ / ▼/|◀◀ / ▶▶| work as the menu selection buttons)*7
- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

12 OSD button

- Display the on-screen bar.
- Also function as the DIRECT button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can directly select titles (for DVD), groups (for DVD Audio) or folders (for MP3/WMA/WAV/MPEG) using the number buttons (see the right column and page 19).

13 MENU button*2

- Display the DVD and VCD*2 disc menu. (Not functions for the DVD Audio disc.)

14 Menu operation buttons*2

- Cursor (△, ▽, ◀, ▶) and ENTER
- △ / ▽: Also function as DISC+/- buttons when the source is “CD-CH”.

15 RETURN button*2

16 Special function buttons

- DVD/VCD: ○○○ (audio)
- DVD: □□□ (subtitle), ◻◻ (angle)
- ◻◻ Also function as the SURROUND button when pressed with SHIFT button.
 - You can change the surround mode (see page 23).

*1 Controllable only if your monitor is one of the JVC monitors — KV-MR9010 or KV-MH6510.

*2 These buttons function as the number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 Only when PBC is not in use.

*4 Not used for CD changer operations.

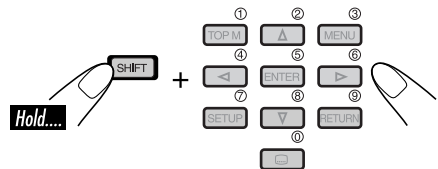
*5 These buttons function as the +10/-10 and +100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*6 Not used for JPEG operations. No sound can be heard (DVD/VCD/MPEG).

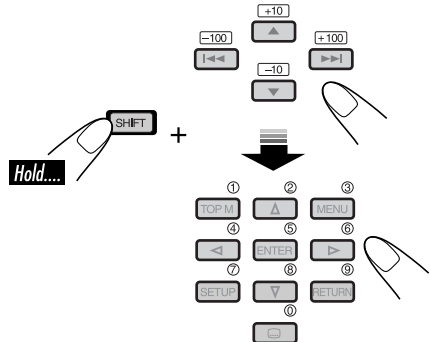
*7 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
▼: Confirms the selection.

How to select a number

To select a number from 0 – 9:



To select a number greater than 9:

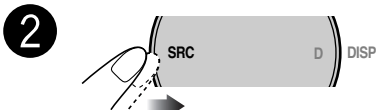


- +100/-100 buttons used for searching track number greater than 99 (not available for CD/VCD/DVD/DVD audio).

Getting started

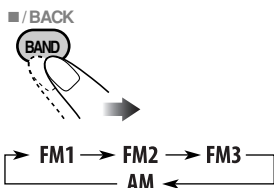
Basic operations

- 1** Turn on the power.

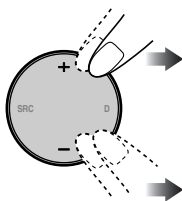


You cannot select some sources if they are not ready.

- 3** For FM/AM tuner only



- 4** Adjust the volume.



Volume 16

Volume level indicator

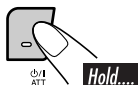
- 5** Adjust the equalizer as you want.
(See pages 38.)

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT)

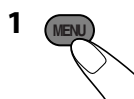


To restore the sound, press it again.

To turn off the power

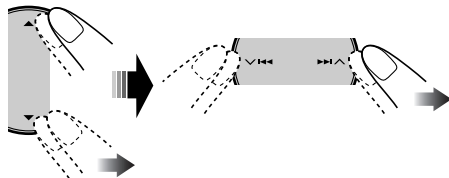


Canceling demonstration and setting the clock



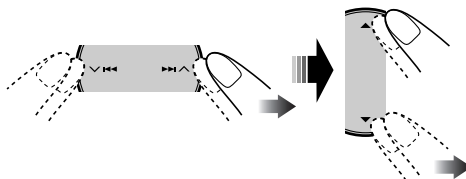
- 2** Select “Setup”, then,

- 1 Select “Display”, “Demonstration”, then “Off” to cancel demonstration.
- 2 Select “Clock”, “Time Set”, and go to the next step to set the clock.

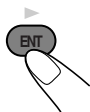


- 3** Set the hour and minute.

- 1 Select “Hour”, then adjust the hour.
- 2 Select “Minute”, then adjust the minute.



4 Finish the procedure.



- See the example on “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” below to change the clock from 12 hours to 24 hours.

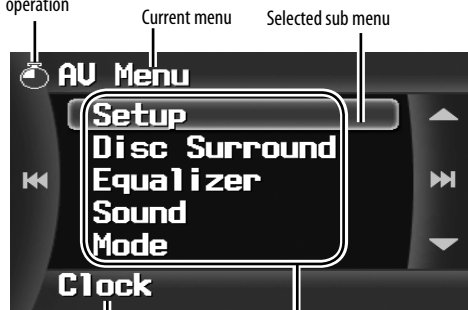
Basic procedure of AV Menu operation

You can adjust various settings of the unit from AV Menu.

- To call up AV Menu...



Displays remaining time to continue the menu operation



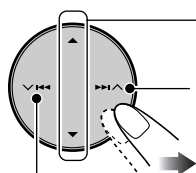
Current menu

Selected sub menu

Selected item of the sub menu currently selected

Sub menus

- To select a menu item and proceed to the sub menu...



Selects a sub menu or a menu item

Proceeds to the selected sub menu

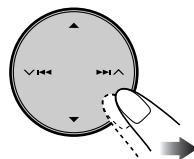
Back to previous menu

- To go back to the previous screen and adjust other items...

■ / BACK



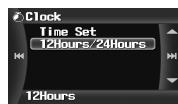
- Ex.: To change the clock from 12 hours to 24 hours, after pressing MENU...



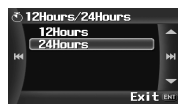
Select “Setup”,



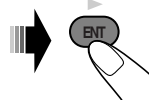
“Clock”,



“12Hours / 24Hours”,

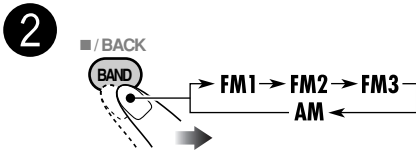
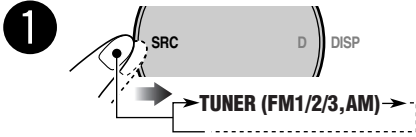


then “24Hours”.



- To cancel menu operations and return to the source screen, press DISP (D).
- See pages 31 – 40 for information of the sub menus and menu items.

Radio operations



Selected band appears.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

3 Start searching for a station.



When a station is received, searching stops.

To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

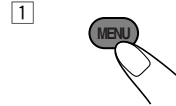
In step 3 above...



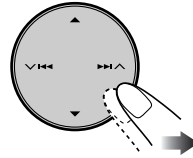
2 Select the desired station frequencies.



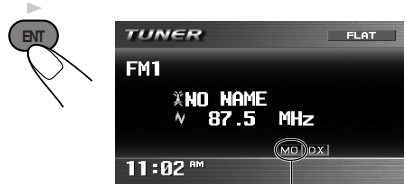
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive



2 Select "Mode", "Mono", then "On".



3 Finish the procedure.

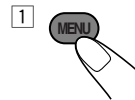


Lights up when monaural mode is activated.

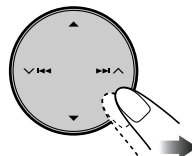
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to set "Mono" to "Off". The MO indicator goes off.

To tune in strong-signal FM station only



2 Select "Mode", "DX / Local", then "Local".



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Lights up when "Local" mode is activated.

Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

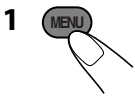
To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure to set "DX / Local" to "DX". The LO indicator goes off and the DX indicator lights up.

Storing stations in memory

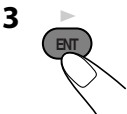
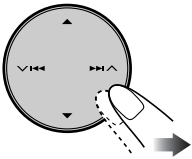
You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

After selecting the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want...



- 2 Select "Mode", then "SSM".

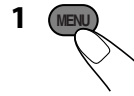


"SSM" is shown until automatic presetting is over.

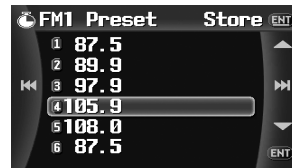
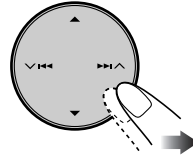
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

After tuning in the station you want to preset...

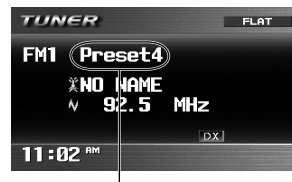
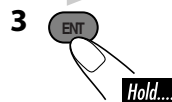


- 2 Select "List", then a preset number (1–6) you want to store the station into.



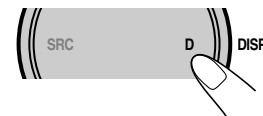
EX.: Storing 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of FM1

- You can also display the list by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons.



Stored preset number flashes for a while.

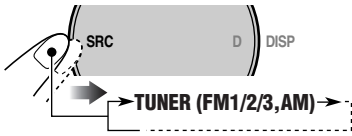
How to exit from menus or lists



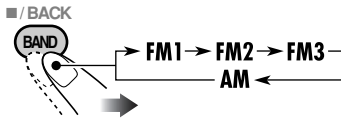
Menu or list operations are canceled and the screen returns to the source screen.

Listening to a preset station

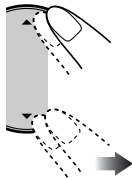
1



2

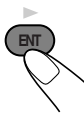


3 Select a preset station (1 – 6) you want.

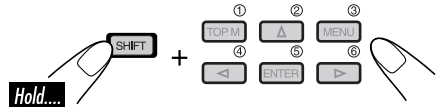


- You can change the preset list between FM1/2/3 by pressing and holding ▲/▼ buttons (or by pressing ▲/▼ buttons repeatedly) when selecting any of the FM bands.

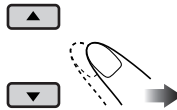
3



When using the remote controller...



or



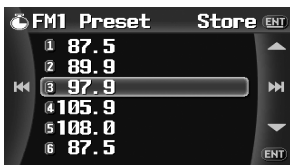
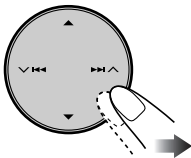
When using the list screen...

After step 2 above...

1



2 Select “List”, then a preset number (1–6) you want.



Disc operations

Playing a disc in the receiver

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD Video/Audio: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc is an audio CD, CD Text, MP3/WMA/WAV, JPEG, MPEG, or VCD without PBC, all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

- If a title list or disc menu appears while playing a DVD Video/Audio or VCD with PBC, see “Disc menu operations” on page 21.

The following marks are used to indicate the playable discs...



DVD Video



DVD Audio



Video CD with/without PBC



Video CD with PBC only



MPEG disc



JPEG disc



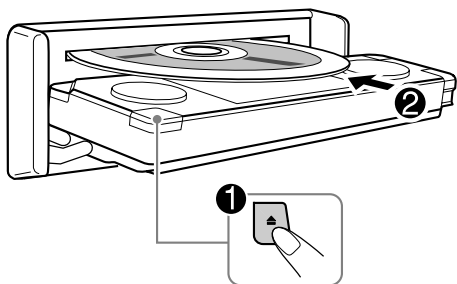
Audio CD/ CD Text



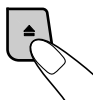
MP3/WMA/WAV disc




All discs listed here



To eject a disc



Before performing any operations, make sure the following...

- The operations explained on pages 17 – 22 are mainly of the remote controller.
 -  shows functions which you can also use on the unit.

If “⊗” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the receiver cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

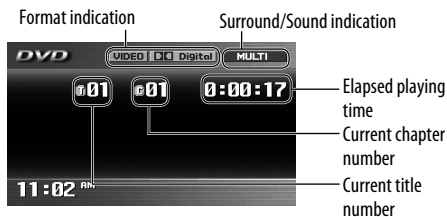
- In some cases, without showing “⊗”, operations will not be accepted.

- **When inserting a DVD video/DVD Audio disc:**

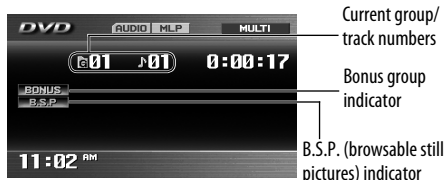
Video/picture playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).

When an DVD is playing back



When a DVD Audio disc is playing back

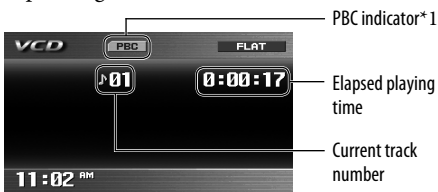


- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

- **When inserting a VCD:**

VCD playback starts automatically on the monitor when the parking brake is applied.

- The screen such as below appears when pressing DISP (D).



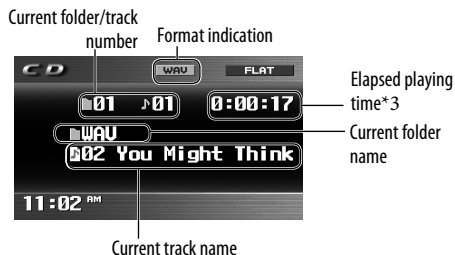
*1 Appears when the PBC function is in use.

- To return to playback, press DISP (D) again.

- **When inserting an MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG disc*2:**

After showing the total folder and file number...

Ex.: When an WAV file is detected

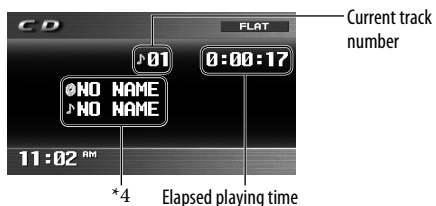


*2 When playing back a JPEG/MPEG disc, press DISP (D) to display the screen. (Picture/video playback is automatically starts when the parking brake is applied.)

*3 Does not appear for JPEG disc.

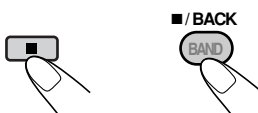
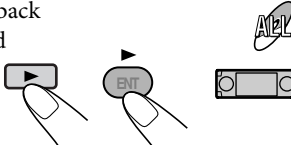



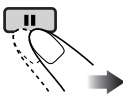

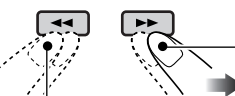

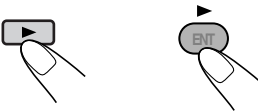


- **When inserting a CD Text/audio CD:**

After showing the total track number and total playing time...



*4 Disc title/performer and track title are displayed when playing a CD Text.

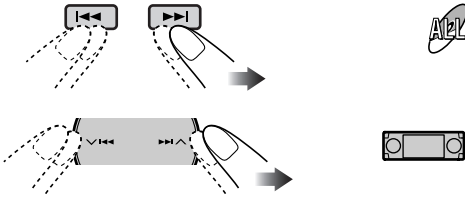
Basic operations

Operations	Monitor indication and/or next operation
<p>To stop playback</p> 	<p>When you start playback again, playback starts from where it has been stopped (Resume play).</p> 
<p>To stop play temporarily</p> 	<p>Playback is paused.</p>  <p>A still picture appears.</p> <p>(A) Frame by frame playback </p>  <p>(B) Slow motion playback </p>  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px auto;">▶ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px auto;">◀ 1/32 ⇒ 1/16 ⇒ 1/8 ⇒ 1/4 ⇒ 1/2</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sound comes out during Slow Motion Playback. • When playing a VCD, Reverse Slow Motion Playback is prohibited. <p>To resume normal play:</p> 
<p>To replay the previous scenes—One Touch Replay</p> 	<p>The playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This function works only within the same title. • For some DVDs, this function does not work.  

- During play, on-screen guide icons appear on the monitor for a while (see page 53).

To go to the next or previous chapters/tracks

- For DVD: During play or pause



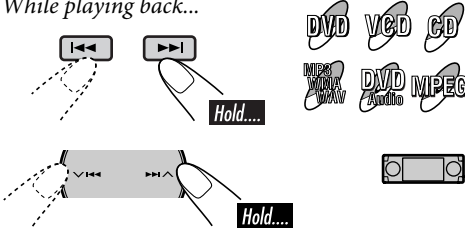
To locate a particular title/chapter/track directly

- For DVD Video/DVD Audio:
During play or pause—select a chapter/track.
During stop—select a title/track.
- For MP3/WMA/WAV/JPEG/MPEG:
Select a track within the same folder.

Select the number corresponding to the item you want (see page 9).

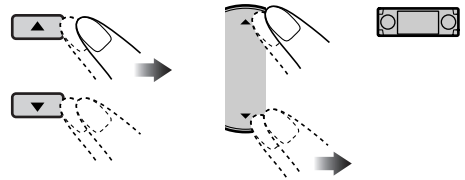
To fast-forward or reverse the chapter/track

While playing back...



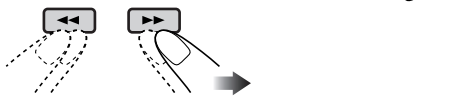
* The search speed changes to x2 ⇔ x10 (▶▶) (◀◀) 1/2 for MPEG), but the information shown on the monitor is only for DVD/VCD/MPEG.

To locate a title/group/folder



To forward or reverse search the chapter/track

While playing back...



The information shown is only for DVD/VCD:

▶▶ x2 ⇔ x5 ⇔ x10 ⇔ x20 ⇔ x60

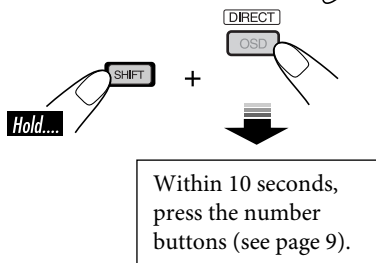
◀◀ x2 ⇔ x5 ⇔ x10 ⇔ x20 ⇔ x60

* The search speed of an MPEG file is 3 steps
- ▶▶ (◀◀) 1/2/3.

- To resume normal speed



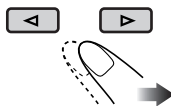
To locate a particular title/ group/folder



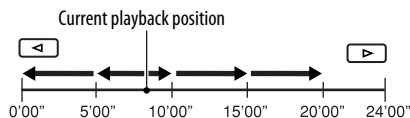
To skip to the next or previous scene



You can skip the scene back and forward by 5 minutes.



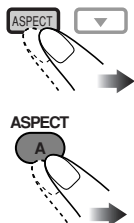
Ex.: when you are playing a 24-minute MPEG file and the elapsed playing time is 8'24"...



IMPORTANT:

- For MP3/WMA/WAV discs: It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit number at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

To adjust the screen shape on the unit



- See “Aspect” on page 33 for the detail.

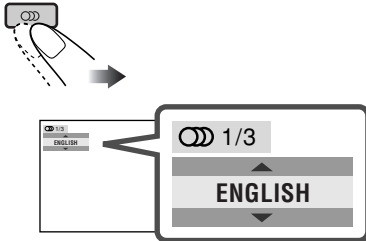
- *The first pressing of the buttons skips the scene to the nearest multiple-of-5 playing time (except current playing time).*
- *This function does not work when remaining time to skip forward or back is under 5 minutes.*

Unique disc functions

Selecting audio languages

For DVD:

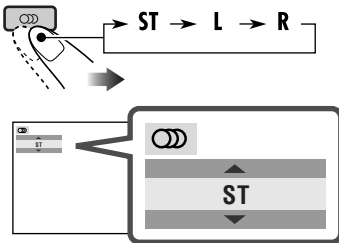
You can select the language to listen to if the disc has multiple audio languages.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

For VCD:

You can select the audio channel to play. (This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.)



ST: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.

L: To listen to the L (left) audio channel.

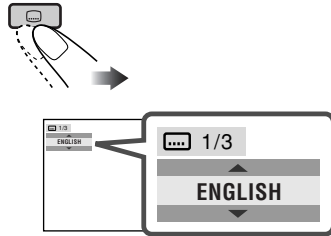
R: To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

Selecting subtitles

You can select the language of the subtitle to be shown on the monitor.



- You can set the initial subtitle language using the AV Menu (see page 34).

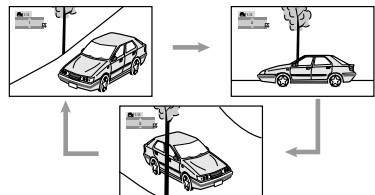
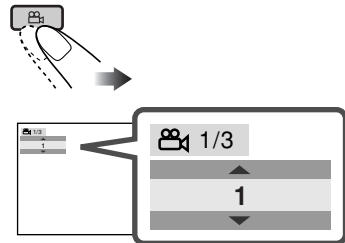


Ex.: When the disc has 3 options

- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the subtitle language, audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting multi-angle views

You can view the same scene at different angles if the disc has multi-angle views.



Ex.: When the disc has 3 multi-angle views

Disc menu operations

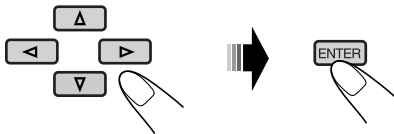
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PBC (PlayBack Control).

While playing a DVD



A title list or disc menu will appear on the monitor.

2 Select the item you want on the menu.



Selected item starts playback.

- On some discs, you can also select items by their numbers.

While playing a VCD

- When a list of items is displayed on the monitor.



- To select a number greater than 9, see “How to select a number” on page 9.

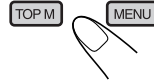
To return to the previous menus



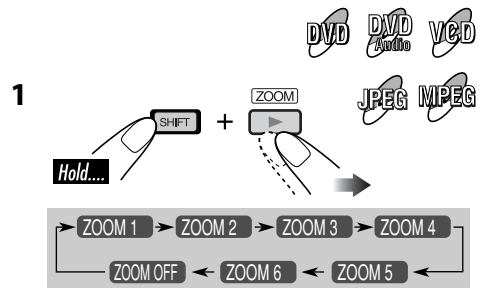
Canceling the PBC playback

- 1
- Select a track to start normal playback using the number buttons (see page 9).

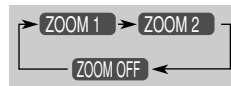
To resume the PBC function



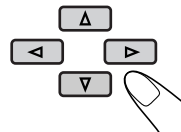
Zoom in



For JPEG disc (effective only when pausing):



2 Move the zoomed-in position.



- For JPEG files:
You cannot move the zoomed-in position when the entire picture is still displayed on the monitor.

To cancel zoom, select “ZOOM OFF” in step 1.

Playing back a bonus group

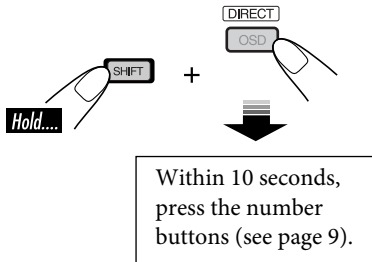
Some DVD Audio discs have a special group called “bonus group” whose contents are not open to the public.



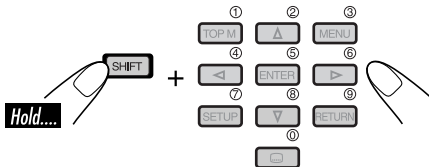
- To play back a bonus group, you have to enter the specific “key number” (a kind of password) for the bonus group. The way of getting the key number depends on the disc.

1 Select the bonus group.

- The bonus group is usually recorded as the last group (for example, if a disc contains four groups including a bonus group, “group 4” is the bonus group).



2 Enter the key number.



3 Follow the interactive instructions shown on the monitor.

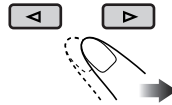
- The entered key number is cleared when the disc is ejected. Repeat steps 1 to 3 above to play back the bonus group again.

Selecting Browsable still pictures

While playing back a track linked to browsable still pictures (B.S.P.), you can select (turn the page) the still picture to be shown on the monitor.




- If a track is linked to B.S.P., they are usually shown in turn automatically during playback.



Disc surround playback


You can enjoy multichannel surround playback of the disc on the unit.

Available surround format

Dolby Digital*1: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with Dolby Digital ()

Dolby Pro Logic II: Dolby Pro Logic II is a multichannel playback format to decode all 2 channel sources—stereo source and Dolby Surround encoded source—into 5.1 channels. Dolby Pro Logic II has two modes—Movie mode and Music mode:

- **Pro Logic II Movie**
Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
- **Pro Logic II Music**
Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

DTS (Digital Theater Systems)*2: used to reproduce multichannel soundtracks of the software encoded with DTS Digital Surround ()

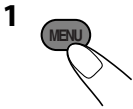
*1: Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless, and the double-D symbol are the trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2: "DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

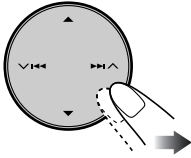
Selecting the surround mode

The unit is set up, by default, to select the optimal surround mode for the digital multichannel disc in the initial setting. You can also choose the surround mode for the 2 channel disc.

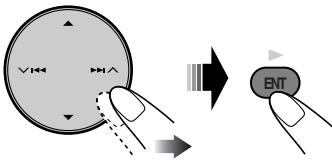
When DISC is selected as the source...



2 Select "Disc Surround".



3 Select the surround setting you want.



Surround Off:

Deactivate the surround function.

Surround On*1*2:

- **Auto***3: the optimum surround mode is selected automatically when multichannel digital signals are detected.
- **Dolby PLII Movie***4*5: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Movie.
- **Dolby PLII Music***4*5*6: Activate Dolby Pro Logic II Music.

*1 No sound comes out of the rear speakers and the subwoofer when the FRONT 2CH indicator appears on the monitor.

*2 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the FIX indicator appears on the monitor.

*3 Activates no surround function when the source is a CD (except for DTS CD)/VCD / MP3/WMA/WAV. Select "Dolby PLII Movie" or "Dolby PLII Music" manually to activate the surround function.

*4 Not selectable in the cases below:

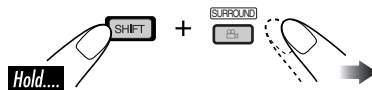
- the disc has 2.1 or more channels of sound tracks (except for MPEG-encoded tracks).
- the disc is an MPEG disc.

*5 No sound comes out of the subwoofer when the front speaker size is set to "Large" (see page 35).

*6 When you select "Dolby PLII Music", you can adjust the following items: "Panorama" and "Center Width". Adjusting "Panorama" to "On" adds "wraparound" sound effect; Activating "Center Width" adjusts the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger (normally select "4").

- No sound comes out of the center speaker when the surround function is not activated.
- Equalizer settings (page 38) become ineffective and unadjustable while the surround function is activated.
- No sound may come out of some speakers depending on the Speaker Size settings (page 35) or the type of the disc played back.
- When Dual Zone is activated, the surround settings become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.

On the remote controller:



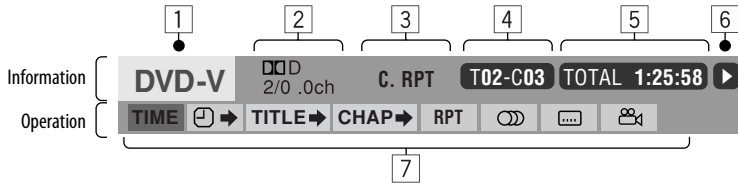
On-Screen disc operations

Operations using the on-screen bar

You can check the disc information and use some functions through the on-screen bar.



On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 • DVD Video/DVD Audio: Audio signal format type
 - VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback mode
 - DVD: T. RPT: Title repeat
 - C. RPT: Chapter repeat
 - DVD Audio:
 - T. RPT: Track repeat
 - VCD: T. RPT: Track repeat
 - D. RND: Disc random
 - T. INT: Track intro
 - Plays the beginning 15 seconds of the current track
 - JPEG: T. RPT: Track repeat
 - MPEG:
 - T. RPT: Track repeat
 - F. RPT: Folder repeat

- 4 Playback information
 - T02-C03** Current title/chapter
 - G02-T03** Current group/track
 - TRACK 01** Current track
 - F001-T001** Current folder/track

- 5 Time indication
 - TOTAL** Elapsed playing time of the disc
 - T. REM** Remaining disc time (for VCD)/remaining title time (for DVD)
 - TIME** Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track

REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track

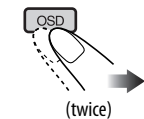
- 6 Playback status
 - Play
 - Forward/reverse search
 - Forward/reverse slow-motion
 - Pause
 - Stop

- 7 Operation icons
 - TIME** Change time indication (see 5)
 - Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
 - TITLE** Title Search (by its number)
 - GROUP** Group Search (by its number)
 - CHAP** Chapter Search (by its number)
 - TRACK** Track Search (by its number)
 - Change the audio language or audio channel
 - Change the subtitle language
 - Change the view angle
 - RPT** Repeat play*
 - INT** Intro play*
 - RND** Random play*

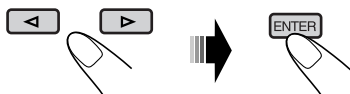
* See also page 28.

Basic on-screen bar operations

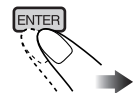
1 Display the on-screen bar.



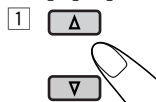
2 Select an item.



3 Make a selection.



- If pop-up menu appears....



or press the number buttons
(see page 9).

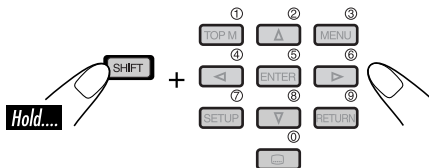


To erase the on-screen bar



To search for a particular point by playing time

- 1 Select .
- 2 Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.



- Ex.:
- To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
 - To enter 54 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 0, 5, 4, 0, then 0.
 - It is always required to enter the hour digit (even "0" hour), but it is not required to enter trailing zeros (the last two digits in the examples above).
 - To correct a misentry, press....



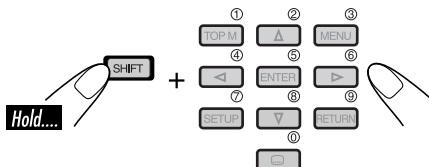
- You can also specify the elapsed playing time by using Δ / ∇ / \triangleleft / \triangleright .

- 3 Finish the procedure.



To search for a particular title/group/chapter/track

- 1 Select **TITLE** \Rightarrow (**GROUP** \Rightarrow / **CHAP** \Rightarrow / **TRACK** \Rightarrow).
- 2 Enter the number.



- To correct a misentry, press the number button until the correct number is entered.

- 3 Finish the procedure.

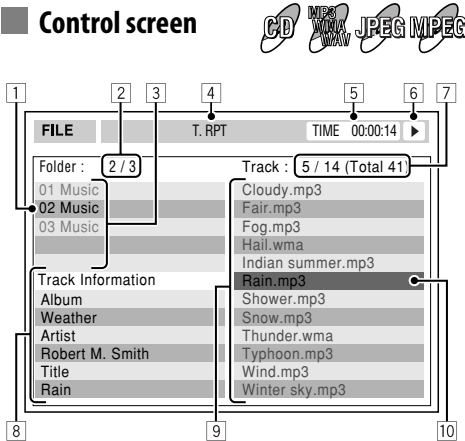


Basic control screen operations

You can search for and play the desired items through the control screen when using the external monitor.

- The control screen automatically appears on the monitor when you insert a disc (external monitor only).
- JPEG/MPEG control screen appears only when playback stops.

Control screen



Ex.: MP3 playback

- 1 Current folder (Not appears on CD playback)
- 2 Current folder number/total folder number (Not appears on CD playback)
- 3 Folder list (Not appears on CD playback)
- 4 Selected playback mode
- 5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (Not appears on JPEG playback)
- 6 Operation mode icon
▶ (play), ■ (stop), || (pause), ►► (fast-forward), ◀◀ (reverse)
- 7 CD: Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
Others: Current track (file) number/total number of tracks (files) in the current folder (total number of tracks/files on the disc)

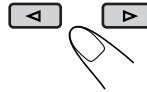
- 8 Track information (Not appears on JPEG/MPEG playback)
- 9 Track (file) list
- 10 Current track (file) (highlighted bar)

To select a folder or track

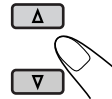


While Dual Zone (see page 30) is on...

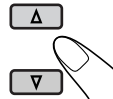
- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track.



To select a track

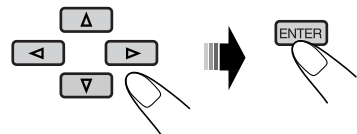


To change the playback mode

While Dual Zone (see page 30) is on...



- 1
- 2 Select a playback mode (see page 28) you want.




List screen operations

You can display the folder list/track list before starting play when using the external monitor and Dual Zone function (see page 30). On this list, you can confirm the contents and start playing a disc.

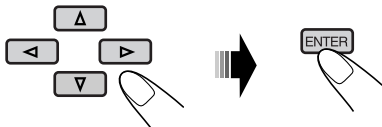
Folder/track list screens

Folder list



Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
fol130	fol140	fol150	fol160	
fol131	fol141	fol151	fol161	
fol132	fol142	fol152	fol162	
fol133	fol143	fol153	fol163	
fol134	fol144	fol154	fo 164	
fol135	fol145	fol155	fo 165	
fol136	fol146	fol156	fo 166	
fol137	fol147	fol157	fo 167	
fol138	fol148	fol158	fo 168	
fol139	fol149	fol159	fo 169	

Track list




Folder : 153/240		Track 154/198		Page : 4/6
file0131.mp3	file0141.mp3	file0151.wma	file0161.wma	
file0132.mp3	file0142.mp3	file0152.mp3	file0162.mp3	
file0133.wma	file0143.mp3	file0153.wma	file0163.wma	
file0134.mp3	file0144.mp3	file0154.mp3	file0164.mp3	
file0135.mp3	file0145.wma	file0155.mp3	file0165.wma	
file0136.wma	file0146.mp3	file0156.mp3	file0166.wma	
file0137.wma	file0147.wma	file0157.mp3	file0167.wma	
file0138.mp3	file0148.mp3	file0158.wma	file0168.wma	
file0139.mp3	file0149.wma	file0159.wma	file0169.mp3	
file0140.wma	file0150.wma	file0160.wma	file0170.wma	

Ex.: Track list for MP3/WMA

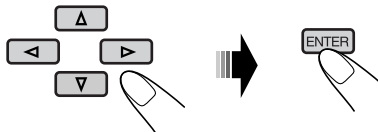
- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder.
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

While Dual Zone is on and the disc play stops...

1 Display the folder list.

 Each time you press the button, the list screen comes on and goes off.

2 Select a folder on the list.

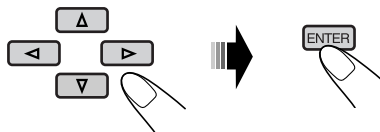


The track list of the selected folder appears.

To go back to the folder list



3 Select a track on the list.



Other disc operations

Selecting the playback modes

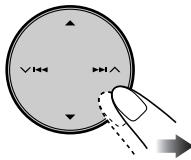
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1 

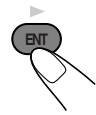


(On the unit)

2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Playback mode indicator appears.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
Track:	All tracks of the disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  INT lights up.
Folder*1:	First tracks of all folders. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  INT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

*1 Only while playing a disc containing folders.

Repeat



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.

Mode	Plays repeatedly
Chapter*2:	The current chapter. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RPT lights up.
Title*2:	The current title. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RPT lights up.
Track*3:	The current track. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RPT lights up.
Folder*1:	All tracks of the current folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RPT lights up.
Off:	For DVD: Cancels Repeat play. For other discs: All tracks of the disc.

*2 Only while playing a DVD disc.

*3 Except for DVD and JPEG discs.

Random



- For VCD: While PBC (see page 21) is not in use.


Mode	Plays at random
Folder*1:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RND lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

List screen operations

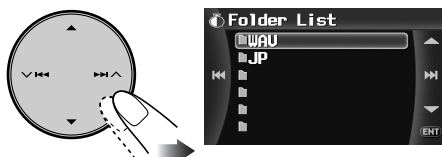
You can display the folder list/file list and select a file directly while playing.

While playing....



- 1  (On the unit)

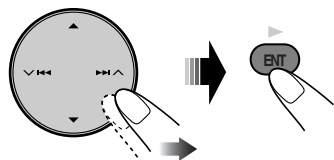
- 2 Select “Mode”, then “List”.



- 3 Select a folder you want.



- 4 Select a file you want to play.

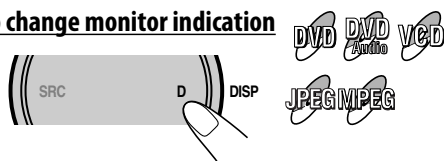


- You can also access the folder list by pressing and holding ▲ / ▼ on the unit.

Other operations

Monitor indication control


To change monitor indication

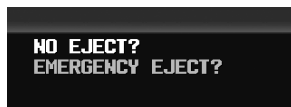


- Each time you press DISP (D), the display changes between the source screen and picture playback.

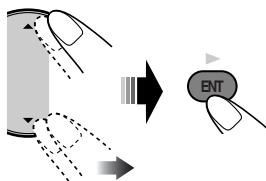
Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

- 1  **Hold...**



- 2 Select “NO EJECT?”.



“No Eject” flashes.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select “EJECT OK?”.

Dual Zone operations

Playing back two sources at a time

You can connect external audio equipment to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug on the rear, and play back a disc separately from the source selected on the unit.

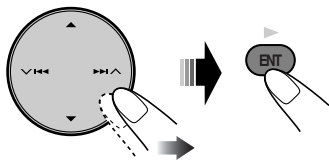


You can activate Dual Zone while listening to any source.

- When Dual Zone is in use, you can only operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.
- When Dual Zone is in use, the surround settings (page 23) become ineffective and unadjustable. No sound comes from the center speaker.



2 Select “Dual Zone”, then “On” or “On-Surround”.



Off: Deactivate Dual Zone.

On: Activate Dual Zone.

On-Surround*1*2:

Activate Dual Zone and add the headphone Surround*3 effect to the disc playback sound. Select this when listening the disc playback sound with headphones.

*1 Not effective when playing back an MPEG disc.

*2 The surround effect is also added to the sound from the speakers when you select “DISC” as the source.

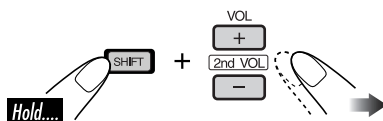
*3 JVC original headphone virtual surround system.

The source automatically changes to “DISC” and **DUAL** appears on the monitor.

To select a different source to listen through the speakers, press **SRC** on the control panel.

- By using the buttons on the control panel, you can operate the newly selected source without affecting Dual Zone operations.

3 Adjust the volume through the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug using the remote controller.

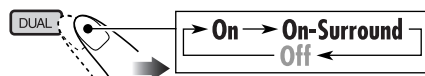


4 Operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller by referring to the monitor screen.

To cancel Dual Zone operations, select “Off” on step 2 on the left column. (**DUAL** / **DUAL-SURR** disappears.)

On the remote controller:

You can also activate and deactivate Dual Zone.



To change the Dual Zone mode between “On” and “On-Surround”, select the Dual Zone mode you want on step 2 on the left column.

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

Through the 2nd AUDIO OUT, 2 channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

AV Menu settings

Basic procedure

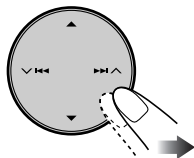
You can adjust various settings of this unit from the AV Menu.

The AV Menu contains the menu items and submenus shown on the figure below.

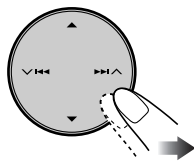
1



2 Select a menu item you want to set.

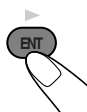


3 adjust the item selected.



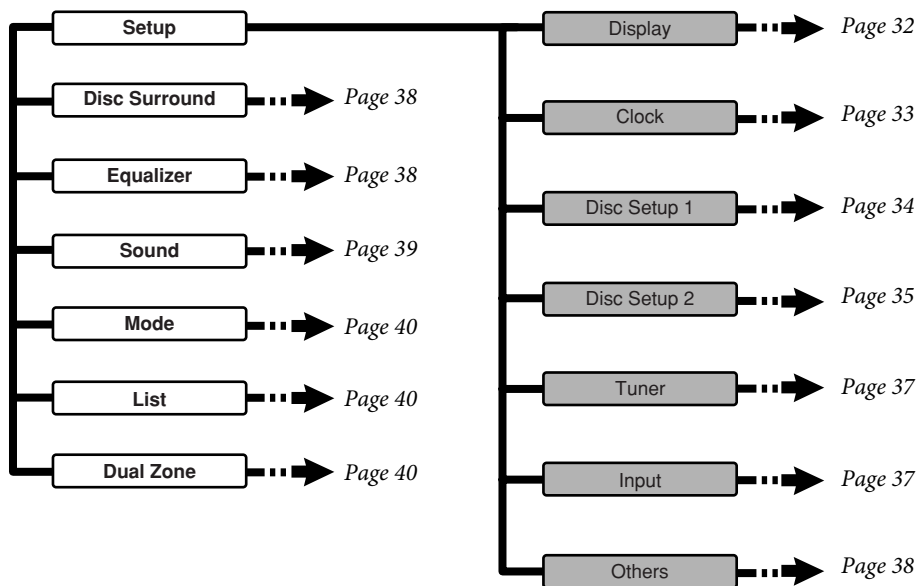
4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



- See also “Basic procedure of AV Menu operation” on page 11 for more details of the operation.









Menu items of AV Menu



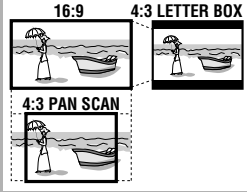
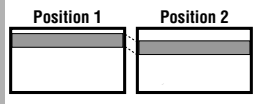
AV Menu items

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Demonstration	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Activates the demonstration movie on the monitor.</p>
Wall Paper	<p>You can select the background picture of the monitor.</p> <p>Standard [Initial], Rose, Gold, Black, Metal, Metallic-Silver, Metallic-Green, Honeycomb-Red, Honeycomb-Green, Effect-Orange, Effect-Purple, Clown fish, Ocean, Sunset, Earth.</p>
Scroll	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>Once: [Initial]; Scrolls the disc information once.</p> <p>Auto: Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Even if “Scroll” is set to “Off”, you can scroll the display by pressing D DISP for more than one second.
Tag Display	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: [Initial]; Shows the tag data while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.</p>
Dimmer	<p>Off: Cancels.</p> <p>On: Activates dimmer.</p> <p>Auto: [Initial]; Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights.</p> <p>Time Set: Sets the Dimmer On/Off time.</p>
Bright	<p>You can adjust brightness of the monitor.</p> <p>–15 (darkest) to +15 (brightest)</p> <p>[Initial]; 00</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To adjust the brightness of playback picture, adjust “Bright” on “Screen Control” below.
Screen Control^{*1}	<p>You can adjust color and brightness of playback pictures of “DISC” and “AV-IN”. The setting is stored separately for “DISC” and “AV-IN”.</p> <p>–15 to +15</p> <p>[Initial]; 00</p> <p>Bright: Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark.</p> <p>Contrast: Adjust the contrast of the bright and dark portion.</p> <p>Color: Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker.</p> <p>Tint: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural.</p>

^{*1} Adjustable only when the source is a disc containing pictures or movies, or “AV-IN”.

Indications		Selectable settings, [reference page]		
Display	Aspect* ¹	You can change the screen shape on the monitor according to the aspect ratio of the source. Choose the optimum one from the followings.		
		Aspect ratio of incoming signal		
		4:3	16:9	
		Normal: For original shape of 4:3		
		Full: [Initial]; For original shape of 16:9		
				
				
	Auto:	The shape is selected automatically from above according to the incoming signal.		
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can also adjust the screen shape by pressing ASPECT (A) on the control panel or ASPECT on the remote controller. [19] 		
	NTSC/PAL	Select the color system (NTSC or PAL) of your playback disc. [Initial]; PAL <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn off the power and turn on it again to make the new setting effective. 		
Clock	Time Set	You can adjust the internal clock on the unit. [10] [Initial]; 1: 00 AM		
	12Hours / 24Hours	12Hours / 24Hours , [11] [Initial]; 12Hours		

*1 Adjustable only when the source is DVD, VCD, JPEG, or MPEG disc.

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Menu Language * ¹	Select the initial disc menu language.
Audio Language * ¹	Select the initial audio language.
Sub Title * ¹	Select the initial subtitle language or erase the subtitle (OFF).
OSD Language * ¹	Select the language for some indications shown on the external monitor.
Monitor Type 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16:9: [Initial]; Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9. • 4:3LB [LETTER BOX]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen. • 4:3PS [PAN SCAN]: Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen. Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.
OSD Position 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. [24] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: [Initial]; Higher position • 2: Lower position
File Type	Select playback file type when a disc contains different types of files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio: [Initial]; Plays back MP3/WMA/WAV files. • Picture: Plays back JPEG files. • Video: Plays back MPEG 1/2 files.

Disc Setup 1²

*¹ For the language settings, see also the language codes list on page 48.

*² Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

Indications

Selectable settings, [reference page]

D. (Dynamic) Range Compres. (Compression)^{*1}

You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.

- **AUTO** : Select this to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software).
- **ON**: [Initial]; Select this to always use this function.

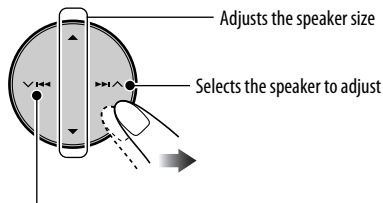
Speaker Size^{*1}

You can adjust the speaker size setting for the front/rear speakers and the center speaker according to the speaker you use when the source is a disc and playback stops.

- **Front SPK**: Small, Large [Initial]
- **Center SPK**: None [Initial], Small, Large^{<1>}
- **Rear SPK** : None^{<2>}, Small, Large [Initial]
- **Subwoofer**: On [Initial], Off^{<2>}
- Speaker size: “Large” for 13-cm diameter or more; “Small” for 13 cm or less.

^{<1>} Not selectable when “Large” is selected neither for the front nor the rear speakers.

^{<2>} Not effective when the surround function is not in effect.



Selects the speaker to adjust

- When selecting “None” or “Off” for all speakers other than the front...
 - Disc Surround setting [38] automatically changes to “Surround Off”.
 - Disc Surround setting [38] becomes unadjustable.

^{*1} Selectable only when the source is DISC and playback stops.

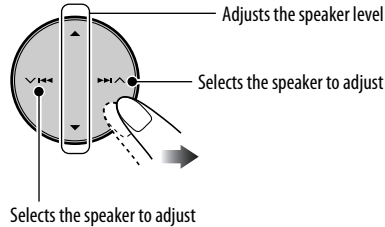
^{*2} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

Indications**Selectable settings, [reference page]****Speaker Level*¹**

You can adjust the output level of each speaker monitoring the test tone.

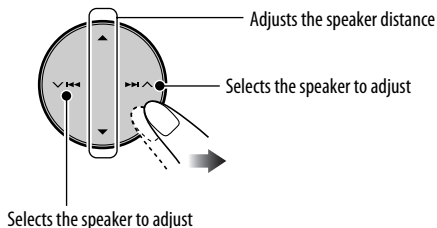
Press and hold ENT to activate (or cancel) the test tone.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Subwoofer*²/Rear Lch:** adjust the output level of each speaker in the range of -10dB +10dB. [Initial]; 00dB


Disc Setup 2*³
Speaker Distance*⁴

You can adjust the speaker output timing separately for each speaker according to the distance from the speakers to the listening position.

- **Front Lch/Center ch/Front Rch/Rear Rch/Rear Lch:** adjust the speaker distance in the range of 15 cm to 600 cm in 15-cm step. [Initial]; 120 cm (for center speaker), 150 cm (for the other speakers)



*¹ When activating the test tone, white noise comes out and cycles between the speakers activated on "Speaker Size" [35] for about 2 seconds each. Press ▲ / ▼ repeatedly while the test tone comes out from the target speaker to adjust the settings (the test tone continues to come out from the target speaker during the adjustment).

*² The setting is effective only when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on "Subwoofer" [39] for other cases.


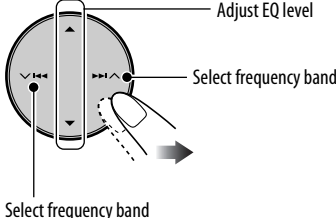
*³ Selectable only when DISC is the source.

*⁴ Unselectable when all the speakers other than front ones are deactivated on "Speaker Size" [35].

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Tuner	IF Band Width	<p>In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard.</p> <p>Auto: [Initial]; Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)</p> <p>Wide: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.</p>
	AV Input	<p>You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks.</p> <p>Off: Select when you do not need AV-Input as a source (AV-IN is deleted from the source items).</p> <p>Audio&Video: [Initial]; Select this when connecting an AV component such as a VCR.</p> <p>Audio: Select this when connecting an audio component such as a cassette deck.</p> <p>Camera^{*1}: Select when connecting the rear view camera.</p> <p>Camera Reverse^{*1}: The mirror image of the rear view is displayed on the monitor. (The monitor on the receiver only; the normal rear view appears on the external monitor.)</p>
Input	External Input	<p>Changer/iPod/D. Player^{*2}: [Initial]; To use a JVC CD changer, iPod, JVC D. player, etc. [42, 45]</p> <p>External Input: To use any external component other than above. [44]</p>

^{*1} Reverse lamp wire connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume). The rear view through the camera appears on the monitor in "Full" aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position.


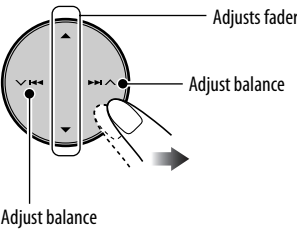
^{*2} The source indication changes automatically depending on the type of external component connected.

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]	
Others	Beep	You can deactivate the key-touch tone if you do not want it to beep each time you press a button. Off: Cancels. On: [Initial]; Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting	Off: [Initial]; Cancels. Muting1/Muting2: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
Disc Surround ^{*1}	Surround Off	Select to deactivate the surround function.
	Surround On	Select to activate the surround function. [23] Auto [Initial], Dolby PLII Movie ^{*2} , Dolby PLII Music ^{*2}
Equalizer ^{*3}	Flat/Hard Rock/R&B/Pop/Jazz/Dance/Country/Reggae/Classic/User 1/User 2/User 3 	You can select a preset equalizer settings. [Initial]; Flat You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in User 1/2/3. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Select the frequency band to adjust— 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1kHz, 2.5kHz, 6.3kHz, 15kHz. 2 Adjust the level of the selected band (-05 to +05). 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to adjust other frequency bands. 4 Press ENT. 5 Select the preset name (User 1, User 2, User 3) you want to store the setting into. 6 Press ENT. 

^{*1} Selectable only when DISC is the source.

^{*2} For the menu items of “Dolby PLII Movie” and “Dolby PLII Music”, see page 23.

^{*3} Not selectable when DISC is the source and the surround function is activated (see page 23).

Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
<p>Fader/Balance</p> 	<p>Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •Upmost—front only •Downmost—rear only <p>When using a two-speaker system, set the fader to the center (00).</p> <p>Adjust balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leftmost—left only • Rightmost—right only <p>Press ENT to finish the procedure.</p> 
<p>Volume Adjust</p>	<p>Adjust and store the volume level of each source except FM. Once you have made an adjustment, it is memorized, and the volume level will automatically increase or decrease by adjusted level when you change the source.</p> <p>Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -12 (min.) to +12 (max.) [Initial: 00]
<p>Subwoofer</p>	<p>Adjust the settings below in the submenu:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phase: Subwoofer phase. Select either “Normal” or “Reverse”, which reproduces a better sound. • Level*¹: Subwoofer output level. Level: -06 (dB) to +08 (dB) [Initial: 00 (dB)].
<p>High Pass Filter</p>	<p>Through: [Initial]; Select when the subwoofer is not connected.</p> <p>On: Select when the subwoofer is connected.</p>
<p>Crossover</p>	<p>Adjust the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer.</p> <p>80Hz, 120Hz [Initial], 150Hz</p>

*¹ The setting is ineffective when a multi-channel source is played back and Disc Surround is on, or when Dolby PLII Movie/Music is in effect. Adjust the level on “Speaker Level” [36] for the cases.

	Indications	Selectable settings, [reference page]
Sound	Amplifier Gain	You can change the maximum volume level of this receiver. Amplifier Off: Deactivates the built-in amplifier. Low Power: VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) High Power: [Initial]; VOL 00 – VOL 50
	Rear Speaker*1	You can activate/deactivate the rear speakers. Off, On [Initial]
Mode	Mono*2	Activate when the FM broadcasting is hard to receive. [12] Off [Initial], On
	DX / Local*2	Select FM reception sensitivity. [12] DX [Initial], Local
	SSM*2	Search for FM stations and store them as preset stations automatically. [13]
	Title Entry*3	You can enter names for preset stations, specific source name for AV Input and External Input, etc. [41]
	Off/Intro/Repeat/Random*4	You can select the playback mode of the disc in the unit and the discs in the CD changer [28, 43]
List		Select radio stations, folders, files and discs from the list on the screen. [14, 29, 42] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The accessible lists differ depending on the sources.
Dual Zone		Activate/deactivate the Dual Zone function. [30] Off [Initial], On, On-Surround

*1 Functions only when Dual Zone is activated. (See page 30)

*2 Appears only when Tuner is the source.

*3 Appears when the source is below: Tuner, AV-IN, EXT-IN, CD-CH, or conventional CD.

*4 Selectable playback mode differs depending on the disc type. For the available playback mode, see page 28 and 43.

Other main functions

Assigning titles to the sources

You can assign titles to station frequencies and CDs (both in this receiver and in the CD changer), and change the source names of AV-INPUT and EXT-INPUT.

Sources	Maximum number of characters
FM/AM tuner	Up to 16 characters (up to 30 station frequencies)
AV-INPUT/EXT-INPUT	Up to 16 characters
DISC/CD-CH	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)

- You can assign a title only to the conventional CD (CD-DA).

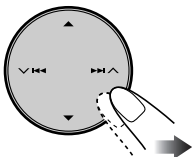
1 Select the source.

- For FM/AM tuner: Tune in to a station.
- For AV-IN/EXT-IN: Select the source.
- For a CD in this receiver: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select a disc number.

2



3 Select "Mode", then "Title Entry".



Ex.: When you select "AV-IN" as the source

4 Assign a title.

- Select a character set.



- Select a character.



- For available characters, see page 3.

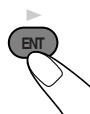
- Move to the next (or previous) character position.



- Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.



5 Finish the procedure.



To erase the entire title

In step 3 on the left column...



CD changer operations

About the CD changer

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

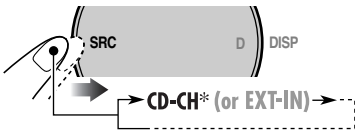
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.

Before operating your CD changer:

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- You cannot control and play any DVD Video/Audio, VCD, WMA, WAV, MPEG, or JPEG disc in the CD changer.

All tracks of the inserted discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the magazine from the CD changer.

1



* If you have changed "External Input" setting to "External Input" (see page 37), you cannot select the CD changer.



Selected disc number

2

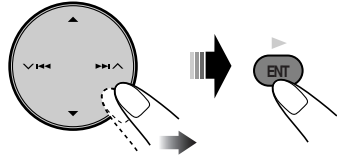
Select a disc.

1



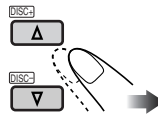
2

Select "List", then the disc you want to play back.



- When the current disc is an MP3 disc, you can move to FOLDER LIST by pressing .

When using the remote controller....



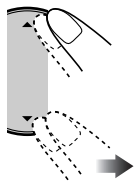
To fast-forward or reverse the track



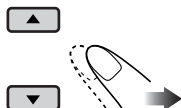
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3 discs)

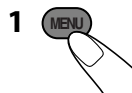


When using the remote controller...

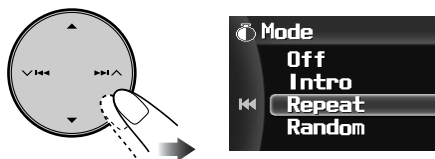


Selecting the playback modes

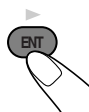
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.



2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Intro/Repeat/Random playback.

Intro

Mode	Plays the first 15 seconds of
------	-------------------------------

Track:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• INT lights up.
Folder*:	First tracks of all folders in the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• INT lights up.
Disc:	First tracks of all the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• INT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
------	------------------

Track:	The current track. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• RPT lights up.
Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• RPT lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

Mode	Plays at random
------	-----------------

Folder*:	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• RND lights up.
Disc:	All tracks of the current disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• RND lights up.
All:	All tracks of the inserted discs. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

* Only while playing an MP3 disc

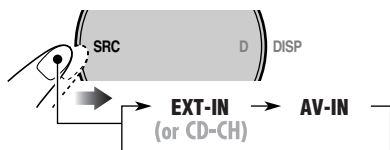
External component operations

Playing an external component

You can connect an external component to LINE IN plug and VIDEO IN plug on the rear, or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the KS-U57 Line Input Adapter (not supplied) or KS-U58 AUX Input Adapter (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

1



AV-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN and/or VIDEO IN.

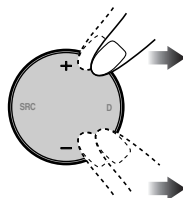
- To change the setting of AV INPUT, see page 37.

EXT-IN: For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack on the rear.

- If “EXT-IN” does not appear, see page 37 and select the external input (EXT-IN).

2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.

3 Adjust the volume.



4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 38.)

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

- You can also use the equivalent buttons on the remote controller in the operations below.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:

Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **Interface adapter for iPod**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- **D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.

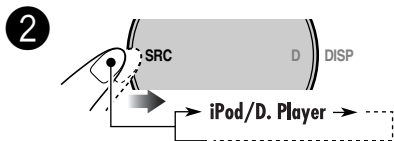
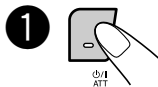
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Cautions:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

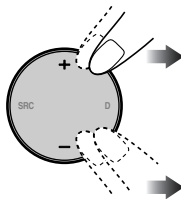
Preparations:

Make sure "Changer/iPod/D. Player" is selected for the external input setting, see page 37.



Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused (iPod) or stopped (D. player) previously.

- 3 Adjust the volume.



- 4 Adjust the equalizer as you want. (See pages 38.)

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause (iPod) or stop (D. player) playback



To resume playback, press it again.

To fast-forward or reverse the track



To go to the next or previous tracks



Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu of the iPod or D. player.



Now the ▲/▼/◀/▶/⏪/⏩/⏮/⏭ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*1.

- 2 Select the desired menu.



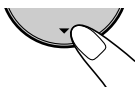
For iPod:

Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔
Composers ↔ Genres ↔ Songs ↔

For D. player:

Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔
Track ↔ Genre ↔

- 3 Confirm the selection.



To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

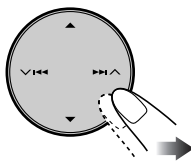
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until the desired track is confirmed.
- Holding ▼ |⏪|⏩| ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

- *1 The menu selecting mode will be canceled:
- If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.
 - When you confirm the selection of a track.

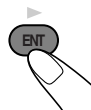
Selecting the playback modes

- 1 MENU

- 2 Select “Mode”, then your desired playback mode.



- 3 Finish the procedure.



Selectable modes

Off

Deactivates Repeat/Random playback.

Repeat

Mode	Plays repeatedly
One:	Functions the same as “Repeat One” of the iPod or “Repeat Mode One” for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
All:	Functions the same as “Repeat All” of the iPod or “Repeat Mode All” for the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPT lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Random

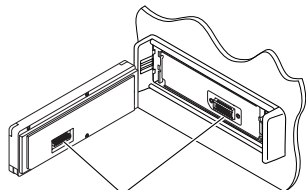
Mode	Plays at random
Album:	Functions the same as “Shuffle Album” of the iPod <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Song:	Functions the same as “Shuffle Songs” of the iPod. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
On:	Functions the same as “Random Play On” of the D. player. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RND lights up.
Off:	Cancels.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the receiver turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this receiver may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Warped disc



Sticker



Sticker residue



Stick-on label

Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	IK	Inupiak	RN	Kirundi
AB	Abkhazian	IN	Indonesian	RO	Rumanian
AF	Afrikaans	IS	Icelandic	RW	Kinyarwanda
AM	Ameharic	IW	Hebrew	SA	Sanskrit
AR	Arabic	JI	Yiddish	SD	Sindhi
AS	Assamese	JW	Javanese	SG	Sangho
AY	Aymara	KA	Georgian	SH	Serbo-Croatian
AZ	Azerbaijani	KK	Kazakh	SI	Singhalese
BA	Bashkir	KL	Greenlandic	SK	Slovak
BE	Byelorussian	KM	Cambodian	SL	Slovenian
BG	Bulgarian	KN	Kannada	SM	Samoan
BH	Bihari	KO	Korean (KOR)	SN	Shona
BI	Bislama	KS	Kashmiri	SO	Somali
BN	Bengali, Bangla	KU	Kurdish	SQ	Albanian
BO	Tibetan	KY	Kirghiz	SR	Serbian
BR	Breton	LA	Latin	SS	Siswati
CA	Catalan	LN	Lingala	ST	Sesotho
CO	Corsican	LO	Laothian	SU	Sundanese
CS	Czech	LT	Lithuanian	SW	Swahili
CY	Welsh	LV	Latvian, Lettish	TA	Tamil
DZ	Bhutani	MG	Malagasy	TE	Telugu
EL	Greek	MI	Maori	TG	Tajik
EO	Esperanto	MK	Macedonian	TH	Thai
ET	Estonian	ML	Malayalam	TI	Tigrinya
EU	Basque	MN	Mongolian	TK	Turkmen
FA	Persian	MO	Moldavian	TL	Tagalog
FI	Finnish	MR	Marathi	TN	Setswana
FJ	Fiji	MS	Malay (MAY)	TO	Tonga
FO	Faroese	MT	Maltese	TR	Turkish
FY	Frisian	MY	Burmese	TS	Tsonga
GA	Irish	NA	Nauru	TT	Tatar
GD	Scots Gaelic	NE	Nepali	TW	Twi
GL	Galician	NO	Norwegian	UK	Ukrainian
GN	Guarani	OC	Occitan	UR	Urdu
GU	Gujarati	OM	(Afan) Oromo	UZ	Uzbek
HA	Hausa	OR	Oriya	VI	Vietnamese
HI	Hindi	PA	Panjabi	VO	Volapuk
HR	Croatian	PL	Polish	WO	Wolof
HU	Hungarian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	XH	Xhosa
HY	Armenian	PT	Portuguese	YO	Yoruba
IA	Interlingua	QU	Quechua	ZU	Zulu
IE	Interlingue	RM	Rhaeto-Romance		

More about this receiver

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the receiver, you can also turn on the power.

Selecting the sources

- When no disc is loaded in the receiver and Dual Zone is off, “DISC” cannot be selected.
- Without connecting to the CD changer, “CD-CH” cannot be selected.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to the music/picture/movie files and their file names.
- This receiver can also play back 8 cm discs.
- This receiver can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.
 - The first track will be skipped if a different type of file is detected first.
- When a disc has been loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source (without activating Dual Zone), disc play starts automatically.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This receiver can play back either MP3/WMA/WAV files, JPEG files, or MPEG files if a disc includes any of the files. Set the playback file type on AV Menu (page 34) before playing back a disc containing files of different kinds.
- Only for CD-R/CD-RW: This receiver can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some Recordable/Rewritable discs may not play back on this receiver because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
 - Discs are dirty or scratched.
 - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the receiver.
 - The pickup lens inside the receiver is dirty.
 - Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
 - Discs which are not written in UDF-Bridge Format (eg. UDF format or ISO format).
 - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.).
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.
- Do not use the following discs:
 - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
 - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damages to discs.

Playing an MP3/WMA/WAV disc

- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This receiver can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA/WAV files.
- This receiver can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This receiver can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
 - Bit rate: MP3: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
 - Sampling frequency:
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for WMA)
44.1 kHz (for WAV)
 - Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav>).
 - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
 - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
 - Romeo: up to 128 characters
 - Joliet: up to 64 characters
 - Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This receiver can recognize the total of 3500 files, 250 folders (maximum of 999 files per folder).

- This receiver can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This receiver cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded in an unappropriated format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - WMA files recorded with MBR (Multiple Bit Rate) format.
 - Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Playing a JPEG disc

- It is recommended that you record a file at 640 x 480 resolution. (If a file has been recorded at a resolution of more than 640 x 480, it will take a long time to be shown.)
- This System can play only baseline JPEG files. Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.
Baseline JPEG format: Used for digital cameras, web, etc.
Progressive JPEG format: Used for web.
Lossless JPEG format: An old type and rarely used now.
- If progressive or lossless JPEG files are played back, a black screen appears. In this case, stop playback and select a baseline JPEG file. Note that it may take a long time to select another file.

Playing an MPEG disc

- This receiver can play back MPEG 1/2 files with the extension code <.mpg>.
- Audio stream should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer 2.

AV Menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
After you change any of these language settings, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3PS [PAN SCAN]” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]” with some DVDs.
This depends on how they are recorded.
- If you change the “Amplifier Gain” setting from “High Power” to “Low Power” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30”, the receiver automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30”.

Other main functions

- If you try to assign a title to a 31st station or 31st disc, “Name Full” flashes on the monitor. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc on the receiver.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
 - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
 - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 18 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 32). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:










When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

On-screen guide icons

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

- : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (for DVD only).
- : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (for DVD only).
- : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (for DVD only).
- : Playback
- : Pause
- : Forward Slow Motion Playback (for DVD and VCD only)
- : Reverse Slow Motion Playback (for DVD only)
- : Forward search
- : Reverse search

Sound modes (preset frequency level settings)

The list below shows the preset frequency level settings for each sound mode (see page 38).

Sound mode	Preset equalizing values						
	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	-02	-01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound cannot be heard from the speakers. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
		Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The receiver does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote controller does not work. 	Dual Zone is activated (see page 30). While Dual Zone is activated, remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Signal” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the source. • Starts playback on the external component connected to the VIDEO IN plug. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
FM/AM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSM automatic presetting does not work. 	Store stations manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static noise while listening to the radio. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable disc cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the disc with the component which you used for recording.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be recognized. 	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Not Support” appears on the monitor. 	Use a file format the unit supports (see page 4).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Disc Error” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert the disc correctly. • Insert a disc recorded and finalized.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “No Files” appears on the monitor. 	The disc does not have playable files. Insert a disc containing playable files.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No playback picture appears on the monitor. 	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No picture appears on the external monitor at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connect the video cord correctly. Select a correct input on the monitor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The edges of the picture are missing on the screen. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select an aspect other than “Zoom”. (See page 33) Select “4:3LB [LETTER BOX]”. (See page 34.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The playback pictures cannot be shown correctly. 	The color system (NTSC/PAL) is not correct. Set it correctly (see page 33).
MP3/WMA/WAV playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use a disc with tracks recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) Add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to their file names.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Noise is generated. 	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma> or <.wav> to files of different types.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A longer readout time is required. 	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tracks cannot be played back as you have intended them to play. 	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Elapsed playing time is not correct. 	This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name). 	This receiver can only display alphabets (A – Z, a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.	
JPEG/MPEG playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use a disc with JPEG/MPEG files recorded in the compliant format. (See page 4.) Add the extension code <.jpg> or <.mpg> to their file names.
CD changer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Disc” appears on the monitor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insert a disc into the magazine. Insert disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Magazine” appears on the monitor. 	Insert the magazine.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset08” appears on the monitor. 	Connect this receiver and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset01” – “Reset07” appears on the monitor. 	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The CD changer does not work at all. 	Reset the receiver (see page 2).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Update the firmware version of the D. player. Charge the battery of the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Disconnect” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops while playing back iPod. 	The headphones are disconnected from iPod during playback. Restart the playback operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. “Error 01” appears on the monitor when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “No Files” or “No Track” appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 1” – “Reset 7” appears on the monitor. 	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Reset 8” appears on the monitor. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:

Front: 50 W per channel

Rear: 50 W per channel

Continuous Power Output (RMS):

Front: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Rear: 20 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)

Equalizer Control Range:

Frequencies: 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz

Level: ± 10 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

Line-In Level/Impedance:

1.5 V/20 k Ω load

Line-Out Level/Impedance:

Center-Out Level/Impedance:

Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:

2.5 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)

Color System: NTSC/PAL

Video Input (composite): 1 V_{p-p}/75 Ω

Video Output (composite): 1 V_{p-p}/75 Ω

Other Terminals:

2nd AUDIO OUT, CD changer

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:

FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz

AM: 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)

50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:

16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)

Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB

Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz

Stereo Separation: 35 dB

Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[AM Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 μ V

Selectivity: 35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)

Number of Channels: 2 channels (stereo)

Frequency Response:

DVD fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz

fs=192 kHz: 16 Hz to 88 000 Hz

VCD, CD: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz

Dynamic Range: 93 dB

Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 95 dB

Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit

MP3 : Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

WMA: Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps

MONITOR SECTION

Screen: 3.5-inch wide liquid crystal panel

Number of Pixels: 224 640 pixels

Drive Method:

TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format

Color System: NTSC/PAL

GENERAL

Power Requirement:

Operating Voltage:

DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)

Grounding System: Negative ground

Allowable Operating Temperature:

0°C to +40°C

Dimensions (W \times H \times D):

Installation Size (approx.):

182 mm \times 52 mm \times 160 mm

Panel Size (approx.):

188 mm \times 58 mm \times 12 mm

Mass (approx.):

1.9 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

JVC



EN

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0206MNMMDWJEIN